FRENCH GRAMMAR

WITH

EXERCISES.

Price 10*s.* 6*d.*

GUIDE

TO THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE;

ESPECIALLY DEVISED FOR PERSONS WHO WISH TO STUDY THAT LANGUAGE

WITHOUT THE ASSISTANCE OF A TEACHER.

BY

J. J. P. LE BRETHON.

THE TENTH EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED,

BY L. SANDIER,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES, AND MEMBER OF THE HISTORICAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE.

WITH A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

ADOLESCENTIAM ALERE JUCUNDUM EST ET LAUDABILE.—*Cicero.*

LONDON: ROBERT BALDWIN,

47, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1847.

LONDON
Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and SONS,
Stamford Street.

PREFACE.

The study of the French language, in this country, has become so essential a feature in the character of modern education, and so intimately associated with the advancing civilization of the age, as to render its easy acquisition a matter deserving urgent attention. No apology therefore can be reasonably required for the issue of a carefully revised and amended edition of the standard Grammar of M. Le Brethon.

It is very much to be regretted, that in nearly every French Grammar, professedly written to give the English student a thorough knowledge of French, there should be such a number of ill-arranged and unclassified rules, which bewilder and dishearten the learner, unless he be endowed with a mind of more than ordinary capacity. Now, one effect of this improper arrangement of the rules is, that the pupil, presuming a knowledge of the French language to be unattainable, without close and arduous study, becomes discouraged, and, if he be compelled to proceed through this dreaded labyrinth of rules, he does so hopeless of ever attaining any proficiency; and the result is, that under circumstances so unfavourable and prejudicial, little or no progress is made. Hence, the many months—nay, the many years—frequently devoted by young persons to the study of the French language, at the end of which, they give it up in despair of ever learning anything worthy to be called French. Should we not, then, endeavour to obviate this general want of success, mainly, if not entirely, arising from the absence of care and judgment in the selection of the books intended for their use? The way to learning should be made smooth and easy of ascent: it is important, therefore, that the rules of Grammar should be properly

arranged and classified, so as to lead the student to a gradual, but thorough knowledge of the language which it is his desire to obtain.

During my long career as a teacher of the French language in England, which has extended over a period of nearly twenty years, I have invariably made it a point, to examine carefully every book connected with my profession which I could possibly procure. The experience I have thus acquired, has led me to this conclusion, that the Grammar of M. Le Brethon is superior to all other French Grammars, hitherto published, whether regarded as to the simplicity of its arrangement, or its adaptation to the most ordinary or the loftiest mind. It is a work of great merit—being methodical, plain, easy, and complete. This, I am aware, is a very high eulogium to pronounce upon any work, especially upon a Grammar; but I feel convinced that a careful and unprejudiced perusal of the book will at once establish the accuracy of my opinion.

Throughout this Grammar, the student will find the most ample directions; indeed, they accompany him, as he progresses through the various rules and exercises, explaining whatever may appear doubtful or difficult in the construction of the language, and guiding him to the close of his studies, with a *fulness* and *amplitude* that render it utterly impossible that considerable advance should not have been made in its acquisition. It is a happy feature in the arrangement of this Grammar, that the method is adopted of constantly placing before the eye of the pupil, figures referring to the rules through which he has passed, and only a partial knowledge of which he may have acquired. The result is, that the nature and peculiar properties of the rules become deeply impressed upon his mind, by the facility thus afforded of recurring at once to them, if necessary, instead of having, as in most other Grammars, to peruse many pages before obtaining the desired information. It may be affirmed, then, that any person, of even ordinary capacity, who has attentively studied this Grammar, cannot fail to have acquired a competent knowledge of French.

It is generally admitted that the French language is the best adapted for the expression of whatever is light, delicate, or amusing, and the happiest language for the exercise of the conversational powers. Hence, in all large towns in Europe, French is quite familiar to the higher circles of society, and by tacit convention, whenever well-educated men of different nations meet together, French is at once the language adopted.

To those who aim at enriching their minds by acquainting themselves with the beauties of literature, French is of the greatest importance, as the writings of the ancient and modern authors of France abound in passages of the utmost sublimity and grandeur.

To the tourist, a knowledge of this universal language is absolutely necessary; it will minister to his comforts whilst abroad, and add materially to the stock of information he may accumulate during his journey.

To those persons whose business avocations are at all identified with foreign commerce, French will be found invaluable; and it is unquestionably true, that young men acquainted with this language are more readily engaged by merchants than those who are ignorant of it.

There are also considerations of an entirely different character, which may induce others to enter upon its study. The political prominence of France—her intimate connection with England—the growing importance of the commercial relations between the two countries, and their mutual interests, feelings, and sympathies in the advancing civilization of the world, render French an interesting and important study to every intelligent Briton.

In conclusion, I would reiterate the sentiment so happily embodied in the language of a modern author, that, as long as any person confines his own study, solely to his native tongue, he cannot understand it perfectly, or ascertain with accuracy its poverty or richness, its beauties or defects. He who cultivates other languages, as well as his own, gains new instruments to increase the stock of his ideas, and opens new roads to the temple of knowledge. He draws his learning from pure sources, con-

verses with the natives of other countries, without the assistance of an interpreter, and surveys the contents of books without being under the necessity of an implicit reliance on translations. He may unite the speculations of a philosopher with the acquirements of a linguist; he may compare different languages, and form just conclusions with respect to their beauties and defects, and their conformity with manners and institutions. He may trace the progress of national refinement, and discover by a comparison with their corresponding terms, that the history of language, inasmuch as it developes the efforts of human genius, and the rise and advancement of its inventions, constitutes an important part of the history of man.

L. SANDIER.

DIRECTIONS.

LET the student begin at the first part of the Introduction to the French language, page 27; comparing the French with the English, and endeavouring to form some idea of the difference between the two languages. Then, let him read, two or three times over, as far as page 32. Having arrived at page 32, let him translate it with the assistance of the English by its side, and so on to page 58.

Rule 1, page 32, corresponds with rule 1, page 62: underneath it is an exercise—which the pupil should write after having well read and understood the said rule, observing a similar plan with each succeeding one. The numbers referring to the rules in the first part of the Introduction, agree throughout with those in the second part.

After a few lessons, I would advise the pupil to translate 'Perrin's French Fables,' the easiest book for beginners; next to which comes 'Wanostrocht's Recueil choisi.' Those who have not a good memory will do well to write out the English translation of either book, which, with the aid of the Index found in both of them, is an easy task. After having written a dozen fables, he will be accustomed to the finding of words, and already know a good many; he may then cease writing his translations, as he will easily read the fables in English with the assistance of the Index.

Pupils naturally being very anxious to learn pronunciation, I would recommend the master to teach them, first, the various sounds of the French alphabet, particularly the vowels, which differ more than consonants from the English sounds. The next step is to teach them to read the verbs, beginning at page 106, and requesting particular attention to the numbers prefixed to them, all of which refer to excellent rules on pronunciation at the beginning of the grammar. *Des Carrières' Dialogues* should now be given to the pupils, and they might be taught to read a number of familiar words with which they soon become acquainted. The printing of the *Dialogues* greatly facilitates pronunciation, silent letters

being in *italics*. I would strongly advise the teacher, in the generality of cases, not to accustom pupils to repeat any thing from memory, at least for the first three months, as it is a very tedious task to remember words of a foreign language, before knowing how to pronounce them properly. This part of the study of French—I mean pronunciation—will, in time, become the easiest, *if* the pupil be not made to learn it in too hurried a manner. Very great assistance will be derived from attending to the rules found at the first and following pages of the Grammar, as it is beneficial to learn pronunciation by rules, as well as by hearing the different sounds from a native of France. Exemplifications should also be given, and to do this effectually, the teacher should have some knowledge of English pronunciation; corresponding sounds between French and English existing for all the words, with only a few exceptions. In order, however, to facilitate this, it is my intention shortly to bring out a pronouncing-book which, I trust, will answer the purpose satisfactorily.*

It will now please and encourage the learner to compose short and easy sentences, on the most common topics; doing this on all the verbs will be found very beneficial. As soon as a sufficient knowledge of pronunciation is acquired, it is time to begin, at page 62, reading in French, at sight, the exercises previously written. It will be well, at the same time, to translate 'De Porquet's Trésor de l'Ecolier Français,' that is, making English into French, a most essential point to be obtained, as we suppose pupils anxious to speak French. After having gone through 'Perrin's Fables,' or 'Wanostrocht's Recueil choisi,' let the learner translate 'Blanchard's Petit voyage autour du monde,'† a very interesting little work. Or, if he be anxious to begin at once reading our standard French authors, here is a list of a few very instructive and captivating works:

Télémaque, by Fénélon; Numa Pompilius, by Florian; les Incas, Bélisaire, by Marmontel; Histoire de Charles XII., Roi de Suède, Histoire de Pierre-le-Grand, Siècle de Louis XIV., Vie de Louis XV., Essai sur les Mœurs et l'Esprit des Nations, by Voltaire‡; Voyage du jeune Anacharsis en Grèce, by Barthélémy; Voyages en Syrie et en Egypte, by Volney; Histoire des Révolutions Romaines, de Suède, et de

* The Modern French Pronouncing Book, or Parisian Pronunciation exemplified through the medium of English Sounds; to which is added, a Translating-Book for Beginners, with notes. By Louis Sandier.

† A new edition, revised and corrected, with grammatical and explanatory notes. By L. Sandier. This work may be advantageously used by most beginners.

‡ The style of Voltaire is the easiest and the most free from idioms among French authors.

Portugal, by Vertot; Les Tragédies de Corneille, de Racine, de Voltaire; Les Comédies de Molière, with notes by Gombert.

Meanwhile, the pupil is supposed to have written the exercises in the grammar, as far as page 104; then he should read the third part of the grammar, on syntax, extending from page 179 to 270, at least four pages a week, and also commit to memory the idiomatical sentences at page 258, and following. In the mean time, it is proper he should write the exercises of the third part, beginning at page 271. Simply reading them will answer the same purpose with some pupils; the discrimination must here be left to the judgment of the teacher. The time for composing letters is now come, first writing them in English, (but taking care to use only short and simple sentences,) and translating them into French, observing the parsing of each word, and never forgetting that the chief and fundamental rules of grammar are the same in all languages.

I suppose the learner pretty well acquainted with the pronunciation by this time, and would advise him to read every day, aloud and slowly, a page or more of a French book; it would be an advantage if he heard it read previously by a French person. This being strictly followed up, his ear would become accustomed to the sound of the language, and enable him to understand better when addressed in French. Let him remove his "mauvaise honte," and speak French whenever he can; and even supposing his mistakes may occasionally excite a smile, there is nothing to make him feel ashamed, for it would be unreasonable to expect him to speak a foreign language as correctly as he speaks his own.

Pupils desirous of teaching themselves—and parents or teachers wishing to give instruction in French, but not feeling fully competent to the task—will do well to procure the Key to Le Brethon's Grammar, which contains excellent directions for their guidance. It may also be placed with advantage in the hands of those who. having already a knowledge of French, experience any difficulty in understanding grammatical construction; they may use it as a translating book, by which they will often learn the arrangement and agreement of words.

A most important point in teaching, and one which cannot be too frequently dwelt upon, is that of studying the disposition and peculiar temperament of the pupil, and apportioning lessons accordingly; as what we do with pleasure is invariably better done. Let the teacher be mild and encouraging: if he conciliate his pupils, his success will be by far greater than any exhibition of ill temper at their dulness or inattention could possibly produce; gentle reasoning, with patience and forbearance, must ultimately succeed. At the same time, let the teacher remember,

that his mildness must not degenerate into want of firmness; he should be courteous, yet reserved—endeavouring to cultivate that regard which ought ever to exist in the relation of the pupil towards the master. Punctuality and regularity of attendance are most essentially requisite—as well on the part of the learner, as on that of the teacher—and without these, only very unsatisfactory progress can be expected.

It is not sufficient that young people have good books, a good method, and even a good master, if this master be unsupported by heads of schools and parents. A great evil existing in many scholastic establishments is, that pupils have no school time allowed for their French lessons; they must learn them whenever they can—often, indeed, during their hours of recreation. It may be naturally expected, therefore, that few of them do so with pleasure, because they regard the study of French as an encroachment on those hours which, they imagine, ought to be exclusively devoted to leisure. This is an evil which ought to be immediately remedied.

An erroneous idea prevails with some persons that the study of French interferes with other studies: on the contrary, it is actually a great assistant. By learning the French grammar, the pupil must become more thoroughly acquainted with his own; the parts of speech, as I have before observed, being essentially the same in all languages; and different French words, in many instances, not only explain peculiar shades of one English word to which, otherwise, his attention would, perhaps, never have been attracted, but exhibit the real meaning and etymology of many other words derived from the French. Then, too, the pronunciation of a foreign language by making his organs more flexible, soften his articulation when pronouncing his mother-tongue. As, however, in learning languages, we do not confine ourselves to words only, but learn them connectedly to form sentences and express the ideas of the author we read, we must, necessarily, enlarge our minds by this repeated intercourse with the works of genius.

L. S.

THE ALPHABET.

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE is composed of *twenty-five* letters, *viz*

A	pronounced	*ah*	like	*a*	in	*a*rt.
B		*bay*		*b*		*b*ay.
C		*say*		*s*		*s*ay.
D		*day*		*d*		*d*ay.
E		*ay*		*a*		*a*le.
F		*f*		*f*		dea*f*.
G		*zhay**		[1]		
H		*ash*		*h*		as*h*.
I		*ee*		*i*		*i*eld.
J		*zhee**		[1]		
K		*kah*		*c*		*c*art.
L		*l*		*l*		e*ll*.
M		*m*		*m*		ge*m*.
N		*n*		*n*		pe*n*.
O		*o*		*o*		*o*ld.
P		*pay*		*p*		*p*ay.
Q		*ku*		[2]		
R		*ayr*		*r*		to e*rr*.
S		*s*		*s*		ble*ss*.
T		*tay*		*t*		*t*ailor.
U		*u*		[2]		
V		*vay*		*v*		*v*eil.
X		*eeks*		*x*		si*x*.
Y		*ee-grayc*				the same sound as *i*.
Z		*zeyd*		*z*		*z*ed.

These are the names by which the letters are called in french; but in that language, as well as in the english, the sound of several of them varies according to their position with other letters, as will appear by the following observations.†

* To give this letter its proper sound, the *h* must be pronounced aspirate.

1 The sound of *g* and *j*, in english, is formed of *dj;* so *general, judge,* are pronounced *djeneral, djudge;* leave out the sound of *d* in french, and you will have the proper sound.

2 There is no word in the english language in which the sounds of the french *q* and *u* are to be found, and no combination of characters can give an idea of the pronunciation of these two letters. The person who has them to pronounce, must shut his lips quite close, leaving only a small opening in the middle, as if he were going to blow a flute.

† It is perhaps unnecessary to observe, that in a treatise of this kind, the minutest precision must not be expected. There are simple sounds which no combination of characters can exactly express: every person who knows any thing of languages must be sensible of this.

OF VOWELS.

The French reckon *three* sorts of vowels.

The simple, *a, e, i, o, u.*
The compound, *ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eu, eo, oe, ou.*
The nasal, *am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om, on, um, un.*

OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

a, e, i, o, u.

1 Each of these letters has *two* sounds common to both languages;

			English words in which the same sound is found		
One short, as	a in *patte,*		paw,	a	in *pat.*
	e *bette,*		beet,	e	*bet.*
	i *fixe,*		fixed,	i	*fix.*
	o *hotte,*		dorser,	o	*hot.*
	u *mur,*		wall,	u	see note 2.
The other long, as	â in *pâte,*	marked ′ 3	paste,	a	in *pall.*
	ê *bête,*		beast,	e	*bear.*
	î *fit,*		might do,	i	*field.*
	ô *hôte,*		landlord,	o	*hope.*
	û *mûr,*		ripe,	u	see note 2 and 3.

N. B. The beauty of french pronunciation depends upon a clear and distinct articulation of these five letters.

2 To the two sorts of *e* abovementioned, must be added *e* mute, as in

cela,	that, pronounced	*sla.*
demande,	requires,	*dmand.*
des mesures,	measures,	*daymsur.*

This *e*, as you see, has no sound, but it generally affects the sound of the *penultima*, by rendering it longer, if it be a vowel, or by giving a sound to the consonant which, without it, would be silent; for ex.

é in *aimé,*	mascul.	loved, is pronoun.	*aymay,*	like *é*	short.
i *joli,*		pretty,	*zholli,* 4	*i*	
u *vu,*		seen,	*vu,*	*u*	
é in *aimée,*	femin.	loved, is pronoun.	*aymaye,*	like *ê*	long
i *jolie,*		pretty,	*zholee,*	*î*	
u *vue,*		seen,	*vû,*	*û*	
petit,	mascul.	little, is pronoun.	*pti,* see note 4.		
grand,		great,	*gran.*		
pris,		taken,	*pree.*		
but *petite,*	femin.	little, is pronoun.	*ptitt.*		
grande,		great,	*grand.*		
prise,		taken,	*preez.*		

In *un bon chien,* a good dog, the *n* has only a *half* sound.
In *une bonne chienne,* a good bitch, the *n* has a *full* sound. 5

N. B. *e mute* is distinguished from the two others, by its not being accented; it is never pronounced at the end of words, but when *e* begins a word, it is always sounded whether it be accented or not.

---

3 A vowel with a circumflex is pronounced as long again as it would be without it.

4 Sound the letter *i* as sharp as you can, sharper, if possible, than *y* in *pretty.*

5 To give *n* its full articulation, you first press the tip of the tongue against the root of the lower teeth, then raise it up quickly to the roof of the mouth. In the pronunciation of the above nasal vowels, the articulation of *n* must end, when the tip of the tongue is at the root of the lower teeth, without any motion towards the roof of the mouth; this is what is here meant by a *half* sound.

OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

In the monosyllables, *je, me, te, le, se, ce, de, ne, que,* this *e* has sometimes a *weak guttural* sound, similar to that of *e* in *daughter, sister,* because the consonant can not be pronounced without a feeble articulation of a vowel; but it is always *dropt* in conversation and in familiar reading, when it can be done without embarrassing the pronunciation. The manner in which this is effected is easy. With the *last syllable* of the preceding word, *pronounce* the *consonant* to which *e mute* belongs, and the *e,* thus *unsupported,* will remain *silent;* ex. 3

Quand me ferez-vous le plaisir de me prêter ce livre que je vous ai demandé?

pronounce, *kam fraye vool playzeer dum pray tays livr kurzh voozayd manday!*

But there must not be any pause between the words, and the junction must be as smooth as possible.

Observe only, that a *syllable* ending in *e mute, can not attract* the *consonant* of another *e mute,* without giving to the first *e* a gentle guttural sound, like that of *e* in *daughter,* so as to render the pronunciation easy; ex.

Je ne puis pas vous le dire, puis que je ne le sais pas.

pron. *zhen puee paw vool deer, pueesk zhen lugh say paw.*

But carefully avoid pronouncing it like an accented *é,* for there is not any pronunciation more ridiculous.*

Among the simple vowels is also reckoned *y,* which however does not increase their number, since its sound is the same as that of *i.* The peculiar use of this letter is to divide the syllable in which it is found, into two distinct syllables; it is equivalent to *ii;* as, 4

pays,	country,	pron.	*pay-ee.*
citoyen,	citizen,		*citwoy-eeyen.*
soyons,	let us be,		*swoy-eeon.*
joyeux,	joyful,		*zhwoy-ee-ugh.*

Except in the words derived from the greek and latin, where *y* is kept to shew the etymology of the word, and is pronounced like one *i* only; as,

Egypte,	Egypt,	*ayzheept.*
tyrannie,	tyranny,	*teerannee.*
étymologie,	etymology,	*ayteemolozhee.*
mythologie,	mythology,	*meetolozhee.*

* In the pronouncing of this *e* consists much of the neatness and elegance of a true french accent. In the southern provinces of France, especially in *Guyenne* and *Gascogne,* they pronounce it like the acute or short *é,* which gives them that affected pronunciation, so much ridiculed by the rest of the inhabitants of France, under the name of *accent gascon.* For this reason a foreigner will sooner understand a native of *Bordeaux,* than a native of *Paris,* and may often understand the former, without being able to understand the latter, though if he understands the latter, he will undoubtedly understand the former. It is the frequent dropping of this *e* which makes a foreigner believe that the French speak fast, for, in reality, the French, taken in general, do not pronounce their words faster than other people do; but by dropping this letter, they link two, three, or four words together, and so go quicker through a sentence than a foreigner does, who gives a full sound to every *e* he meets with. Foreigners should pay particular attention to this, as nothing is more difficult to get rid of than a bad accent.

OF COMPOUND VOWELS

ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, ou.

This sort of vowel is formed by the association of several simple vowels, which produce together, a sound different from that which they produce separately.

5 *ai*, *eai*, } sounded like *é* short, i. e. *ay;* as,

j'ai,	I have, pronounce	*zhay.*
je mangeai,	I ate,	*zhmanzhay.*

6 *ais*, *aie*, *aient*, *eais*, *eaient*, } sounded like *ê* long, i. e. *aye;* as,

j'avais,	I had,	*zhavaye.*
j'aie,	I may have.	*zhaey*
ils aient,	they may have,	*eel-z-aye.*
je mangeais,	I was eating,	*zhmanzhaye.*
ils nageaient,	they were swimming,	*eel nazhaye.*

ao, found only in *août*, august; *taon*, oxfly; *faon*, fawn; *paon*, peacock. pronounced *oow*, *ton*, *fan*, *pan*, (see nasal vowels.)

7 *au*, *eau*, } final, sound like *o* short, or *au*, in *laurel;* as,

eau,	water	*o.*
peau,	skin,	*po.*

8 *au*, *eau*, } followed by a consonant in the same word, sounded like *ô* long, or *au* in *hautboy;* as,

eaux,	waters,	*ô.*
autant,	as much,	*ôtan.*

9 *ea*, the *e* has no sound, but gives *g* the soft sound of *j*, or *zh;* as,

jean,	john,	*zhan.*
mangea,	ate,	*manzha.*

10 *ei*, pronounced like *ei* in *reign;* or *ai* in *rain;* as,

reine,	queen	*rain.*
peine,	pain,	*pain.*

11 *eo*, in *geo*, the *e* has no sound, but softens that of *g* into *zh;* as,

george,	george,	*zhorzh.*
geôlier,	jailer,	*zhôleeay.*

12 *eu*, the nearest idea which I can give of *eu*, is that of *e*, in *her*, agreeably to Walker's pronunciation of that word, viz. *hur.*

feu,	fire,	*feu.*
peu,	little,	*peu.*

N. B. *e* has no sound in the monosyllables,
eu, eus, eut, eûmes, eûtes, eurent, eusse, had; pronounce *u, û, u, ûm, ût, ur, uss.*

13 *oe*, pronounced *e;* the *o* having no sound; and the words in which it was found formerly being now generally spelled without it; as,

cœur,	heart,	*keur.*
œuvres,	works,	*euvr.*

14 *ou*, pronounced like *oo* in *cook*, *book*, *look;* as,

coup,	blow,	*koo.*
bout,	end,	*boo.*

15 N. B. If one of the vowels is *accented*, or marked over with two *dots* (¨), the vowels form distinct syllables, and are pronounced separately; as,

fléau,	scourge,	*flay-o.*
naïveté.	ingenuousness,	*na-ivtay.*

OF NASAL VOWELS.

am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om on, um, un.

am, an, em, en, ent, have all the same sound, that of *en* in *encore*, or *an* in *want*, observing to give the *n* only a half sound; *See note* 5. 16

ambition,	ambition,	*anbisecon*
empire,	empire,	*anpeer.*
enfant,	child,	*anfan.*
anglais,	english,	*anglaye.*
vengeance,	revenge,	*vanzhance.*
ornement,	ornament,	*ornum-an.*

en has the sound of *en* in *when*, giving *n* only a half sound; *See note* 5. 17

1. In foreign names; as,

mentor,	mentor,	*mentor.*

2. At the end of words; as,

examen,	examination,	*egzamen.*
bien,	well,	*beeyen.*
entretien,	conversation,	*antrut-yen.*

N. B. *ent* has no sound at the end of the third person plural of verbs; as, 18

ils eurent,	they had,	*eel z-ur.*
ils furent,	they were,	*eel fur.*
ils aimèrent,	they loved,	*eel-z-aymayr.*

im, in, aim, ain, ein, have all the same sound, a sound similar to that of *in* in *fine*, giving *n* only a half sound; *See note* 5. 19

imparfait,	imperfect,	*ineparfay.*
infini,	infinite,	*inefini.*
cousin,	cousin, *masc.*	*coozine.*
fin,	end,	*fine.*
faim,	hunger,	*fine.*
pain,	bread,	*pine.*
sein,	bosom,	*sine.*

But if *in*, either in the first or last syllable of a word, is followed by a vowel, it is sounded like the english preposition *in*; as, 20

inaccessible,	inaccessible,	*inaksessible.*
inutile,	useless,	*inutil.*
fine,	fine,	*fin.*
cousine,	cousin, *femin.*	*coozin.*
badine,	playful,	*bad-in.*

om, on, eon, are sounded like *on* in *wont*, observing always to give *n* only a half sound; *See note* 5. 21

compter,	to count,	*contay.*
donjon,	dungeon,	*don-zhon.*
pigeon,	pigeon,	*peezhon.*
mangeons,	let us eat,	*man-zhon.*

N. B. The English are apt to open their mouths too much in pronouncing *on*, by which means, instead of sounding it like *on* in *wont*, they sound it like *an* in *want*. They should guard against this.

um, un, eun, have all the same sound; but no exact idea can be given of it, unless it be that of *un* in *fungus*; observing not to give *n* its full sound; *See note* 5. 22

parfum,	perfume,	*parfun.*
chacun,	each,	*shak-un.*
à jeun,	fasting,	*azhun.*

OF DIPHTHONGS.

23 Diphthongs are a union of several vowels, which, though they produce different sounds, are pronounced at the same breath;

ia, sounded like	*ya* in yard. ex.		*fiacre*,	hackney-coach,	*feeyacr*.
ié,	*ye*	ye.	*pied*,	foot,	*pee-ay*.
io,	*yo*	york.	*fiole*,	vial,	*feeol*.
iau,	*yo*	yoke.	*miauler*,	to mew,	*meeolay*.
ieu,			*dieu*,	god,	*dee-ugh*.
iou,	*you*	you.	*chiourme*,	a galley crew,	*sheeoorm*.
iant, }	*yan*,		*priant*,	praying,	*preeyan*.
ient, }			*patient*,	patient,	*pawceeyan*.
ien,	*yen*,		*bien*,	well,	*beeyen*.
ion,	*yon*,		*action*,	action,	*akseeyon*.
oe, }	*whey*	whey.	*boîte*,	box,	*bwheyt*.
oue, }			*fouet*,	whip,	*fwhey*.
oi, } 6	*woa*,		*moi, toi*,	I, thou,	*mwoa, twoa*.
oui, }			*bourgeois*,	burgess,	*boorzhwoa*.
oin,	*woin*,		*soin*,	care,	*swoin*.
ouan, }	*wan*	want.	*louange*,	praise,	*lwanzh*.
ouen, }			*rouen*,	rouen,	*rwan*.
oua,	*wa*	water.	*louage*,	hiring,	*lwazh*.
oui	*wi*	without.	*oui, réjoui*,	yes, rejoiced,	*we, rayzhwee*.
ua, } In pronouncing this *u* shut your lips as directed in note 2.			*nuage*,	cloud,	*nuazh*.
ue, }			*écuelle*,	porringer,	*aykuayl*.
ui, }			*lui, fruit*,	him, fruit,	*lui, frui*, no. 4.
uin, }			*juin*,	june,	*zhuine*.

6 To remove the embarrassment which learners find in the pronunciation of *oi*, which is sometimes pronounced like the diphthong *oi*, and sometimes like the compound vowel *ai*, in words which are entirely similar, I have through all this work spelled with *oi* the words which are pronounced *woa*, and with *ai*, those which are pronounced *ay*. It will perhaps be argued that this is contrary to the opinion of the french academy. I respect the opinion of the french academy, as much as any man can do, when it is consonant to reason; but the opinion of no man, let his rank and talents be ever so eminent, nor of any corporation of men, however pompous their appellation may be, can be put in competition with reason. Now is it reasonable that two sounds so very different should be expressed by one sign; exposing the learner to innumerable mistakes, when by the mere change of a single letter, another sign can so easily be formed, which removes every difficulty? The following words, for instance, are given to a foreigner to pronounce, or even to a native of France, who never heard them pronounced before:

François, danois, suédois, chinois, bourgeois, chamois, foi, paroisse, perçoit, &c.
François, anglois, hollandois, japonois, bougeois, charmois, foible, paroisse, perçoit, &c.

The stranger is told how to pronounce the words in the first line; he pronounces them well; he goes on confidently to the second line, naturally thinking that the same letters ought to produce the same sound: what must his astonishment be, when he is told that *oi* in the words contained in the second line is pronounced quite differently from what it is in the words contained in the first, the first being pronounced *woa*, and the second *ay*; and how much greater will his surprise be still, when he finds that even in the same word such as *voyois, croyois, &c.* (see rule 4) *oi* has two different sounds, the first syllable being pronounced *woa* and the second *ay*. And have you no means, the stranger will say, of removing this insuperable difficulty? Yes, we have, and a very easy one too; you have only to change *o* into *a* in the words which are to be pronounced *ay*, and the whole difficulty will vanish; but the french academy do not approve of it. Oh! never mind the french academy, the stranger will say. Nor do the French, it seems, mind it much, for these great censors of the language have the mortification to see that, in almost every book now printed in France, this diphthong is spelled contrary to their arrogant and unreasonable decision. In vain they will say that *ai* does not express the exact sound that we wish to express; if it removes a great difficulty, if nothing better is offered, if it is the best representative of this sound that we can find, and is a sign which nobody can mistake, we must be satisfied with it, till the french academy deign to favour us with a better.—(*See Dictionnaire Philosophique*, art. A.)

OF CONSONANTS.

General Rules.

The french language admits of *two* modes of pronunciation: one for *poetry* and *oratory*, the other for *conversation*.

In repeating *verses*, and in *oratorical* discourses, the *final consonant* 21
of a word is generally *sounded*, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel*, or *h mute*; as,

D'un pinceau délicat, l'artifice agréable,
Du plus affreux objet, fait un objet aimable.
Des dons extérieurs l'uniformité lasse,
Mais l'esprit a toujours une nouvelle grâce.

The above lines must be read in the following manner;

Dun paineso daylika lartifice agrayable,
Dupluz-affreu-z-obzhay fay-t-un-obzhay-t-aymable.
Day don-z-extayrieur luniformitay lass,
May layspri-t-a toozhoor-z-un noovayl grass.

In *conversation*, the ear alone being consulted, opinions greatly differ. 25
Some are for sounding the final consonant of every word, when the word which follows it begins with a vowel; others, and this seems to be the opinion of the best informed persons, maintain that the final consonant of a word should be sounded on the initial vowel of the next, only when the two words are so connected that the second word is necessary to complete the sense; such as,

Article and noun;

un enfant,	a child,	*u n-anfan.*
cet hiver,	this winter,	*s-t-eevayr.*
à son âge,	at his age,	*à so-n-âzh.*
les artifices,	the artifices,	*lay-z-artifiss.*
des hommes,	of men,	*day-z-om.*

Adjective before the noun;

bon ouvrage,	good work,	*bo-n-oovrazh.*
grand espace,	great space,	*gran-t-ayspass*
petit homme,	little man,	*pti-t-om.* (7)
gros oiseau,	large bird,	*grô-z-owyzo.*
beaux habits,	fine clothes,	*bô-z-abee.*

Pronoun with the verb, and verb with the pronoun;

il est,	he is,	*i-ll-aye.*
est-il?	is he?	*aye-t-il?*
sont-elles?	are they?	*son-t-ell?*
nous avons,	we have,	*noo-z-avon.*
vous en avez,	you have some,	*voo-z-an-avaye*
les ont-ils?	have they got them?	*lay-z on-t-eel?*

Preposition with the noun, pronoun, or verb that follows it;

sans amis,	without friends,	*san-z-amee.*
avec elle,	with her,	*avayk-ell.*
en allant,	in going,	*an-allan.*
chez eux,	to their house,	*shay-z-ugh.*
après avoir,	after having,	*apray-z-avour*

Adverb before the adjective or participle;

bien honnête,	very honest,	*beeyen-onayt*
plus habile,	more clever,	*plu-z-ah-bill.*
très-aimable,	very lovely,	*tray-z-aymable*
fort utile,	very useful,	*for-t-utill.*
trop ignorant,	too ignorant,	*tro-p-inyoran.*

N. B. There are a few other instances in which a final consonant may be sounded on the following vowel, but they can hardly be reduced

(7) We sound the final consonant of an adjective upon a noun, but not the final consonant of a noun upon an adjective; so, though
petit enfant, is pronounced *pti-t anfan.*
enfant aimable could not be pronounced *anfan-t-aymable*, but *anfan aymable.*

to rules, as it chiefly depends on the number of letters of the same sound that follow one another. The surest way for a foreigner is to confine himself to the general rules which apply to nine-tenths of the words the final consonant of which is to be sounded on the following vowel. The rest must be learned from the conversation of well informed persons.*

26 The foregoing instances excepted, the *final consonant* of words, in general, *has no sound* in french. See the *particular rules* for consonants under their respective heads.

---

* As in music, it is the diversity of sounds that produces melody; so it is with languages. The union of the final consonant of some words, to the initial vowel of the word which follows them, being done to disencumber the language of too great a number of monosyllables, and to render it more melodious by a greater variety of sounds; the rule given by some persons, that every word ending with a consonant should be joined to the following word, when it begins with a vowel, is totally erroneous, and produces the very effect which this union is intended to remove. It is true, that in reading verses, the final consonant is generally joined to the following vowel, to preserve the measure of the verse; and, in public speeches, the consonants are also often sounded at the end of words, to give a stronger impulsion to the air, and to be heard at a greater distance; but in familiar reading, and in conversation, this is carefully avoided by all unaffected people.

If any authority be necessary to support what I advance here, I trust that of *l'abbé d'Olivet*, one of the most distinguished members of the french academy, will be sufficient to convince every man of candour, since it implies the opinion of the most enlightened part of that body. This philosophical grammarian, in his treatise on french prosody, (a work which has been, and ever will be the admiration of the learned,) before he speaks of the effect which certain nasal terminations have in repeating verses, remarks, *art.* 3. *parag.* 5

Je commence par dire que cette observation ne regarde point ceux qui écrivent en prose, car la prose souffre les hiatus† *pourvu qu'ils ne soient, ni trop rudes, ni trop fréquents. Ils contribuent même à donner au discours un certain air naturel, et nous voyons en effet que la conversation des honnêtes gens est pleine d'*hiatus *volontaires qui sont tellement autorisés par l'usage, que si l'on parloit autrement, cela seroit d'un pédant, ou d'un provincial. Par exemple, lorsqu'un acteur récite ces vers de la première scène d'Athalie,* Je viens ——célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée, &c. Pensez-vous être saint? *il prononce comme s'il y avoit;* célébré-r-avec vous——pensez-vou-z-être. *Mais dans la simple conversation, l'usage veut qu'on prononce comme s'il y avoit,* célébré avec vous—pensez-vou être, &c. And art. 2, he says——*On le croira si l'on veut; au moins est-il certain qu'au théâtre ce n'est pas chose rare qu'un acteur, et surtout une actrice dont les talents sont admirés fasse adopter un mauvais accent, une prononciation irrégulière, d'où naissent insensiblement des traditions locales qui se perpétuent, si personne n'est attentif à les combattre.* These are the words of a man, for whose opinions the french academy had the greatest deference; a man who, at their request, had made this subject one of his particular studies, and who had consulted upon it, as he himself declares, all the men of taste and learning with whom he was acquainted; and they never were contradicted, but by persons, who, being fond of appearing singular, affect in conversation the emphatic tone of the stage, without considering whether they are speaking prose or verse, (most of the french plays are in verse,) or by those who, looking upon singularity as an accomplishment, mimic their ridiculous affectation.

Dans une nation qui est une par rapport au gouvernement, il ne peut y avoir dans sa manière de parler qu'un usage légitime, celui de la cour et des gens de lettres, à qui elle doit des encouragements; tout autre usage qui s'en écarte dans la prononciation, dans les terminaisons, ou de quelqu'autre façon que ce puisse être, ne fait ni une langue, *ou un* idiôme *à part, ni un* dialecte *de la* langue nationale; *c'est un* patois *abandonné à la* populace *des provinces, et chaque province a le sien.* Girard synon. franç. *art. Langue, Langage, &c*

† By *hiatus* is meant a broken sound.

OF CONSONANTS.

Particular Rules.

B

b is sounded at the end of proper names; as,

job,	job, pronounce	*zhob.*
jacob,	jacob,	*zhakob.*

At the end of common names *b* is found only in

plomb,	lead, pron.	*plon.*
radoub,	refitting,	*radoob.*

C

This letter has two sounds common to both languages.

1. That of *k* as in *case*,	pronounced	*kase.*
2. That of *s* as in *cease*,		*sease.*

c before *a*, *o*, *u*, has the sound of *k*.

ca, *ka*,	*car*,	for,	*kar.*
co, *ko*,	*cour*,	yard,	*koor.*
cu, *ku*,	*culotte*,	breeches,	*kulot.* (*u*, see note 2.)

c before *e*, *i*, or before *a*, *o*, *u*, with a cedilla, this mark (¸) under it, has the sound of *s*; as,

ça, *sa*,	*façade*,	front,	*fasad.*
ce, *se*,	*céder*,	to yield,	*sayday*,
ci, *si*,	*ceci*,	this,	*scee.* (*i*, see note 4.)
ço, *so*,	*garçon*,	boy,	*garson*,
çu, *su*,	*reçu*,	received,	*rsu.* (*u*, see note 2.)

c final is generally sounded, and has the sound of *k*; as,

avec,	with,	*avayk.*
public,	public,	*publeek.* (*u*, see note 2.)

except the following words, in which *c* final has no sound;

broc, *porc*, *clerc*, *un marc*, *blanc*, *franc*, *jonc*, *tronc*, *almanac*, *estomac*, *tabac.*
a jug, pork, clerk, 8 ounces, white, frank, rush, trunk, almanack, stomach, tobacco
pron. *bro*, *por*, *clayr*, *mar*, *blan*, *fran*,* *zhon*, *tron*, *almana*, *aystoma*, *taba.*

cc, before *e*, *i*; the first *c* has the sound of *k*, the second that of *s*; as,

succès,	success,	*suksaye.*
accident,	accident,	*akseedan.*

Before *a*, *o*, *u*; *cc* have only one sound, that of *k*; as,

accabler,	to crush,	*akablay.*
accomplir,	to accomplish,	*akonpleer.*
accuser,	to accuse,	*akusay.* (*u*, see note 2.)

ch, generally pronounced *sh*; as,

chirurgien,	surgeon,	*sheeruzheyen.*
architecte,	architect,	*arsheetayct.*

ch has the sound of *k* in the following words;

christ,	*chrétien*,	*choriste*,	*archange*,	*orchestre*,	*chronique*,	*chronologie.*
christ,	christian,	chorister,	archangel,	orchestre,	chronicle,	chronology.
pron. *krist*,	*krayteeyen*,	*koreest*,	*arkanzh*,	*orkaystr*,	*kroneek*,	*kronolozhee.*

D

d final has no sound; as,

froid,	cold,	*frwoy.*
chaud,	hot,	*show.*

except at the end of a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, then *d* has the sound of *t*; as,

apprend-il?	does he learn?	*apran-t-eel?*
quand il vient.	when he comes,	*kan-t-eel veeyen.*

d, or even *dd*, in the body of a word, is sounded: as,

adjectif,	adjective,	*adjecteef.*
addition,	addition,	*addeeseeon.*

---

* *c*, in the adjectives *blanc* and *franc*, followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, has the sound of *k*; as, *Du blanc au noir*, pronounce *du blan-k-o-noir*. *Franc étourdi*, pron. *fran k-aytoordee.* (*i*, see note 4.)

OF CONSONANTS

F

f final is generally sounded; as,

	chef,	chief,	*shayf.*
	nerf,	sinew,	*nayrf.*
	bœuf,	ox,	*bugf.*
	œuf,	egg,	*ugf.*
except in	*clef,*	key,	*clay.*
	bœufs,	oxen,	*bûgh.*
	œufs,	eggs,	*ûgh.*

and if pronounced at *one breath* with a word beginning with a *consonant*,

chef-d'œuvre,	master-piece,	*shaydeugvre.*
nerf de bœuf,	cow-skin, a rod,	*nayr d bugf.*
bœuf salé,	salt beef,	*bugh salay.*
œuf frais,	new egg,	*ugh fraye.*

f is sounded in *neuf* at the end of a sentence; as,

j'en ai neuf,	I have got nine,	*zhan-ay nugf.* (*eu*, s. rule 12.)
un habit neuf,	a new suit,	*un-abee nugf.*

joined to a noun beginning with a consonant, *f* has no sound; as,

neuf livres,	nine livres,	*nugh leevr.* (*eu*, see rule 12.)
dix-neuf sous,	nineteen pence,	*dees nugh soo.*

joined to a noun beginning with a vowel, *f* has the sound of *v*; as,

neuf écus.	nine crowns,	*nugh-v-aykû.* (*u*, see n. 2.)
vingt-neuf hommes,	twenty-nine men,	*vyngt nugf-v-om.*

G

g final has no sound; as,

	long,	long,	*lon.* (*on*, see rule 21.)
	sang,	blood,	*san,* } (*an*, see rule 16.)
	rang,	rank,	*ran,* }
except in	*long accès,*	long fit,	*long-aksey.*
	sang et eau,	blood and water,	*sank-ay o.*
	de rang en rang,	from rank to rank,	*drank-an ran.*

g before *e*, *i*, has the soft sound of *zh*, or *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*.

ge, zhay,	*général,*	general,	*zhaynayral.*
gi, zhee,	*gigot,*	leg of mutton,	*zhiego.*

g before *a*, *o*, *u*, has the hard sound of *g* in *god*; as,

ga, ga,	*garçon,*	boy,	*garson.* (*on*, see rule 21.)
go, go,	*gorge,*	throat,	*gorzh.*
gu, gu,	*guérir,*	to cure,	*gayreer.*

N. B. *gu* form only *one sound*, that of *g hard*; as,

guérir,	to cure,	*gayreer.*
guerre,	war,	*gayrr.*
guide,	guide,	*gheed.*

except the following words, in which *gu* have each a *distinct sound*;

aiguille,	*aiguillon,*	*aiguiser,*	*arguer,*	*ciguë,*	*aiguë,*	*ambiguë,*	*ambiguité.*
needle,	sting,	to whet,	to argue,	hemlock,	sharp,	ambiguous,	ambiguity.

pron. *aygueell, aygueellon, aygueesay, arguay, seegû, aygû, anbeegû, ambeegueetay*

gna, sound *gnya*,
gné, *gnyé*,
gni, *gnyi*,
gno, *gnyo*,
} observing to sound the *n* as much as possible through the nose; as,

campagnard,	countryman,	*kanpagnyar.*
accompagné,	accompanied,	*akonpagnay.*
compagnie,	company,	*konpagnee.*
ignorant	ignorant,	*eegnyoran.*

H

There are *two* sorts of *h* both in french and in english; the one *aspirate*, which requires an effort of the breath; as,

héros,	hero,	*hayrow.*
hasard,	hazard.	*hazar.*

the other *mute*, which has no sound, and serves only to shew the etymology of the word; as,

honneur,	honour,	*onhur.* (*eu*, see rule 12.)
histoire,	history,	*eestwoyr.*

N. B. These two sorts of *h* are often embarrassing to the learner; they are marked in dictionaries, but one should always bear some characteristic mark in writing. The *h mute* that occurs through the subjoined exercises will be preceded by an apostrophe.

ch, pronounced *sh*; as,

chat,	cat,	*sha.* (see c.)
chose,	thing,	*shoz.*

ph, pronounced *f*; as,

phrase,	sentence,	*fraz.*
philosophe,	philosopher,	*feelosof.*

rh, sounded *r*; as,

rhétorique,	rhetoric,	*raytoreeck.*
rhume,	cold,	*rhugm.* (*u*, see note 2.)

th, sounded *t*; as,

thomas,	thomas,	*tomaw.*
méthode,	method,	*maytod.*

J

j, pronounced *zh*, or like *s* in *pleasure*, *leisure*, or *z* in *azure*; as,

jardin,	garden,	*zhardine.* (*in*, see rule 19.)
jour.	day,	*zhoor.*

K

k, the same sound in french as in english; as,

kan,	kan,	*kan.* (*an*, see rule 16.)
stockholm,	stockholm,	*stokolm.*

L

l final is generally sounded; as,

sel,	salt,	*sayl.*
fil,	thread,	*feel.* (*i*, see note 4.)
cheval,	horse,	*shval.*

except *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fusil*, *fenil*, *fils*, *gril*, *outil*, *percil*, *sourcil*, *soûl*.
barrel, kennel, ticking, gun, hayloft, son, gridiron, tool, parsley, eyebrow, drunk.
pron. *baree*, *shnee*, *kootee*, *fusee*, *fnee*, *fee*, *gree*, *ootee*, *persee*, *soorsee*, *soo*.

l. In the pronouns *il*, *ils*, some sound the *l* in all instances; others sound it only when it is followed by a *vowel*; opinions being divided, *l* in *il*, *ils*, followed by a *consonant*, may either be pronounced or dropt; as,

il a,	he has,	*eel-a.*
il dit,	he says,	*eel dee*, or *ee dee.* (*i*, s. n. 4.)
ils ont,	they have,	*eel-z-on*, or *ee-z-on.*
ils disent,	they say,	*eel deez*, or *ee deez.*

In conversation *l* is not sounded in

quelque,	some,	*kayk.*
quelqu'un,	somebody,	*kaykun.*

ll, in general are both sounded the same as in english; as,

allégorie,	allegory,	*al-laygoree.*
illustre,	illustrious,	*il-lustr.* (*u*, see note 2.)

But *ll* preceded by *i* in the middle, and at the end of words, must

be sounded like *ill* in the word *million;* as,

	meilleur,	better,	*meylhur.*
	bouteille	bottle,	*booteyll.*
	famille,	family,	*fameell.*
	bataille,	battle,	*batauill.*
also *il* in	*avril,*	april,	*avreell.*
	péril,	peril,	*payreell.*
	babil,	prattling,	*babeel.*
	travail,	labour,	*travauill.* } and all words ending in *ail.*
	soleil,	sun,	*soleyll.*
	gentil homme,	nobleman,	*zhanteellom.*

except the following words, in which one *l* only is sounded;

argille,	*distille,*	*imbécille,*	*mille,*	*ville,*	*pupille,*	*tranquille.*
clay,	distil,	imbecile,	thousand,	town,	pupil,	quiet
pron. *arzheel,*	*deesteel,*	*inebayceel,*	*meel,*	*veel,*	*pupeel,*	*trankeel.*

M

m, at the end of a word, and in the first syllable of words beginning with *com*, has only the half sound of *n*. *See note* 5.

faim,	hunger,	*fine.* (*in*, see rule 19.)
nom,	name,	*non.* (*on*, see rule 21.)
compliment,	compliment,	*compleeman.* (*an*, rule 16.)

m has no sound in

damner,	to damn,	*dawnay;* and derivatives.
solemnel,	solemn,	*solanel.*
automne,	autumn,	*ôton.*

but *m* has a full sound in

automnal,	autumnal,	*ôtomnal.*
amnistie,	amnesty,	*amneestee.*
calomnie,	slander,	*calomnee.*
hymne,	hymn,	*heemn.*
indemniser,	to indemnify,	*inedamneesay.*
indemnité,	indemnification,	*inedamneetay.*
agamemnon,	agamemnon,	*agamemnon.*
somnambule,	sleep-walker,	*somnanbul.* (see note 2.)

mm, only one sound; as,

homme,	man,	*om.*
femme,	woman,	*fam.*

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *imm;* as,

immortel,	immortal,	*im-mortayl.*
immense,	immense,	*im-manse.*

N

What has been said of *m* may be applied to *n*.

n, at the end of a word, or in the first syllable of words beginning with *con*, has only a half sound. *See note* 5.

pain,	bread,	*pine.* } (*in*, s. rule 19.)
vin,	wine,	*vine.* } (*in*, s. rule 19.)
condition,	condition,	*oondeeseeon.* (*on*, rule 21.)

nn, only one sounded.

année,	year,	*anaye.*
connaître,	to know,	*conaytr.*

except the following words, in which *nn* are both sounded;

annotation,	annotation,	*an-notasseon.*
annuel,	annual,	*an-nuel;* and derivatives.
annuler,	to annul,	*an-nulay*
inné,	innate,	*in-nay.*
innover,	to innovate,	*in-novay;* and derivatives.

OF CONSONANTS.

P

p final is not sounded, even when it is followed by a vowel; as

	un loup,	a wolf,	*un loo.* (*u*, see note 2.)
	ce drap est bon,	this cloth is good,	*sdra aye bon.*
except in	*cap,*	cap,	*cap.*
	cep,	stock of a vine,	*sayp.*

p in *trop* and *beaucoup*, joined to a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded; as,

trop entêté,	too obstinate,	*tro-p-antaytay.*
beaucoup étudié,	much studied,	*bokoo-p-aytudeeay.*

followed by a word beginning with a consonant, *p* has no sound; as

trop stupide,	too stupid,	*tro stupeed.* (*u*, see n. 2.)
beaucoup d'affaires,	much business,	*bokoo daffayr.*

p is sounded in

	baptismal,	*sceptique,*	september,	*septentrion,*	*accepter,*	*excepter.*
	baptismal,	sceptick,	*septembre,*	north,	to accept,	to except.
pron.	*bapteesmal,*	*saypteeck,*	*sayptanbr,*	*sayptantreeon,*	*aksayptay,*	*eksayptay.*

but *p* is not sounded in

	baptême,	*compte,*	*exempt,*	*prompt,*	*manuscript,*	*sept,*	*temps.*
	baptism,	account,	exempt,	quick,	manuscript,	seven,	time.
pron.	*bataym,*	*cont,*	*egzan,*	*pron,*	*manuscree,*	*sayt,*	*tan.*

pp, one only sounded;

apparence,	appearance,	*aparanss.*
appartenir,	to belong,	*apartneer.*

ph, sounded *f*; as,

sphère,	sphere,	*sfayr.*
philosophie,	philosophy,	*feelosofee.*

Q

q final is found only in *coq* and *cinq*;

q is sounded, and has the sound of *k* in

coq,	cock,	*cok.*
coq à l'âne,	idle tale,	*cok a lawn.*

but it is not sounded in

coq d'inde,	turkey-cock,	*co dynd.* (*in*, see rule 19.)

q in *cinq* substantive, is sounded *k*; as,

un cinq de pique,	a five of spades,	*un synk dpeeck.*
à cinq pour cent,	at five per cent,	*a synk poor san.*
trois et deux font cinq,	three and two are five,	*troa-z-ay dugh fon synk.*

in *cinq*, prefixed to a noun, and pronounced at the *same breath* with it, *q* is sounded if the noun begins with *a vowel* or *h mute*; as,

cinq hommes,	five men,	*synk om.* (*in*, s. rule 19.)
vingt-cinq écus,	twenty-five crowns,	*vyngt synk aykû.*

if the noun to which *cinq* is prefixed, begins with a *consonant*, *q* is not sounded; as,

cinq garçons,	five boys,	*sinc karson.*	(*in*, s. rule 19.)
cinq filles,	five girls,	*sine feell.*	

qu has only one sound, that of *k*; as,

qui,	who,	*kee.* (*i*, see note 4.)
quatre,	four,	*kutr.*
qualité,	quality,	*kaleetay.*
marquis,	marquis,	*markee.*

except the following words, in which *qu* are pronounced *kw*: as in english:

	aquatique,	*équateur,*	*quadrature,*	*quadruple,*	*quadrupède,*	*quadragenaire,*	*quarto.*
	aquatic,	equator,	quadrature,	quadruple,	quadruped,	forty years old,	quarto
pron.	*akwateek,*	*aykwater,*	*kwadratur,*	*kwadruple,*	*kwadrupayd,*	*kwadrazhaynayr,*	*kwarto.*

OF CONSONANTS.

R

r is sounded at the end of *all words;* as,

car,	for, because,	*kar.*
pour,	for,	*poor.*
parvenir,	to arrive,	*parvneer.*

except the words ending in *er* or *ier*, of more than one syllable, in which the *r* has no sound, but it gives to *e* the sound of *é short*, i. e. *ay;* as

aimer,	to love,	*aymay.*
écolier,	scholar,	*aykoleeay.*
and in *monsieur,*	sir,	*moseeugh.*

r is not sounded in *notre, votre, quatre,* joined to a noun beginning with a consonant; as,

notre maison,	our house,	*not mayzon.* (*on*, rule 21.)
votre chapeau,	your hat,	*vot shapo.*
quatre livres,	four livres,	*kat leevr.*

but *r* is sounded when *notre, votre, quatre,* are joined to a noun beginning with a vowel; as,

notre ami,	our friend,	*notr-amee.*
votre honneur,	your honour,	*votr-onhur.* (*eu*, see rule 12.)
quatre écus,	four crowns,	*katr-aykû.*
and in *notre père,*	our father,	*notr-payr*, lord's prayer.
notre dame,	our lady,	*notr-dam*, virgin mary.

r is always sounded in

le nôtre,	ours,	*lnoutr.*
le vôtre,	yours,	*lvoutr.*

rr, only one is sounded; as,

arriver,	to arrive,	*areevay.*
arroser,	to water,	*arozay.*

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *irr;* as,

irrégulier,	irregular,	*ir-rayguleeay.*
irréprochable,	irreproachable,	*ir-rayproshabl.*

S

This letter has *two* sounds common to both languages, the first *hard* or *aspirate*, like *c soft;* as,

somme,	sum,	*sum.*

the other *soft* or *liquid;* like *z;* as,

rose,	rose,	*roze.*

s, at the beginning of a word, or in the body of a word, when it is preceded or followed by a *consonant*, is always pronounced *hard* or *aspirate*, as,

salut,	safety,	*salu.* (*u*, see note 2.)
souper,	supper,	*soopay.*
personne,	nobody,	*payrson.*

s, between *two vowels* in the *body* of a word, or at the *end* of a word, which is to be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with *a vowel*, has the sound of *z;* as,

raison,	reason,	*rayzon.* (*on*, see rule 21.)
plaisir,	pleasure,	*playzeer.*
trois heures,	three hours,	*troa-z-hur.*
mes enfants,	my children,	*may-z-anfan.* (*an*, rule 16.)

in other instances, *s final* has no sound; but renders the syllable *long;*

trouvas-tu?	didst thou find?	*troovaw tu?* (*u*, see n. 2.)
tes amis,	thy friends,	*taye-z-amee.*
revenus,	returned,	*rughvnû.* (see note 2.)

except at the end of *greek* and *latin* names which have been adopted

OF CONSONANTS.

in the french language; as,

	pûris,	paris, *the trojan,*	*pawreess.*
	vènus,	venus,	*vaynus.*
	mars,	mars,	*mars.*
also in	*as,*	ace,	*ass.*
	vis,	screw,	*veess.*
	lis,	lily,	*leess.*
	aloës,	aloes,	*aloays.*
	mars,	march,	*marce.*
but not in	*fleur de lis,*	flower de luce,	*fluhr dlee.*

ss have only one sound, but always *aspirate;* as,

assurer,	to assure,	*asuray.* (*u*, see note 2.)
ressentir,	to resent,	*rsanteer*

sc before *e*, *i*, have only one sound, that of *s aspirate;* as,

sceptique,	sceptick,	*saypteeck.*
science,	science,	*seeanss.*

sc before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*, have the sound of *sk;* as,

scandale,	scandal,	*skandal.*
gascon,	gascon,	*gaskon.*
scorbut,	scurvy,	*skorbu.* (*u*, see note 2.)
sculpteur,	sculptor,	*skulptur.*
esclave,	slave,	*aysklav.*
scrupule,	scruple,	*skrupul.* (*u*, see note 2.)

T

t has *two* sounds, both found in *satiety*, pronounced *saciety.*

t at the beginning of words has the same sound in french as in english,

table,	table,	*tabl.*
timidité,	timidity,	*teemeedeetay.*

in the body of a word *t* followed by *i*, has generally the sound of *c;*

patience,	patience,	*pawceeanss.*
action,	action,	*akceeon.*

except the following words, in which *t* retains its own sound;

bastion,	*question,*	*partie,*	*matière,*	*étions,*	*étiez,*	*sortions,*	*sortiez,*	*entier.*
bastion,	question,	part,	matter,	were,	were,	went out,	went out,	entire
pron. *basteeon,*	*kaysteeon,*	*partee,*	*mateeayr,*	*ayteeon,*	*ayteeaye,*	*sorteeon,*	*sorteeaye,*	*anteeay*

entièrement,	*chrétien,*	*chrétienté,*	*soutien,*	*entretien,*	*il retient.*
entirely,	christian,	christendom,	support,	maintenance,	he retains.
pron. *anteeayrman,*	*crayteeyen,*	*krayteeantay,*	*sooteeyen,*	*antrughteeyen,*	*il rughteeyen.*

and the words *ending* in *tié*, and *tier;* as,

amitié,	friendship,	*ameeteeay.*
châtier,	to chastise,	*shawteeay.*

t final is not sounded; as,

	tout,	all,	*too.*
	il est,	it is,	*eel aye.*
	fait,	done,	*fay.*
except in	*est, ouest,*	east, west,	*ayst, west.*
	lest, dot	ballast, dower,	*luyst, dot.*
	brut, correct,	rough, correct,	*brut, corrayct.*
	un fat, un sot,	a fop, a fool,	*un fat, un sot.*
	pact, exact,	pact, exact,	*pact, egzact.*

and when it ends a word which must be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with *a vowel;* as,

	est-elle?	is she?	*aye-t-ell?*
	tout à fait,	quite,	*too-t-afay.* (see gen. rule.)
but never in	*et,*	and, *(conjunction)*	*ay.*

OF CONSONANTS.

t is sounded in *sept, huit,* substantives; as.

un sept,	a seven,	*un sayt.* (*u*, see note 2.)
un huit,	an eight,	*un hueet.*

in *sept, huit, vingt, cent,* joined to a noun, *t* is sounded when the noun which follows it begins with *a vowel;* as,

sept enfants,	seven children,	*sayt-anfan:*
huit amis,	eight friends,	*hueet-amee.* (see gen. rule.)

if the noun begins with *a consonant, t* has no sound; as,

sept navires,	seven ships,	*say nauveer.*
cent chevaux,	a hundred horses,	*san shvô.*

tt, only one sounded; as,

attirer,	to attract,	*ateeray.*
frotter,	to rub,	*frotay.*

V

v has the same sound in french as in english; as,

vanité,	vanity,	*vaneetay.*
vivacité,	vivacity,	*veevaceetay*

X

This letter has *three* sounds, viz. *gz, ks,* and *z.*

In the first syllable of a word *x* followed by a *vowel,* is sounded *gz;* as,

exemple,	example,	*egzanple.*
exister,	to exist,	*egzeestay.*

followed by a *consonant,* it is sounded *ks;* as,

excès,	excess,	*ayksaye.*
exposer,	to expose,	*aykspose.*

x is also sounded *ks* in

sex, axe,	sex, axle,	*sayks, aks.*
fluxion,	fluxion,	*flukseeon.* (*u*, see note 2.)
axiome,	axiom,	*akseeom.*
styx, phœnix,	styx, phœnix,	*steeks, fayneeks.*
index, pollux,	index, pollux,	*inedeks, polluks.*
alexandre,	alexander,	*alayksandr.*

x has the sound of *s aspirate* in

six, dix,	six, ten,	*sees, dees.*
dix-sept,	seventeen,	*deessayt.*
soixante,	sixty,	*soassant.*

x final generally has no sound; it only renders the syllable *long;* as,

beaux,	fine,	*bô.*
lieux,	places,	*leeugh.*

except when it ends a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel,* then it is sounded *z;* as,

six amis,	six friends,	*see-z-amee.*
beaux yeux,	fine eyes,	*bô-z-yeugh.* (general rule.)

and when it is followed by *ième,* or *ièmement;* as,

deuxième,	second,	*dughziem.*
sixièmement,	sixthly,	*seezeemman.*

Z

z has the same sound in french as in english; as.

zèle,	zeal,	*zayl.*

z final has no sound; but renders the syllable *long.*

vous avez,	you have,	*voo-z-avaye.*
vous parlez,	you speak,	*voo parlaye.*

except in *chez,* at one's house, followed by a *vowel;* as,

chez elle,	at her house,	*shay-z-ell.*

OR

PRONUNCIATION OF SYLLABLES.

By PROSODY is meant the manner of pronouncing each syllable regularly, *i. e.* according to what each syllable taken separately requires.

It is certain that some diversity must be observed in the pronunciation of syllables, otherwise the language would be perfect monotony; there are then divers inflexions of the voice, some which raise the tone, some which lower it, and this is what grammarians call *prosodical accent.**

GENERAL RULES.

I. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensée*, thought; *armée*, army; *je lie*, I tie; *je me fie*, I trust myself; *joie*, joy; *j'envoie*, I send; *je loue*, I praise; *il joue*, he plays; *je nue*, I shadow; *la rue*, the street; *de la morue*, cod-fish, *&c.*

But if, in these words, the *e* mute were changed into a masculine *é*, then the penultima would become short; as *lier*, to tie; *louer*, to praise; *nuer*, to shadow.

II. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel, which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as *créé*, created; *féal*, trusty; *action*, action; *haïr*, to hate; *doué*, endowed; *tuer*, to kill.

III. Every syllable ending with any consonant but *s*, *x*, or *z*, is short; as, *sac*, sack; *lac*, lake; *sel*, salt; *éventail*, fan; *faim*, hunger; *parfum*, perfume; *sein*, bosom; *soin*, care; *garçon*, boy; *cap*, cape; *nectar*, nectar; *pot*, pot; *sort*, fate, *&c.*

IV. Every syllable ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, is long; *des sacs*, sacks; *des sels*, salts; *des pots*, pots; *mon fils*, my son; *la paix*, peace; *la voix*, the voice; *le nez*, the nose.

V. Between two vowels, the last of which is mute, the letter *s* or *x* lengthens the penultima; as, *extase*, extasy; *diocèse*, diocese; *il pèse*, he weighs; *bêtise*, foolishness; *franchise*, candour; *rose*, rose; *épouse*, spouse; *ruse*, cunning; *reclûse*, recluse; *aise*, glad; *thèse*, thesis; *vase*, vessel.

And it then generally happens, that the antepenultima becomes short; as *il s'extasie*, he falls into extasy; *pesée*, weighing; *épousée*, married, *&c.* for the french prosody requires that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

VI. An *s* or an *x* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *jaspe*, jasper; *masque*, mask; *astre*, star; *burlesque*, burlesque; *funeste*, fatal; *piste*, track; *risque*, risk; *poste*, post; *brusque*, abrupt; *juste*, just; *barbe*, beard; *barque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm.

But when there are two *rr*, if the two together form only an indivisible sound, the syllable is always long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *barre*, bar; *bisarre*, whimsical; *tonnerre*, thunder; *éclorre*, to be hatching, *&c.*

VII. When the nasal vowels AM, AN, EM, EN, IM, IN, AIM, AIN, EIN, OM, ON, UM, UN, are followed by a consonant, which is neither *m* nor *n*, and which begins another syllable, they are long; as, *ainsi*, thus; *jambe*, leg; *jambon*, ham; *crainte*, fear; *trembler*, to tremble; *peindre*, to paint; *joindre*, to join; *tomber*, to fall; *humble*, humble, *&c.*

If *m* or *n* be doubled, it renders the syllable short to which the first of the doubled consonant belongs; as, *homme*, man; *femme*, woman; *épigramme*, epigram; *qu'il prenne*, let him take; *consonne*, consonant; *personne*, person, nobody.

PARTICULAR RULES.

A

A, the first letter of the alphabet, is long; as, *un petit ā*, a little *a*; *il ne sait ni ā ni b*, he knows neither *a* nor *b*.

À, the preposition, is short; as, *je suis à Paris*, I am at Paris; *j'écris à Rome*, I write to Rome; as is also *a* in the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, to have; *il à de beaux livres*, he has fine books; *il à été*, he has been; *il à parlé*, he has spoken.

At the beginning of a word *a* is long, in *ācre*, sour; *āge*, age; *āme*, soul; *āne*, ass; *āpre*, harsh; *ārrhes*, earnest money; *ās*, ace, *&c.*

---

* This mark (¯) is intended to show that the syllable is *long*; this other (˘) that it is *short*; and the doubtful syllables are marked with a *grave* accent, thus (ˋ).

OF SYLLABLES.

These instances excepted, *a* is short, whether it makes a syllable of itself; as in *ăpôtre*, apostle; or is followed by a double consonant, as in *ăpprendre*, to learn; or by two consonants which are different, as in *ăltéré*, altered; *ărgument*, argument.

At the end of a word *a* is very short in the preterite and future tenses of verbs; as, *il aimă*, he loved; *il chantă*, he sung; *il aimerà*, he will love; *il chanterà*, he will sing. In the articles *lă*, the; *mă*, my; *tă*, thy; *să*, his. In the adverbs *çà*, here; *là*, there; *déjà*, already. A little more stress is laid upon the *a*, in substantives borrowed from foreign languages; as, *sofă*, sofa; *duplicată*, duplicate, *&c.*

ABE, always short; as, *arăbe*, arabian; except *astrolăbe*, astrolabe; *crăbe*, crab.

ABLE, short in all adjectives; as, *aimăble*, amiable; *capăble*, capable, *&c.* long in most substantives; as, *căble*, cable; *fable*, fable; *săble*, sand; and in these verbs, *on m'accăble*, I am overwhelmed; *je m'ensăble*, I stick in the sand; *il hăble*, he brags.

ABRE, always long; as, *săbre*, sabre; *il se căbre*, he rears; also in the masculine termination; *se căbrer*, to rear; *delăbré*, in tatters.

AC, always short; as *săc*, sack; *lăc*, lake; *trictrăc*, back-gammon. See III. Gen. Rul.

ACE, long, in *grăce*, favor; *espăce*, space; *lăcer*, to lace; *délăcer*, to unlace.

These words excepted; *ace* is short; as, *glăce*, ice, looking-glass; *préfăce*, preface.

ACHE, long, in *lăche*, coward; *tăche*, task; *relăche*, relaxation; *je măche*, I chew.† As also in other masculine terminations *măcher*, to chew; *relăcher*, to relax, *&c.*

In all other instances ACHE is short; as, *tăche*, a spot; *moustăche*, whisker; *văche*, cow; *il se căche*, he conceals himself; *il arrăche*, he pulls out, *&c.*

ACLE, long, in *il răcle*, he scrapes; *il débăcle*, the ice is breaking; these two words excepted, ACLE, is doubtful; as, *oràcle*, oracle; *miràçle*, miracle; *obstàcle*, obstacle.

ACRE, long, in *ăcre*, tart; but short in all other words; as, *diăcre*, deacon; *fiăcre*, hackney-coach; *ăcre*, an acre; *săcre du roi*, the king's coronation.

ADE, always short, as, *sérénăde*, serenade; *cascăde*, cascade; *făde*, tasteless; *il persuăde*, he persuades; *il s'évăde*, he makes his escape.

ADRE, short in *lădre*, leprous: but long in *cădre*, frame; *escădre*, squadron; even when the word ends with *e* mascul. as, *mădré*, speckled; *encădrer*, to frame.

AFE, APHE, always short; as, *carăfe*, decanter; *épităphe*, epitaph; *agrăfe*, clasp.

AFRE, AFFRE, long, in *ăffre*, fright; *băfre*, gluttony; short in all other instances; as, *balăfre*, gash; *săfre*, ravenous.

AFLE, long; as, *răfle*, a royal pair at dice; *j'éräfle*, I scratch; and the same quantity is preserved when *e* final is short; as, *räfler*, to sweep away; *éräfler*, to scratch slightly.

AGE, long in the word *âge*, age; but so short in all the rest that we dwell a little upon the penultima; *partăge*, division; *avantăge*, advantage, *&c.*

AGNE, always short, except in the verb *gâgner*, to gain; *je gâgne*, I gain.

AGUE, always short, *băgue*, ring; *dăgue*, dagger; *văgue*, wave, vague.

AI, a false diphthong, which produces only a simple sound. When it has the sound of *è* long, it is doubtful; as, *vrài*, true; *essài*, essay; but it is short when the sound approaches to that of *é* short; as *j'ăi*, I have; *je chantăi*, I sang.

AIE, always long; as, *hâie*, hedge; *plâie*, wound; *vrâie*, true. See I. Gen. Rule.

AYE, short; as, *vous ăyez*, you may have; *vous păyez*, you pay; *vous bégăyez*, you stammer. See II. General Rule.

The reason of this difference between AIE and AYE is, that AIE makes only one syllable, and that Y, which is equivalent to *ii*, dividing the word into two syllables, these words are pronounced as if they were spelt *ai-iez*, *pai-iez*, *bégai-iez*, the first syllable of which is pronounced like *é* short. (See *ai*, compound vowel.)

AIGNE, always short; as, *chatăigne*, chestnut; *je dăigne*, I deign; *il se băigne*, he is bathing; *on le săigne*, they are bleeding him.

AIGRE, always short; as, *ăigre*, tart; *măigre*, lean; *vinăigre*, vinegar, *&c.*

AIL. General Rule. When a word ends with *l* liquid, the syllable is short; as, *éventăil*, fan; *gouvernăil*, rudder; the *a* being the only vowel which is heard in the penultima, and the *i* serving only to soften the sound of the following consonant. This is also the case in the three following paragraphs.

---

† Formerly written *lasche*, *tasche*, with a mute *s*, to show that they are long. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, and it should not be omitted over these words, as the pronunciation of a word sometimes alters its meaning.

OF SYLLABLES.

AILLE, short in *medăille,* medal; and in the following verbs; *je détăille,* I retail; *j'émăille,* I enamel; *je travăille,* I work; but it is long in all other words; as, *je rāille,* I jeer; *il bāille,* he yawns; *il brāille,* he brawls; *il rimāille,* he makes poor verses.

AILLET, AILLIR, short; as, *măillet,* mallet; *păillet,* pale coloured; *jăillir,* to spout; *assăillir,* to assault.

AILLON, short in *médăillon,* medallion; *batăillon,* battalion; *nous émăillons,* we enamel; *détăillons,* let us detail; *travăillons,* let us work. These words excepted, AILLON is long; as, *hāillon,* tattered clothes; *bāillon,* gag; *nous tāillons,* we cut, *&c.*

AIM, AIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AIME. This termination is found only in the verb *ăimer,* to love; which is short as, *j'ăime,* I love; *tu ăimes,* thou lovest, *&c.*

AINE, long, in *hāine,* hatred; *chāîne,* chain; *gāîne,* sheath; *je trāine,* I draw, and their derivatives. These instances excepted, AINE is short; as, *capităine,* captain; *fontăine,* fountain; *semăine,* week; *lăine,* wool.

AIR, AIRE. The first is doubtful in the singular; as, *l'air,* the air; *chair,* flesh; *éclair,* lightning, *&c.* The second is long; as, *une pāire,* a pair; *la chāire,* the pulpit.

AIS, AIX, AISE, AISSE, all long; as, *palāis,* palace; *j'avāis,* I had; *j'étāis,* I was; *un françāis,* a frenchman; *pāix,* peace; *fournāise,* furnace; *cāisse,* chest.

AIT, AITE, both short; as, *lăit,* milk; *attrăit,* charm; *retrăite,* retreat, *&c.* except *il plāit,* he pleases; *il nāit,* it springs; *il repāit,* he feeds; *le fāîte,* the summit.

AITRE, always long; *trāître,* traitor; *māître,* master; and other terminations of the same sound, though spelt differently; as, *paroître,* or *paraître,* to appear, *&c.*

ALE, ALLE, always short; *cigăle,* cicada; *scandăle,* scandal; *une măle,* a trunk; *une băle,* a ball; except *hāle,* sunburning; *pāle,* pale; *un māle,* a male; *un rāle,* a rail; and the derivatives of these words, though the final syllable be masculine; as, *hālé,* parched by the sun; *rāler,* to rattle; *pālir,* to grow pale; *pāleur,* paleness.

AM, AN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AME, always short; *dăme,* lady; *răme,* oar, ream, *&c.* except in the following words; *āme,* soul; *infāme,* infamous; *blāme,* blame; *il se pāme,* he swoons; *un brāme,* a bramin; and in all the preterite tenses of verbs; as, *nous aimāmes,* we loved; *nous chantāmes,* we sang; *nous parlāmes,* we spoke; *nous jouāmes,* we played, *&c.*

ANE, ANNE, always short; as, *cabăne,* cottage; *orgăne,* organ, *&c.* except *āne,* ass; *crāne,* skull; *les mānes,* the manes; *de la mānne,* manna; *une mānne,* a basket.

ANT. See III. General Rule. N. B. In the word *comptant* there is a difference; when a participle, it is long; as, *je me suis trompé en comptānt l'argent,* I made a mistake in counting the money; and it is short when used as a substantive or adverb; as, *il a du comptănt,* he has ready money; *payer comptănt,* to pay in ready money.

AP, always short; as, *căp,* cape. See III. General Rule.

APE, APPE, always short; *păpe,* pope; *trăpe,* trap; *grăpe,* a bunch; *on frăppe,* somebody knocks; except *rāpe,* a rasp; and *rāper,* to rasp, in which it is long.

APRE; *cāpre,* caper; *āpre,* tart; the only two words of this termination, are long.

AQUE, always short, except *pāques,* easter; and *Jācques,* James.

AR, always short; as, *căr,* for; *nectăr,* nectar. See III. General Rule.

ARBE. General Rule. Every syllable which finishes with *r,* and is followed by another syllable beginning with a consonant, is short; as, *bărbe,* beard; *bărque,* bark; *bĕrceau,* cradle; *infĭrme,* infirm; *ŏrdre,* order, *&c.*

ARE, long; as, *barbāre,* barbarous; *je prépāre,* I prepare; but when the last syllable is not mute, ARE is short; as, *égăré,* strayed; *prépărant,* preparing; *barbărie,* barbary.

ARRE. General Rule. Whatever vowel precedes two *rr,* if the two together form only one sound, the syllable is long; as, *ărrêt,* arrest; *bārre,* bar; *tonnĕrre,* thunder, *&c.*

ARI, ARIE, always short; as, *mări,* husband; *pări,* wager; *Mărie,* Mary; *barbărie,* barbary; except, *hourvāri,* uproar; *mārri,* sorry; *équārri,* squared.

AS, commonly long, as there are few words terminated in this manner in which the *a* is not sounded very open, whether the *s* be pronounced; as in *Pallās,* Pallas; *ās,* ace; or whether it be mute, as in *tās,* heap; *tu ās,* thou hast; *tu aimās,* thou lovedst.

ASE, always long; as, *bāse,* basis; *Pegāse,* Pegasus; *emphāse,* emphasis; *extāse,* extasy; *rāser,* to shave; *jāser,* to chatter. See V. General Rule.

ASPE, General Rule. An *s* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *măsque,* mask. See VI. General Rule.

OF SYLLABLES.

ASSE, short; except in the substantives *bāsse*, base; *cāsse*, cassia; *clāsse*, class; *échāsses*, stilts; *pāsse*, pass; *nāsse*, bow-net; *tāsse*, cup; *chāsse*, shrine; *māsse*, mass; in the feminine adjectives *bāsse*, low, base; *grāsse*, fat; *lāsse*, weary; and in the following verbs; *il amāsse*, he collects; *il enchāsse*, he inchases; *il cāsse*, he breaks; *il pāsse*, he passes; *il compāsse*, he measures; with their compounds.

All these words retain their quantity, even when the termination, instead of being mute, is masculine; as, *chāssis*, sash; *cāsser*, to break; *pāsser*, to pass.

Add to these the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of verbs, terminated in *âsse*, *âsses*, *âssent*, in the subjunctive; as, *j'aimāsse*, I might love; *tu aimāsses*, thou mightest love; *ils aimāssent*, they might love.

AT, long in the substantives *bāt*, a pack-saddle; *mât*, mast; *appāt*, bait; *degāt*, havock; and in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive *il aimāt*, he might love; *il chantāt*, he might sing; *il parlāt*, he might speak, *&c.**

In all other substantives, in adjectives, and in the present of the indicative, AT is short; as, *avocăt*, counsellor; *éclăt*, splendour; *plăt*, flat, a dish; *on se băt*, people fight.

ATE, always short, except in *hāte*, haste; *pāte*, dough; *il gāte*, he spoils; *il māte*, he masts; *il démāte*, he dismasts; and in the second person plural of the preterite tenses of verbs, terminated in *ates*; as, *vous aimâtes*, you loved; *vous parlâtes*, you spoke.

ATRE, short in *quătre*, four; and in *băttre*, to beat, with its derivatives, *abăttre*, to pull down; *combăttre*, to fight, *&c.*

These instances excepted, ATRE is always long; as, *idolātre*, idolatrous; *théâtre*, theatre; *opiniātre*, obstinate; *emplātre*, plaster, *&c.*

AU, compound vowel. When this vowel forms a syllable which is followed by a mute termination, it is long; as, *āuge*, through; *āutre*, other; *āune*, ell; *pāume*, tennis.

It is also long when in the last syllable of a word it is followed by a consonant; as, *hāut*, high; *chāud*, hot; *chāux*, lime: *fāux*, false; except *Păul*, Paul.

But AU is doubtful when it precedes a masculine syllable; as, *àubade*, serenade; *àudace*, audacity; *àutomne*, autumn; *àugmenter*, to increase; *àuteur*, author; and when it is final; as, *joyàu*, jewel; *coteàu*, hillock; *couteàu*, knife.

AVE, short in *răve*, radish; *căve*, cellar; *on păve*, they are paving; but oftener long; as, *entrāve*, shackles; *grāve*, grave, serious.

But when *v* instead of being followed by *e* mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, the preceding syllable is short; as, *grăvier*, gravel; *aggrăver*, to aggravate.

BRAVE preceding its substantive is short; as, *un brăve homme*, a well-behaved man; but long when it comes after it; as, *un homme brāve*, a brave or courageous man.

AVRE, always long; as, *hāvre*, harbour; *cadāvre*, corpse.

AX, AXE, always short; as, *Ajăx*, Ajax; *thorăx*, thorax; *borăx*, borax; *ăxe*, axle; *tăxe*, tax; *parallăxe*, parallax.

E

The French distinguish three sorts of *e*, which express different sounds; the difference of which is perceived in *fermeté*, firmness; *honnêteté*, honesty.

The first *e* in each of these words, is long, the second mute, and the third short.

E mute is also called feminine; the others are called masculine.

There is no accent over *e* mute, the short requires an accute accent, and the long a grave, or a circumflex, but it is found sometimes without any of these signs, as appears in the first syllable of the word *fermeté*.

With respect to *e* mute, it is sufficient to know that it never begins a word, and that it is seldom found in several consecutive syllables; for if it is found in some compound words, such as *revenir*, to return; *redevenir*, to become again; *entretenir*, to entertain; at least this never happens at the end of a word; thus the *e* which is mute or feminine in the penultima of the infinitive of verbs; as, *appeler*, to call; *peser*, to weigh; *mener*, to lead; *devoir*, to owe; *concevoir*, to conceive, becomes masculine, or is changed into the diphthong *oi*, in the tenses which end with *e* mute; *j'appĕlle*, I call; *il pĕse*, he weighs; *il mĕne*, he leads; *ils doivent*, they owe; *ils conçoivent*, *&c.*

For the same reason, though we make *e* mute in *chapelain*, chaplain; *chandĕlier*, candlestick; *celui-ci*, this; *j'aime*, I love; *je chante*, I sing; we sound it in *chapĕlle*, chapel; *chandĕlle*, candle; *cĕlle*, that; *aimĕ-je*, do I love? *chantĕ-je*, do I sing?

For such is the genius of the french language, that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

---

* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, to show that they are long; as, *bust*, *mast*, *il aimast*, *vous aimastes*, &c. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, *bât*, *mât*, &c.

OF SYLLABLES.

EBLE, EBRE, EC, ECE, always short; as, *hĕble*, wallwort; *funĕbre*, mournful; *bĕc*, bill; *nĕve*, niece.

ECHE, long and very open in *bēche*, spade; *lēche*, thin slice; *grĕche*, noisy; *pēche*, fishing; *pĕche*, peach; *il empēche*, he prevents; *il dépēche*, he dispatches; *il prĕche*, he preaches. Short in *calĕche*, calash; *flĕche*, arrow; *mĕche*, match; *crĕche*, crib; *sĕche*, dry, the cuttle-fish; *brĕche*, breach; *on pĕche*, people sin.

ECLE, ECT, ECTE, DRE, EDE, EDER, all short; as, *siĕcle*, age; *respĕct*, respect; *insĕcte*, insect; *cĕdre*, cedar; *remĕde*, remedy; *cĕder*, to yield; *possĕder*, to possess, *&c.*

E'E. General Rule. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensēe*, thought; *armēe*, army; *je līe*, I tie. See I. General Rule.

E'E'. General Rule. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as, *crĕé*, created; *féal*, trusty; *actĭon*, action; *hăïr*, to hate; *tŭer*, to kill, *&c.* See II. General Rule.

EF, EFFE; the first is short; as, *chĕf*, chief; *brĕf*, brief, short. The second long; as, *grēffe*, graft, the rolls; *je grēffe*, I graft.

EFFLE, long, in *nēfle*, medlar; short in *trĕfle*, trefoil, club.

EGE, EGLE. The first long; as, *sacrilēge*, sacrilegious; *collēge*, college; *siēge*, seat, siege. The other short; as, *rĕgle*, rule; *sĕigle*, rye, *&c.*

EGNE, EIGNE. The first is doubtful; as, *règne*, reign; *duègne*, duenna. The other is short; as, *pĕigne*, comb; *ensĕigne*, sign; *qu'il fĕigne*, let him pretend.

EGRE, EGUE, short; as, *nègre*, negro; *intĕgre*, upright; *bĕgue*, a stammerer; *collègue*, colleague; *il allègue*, he alleges, *&c.*

EIL, EILLE, short; as, *solĕil*, sun; *sommĕil*, sleep; *abĕille*, bee; *boutĕille*, bottle; the only exceptions are, *vieille*, old woman; *vieillard*, old man; *vieillesse*, old age.

EIN, EINT. See III. and VII. General Rules.

EINE, short; as, *vĕine*, vein; *pĕine*, pain; the only exception is *rēine*, queen.

EINTE, always long; as, *attēinte*, stroke; *fēinte*, feint.

EL, always short; as, *sĕl*, salt; *cruĕl*, cruel, *&c.* See III. General Rule.

ELE, ELLE, long in *zēle*, zeal; *poēle*, frying pan; *frēle*, frail; *pēle-mēle*, confusedly; *grēle*, hail; *il se fēle*, it cracks; *la brebis bēle*, the sheep bleats.

These instances excepted, ELE, ELLE, is always short; as, *modĕle*, model; *fidĕle*, faithful; *rebĕlle*, rebellious; *mortĕlle*, mortal, *&c.*

EM, EN. See III. and VII. General Rules; and sound the final consonant in *itĕm*, item; *Béthléĕm*, Bethlehem; *amĕn*, amen; *hȳmĕn*, hymen; *examĕn*, examination.

EME, doubtful in *crème*, cream; short in *je sème*, I sow; *il sĕme*, he sows; and long in all other words; as, *baptēme*, baptism; *diadēme*, diadem; *mēme*, even, *&c.*

ENE, long in *chēne*, oak; *cēne*, the lord's supper; *scēne*, scene; *gēne*, rack; *alēne*, awl; *rēne*, rein; *frēne*, ash-tree; *arēne*, area; *pēne*, the bolt of a lock; and in the proper names, *Athēnes*, Athens; *Diogēnes*, Diogenes; *Mēcēne*, Mæcenas, *&c.* but short in *phénomĕne*, phœnomenon; *ébĕne*, ebony; *étrĕnne*, new year's gift; *qu'il prĕnne*, let him take; *qu'il viĕnne*, let him come; and in all words in which the consonant is doubled.

EPE, EPRE, always long; as, *guēpe*, wasp; *crēpe*, crape; *vēpres*, vespers; except *lĕpre*, leprosy.

EPTE, EPTRE, ECTRE, always short; as, *précĕpte*, precept; *il accĕpte*, he accepts, *scĕptre* sceptre; *spĕctre*, spectre.

EQUE, ECQUE, always short; as, *grĕcque*, greek; *bibliothĕque*, library; *obsĕques*, funeral, *&c.* except *évēque*, bishop: *archevēque*, archbishop.

ER is short in *Jupitĕr*, Jupiter; *Lucifĕr*, Lucifer; *éthĕr*, æther; *chĕr*, dear; *cancĕr*, cancer; *patĕr*, the lord's prayer; *magistĕr*, a country schoolmaster; *fratĕr*, a surgeon's apprentice; and long in *fēr*, iron; *enfēr*, hell; *lēgēr*, light; *mēr*, sea; *amēr*, bitter; *hivēr*, winter; but it is doubtful in the infinitive of verbs when the *r* is sounded with the following vowel, as is always the case in repeating verses.

ERBE, ERCE, ERSE, ERCHE, ERCLE, ERDE, ERDRE, all short. See the General Rule under ARBE.

ERD, ERT, doubtful: as, *concèrt*, concert; *ouvèrt*, open; *désèrt*, desert, wilderness; *il pèrd*, he loses; *le vèrd*, green, *&c.*

OF SYLLABLES.

ERE, doubtful; as, *chimère*, chimera; *père*, father; *sincère*, sincere; *il espère*, he hopes, *&c.* but long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; as, *ils allèrent*, they went; *ils parlèrent*, they spoke; *ils chantèrent*, they sang, *&c.*

ERGE, ERGUE, ERLE, ERME, ERNE, ERPE, all short. See ARBE, General Rule.

ERR, always long when agreeably to the general rule, the two *rr* form only one indivisible sound; as in *guerre*, war; *tonnerre*, thunder; *nous verrons*, we shall see; short when the two *rr* are pronounced separately; as, *erreur*, error; *terreur*, terror, *&c.*

ERTE, ERTRE, ERVE, all short. See ARBE. General Rule.

ESSE, long in *confesse*, confession; *presse*, press; *compresse*, compress; *expresse*, express; *cesse*, ceasing; *on s'empresse*, they are eager; *il professe*, he professes.

These instances excepted, ESSE is short; as, *tendresse*, tenderness; *paresse*, laziness; *caresse*, caress; *jeunesse*, youth, *&c.*

ESQUE, ESTE, ESTRE. See VI. General Rule.

ET, long in *arrêt*, a decree; *benêt*, a simpleton; *forêt*, forest; *genêt*, broom; *prêt*, ready; *apprêt*, preparation; *acquêt*, acquisition; *intérêt*, interest; *il est*, he is.*

These instances excepted, ET is short; as, *cadet*, younger, junior; *bidet*, pony; *et* and; *sujet*, subject; *brochet*, pike, *&c.*

ETE, long in *bête*, beast; *fête*, feast; *arbalête*, a cross-bow; *boîte*, box; *tempête*, tempest; *quête*, quest; *conquête*, conquest; *enquête*, inquest; *requête*, request, petition; *arrête*, fish-bone; *crête*, crest, a coxcomb; *tête*, head; in all other instances, ETE is short; and the *t* is doubled; as, *tablette*, shelf, memorandum-book; *houlette*, crook; unless the etymology forbids doubling it, as, *prophète*, prophet; *poète*, poet.

Honnête is short when placed before a noun; as, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; it is long when placed after; as, *un homme honnête*, a civil man.

Vous êtes, the second person plural of the present tense of *être*, is either long or short, as the poet chooses.

ETRE, long in *être*, a being, to be; *salpêtre*, saltpetre; *ancêtre*, ancestor; *fenêtre*, window; *prêtre*, priest; *champêtre*, rural; *hêtre*, beech; *guêtres*, spatterdashes.

In all other instances ETRE is short, and *t* is doubled, unless the etymology prevents it; as, *diamètre*, diameter; *il pénètre*, he penetrates; *lettre*, letter; *mettre*, to put.

EU, compound vowel, short in the singular, *feu*, fire; *bleu*, blue; *jeu*, game, sport; *vœu*, vow; *neveu*, nephew, *&c.*

EVE, long in *trêve*, truce; *la grève*, the sea-shore; *il rêve*, he dreams; and the penultima of the verb *rêver*, remains long in all its tenses; as, *rêver*, to dream; *je rêvai*, I dreamt; but EVE is doubtful in *fève*, bean; *brève*, brief, short; *il achève*, he finishes; *il crève*, it bursts; *il se lève*, he rises; and the penultima of these verbs is mute, if it be followed by a masculine syllable; as, *achever*, to finish; *il se levait*, he was rising.

EUF, short; as, *veuf*, widower; *neuf*, new; *un œuf*, an egg; *un bœuf*, an ox.

N. B. The *f* is pronounced in all these words, in the singular, but not in the plural, except in *veufs*, widowers.

EUIL, short; as, *seuil*, threshold; *fauteuil*, arm-chair, *&c.* See III. General Rule.

EULE, long in *meule*, grinding stone, mill-stone. This excepted, EULE is short; as, *seule*, single, alone; *gueule*, the name given to the mouth of beasts and fishes.

EUNE, long in *jeûne*, fasting; and short in *jeune*, young.

EUR, EURE. The first is short in the singular; *odeur*, odour; *peur*, fear; *majeur*, of age; and long in the plural *odeurs*, odours: but the second is doubtful, *i. e.*

If EURE ends a word pronounced at the same breath with another word, it is short; as, *la majeure partie*, the major part; *une heure entière*, a whole hour. If there is no word after it, to be pronounced at the same breath with it, it is long; as, *cette fille est majeure*, that girl is of age; *j'attends depuis une heure*, I have been waiting for an hour.

EVRE, doubtful; *lèvre*, lip; *chèvre*, goat; *lièvre*, hare; *orfèvre*, gold or silver-smith.

EUX, EUSE, long; *deux*, two; *précieux*, *précieuse*, precious; *creuser*, to dig, *&c.*

EX, always short; as, *exemple*, example; *extirper*, to extirpate; *sexe*, sex, *&c.*

---

* All these words, as well as those in the two following paragraphs, were formerly spelt with a mute *s*, which is now suppressed, and supplied by a circumflex, except in *est*, the third person singular of the present tense of *être*. in which *s* is still retained.

OF SYLLABLES.

I

An observation which may have already been made, but which will appear more obvious by reading the rules on the three remaining vowels, is, that the number of short syllables is much greater than of long; therefore, in order to abbreviate this treatise, those terminations will be omitted which are short without exception.

IDRE, long in *hīdre*, written *hydre*, for the sake of the etymology, hydra; *cīdre*, cider.

IE, diphthong, doubtful; as, *mìel*, honey; *fìel*, gall; *fier*, proud; *amìtié*, friendship; *carrìere*, quarry; *poussière*, dust; *mìen*, mine; *tìen*, thine; *dìeu*, god.

IE, dissyllable, long; as, *vīe*, life; *saisīe*, seizure; *il prīe*, he begs. See I. Gen. Rule.

IEN, when a dissyllable, the two syllables are short; as, *ĭen*, tie; *Parisĭen*, Parisian; when a diphthong, the syllable is doubtful; as, *le mìen*, mine; *rìen*, nothing, *&c.*

IGE, doubtful; *tige*, stalk; *prodìge*, prodigy; *litīge*, litigation; *vestīge*, footstep; *je m'obligę*, I bind myself; *il s'afflīge*, he afflicts himself.

But IGE is short in the tenses of these verbs which do not end with *e* mute, as *s'obligęr*, to bind one's self; *afflīgé*, afflicted.

ILE, long in *īle*, island; *huīle*, oil; *stȳle*, stile; *tuīle*, tile; *presqu'īle*, peninsula.

IM, IN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

IME, long in *abīme*, abyss; *dīme*, tythe; and in the first person plural of the preterite tense of verbs; as, *nous vīmes*, we saw; *nous répondīmes*, we answered.

ION, short; as, *actĭon*, action; *passĭon*, passion. See II. General Rule.

IRE, doubtful, *empìre*, empire; *écrìre*, to write; *il soupìre*, he sighs; long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; *ils punīrent*, they punished; *ils fīrent*, short before a masculine termination; as, *soupĭrer*, to sigh; *désĭrer*, to wish, *&c.*

ISE, long; as, *remīse*, coach-house; *surprīse*, surprise; *j'épuīse*, I exhaust; *ils dīsent*, they say; *qu'ils līsent*, let them read.

ISSE, always short; as, *saucĭsse*, sausage; *réglĭsse*, liquorice; except in the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *je fīsse*, I might do; *ils punīssent*, they might punish, *&c.*

IT, long only in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *il dīt*, he might say; *il fīt*, he might do; *il punīt*, he might punish, *&c.**

ITE, long in *bénīte*, blessed; *gīte*, the seat of a hare; *vīte*, quick; and in the second person of the perfect of verbs; as, *vous fītes*, you did; *vous vītes*, you saw, *&c.*

ITRE, long in *épītre*, epistle; *huītre*, oyster; *regītre*, register; but if *regĭstre* is spelt with *s*, the ĭ is short.

IVE, long in the adjective feminine, formed from the masculine in *if*; as, *tardīve*, late; *captīve*, captive; *juīve*, jewess, *&c.*

IVRE, long in *vīvres*, victuals; short in *vĭvre*, to live; *un lĭvre*, a book, *&c.*

O

O, always short when it begins a word; as, *ŏccasion*, occasion; *ŏdeur*, odour, *&c.* except *ōs*, bone; *ōser*, to dare; *ōsier*, osier; *ōter*, to take away; *ōtage*, hostage; as likewise in *hōte*, host, landlord; though we say *hŏtel*, hotel, and *hŏtelleris*, an inn.

OBE, long in *glōbe*, globe; and *lōbe*, lobe; in every other instance OBE is short; as, *rŏbe*, robe, gown; *il dérŏbe*, he robs.

ODE, long in the verb *rōder*, to ramble; *je rōde*, I ramble; short in all other instances; as, *mŏde*, mode, fashion; *antipŏde*, antipodes; *périŏde*, period, *&c.*

OGE, always short; as, *élŏge*, praise; *horlŏge*, clock; *on dérŏge*, they derogate.

OI, diphthong, doubtful at the end of a word; as, *moì*, me; *roì*, king; *foì*, faith; *emploì*, employment; short at the beginning; as, *mŏisson*, harvest; *mŏitié*, half.

OIE, long; as, *jōie*, joy; *sōie*, silk; *qu'il vōie*, let him see, *&c.*

OIENT, termination of the third person plural of the imperfect of verbs, is long; as, *ils avōient*, they had; *ils chantōient*, they sang, *&c.* whilst the third person singular of the same tense spelt OIT, is short; as, *il avŏit*, he had; *il chantŏit*, he sang, *&c.*

OIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OIR, OIRE, the first is doubtful; as, *espòir*, hope; *devòir*, duty, *&c.* the second long; as, *bōire*, to drink; *glōire*, glory; *mémōire*, memory, *&c.*

---

* Formerly written *fist*, *dist*, *punist*, with a mute *s*, now supplied by a circumflex.

OF SYLLABLES.

OIS, always long; whether it be a diphthong, as in *fōis*, time; *bourgeōis*, burgess, *Danōis*, Dane; *Suédōis*, Swede, *&c.* or whether it be used instead of the compound vowel AI, as *j'étōis*, or *j'étāis*, I was; *un Françōis*, or *un Françāis*, a Frenchman, *&c.*

OISE, OISSE, OITRE, OIVRE, all long; as, *framboise*, raspberry; *paroisse*, parish; *cloître*, cloister; *pōivre*, pepper, *&c.*

OIT, short; as, *il bŏit*, he drinks; except *il crōit*, he grows; and when it is used instead of the compound vowel AI; as, *il parōit*, or *il parāit*, it appears.

OLE, always short; as, *obŏle*, obole; *idŏle*, idol; *boussŏle*, sea compass; except *drōle*, facetious; *pōle*, pole; *geōle*, jail; *mōle*, mole, pier; *rōle*, a list, the part of an actor; *contrōle*, control; *enjōler*, to wheedle, to decoy; *enrōler*, to enlist, and the tenses derived from these verbs; *il contrōle*, he controls; *ils enrōlent*, they enlist, *&c.*

OM, ON. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OME, ONE, long; as, *atōme*, atom; *axiōme*, axiom; *phantōme*, phantom; *trōne*, throne, *&c.* except *Rŏme*, Rome; and the words in which the consonant is doubled, which follow the general rule; as, *sŏmme*, sum; *pŏmme*, apple; *consŏnne*, consonant.

ONS, always long; as, *nous aimōns*, we love; *fōnds*, land, funds; *maisōns*, houses; *pōnts*, bridges, *&c.* See IV. General Rule.

OR, always short; as, *castŏr*, beaver; *butŏr*, bittern, a blockhead; *encŏr*, yet, still; *éffŏrt*, effort; but when OR is followed by *s*, it is long; as, *hōrs*, out; *alōrs*, then; *le cōrps*, the body; *les trésōrs*, the treasures. See IV. General Rule.

ORE, long; as, *aurōre*, aurora; *je déplōre*, I lament; but observe that the penultima of the verbs which have only one *r*, and which is long in the present of the indicative; as, *je décōre*, I decorate; *il s'évapōre*, it evaporates; becomes short if the termination is masculine; as, *décŏrer*, to decorate; *évapŏré*, evaporated, and that it remains long in tenses in which the *r* is doubled; as, *il s'évapōrrait*, it would evaporate, *&c.*

OS, OSE, long; as, *ōs*, bone; *prōpos*, discourse; *à prōpos*, timely; *dōse*, dose; *chōse*, thing; *il ōse*, he dares. See IV. and V. General Rules.

OSSE, long; as, *grōsse*, big; *fōsse*, pit; *il endōsse*, he endorses; even when the final is masculine; as, *grōsseur*, bigness; *grōssesse*, pregnancy; *fōssé*, ditch.

OT, long in *impōt*, tax; *tōt*, soon; *dépōt*, deposit; *entrepōt*, store-house; *suppōt*, a subservient agent; *rōt*, roast meat; *prévōt*, provost, sheriff.*

OTE, long in *hōte*, host, landlord; *cōte*, coast, rib; *maltōte*, exaction of taxes; *j'ōte*, I take away; likewise when the final is masculine; as, *côté*, side; *ōté*, taken away.†

OTRE. There are only three words of this termination, viz. *apōtre*, apostle; *notre*, our, ours; *votre*, your, yours.

As to the first it is always long; but the two others are doubtful; not that their measure is arbitrary, for it depends upon the place which they keep in the sentence.

Notre and *Votre* are short, when like an article they are prefixed to a substantive, *i. e.* when used for *our, your;* and long when they themselves are preceded by an article, and used as pronouns, *i. e.* when used for *ours, yours;* so we say, *je suis vŏtre serviteur*, I am your servant; *et moi le vōtre*, I am yours. *C'est-là vŏtre opinion, mais la nōtre est que, &c.* that is your opinion, but ours is that, *&c. Les nōtres sont excellents, mais les vōtres ne valent rien*, ours are excellent, but yours are good for nothing.

If the final be mute, as in this sentence, *je suis le vōtre*, after which my ear expects nothing more, then the voice wants a support, and not finding it in the final *re*, it takes it in the penultima *vo;* but in this other, *je suis vŏtre serviteur*, where after *votre* I necessarily expect a substantive, between which and *votre* there can be no intermission, this substantive is destined to support my voice, and I pass quickly over *votre*.

Perhaps there is not in the french prosody a principle more extensive than this. A doubtful syllable which is made short in the body of the sentence, is made long if it comes at the end.

Sometimes even in conversation as well as in oratory, a long syllable becomes short, by the transposition of the word; for we say, *un homme honnĕte*, a civil man; *un homme brāve*, a brave or courageous man; but we say, *un honnĕte homme*, an honest man; *un brăve homme*, a well-behaved man; these instances have already been mentioned, (See E) but can so important rules be recalled too often?

---

* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, *impost, rost, suppost*, to show that the syllable is long, this is now supplied by a circumflex.

† Formerly spelt *hoste, coste*, and when a syllable was to be pronounced short, the consonant was doubled; as, *hotte*, dorser; *cotte*, petticoat, *&c.*

OF SYLLABLES.

OUDRE, OUE, long; as, *poudre*, powder; *moudre*, to grind; *résoudre*, to resolve, *&c.* *boue*, dirt; *joue*, cheek; *il loue*, he praises, *&c.* but when OU is followed by a masculine, instead of a feminine termination, it is short; as, *poudré*, powdered; *moulu*, ground; *roué*, broken on the wheel; *loué*, praised, *&c.*

OUILLE, long in *rouille*, rust; *il dérouille*, he gets off the rust; *il embrouille*, he embroils; *il débrouille*, he unravels; but OUIL is short when it is followed by a masculine syllable; as, *brouillon*, bad paper or writing; *brouillé*, daubed; *rouillé*, rusty, *&c.*

OULE, long in *moule*, mould, muscle; *la foule*, the crowd; *il foule*, he presses, he tramples; *il roule*, he rolls; *il s'écroule*, it falls down; *il se soule*, he gets drunk.

OURE, OURRE, the first is doubtful; as, *bravoure*, bravery; the second is long; as, *de la bourre*, cow hair; *qu'il courre*, let him run; but if OU, instead of being followed by a mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, then OU is short, notwithstanding the general rule under ARRE; as, *courrier*, messenger; *bourrade*, thrust, *&c.* as likewise in the future and in the conditional tenses of verbs spelt with *rr*, in which the two *rr* are sounded separately; as, *je mourrai*, I shall die; *je courrai*, I shall run; *je mourrais*, &c.

OUSE, long; as, *épouse*, bride; *qu'elle couse*, let her sew. See V. General Rule.

OUSSE, long in *je pousse*, I push; short in all other instances; as, *je tousse*, I cough; *coussin*, cushion; *poussin*, young chick, *&c.*

OUT, long in *août*, august; *coût*, cost; *goût*, taste; *moût*, must, new wine.

OUTE, long in *absoute*, absolution; *joute*, tilt; *croute*, crust; *voute*, vault; *il coûte*, it costs; *il broute*, it grazes; *je goûte*, I taste; *j'ajoute*, I add; but OU is generally short, when the syllable which follows it is masculine; as, *ajouter*, to add; *coûté*, cost, *&c.*

OUTRE, long in *poutre*, beam; and in *coutre*, coulter, ploughshare; short in all other instances; as, *loutre*, otter; *outre, en outre*, besides, *&c.*

U

UCHE, long; as, *buche*, a log of wood; *ruche*, hive; *on débuche*, they dislodge, *&c.* but U is short, if the final is masculine; as, *bucher*, pile; *débuché*, dislodged, *&c.*

UE, diphthong, found only in the word *écuélle*, porringer, is short.

UE, dissyllable, always long; as, *vue*, sight; *tortue*, tortoise, *&c.* See I. Gen. Rule.

UGE, doubtful when the final is mute; as, *déluge*, deluge; *refuge*, refuge; short, when the final is masculine; as, *juger*, to judge; *réfugier*, to take refuge, *&c.*

UI, diphthong, short before a masculine syllable; as, *buisson*, bush; *cuisine*, kitchen; *ruisseau*, rivulet, *&c.*

UIE, long; as, *pluie*, rain; *truie*, sow; *il s'ennuie*, he grows tired. See I. Gen. Rule

ULE, long in the verb *brûler*, to burn; *je brûle*, I burn; *tu brûles*, thou burnest, *&c.*

UM, UN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

UMES, long; as, *nous fûmes*, we were; *nous pûmes*, we could; *nous reçûmes*, we received; *nous aperçûmes*, we perceived, *&c.*

URE, always long; as, *augure*, omen; *verdure*, grass, *parjure*, perjurer, perjury; *on assure*, they assure; *ils furent*, they were; but U is short if the final is masculine; as, *augurer*, to conjecture; *parjurer*, to perjure; *assuré*, assured.

USE, always long; as, *muse*, muse; *excuse*, excuse; *ruse*, cunning; see V. General Rule, we also say, *rusé*, cunning; but in the other words in which the final is masculine, U is short; as *excuser*, to excuse; *refusé*, refused, *&c.*

UCE, USSE, the first of these two terminations is confined to nouns, and always short; as, *puce*, flea; *astuce*, craft, *&c.* the second is confined to verbs, and is always long; as, *je fusse*, I were; *je pusse*, I might; *ils fussent*, they might be; except *Prusse*, Prussia; and *Russe*, a Russian; substantives in which USSE is short.

UT, short in all substantives; as, *le but*, the end; *un début*, a beginning; except in *fût*, a cask; *un affût*, a gun carriage; short in the third person of the perfect tense of the indicative of verbs; as, *il fut*, he was; *il vécut*, he lived; long in the same person and tense in the subjunctive; as, *il fût*, he might be; *il vécût*, he might live, *&c.*

UTE, UTES, short in all substantives; *brute*, brute, rough, *&c.* except *flûte*, flute; always long in verbs: *vous fûtes*, you were; *vous lûtes*, you read: *vous reçûtes*, you received; *vous aperçûtes*, you perceived, *&c.*

It is not perhaps unnecessary to inform such readers as might be discouraged by the multiplicity, or by the prolixity of these rules, that it is not requisite, in order to speak french with propriety, that they should be observed with a scrupulous nicety, which few persons, if any, do, but he certainly speaks best who deviates the least from them

OF SYLLABLES.

HOMONYMOUS, OR EQUIVOCAL WORDS,

THE MEANING OF WHICH IS DETERMINED BY THE ACCENT.

Ăcre, tart.	*Ăcre*, acre.
Alĕne, awl.	*Halĕine*, breath.
Bâiller, to gape.	*Băiller*, to give.
Bât, pack-saddle.	*Il bât*, he beats.
Bâteleur, mountebank.	*Bâtelier*, waterman.
Beâuté, beauty.	*Bŏtté*, booted.
Bête, beast.	*Bĕtte*, beet.
Boîte, box.	*Il boîte*, he goes lame.
Bond, rebound.	*Bŏn*, good.
Chair, flesh.	*Chĕr*, dear.
Châsse, shrine.	*Chăsse*, hunting.
Clair, clear.	*Clĕrc*, clerk.
Corps, body.	*Cŏr*, hunting horn.
Côte, rib.	*Cŏr*, a corn.
Côte, coast.	*Cŏtte*, petticoat.
Cuire, to boil or roast.	*Cŭir*, leather.
Faîte, summit.	*Faĭte*, done.
Fête, feast.	
Faix, burthen.	*Faĭt*, done, fact.
Le foie, the liver.	*La foi*, faith.
Une fois, once.	*Un fouĕt*, a rod, a whip.
Forêt, forest.	*Forĕt*, gimblet.
Je goûte, I taste.	*Une goŭtte*, a drop.
Grâve, grave.	*Je grăve*, I engrave.
Hâle, scorching of the sun.	*Hălle*, market.
Hôte, host, landlord.	*Hŏtte*, scuttle.
Jeûne, fast.	*Jeŭne*, young.
Lâcs, noose.	*Lăc*, lake.
L'âme, the soul.	*Lăme*, blade.
Lègs, legacy.	*Laĭd*, ugly.
Lîs, lily.	*Laĭt*, milk.
Maître, master.	*Lĭt*, bed.
Mâle, male.	*Mĕttre*, to put.
Mâsse, stock.	*Mălle*, mail, trunk.
Mât, mast.	*Măsse*, mass, mace
Mâtin, mastiff.	*Mă*, my.
Mois, month.	*Mătin*, morning.
Mûr, ripe.	*Moĭ*, me.
Il n'est, it is not.	*Mŭr*, wall.
Il naît, it springs.	*Nĕt*, clean.
Pâte, paste.	*Pătte*, paw.
Paûme, palm.	*Pŏmme*, apple.
Pêcheur, fisherman.	*Pĕcheur*, sinner.
Pêcher, to fish.	*Pĕcher*, to sin.
Pêcher, peach-tree.	*Pĕché*, sin.
Pêne, bolt.	*Peĭne*, punishment.
Rôt, roast meat.	*Rŏt*, belch.
Sâs, sieve.	*Să*, her.
Scène, scene.	*Săine*, wholesome.
La Scène, the communion	*La Seĭne*, the Seine.
Sûr, *sûre*, sure, certain.	*Sŭr*, sour.
Tâche, task.	*Tăche*, stain.
Tâcher, to endeavour.	*Tăcher*, to stain.
Tête, head.	*Tĕte*, teat.
Vers, verse.	*Vĕr*, worm.
Vers, towards.	*Vĕrd*, green.
Verre, glass.	

INTRODUCTION
An introduction

À LA
to the

LANGUE FRANÇAISE.
language french. [16a]

PREMIÈRE PARTIE.
First part.

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE est composée des mêmes lettres ou
The language french[16] *is composed of the same letters or*
caractères que la langue anglaise[16], excepté le W; mais la pro-
characters as the english, except the W; *but the pro-*
nonciation de ces lettres, n' est pas toujours la même dans ces
nunciation of these [55] *is not always the same in these*
deux langues; elles se prononcent en français:
two or in both languages; they are pronounced in french:

A,	B,	C,	D,	E,	F,	G,	H,	I,	J,	K,	L,	M,
ah,	*bay,*	*say,*	*day,*	*ay,*	*f,*	*zhay,*	*ash,*	*ee,*	*zhee,*	*kah,*	*l,*	*m,*
N,	O,	P,	Q,	R,	S,	T,	U,	V,	X,	Y,		Z.
n,	*o,*	*pay,*	†,	*ayr,*	*s,*	*tay,*	†,	*vay,*	*eeks,*	*eegrayc,*		*zeyd.*

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE[16], ainsi que la langue anglaise[16], est aussi
as well as is also
composée de NEUF sortes de mots qu' on[46] appelle
composed of nine sorts of words which people call, or are called[46]
communément les *parties d'oraison;* ces mots sont,
commonly the parts of speech; these words are,

Le NOM,	l'ARTICLE,	l'ADJECTIF,
the noun.	*the article.*	*the adjective.*
le PRONOM,	le VERBE,	l'ADVERBE,
the pronoun.	*the verb.*	*the adverb.*
la PRÉPOSITION,	la CONJONCTION,	l'INTERJECTION,
the preposition.	*the conjunction.*	*the interjection.*

---

* The figures at the top of the words indicate the rule to which the different sorts of words that compose the language are subject. The learner will do well to refer to these rules until they are familiar to him. They will be found at page 32, and in the following pages.

N. B. The english words are here placed literally under the french. It will require very little knowledge of the english language to arrange them in the grammatical order which they require. The person who is not capable of doing that, must study his own language, before he attempts to learn French. † See note 2, page 1.

CHAP. I.

DU NOM.

Of the noun.

TOUT MOT qui sert à exprimer l'* idée d'* une substance, soit
Every word which serves to express the idea of a substance, either
réelle, comme, *homme, femme, cheval, maison, soleil, lune;* ou idéale,
real, as, man, woman, horse, house, sun, moon; or ideal,
comme, *dieu, ciel, honneur, vice, vertu,* s' appelle NOM.
as, god, heaven, honour, vice, virtue, is called a noun.

De ces mots appelés NOMS, (quelques uns) ne conviennent qu'*
Of these words called nouns, some —† belong to only
à une seule personne, ou à une seule chose; comme, *Jean, Jacques,*
to a single person, or to a single thing; as, john, james,
Voltaire, Shakespeare, Londres, Paris, France, Angleterre, la *Seine,*
voltaire, shakespeare, london, paris, france, england, the seine,
les *Alpes, &c* et ces noms s'* appellent *noms propres.*
the alps, &c. and these nouns are called names proper.[16]

D'* autres conviennent à touts les êtres de la même espèce;
Some others belong to all —† beings of the same kind;
comme, *homme, femme, enfant, cheval, vache, oiseau, maison, ville,*
as, man, woman, child, horse, cow, bird, house, city,
campagne, arbre, &c. et ceux-ci s' appellent *noms communs.*
country, tree, &c. and these are called names common.[16]

Dans cette dernière classe (on comprend) les noms com-
In this last class (we[46] *include or are included*[48]*) the nouns com-*
posés d' idées abstraites[16]; comme, *dieu, ciel, âme, vice, vertu,*
pounded of ideas abstract: as, god, heaven, soul, vice, virtue,
amour, désir, honneur, plaisir, et autres semblables.
love, desire, honour, pleasure, and such like.

Il faut considérer dans les[7] noms, le *genre,* et le *nombre.*
It is necessary to consider in —† nouns the gender, and the number.

Il n'y a en français que *deux genres;* le MASCULIN, et le FÉMININ
There are in french only two genders; the masculine, and the feminine.

Par MASCULIN (on veut[46] dire) le genre *mâle*[16]; comme, *homme,*
By masculine (we mean or is meant[48]*) the gender male; as, man,*
coq, cheval, taureau, chien, chat, bélier, bouc, cerf, &c.
cock, horse, bull, dog, he cat, ram, he goat, stag, &c.

Par FÉMININ (on veut[46] dire) le genre *femelle*[16]; comme, *femme,*
By feminine (we mean or is meant[48]*) the gender female; as, woman,*
poule, jument, vache, chienne, chatte, brebis, chèvre, biche, &c.
hen, mare, cow, bitch, she cat, ewe, she goat, hind, &c.

---

* When the monosyllables *le, de, ne, se, je, me, te, la, que,* are followed by a *vowel* or a *h mute,* the vowel, *e, a,* is left out, and an apostrophe, this mark (′), put in its place.

† The words marked under with a dash, this mark (—), are not expressed in english.

DU NOM.

Les noms des autres êtres vivants[36] dont le sexe n' est
The names of the other beings living (of which) the sex is

pas connu, (ainsi que) des êtres *inanimés*[16] qu' (on[46] appelle)
not known, (as well as) of the beings inanimate which (people call or are called[18])

communément *choses*, et qui sont de (ce que)
commonly things, and which are of (that which or what[40])

les Anglais appellent le GENRE NEUTRE, appartiennent en français
the english call gender neuter,[16] belong in french

à l' un ou *à l' autre* de ces deux genres.
to the one or to the other of these two genders.

(Il y a) en français comme en anglais, deux nombres; le SINGULIER,
There are in french as in english, two numbers; the singular,

quand on ne parle que d' un être; comme, un[1] *homme*, une
when we — speak only of one being; as, a man, a

femme, une[1] *maison;* le PLURIER, quand on parle de plusieurs êtres;
woman, a house; plural, we[46] of several beings;*

comme, des[1] *hommes*, des[1] *femmes*, des[1] *maisons*.
as, some men, some women, some houses.

Remarquez que le nombre *plurier*[15] se forme en français comme en
Remark that is formed in as in

anglais, en ajoutant *s* au *singulier;* une[1] *maison*, des[1] maisons.
by adding s to the a house, some houses.

Excepté premièrement; les noms qui (se terminent) en *s* ou en
Except, first; the nouns which (terminate or end) in s or

x dont le plurier ne diffère point du singulier; ainsi on[46] dit:
x of which — differs not from the so we say:

mon *fils*, mes *fils;* un *pois*, des *pois;* une *noix*, des *noix*, &c.
my son, my sons; a pea, some peas; a nut, some nuts, &c.

Secondement; les noms dont le singulier (se termine) en *u*, qui
Secondly; the of which ends in u, which

demandent un *x* (au lieu) d' une *s* pour signe du plurier; comme,
require an x instead of an s for the sign of the as,

un *couteau*, des *couteaux;* le[1] *jeu*, les[1] *jeux;* *lieu*, *lieux*, *&c.*
a knife, some knives the game, the games; place, places, &c.

Troisièmement; les noms dont le singulier (se termine) en *al*,
Thirdly; of which ends in al,

ail, qui changent *l*, ou *il*, en *ux* pour le plurier; comme, *mal*, *maux*
ail, which change l, or il, into ux for as, evil, evils,

cheval, *chevaux;* *général*, *généraux;* *travail*, *travaux*, *&c.*
horse, horses; general, generals; work, works, &c.

---

* This word you will generally see in other grammars spelled *pluriel;* but as it is pronounced *plurier*, the same as *singulier*, I have thought it proper to spell it as it is pronounced, that it might be more easily remembered.

CHAP II.

DE L' ARTICLE.

Of the article.

Comme le même nom peut exprimer des[8] idées différentes, on[46]
As the same noun may express N. B. *ideas different,*[16] *we*
a adopté des[8] signes pour désigner chacune de ces idées.
have adopted N. B. *signs to denote each of these ideas.*

Ces signes se nomment en grammaire ARTICLE ; mais comme ils
These are called in grammar but as they
varient avec nos idées, les[7] grammairiens ne s'accordent pas sur le
vary with our — grammarians — agree not on
nombre, ni sur le nom qu' on doit donner à chaque signe en particulier.
nor name which we ought to give to each sign in particular.
Cet accord n'est nullement nécessaire, il suffit d' en[24] savoir l'usage.
This agreement [55] *is (by no means) necessary, it suffices to of them know the use.*

(On verra) dans ce traité que j' ai augmenté le nombre des
(It will be seen[47]*) in this treatise that I have increased of the*
signes appelés ARTICLE, parceque cela m'[25] a paru nécessaire
called because that to me has appeared necessary
pour diminuer celui[44] des règles ; ainsi, j' appelle ARTICLE des[8] mots
to diminish that of the rules ; so, I call —N. B. *words*
que (les uns) appellent PRONOM, que d'autres appellent ADJECTIF ;
which some call pronouns, which others adjectives ;
et je les[24] appelle ainsi, parceque ces mots sont touts destinés au
and I them call so, because these are all destined to the
même usage, et que les mêmes règles sont communes à touts.
same use, and that rules common

(Afin qu') on[46] pût retenir ces signes plus aisément ;
That people might retain these more easily ;
je leur[25] ai donné des[8] noms analogues à la
I to them have given —N. B. *names analogous to the*
fonction qu' ils font dans la phrase ; ainsi, j' appelle
office which they perform in the sentence ; so, I call
LE, LA, LES ; DU, *de* LA, DES ; AU, *à* LA, AUX, article
THE ; *of* or *from* THE ; *to* or *at* THE,
défini[16], parcequ' on[46] (se sert) de ces signes pour désigner que
definite, because we use — these signs to denote that
le nom qui les[24] suit, est employé dans un sens *défini*[16] ;
noun which them follows, is used in a sense definite ;
comme, *Apportez* LE[1] *pain,* LA[1] *viande,* LES[1] *habits.*
as, bring the bread, the meat, the clothes.

J' appelle DU, *de* LA, DES, article *partitif,*[16] parceque ces signes
I call SOME, *partitive, because these*
s'emploient à désigner une *portion* de la substance, dont on
are used to denote a portion of the substance, (of which) we[46]

DE L'ARTICLE.

parle; comme, *Donnez-moi* DU[1] *pain, de* LA[1] *viande,* DES[1] *habits.*
speak; as, give me some bread, some meat, some clothes.

J' appelle UN, UNE, et touts les autres nombres article *numéral,*
I call (A, AN, ONE,) *and all the other numbers numeral,*[16]
lorsque ces signes s' emploient à *nombrer* les objets dont on
when these are used to number objects of which we
parle; comme, UN[1] *pain;* UNE[1] *armée.*
speak; as, a, or one loaf; an army or one army.

J' appelle CE, CETTE, CES, article *démonstratif,*[16]
THIS, THAT; THIS, THAT; THESE, THOSE, *demonstrative,*
parceque c' est au moyen de ces signes qu' on[46] *indique*
because it is by the means of these that we point out
le lieu où est l' objet dont on parle; comme,
the place where is the object of which we speak, or spoken of; as,
CE[1] *pain,* CETTE[1] *viande,* CES[1] *habits.*
this or that bread, this or that meat, these or those clothes.

J' appelle MON, MA, MES; TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES;
MY; THY; HIS, *or* HER, *or* ITS;
NOTRE, NOS; VOTRE, VOS; LEUR, LEURS, article *possessif,*[16]
OUR; YOUR; THEIR; *possessive,*
parceque ces signes s' emploient à désigner la *possession* de l' objet
because these are used to denote possession of
dont on parle; comme, MON[1] *pain,* TA[1] *viande,* SES[1] *habits.*
*of which as, my bread, thy meat, his or her clothes.**

---

* Some will perhaps be surprised to find under the head ARTICLE, words which have so long been consecrated to the class of pronouns. Though they certainly partake of the nature of pronouns, by denoting the persons, they in reality are articles, used for the same purposes, in similar instances, and subject to the same rules as those words generally known by the name of article. If it be objected, that when I say *My book*, the word *My* is a pronoun, since it is the same as if I said, *the* book *of Me.* I answer, that as you cannot change the nature of these words without substituting an article in their place, they are as much articles as pronouns; and if they have no affinity at all to the syntax of pronouns (especially in french) and their affinity to the syntax of articles is so great, that the rules which are applicable to one, are applicable to all; why should not words, which have so great an analogy to each other, be set in one point of view, rather than send the learner from chapter to chapter for what he may, and ought to find in the same page?

"The *genuine* PRONOUN," says Harris, "*always stands by itself*, assuming the power of a noun, and supplying its place; the *genuine* ARTICLE *never stands by itself*, but appears at all times associated to something else, requiring a noun for its support, as much as attributives or adjectives."—*Hermes, page* 73.

Also l'abbé d'Olivet: j'ai dit, en premier lieu que l'ARTICLE est un *adjectif;* et si je n'avois pas craint d'entasser trop de choses à la fois, j'aurois volontiers ajouté que cet adjectif est tiré de la classe des *pronoms.* Quand il précède un substantif on le nomme ARTICLE; La *pièce nouvelle se joue demain;* et quand il précède ou suit un verbe, *Je* la *verrai, Voyez*-la, on l' appelle PRONOM; mais d'ailleurs n'est-ce pas une chose qui convient à la plupart des *pronoms adjectifs* d'être mis *avant le* NOM *à l'exclusion de l'*ARTICLE et avec la même *propriété,* comme quand je dis, ce *papier*, cette *plume;* mon *frère*, votre *sœur*, &c.—*Essais de Grammaire* chap. 2.

CHAP. III.

DE L'ARTICLE, ET DU NOM.

Of the and of the

RÈGLES GÉNÉRALES.

Rules general.[16]

1. Nous avons* vu† qu' (il y a) en français DEUX GENRES, le[1] *masculin* et le[1] *féminin;* qu' (il y a) DEUX NOMBRES,‡ le[1] *singulier* et le[1] *plurier;* et nous avons vu§ que l' ARTICLE est un signe qu' on[46] met avant un[1] NOM, pour désigner l'idée qu' on[46] veut exprimer par ce nom; (à présent) (souvenez-vous) que ce[1] signe appelé ARTICLE, doit toujours être du[1] MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOMBRE que le[1] NOM qui le[24] suit; exemple,

We have seen † – (there are) – – two—, – — and – —; that (— —) — —,‡ – — and – —; – — — —§ — the – is a sign which we put before –, to denote the idea – we wish to express by that –; now remember that this – called – must always be (of the) same — – – — — — as – – which follows it; example.*

SINGULIER.		PLURIER.	singular. plural.
MASCULIN.	FÉMININ.	MASC. *et* FÉMIN.	—. —. — *and* —.
LE *père,*	LA *mère,*	LES *enfants,*	*the father, the mother, the children.*
DU *père,*	*de* LA *mère,*	DES *enfants,*	*of the —, of the —, of the —.*
AU *père,*	*à* LA *mère,*	AUX *enfants,*	*to the —, to the —, to the —.*
UN *père,*	UNE *mère,*		*a* or *one —, a* or *one —.*
CE *père,*	CETTE *mère,*	CES *enfants,*	*(this, that, –,) (this, that –,) (these, [those –.)*
MON *père,*	MA *mère,*	MES *enfants,*	*my —, my —, my —.*
TON *père,*	TA *mère,*	TES *enfants,*	*thy —, thy —, thy —.*
SON *père,*	SA *mère,*	SES *enfants,*	*(his, her –,) (his, her –,) (his, her –,)*‖
NOTRE *père,*	NOTRE *mère,*	NOS *enfants,*	*our —, our —, our —.*
VOTRE *père,*	VOTRE *mère,*	VOS *enfants,*	*your —, your —, your —.*
LEUR *père,*	LEUR *mère,*	LEURS *enfants,*	*their —, their —, their —.*
DU *pain,*	*de* LA *viande,*	DES *habits,*	*some bread, some meat, some clothes.*

2. Nous (venons de voir) ¶ que l'ARTICLE doit toujours être du[1] MÊME GENRE, et du[3] MÊME NOMBRE que le[1] NOM qui le[24] suit;

We (have just seen) that – – must always be (– —) — —, – (– –) – – as – — which follows it;

---

* The english words which express the meaning of the french are placed in the margin. The words that have been frequently repeated, or which are the same in both languages, are left out, and a dash, this mark (—), put in their places, that the learner may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† Page 28. ‡ Page 29. § Page 30.

‖ I have frequently been asked if, having only one word to express both HIS and HER, we do not often commit mistakes in the use of that word. No, we never do; because this sign always refers to a noun mentioned before, the gender of which we know; So, when I say, *Mon frère a perdu* son *couteau, My brother has lost* his *knife;* I know by *Son* that it is the knife belonging to *my brother. Ma sœur a perdu* son *couteau, My sister has lost* her *knife;* I know by this *Son* that it is the knife belonging to *my sister.* But suppose a gentleman and a lady sat at table, and both let their knives fall; and a person said to a servant, *Ramassez* son *couteau,* meaning the knife of the lady, which knife would the servant pick up? Indeed he would not know, but a Frenchman would not express himself thus; He would say: *Ramassez le couteau* de monsieur, *Pick up the* gentleman's *knife;* or, *Ramassez le couteau* de madame, *Pick up the* lady's *knife,* by which all ambiguity would be avoided.

¶ Rule 1.

cependant, comme la[1] langue française[16] demande une[1] certaine MÉLODIE dans la[1] liaison des mots, et que la[1] rencontre de DEUX VOYELLES dans de[10] petits mots tels que l'[2] ARTICLE, produit un son désagréable à l' oreille; lorsque le[1] NOM qui suit l' ARTICLE est SINGULIER, et qu' il commence par une[1] VOYELLE, ou par une[3] H *muette*, on[46] emploie	*however as - — — requires a certain melody in - union (of the) -, - that - meeting of two vowels - some small words such as — —, produces a sound — to the ear; when - - - follows - - is —, - that it begins with a —, or with a* - mute, *we[46] use*
L' *au lieu de* LE, LA; THE;	*— instead of —, —;*
de L' „ „ DU, *de* LA; *of, from* THE;	*— — — — —;*
à L' „ „ AU, *à* LA; *to, at* THE;	*— — — — —;*
CET „ „ CE; THIS *or* THAT;	*— — — —;*
MON „ „ MA; MY;	*— — — —;*
TON „ „ TA; THY;	*— — — —;*
SON „ „ SA; HIS, HER, ITS;	*— — — —;*
sans considérer le GENRE du nom qui le[24] suit; exemple,	*without considering - — (of the) - - follows it[24]; example, —. —.*

MASCULIN.			FÉMININ			
L'	âge,	L'	idée,	L'	heure.	*the age, the idea, the hour.*
de L'	âge,	*de* L'	idée,	*de* L'	heure.	*of the —, of the —, of the —.*
à L'	âge,	*à* L'	idée,	*a* L'	heure.	*to the —, to the —, to the —.*
CET	âge,	CETTE	idée,	CETTE	heure.	*this* or *that —, this, that —, this, that —*
MON	âge,	MON	idée,	MON	heure.	*my —, my —, my —.*
TON	âge,	TON	idée,	TON	heure.	*thy —, thy —, thy —.*
SON	âge,	SON	idée,	SON	heure.	*his* or *her —, his, her —, his, her —*

3. L' article se *répète* en français avant touts les noms, suivant le genre et le nombre de chaque nom, quoique ces noms soient dans la même phrase, et que l' article ne soit pas répété en anglais; ex.	*- — is repeated - — before all - — (agreeably to) - — and - of each —, though these - are in — same sentence, - — is not repeated in —; ex.*
LE *père*, LA *mère*, *et* LES *enfants sont ici.*	*- —, - —, and - — are here.*
Je vous[24] apporte DU *pain*, de LA *viande*, de L' *argent*, *et* DES *habits.*	*I you[24] bring some bread, some meat, some money, — some clothes.*
Il a invité MON *frère*, MA *sœur*, *et* MES *cousins.**	*He has — my brother, my sister, and my cousins.**

* Observe that *two* of the signs called ARTICLE *cannot be used* before the same noun; so we say LE *bras*, the arm; LA *main*, the hand, LA *dame*, the lady, UNE *dame*, a lady; MA*dame*, my lady, madam, Mrs.; DES *dames*, some ladies; MES*dames*, ladies; UNE *demoiselle*, a young lady; DES *demoiselles*, some young ladies; MES*demoiselles*, ladies; but we do not say, LE *mon* bras; LA *ma* main; LA *ma*dame; UNE *ma*dame; DES *mes*dames; LA *ma*demoiselle; UNE *ma*demoiselle; DES *mes*demoiselles; because each of these signs fixing the proper meaning of the noun, renders another sign superfluous.

N. B. From this rule must be excepted the words MONSIEUR and MESSIEURS, which though they are compounded of the noun SIEUR, and of the article MON, MES, will in some instances admit of the other articles; for we say: LE *mon*sieur, the gentleman; UN *mon*sieur, a gentleman; CE *mon*sieur, this gentleman, &c. LES *mes*sieurs, the gentlemen; CES *mes*sieurs, these gentlemen; NOS *mes*sieurs, our gentlemen. These few singuiarities will be learnt by custom.

DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

RÈGLES PARTICULIÈRES.
Rules particular.[16]

Cas où l'on[46] *fait usage de l'article.*
Instances (in which) we[46] *make use of the article.*

4. L'article étant un signe destiné à annoncer l'idée du nom qui le[24] suit, ce signe serait superflu avant les noms qui, n' appartenant qu' à un seul être, présentent d'eux-mêmes une idée fixe[16]; c'est pour cette raison que les noms de *personnes* et de *villes* s'emploient, en français comme en anglais, *sans article;* ainsi, nous disons;

J'ai vu Voltaire, Paris, Londres.
Je parle de *Voltaire*, de *Paris*, de *Lond.*
Je préfère Locke à *Volt. Paris* à *Lond.*

- — being a sign intended to denote - idea (of the) - - follows it[24], *- (would be) superfluous - - - which belonging only to one being, present of themselves a — fixed; it is for this reason that - names of persons - of towns are used, in french as in english, without - ; so, we say;*

I have seen —, —, London.
I speak of —, - —, - —.
I prefer — to —, — to —.

5. Cette règle qui devrait s'étendre à touts les noms dont l'idée ne peut changer, n'est pas générale en français, comme elle l'est en anglais, puisque les noms de *pays demandent* l'article défini[16] LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, de même que les noms communs[16], ainsi, (quoi qu') on dise sans article;

J'ai vu Paris, Londres;

il faut dire avec l'article,

J'ai vu LE *Portugal,* LA *France,* L'*Espagne,* L'*Angleterre.*
Je parle DU *Portugal, de* LA *France, de* L'*Espagne, de* L'*Angleterre.*
Je préfère L'*Angleterre* AU *Portugal,* LA *France à* L'*Espagne.*

This rule which ought to extend to all - — (of which) - - cannot change is not general - —, as it is - —, since - names of countries require - — — le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, the same as - names common, so, though we[46] *say without — , I have seen Paris, London; we must say with - —,*

I have seen the —, the —, the Spain, the England.
I speak of the —, of the —, of the —, of the —.
I prefer the — to the —, the — to the —.

6. Mais les noms[16] de *pays perdent* l'article, quand ils viennent après les verbes qui désignent *demeurer, aller, venir,* lorsque ces verbes sont accompagnés de la préposition EN ou DE; car on dit:

Je viens DE *France,* D'*Italie.*
Je vais EN *Hollande,* EN *Angleterre.*
J'ai demeuré EN *Espagne,* EN *Portugal.*

Et cette règle même a encore des exceptions qu' on verra dans la dernière partie, et que je n' ai pas voulu rapporter ici, de peur d'embarrasser les commençants.[7] (Il n' y a que) l'usage qui puisse rendre ces variations familières.

But - — - countries lose - —, when they come after - verbs - denote dwelling, going, coming, when - — are attended by - - en *or* de; *for we*[46] *say:*

I come from —, from Italy.
I (go or am going) to —, to —.
- have lived in Spain, in —.

And this rule even has still some — which we shall see in the last -, - - - have not (been willing) to mention -, for fear - embarrassing - beginners.[7] *(It is only) - custom which can render these — —.*

DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

7. Touts les noms *communs*[16] employés[18] dans un *sens général*[16] où ils n'ont point d'article en anglais; comme, BREAD IS GOOD; ou dans un *sens particulier*[16] où ils ont l'article THE; comme, *the* BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, demandent l' article défini[16] LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX; ex.

Sens général[16]; *J' aime* LE *pain*, LA *viande*, LES (*pommes de terre.*)

Sens particulier[16]; *J' aime* LE *pain*, LA *viande*, LES (*pommes de terre*) *que vous m*[25]*'avez donnés.*

Sens général; *Je parle* DU *pain*, de LA *viande*, DES (*pommes de terre.*)

Sens particulier; *Je parle* DU *pain*, de LA *viande*, DES (*pommes de terre*) *que nous avons achetés.*

Sens général; *Je préfère* LE *fruit* AU *pain*, à LA *viande*, AUX (*pommes de terre.*)

Sens particul. *Je préfère* LE *fruit que j'ai à souper*, AU *pain*, à LA *viande*, *et* AUX (*pommes de terre*) *que j'avais à dîner.*

All - names common[16] *used in a sense - (in which) they have not any — in english; as,* BREAD IS GOOD; *or in a - particular (in which) - have - —* THE; *as, the* BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, *require the — definite* le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux; *ex.*

- —; I like bread, meat, (apples of the earth, i. e. *potatoes.) - —; - — the —, the —, the —, which you me*[25] *have given.*

- —; I speak of —, of —, of —.

- —; - — of the —, of the —, of the — which we have bought.

- —; - prefer fruit to —, to —, to —.

- —; - — the — — I have at —, to the —, to the —, — to the — which I had at dinner.

9. Si on veut ne désigner qu' une[1] *portion* de la substance dont on[46] parle, il faut employer avant le nom, un des signes *partitifs*[16] DU, *de* LA, DES, exprimés[13] en anglais par SOME; mais il est bon d' observer que le signe *some* s'omet très-souvent, et que les signes DU, *de* LA, DES, doivent toujours s'exprimer.

Il paraît que ce signe est le même que celui[44] de l'article défini[16] OF THE, régi par le mot PORTION sous-entendu, et que nous avons été obligés d'admettre faute d'un autre signe pour désigner cette idée; ainsi, quand je dis;

Il m[25]*'a donné* DU *pain*, *de* LA *viande*, DES (*pommes de terre;*)

c' est comme si je disais;

Il m[25]*' a donné* une portion DU *pain*, de LA *viande*, DES (*pommes de terre.*)

If we wish to denote only a portion of - — (of which) we[46] *speak, we must use before - —, one (of the) signs partitive* du, de la, des, *expressed - — by* SOME; *but it is proper to observe that - —* SOME *is left out very often, - - - —* du, de la, des, *must always be expressed.*

It appears that this — is - same - that[44] *of - — —* OF THE *governed by - word portion understood, - which we - been obliged to admit (for want) of another — to denote this idea; so, when I say:*

He me[25] *has given some -, some —, some —; it is as if - said;*

He me[25] *has - a portion of —, of —, of —.*

8. Cette règle a DEUX EXCEPTIONS. La première est que les signes partitifs[16] DU, *de* LA, DES, étant les mêmes que ceux de l'article défini[16] OF THE;

This rule has two exceptions. - first is that - — partitive du, de la, des, *being - same as those of the — definitive* OF THE

quand un nom employé dans un sens partitif[16] est régi par un autre nom, il ne faut pas employer DU, *de* LA, DES, qui rendraient l'idée particulière et désigneraient OF THE; il faut employer seulement DE avant le nom; ainsi, il faut dire;

when a noun used in a — — is governed by another —, we must not use du, de la, des, *which (would make) - idea - - (would denote)* OF THE; *we must use only* de *before - —; so, we must say;*

Il m[25]*'a donné un morceau* DE *pain, une livre* DE *viande;* Non, *un morceau* DU *pain, une livre* de LA *viande.*

He me[25] *has given a piece of —, a pound of —; not, a piece (of the) —, - — of the —.*

J'ai une grande quantité DE *(pommes de terre;)* Non, DES *pommes de terre.*

I have a great quantity of —; not, (of the) —.

N. B. On doit comprendre dans cette règle les mots suivants[16] qui prennent DE avant le nom qui les[24] suit, quand ce nom est employé dans un *sens partitif*[16];

We[16] *must include in this rule - words following which take* de *before - — - follows them, when - - is used in - — partitive;*

ASSEZ; ex.	*assez* DE *pain.*	Enough;	*ex. enough of bread.*
BEAUCOUP;	*beaucoup* DE *viande.*	Much,	*much - meat;*
	beaucoup DE *gens.*	Many;	*many - people.*
TANT	*tant* D'*argent.*	So much,	*so much - money;*
	tant DE *pommes de terre.*	So many;	*so many - potatoes.*
AUTANT;	*autant* DE *pain.*	As much,	*as much - bread;*
	autant DE *gens.*	As many;	*as many - people.*
PLUS;	*plus* DE *viande.*	More;	*more - meat.*
MOINS;	*moins* D'*argent.*	Less;	*less - money.*
TROP;	*trop* DE *peine.*	Too much,	*too much - trouble*
	trop D'*enfants.*	Too many;	*too many - children*
PEU;	*peu* DE *pain.*	Little, few;	*little - —.*
GUÈRE;	*guère* D'*habits.*	Little, few;	*few - clothes.*
PAS,	*pas* D'*argent.*	No, not;	*not - money;*
POINT;	*point* D'*amis.*		*not - friends.*
JAMAIS;	*jamais* DE *repos.*	Never;	*never - rest.*

10. La seconde exception est que si le nom employé dans un *sens partitif*[16] est accompagné d'un *adjectif*, et que cet adjectif précède le nom, au lieu des signes DU, *de* LA, DES, avant le nom, on met DE *avant l'adjectif*, sans considérer le genre ou le nombre du nom qui le[24] suit, et ce DE avant l'adjectif, désigne la même idée que les signes DU, *de* LA, DES, avant le nom; ex.

— second — is that if - noun used in a sense partitive is attended by an adjective, and that this - precedes - —, instead (of the) — du, de la, des, *before - —, we*[16] *use* de *before - —, without considering - — or - — (of the) - which — it,*[24] *- this* de *- - —, denotes - same idea as - —* du, de la, des, *— - — ; —.*

Voici DE *bon pain,* D'*excellente viande,* DE *jeunes (pommes de terre.)*

(Here is) some good —, some — —, some young potatoes.

Mais si le nom précède l'adjectif,* il faut revenir, aux signes DU, *de* LA, DES, et on[16] doit dire;

But if - — precedes - —, we must return to the — du, de la, des, *and we*[16] *must say;*

Voici DU[8] *pain frais,*[16] de LA[8] *viande excellente,*[16] DES[8] *(pommes de terre) rôties.*

(Here is) - — new, - — excellent, - — roasted

* See rules 16 and 17.

DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

11. Quelquefois plusieurs noms (se rencontrent dans la même phrase, ayant une espèce de rapport ensemble; comme, quand je dis; *Le livre* de PIERRE; ces mots de PIERRE ajoutés à livre, servent, outre l' idée de livre, à donner celle de possession.

Sometimes several — meet in - same sentence, having a kind of reference together; as, when I say; The — of Peter; these - of Peter added to –, serve, besides - idea of –, to give that of possession.

Les Anglais ont plusieurs manières de placer ces noms en rapport.

The English have several ways of placing these nouns in reference.

Quelquefois ils les[84] placent dans l' ordre que les idées considérées séparément se[84] présentent à l' esprit; comme, *The* BOOK *of* PETER; *The* PEN *of the* MASTER; *The* CROWN *of the* KING.

Sometimes they them[84] place in the order that - - considered separately themselves present to - mind; as, - — - — ; . — - - — ; - — - - —.

Quelquefois ils renversent l' ordre des mots, et placent le nom du possesseur avant celui[44] de la chose possédée; comme, PETER's BOOK; *the* MASTER's PEN; *the* KING's CROWN.

— - reverse - — of the words, - — - name of the possessor before that of - thing possessed; as, — —; - — — —; - — —

D'autres fois enfin, ils donnent à (l'un) de ces noms la propriété d'un adjectif, et le[84] placent avant la chose qu'il désigne; *The* STREET-DOOR; LONDON-PORTER; *a* GOLD-WATCH; SILK-STOCKINGS.

At other times in short, - give to - - nouns - property of an adjective, - it — — - thing which it denotes; - — —; — —; - — —; — —.

Les Français au contraire n' ont qu' une manière de placer ensemble ces noms; Ils placent invariablement *le premier*, le nom qui est le *sujet du*[7] *discours*, et ces deux noms s'unissent ensemble par le moyen des signes DE, DU, *de* LA, DES, suivant que le nom est ou propre ou commun, défini ou partitif; ainsi, dans cet[8] exemple; PETER's BOOK: le sujet du[7] discours étant *a* BOOK, et (non pas) PETER, on doit commencer la phrase par *livre*, et dire: Le *livre*, Demande, le livre de qui? Réponse, *de Pierre*. Dans cet autre; *The* MASTER's PEN; le *sujet du*[7] *discours* étant *a* PEN; on doit commencer la phrase par PEN, et on doit dire; La *plume*, D. .a plume de qui? R. *du maître*.

The French on the contrary have only one way of placing together - nouns; They - invariably - first, - - which is - subject (of the) discourse - - two - are united - by - means (of the) signs -, -, - -, -, according as - - is either proper or common, definite or partitive; so, in this -; - -; the subject (of the)[7] discourse being - -, and not - we[46] must begin - sentence by —, - say: The -, Query, - - of whom? Ans. of Peter. In - other; - — —; - - (of the) — being a -, we must begin - — by -, - we must say; the pen, Q. - - of whom? A. of the master.

Et dans ces autres phrases: *The* STREET-DOOR; LONDON-BEER; *a* GOLD-WATCH,

- - - other sentences: The — —; — —; -. — —;

DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

SILK-STOCKINGS; le sujet du[7] discours étant DOOR, BEER, WATCH, STOCKINGS, ces mots doivent se placer les premiers, et on doit dire:	— —; - - *(of the)* — *being* —, —, —, —, *these - must be placed - first, we must say:*
La[1] *porte* DE LA[1] *rue.*	*- door of - street.*
De la[8] *bière*, DE *Londres.*	*Some beer of London.*
Une[1] *montre* D'*or.* Des[8] *bas* DE *soie.*	*- watch of gold. - stockings of silk.*
12. (Il y a) des[8] cas où *l'** on ne pourrait pas changer ainsi l'ordre des mots en anglais, sans changer aussi l'idée qu' on veut exprimer; par exemple, si, au lieu de dire; *a* WINE-GLASS; *a* WATER-POT; on disait, *a* GLASS *of* WINE; *a* POT *of* WATER; on[46] exprimerait une idée (tout-à-fait) différente[16]; cependant ces noms demandent cet ordre en français, mais au lieu de les[24] unir par les signes DE, DU, *de* LA, DES, on les[24] unit par la préposition À. Ceci arrive quand on veut désigner l'*usage*, et non la *possession* de la chose dont on parle; ex.	*(There are) - instances (in which) could not change so - - (of the) - in english, without - also - - which we[46] wish to express; for —, if, instead of saying; - — — : - — —; we said, - - of -; - - of —; we should express an - quite different; yet these nouns require this order in french, but instead of them uniting by* - - de, du, de la, des, *we them[24] unite by - preposition* à. *This happens when we[46] wish to denote - use, - - - - - - (of which) we speak; ex.*
Un verre À *vin.* *Un pot* À *eau.*	*A glass fit for wine. - pot fit for water.*
Une cuiller À *thé.* *Des[8] armes* À *feu.*	*- spoon fit for tea. - arms fit to fire with*
Un sac À *poudre.* *Un moulin* À *vent.*†	*A bag fit for powder. A mill to be [turned by the wind.*†

* When ON comes after the conjunctions ET, SI, OU, or any word ending in OU or ON, or between QUE and a verb beginning with CON or COM, the letter L' is generally placed before ON, to soften the sound of these words which otherwise would be disagreeable; so we say; *C'est un pays* où L'on *vit à bon marché*; it is a country where people live cheap: *On apprend plus facilement les choses que* L'on *comprend, que celles que* L'on *ne comprend pas*; people learn more easily the things which they understand, than those which they do not understand: *où on vit, &c.* qu'*on comprend, &c.* would be harsh to the ear. But if these words were followed by LE, LA, LES, L' must not be added to ON, as it would then cause the same discordance which it is intended to remove; so we say; *Si* ON *le savait*, NOT, *Si* L'ON *le savait*; if people knew it. *On estimerait davantage la science*, si ON la *connaissait*, NOT, si L'ON la *connaissait*; people would esteem learning more, if they were acquainted with it.

N. B. Some authors make frequent use of this L' without any necessity.

† This rule is not without some exceptions; for we say; *un pot* DE *chambre*; a chamber-pot. *Une fille* DE *chambre*; a chamber-maid. *Un bonnet* DE *nuit*; a night-cap. *Un mouchoir* DE *poche*; a pocket-handkerchief. *Un cheval* DE *carrosse*, a coach-horse, &c. These few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these compound names are expressed by a single word in french; as Coach-man, *Cocher*; Foot-man, *Laquais*; Fisher-man, *Pêcheur*; Fish-market, *Poissonnerie*; Fish-bone, *Arête*; Water-fall, *Cascade*; Counting-house, *Comptoir*; Coach-house, *Remise*; Arm-chair, *Fauteuil*, &c. These expressions are all found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

CHAP. IV.

DES ADJECTIFS.

Quelquefois on[46] veut désigner les qualités des personnes, ou des choses dont on[46] parle; comme quand je dis:

Un[1] BON *mari*, *Une*[1] BELLE *femme*,
De[10] JOLIS *enfants*, *Des fruits* MÛRS;[18]

les mots *bon*, *belle*, *jolis*, *mûrs*, qui servent à désigner la qualité des substances dont je parle, s'appellent ADJECTIFS.

Sometimes we[46] *wish to denote qualities (of the)* - or (- -) *things (of which) we*[46] *speak; as when I say:*

A good husband, A fine woman,
Some pretty children, Fruits ripe;

the words good, fine, pretty, ripe, — *serve to denote - quality (of the) — (of which) - speak, are called —.*

13. L'adjectif doit être du MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOMBRE que le nom qu' il qualifie.

- - must be (of the) same gender and (- -) - number as which it qualifies.

Le *féminin* d' un adjectif se forme en ajoutant *e muet* au masculin; ex.

Voilà un JOLI *garçon; il est bien* HABILLÉ.
Voilà une JOLIE *fille; elle est très-bien* HABILLÉE.

- feminine of an - is formed by adding e mute *to the -; ex.*

(That is) a pretty boy; he is well dressed.
(- -) a pretty girl; she - very well dressed.

Excepté les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *e muet*, qui sont les mêmes pour (les deux) genres; ex.

Un JEUNE *homme* AIMABLE.[16]
Une[1] JEUNE *femme* AIMABLE.[16]

Except - - that end in e mute, *which are the same for both -; ex.*

- young man amiable.
- - woman —.

Excepté aussi les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *x*, lesquels changent *x* en *se* pour le féminin; ex.

Mon frère est PARESSEU*x*.
Ma sœur est PARESSEU*se*.

- also - - that end in x, *which change* x *into* se *for -; ex.*

My brother is lazy.
My sister - lazy

Le *plurier* des adjectifs se forme de la même manière que celui des noms, en ajoutant *s* ou *x* au singulier; ex.

Une JOLIE *fille*. *De*[10] JOLIE*s filles*.
Un BEAU *chapeau*. *De* BEAU*x chapeaux*.

- plural (of the) - is formed in - same manner as that (of the) -, by adding s *or* x *(to the) —; ex.*

A pretty girl. Some - -.
A fine hat. Some fine hats.

14. Quand un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms du MÊME genre, il doit être du MÊME genre que ces noms, et PLURIER; ex.

Mon père et mon frère sont OCCUPÉ*s*.
Ma mère et ma sœur sont OCCUPÉE*s*.

When an - qualifies several - (of the) same - it must be (- -) — - as those —, - —; ex.

My father - - brother are busy.
My mother - - sister - -.

15. Si un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms de genres *différents*,[16] l' adjectif doit être MASCULIN[16] et PLURIER; ex.

Mon père et ma mère sont OCCUPÉ*s*.

If - - qualifies several - of - different, - - must be masculine - -; ex - - and - - - —.

DES ADJECTIFS.

16. En anglais les adjectifs se placent ordinairement AVANT le nom; en français ils se placent APRÈS le nom; ex.
Un habit ROUGE. *Un chapeau* NOIR.
Une[1] *table* RONDE, *Un bâton* ROMPU.

In english - - are placed generally before -, in french they are placed after - -; ex.
A coat red. - hat black.
A table round. - stick broken.

17. De cette règle on doit excepter les adjectifs, (BEAU, BEL, BELLE;) (BON, BONNE;) GRAND; (GROS, GROSSE;) JEUNE; JOLI; MAUVAIS; MÉCHANT; MEILLEUR; MÊME; MOINDRE; PETIT; PLUSIEURS; TOUT; (VIEUX, VIEILLE;) qui se placent ordinairement avant le nom; car on dit:
Un BON *mari.* *Une* BELLE *femme.*
De JOLIS *enfants.* *Un* GROS *arbre.*
Une PETITE *maison.* *Un* GRAND *jardin.*

From this — we[16] *must except - - (fine, handsome;) good; (great, large, tall;) big; young; pretty, bad; wicked; better; same; less; (little, small;) several; (all, whole:) old; which are placed generally before - -; for we say:*
- - husband. - - woman.
Some - children. - big tree.
- small house. - large garden.

Les mêmes mots qui servent à qualifier les noms, servent aussi au moyen des adverbes, à en[24] *comparer* les qualités.

- same — which serve to qualify - —, - also (by the) means (of the) - to (of them) compare - —.

Quand on compare ensemble deux substances, la qualité d' une de ces substances est ou *supérieure*, ou *inférieure, ou égale* à la qualité de l' autre; et ceci s' appelle COMPARATIF; ou la qualité d' une de ces substances est (au-dessus de) toutes les autres; et ceci s' appelle SUPERLATIF.

When we compare together two substances, - — of one of these — is either superior, or inferior, or equal to - — of the other; and this is called comparative; or the — of one of these — is above all the others; — this is called superlative.

18. Le comparatif de *supériorité* se forme en mettant PLUS avant l'adjectif; ex.
Mon frère est PLUS grand QUE *vous.*

The — of superiority is formed by putting plus *before - —; ex.*
- - is (more tall or *taller) than -.*

19. Le comparatif d' *infériorité* se forme par MOINS, ou PAS SI avant l'adjectif; ex.
Mon frère est MOINS grand *ou n' est* PAS SI grand QUE *vous.*

The — of inferiority is formed by moins *or* pas si *— the —; ex.*
My — is less tall, or *is not so tall as —.*

20. Le comparatif d' *égalité* se forme en mettant AUSSI avant l'adjectif; ex.
Mon frère est AUSSI grand QUE *vous.*

The — of equality is formed by putting aussi *before - —; ex.*
My — is as tall as —

21. Le *superlatif* se forme en ajoutant *l' article* aux particules comparatives[18] PLUS, MOINS; ex.
Mon frère est LE PLUS *grand.*
Ma sœur est LA MOINS *grande.*[18]
Vos enfants sont LES PLUS *grands.*[18]
MON *meilleur ami.* SA PLUS *belle robe.*

The — is formed by adding the — (to the) — — plus, moins; *ex.*
My — is the most tall, or *- tallest.*
My — is the least tall.
Your - are - most tall, or *- tallest.*
- best friend. Her finest gown.

CHAP. V.

DES PRONOMS.

Comme il serait souvent ennuyeux de répéter les mêmes noms, on[46] a adopté certains petits mots pour représenter ces noms, et que pour cette raison on[46] a appelés PRONOMS; ainsi, quand je dis: JE ou MOI; ces mots JE ou MOI représentent mon nom; TU, TOI; NOUS; VOUS; IL, LUI; ILS, EUX; ELLE, ELLES, représentent les noms de quelques autres personnes.

As it would be often tedious to — the same -, we[46] have adopted certain small words to represent these —, - which for this reason we[46] have called —; so, when I say: I *or* me; *these* — I *or* me — - *name*; thou, thee, (we, us;) you; he,him; they,them; (she,her;) (they, them,) — - *names of some other persons.*

On[46] distingue les pronoms en PERSONNELS, RELATIFS, POSSESSIFS, DÉMONSTRATIFS, INDÉFINIS.

We[46] distinguish the — into personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS[16].

Les pronoms PERSONNELS[16] sont ceux de ces mots qui tiennent ordinairement la place des *personnes.*

The — —[16] are such of these - which keep usually - - of —, or *are used instead of —.*

On distingue en grammaire *trois personnes.* La *première personne* est celle qui parle; comme, JE *suis,* NOUS *sommes;* la *seconde personne* est celle à qui on parle; comme, TU *es,* VOUS *êtes;* et la *troisième personne* est celle dont on parle; comme, IL *est,* ELLE *est;* ILS *sont,* ELLES *sont;* mais chacune de ces personnes est représentée par plusieurs mots différents[16].

We distinguish in — three persons. The first person is that who speaks; as, I *am,* we *are; - second - - - to whom we speak; as,* thou *art,* you *are; - - third — - - (of whom) we speak; as* he *is,* she -; they *are,* they -; *but each - these — is represented by several - different*[16].

Les pronoms qui représentent la *première* personne sont JE, MOI*; ME, MOI*; NOUS.

Ceux qui représentent la *seconde* sont TU, TOI*; TE, TOI*; VOUS.

Ceux qui représentent la *troisième* sont IL, LUI*; ILS, EUX*; LE, LUI*; LES, LEUR*; pour le *mas;* ELLE, ELLES; LA, LUI*; LES, LEUR*; pour le *fém;* mais ces mots ne (s'emploient) pas indifféremment l'un pour l'autre.

The — which represent - first — are I*; me*; (we, us.)

Those which — the second are thou*; thee*; you.

Those which — the third are he*; they*; him*; them*; *for the —;* she, they; her*; them*; *for the -; but these - (are used) not indiscriminately the one for the other.*

Pour rendre ce sujet plus clair, il me[24] semble nécessaire de diviser ces pronoms en *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, et en *objets* du verbe.

To render this subject more clear, it (to me[24]) seems necessary to divide these — into — or agents (of the) verb, and into objects (- -) —.

* These two words are expressed by the same word in english, but they are not used indiscriminately in french, as will appear by the following rules.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Par *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, je (veux dire) les mots qui dirigent l'action du verbe ; et par *objets* du verbe, les mots qui en[24] reçoivent l' action ; ainsi, dans cette phrase, JE VOUS[24] *aime ;* JE est le *nominatif* ou agent du verbe *aime*, et VOUS en[24] est l' *objet ;* et dans cette autre, VOUS[24] M' *aimez ;* VOUS est le *nominatif* du verbe *aimez ;* et ME en[24] est l' *objet.*

By — or — (of the) - I mean - words which direct the - (of the) - ; - by objects (of the) -, - which (of it[24]) receive - - ; so, in this sentence, I you[24] *love,* I *is - - or - (of the) - love, -* you *(of it[24]) is - - ; - - this other,* you me *love ;* you *is - — (of the) - love ; -* me *(of it[24]) is - —*

Les pronoms *nominatifs*[16] sont pour la *première* personne, JE, MOI, *singulier ;* NOUS, *plurier ;* pour la *seconde* personne, TU, TOI, *singulier ;* VOUS, *plurier ;* pour la *troisième* au *masculin*, IL, LUI, *singulier ;* ILS, EUX, *plurier ;* pour la *troisième* au *féminin*, ELLE, *singulier ;* ELLES, *plurier ;* mais les mots JE *ou* MOI ; TU *ou* TOI ; IL *ou* LUI ; ILS *ou* EUX, (ne s' emploient pas) indifféremment l' un pour l' autre.

The — nominative[16] *are for - first —* I, *singular ;* we, *plural ; - - second —* thou, *singular ;* you, *plural ; - - third (in the) masculine,* he, *singular ;* they, *plural ; - - third (in the) feminine,* she, *singular ;* they, *plural ; but - -* je *or* moi ; tu *or* toi ; il *or* lui ; ils *or* eux, *(are not used) indiscriminately the one for the other.*

22. JE, TU, IL, ILS, s' emploient (toutes les fois qu') il y a dans la phrase un verbe qui peut s'accorder avec ces pronoms ; ex. JE *suis*, TU *es*, IL *est*, ILS *sont.*

Je, tu, il, ils, *are used whenever there is in - sentence a - which may agree with - — ; -* I *am,* thou *art,* he *is,* they *are.*

23. MOI, TOI, LUI, EUX, s' emploient lorsque ces mots sont joints à un autre substantif pour nominatif du même verbe, ou lorsque le verbe est sous-entendu ; ex. *Qui est là ?* MOI. *Ce n' est pas* MOI *qui ai fait cela ; c' est* LUI. *Vous et* MOI *nous irons.* TOI *et* LUI *vous resterez. Ce sont* EUX *qui me*[25] *l'*[29] *ont dit.*

Moi, toi, lui, eux, *are used when these - are joined to another — for — (of the) same —, or when - - is understood ; ex. Who is there? I. It is not* I *who have done that ; it is* he. You *- I will go.* Thou *- he shall stay. It is* they *- me it*[29] *have told*

N. B. NOUS, VOUS, ELLE, ELLES, étant invariablement les mêmes dans touts les[7] cas, ne présentent aucune difficulté.

N. B. Nous, vous, elle, elles, *being invariably - same in all instances, present no difficulty.*

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe sont pour la *première* personne ME, MOI, *sing ;* NOUS, *plur ;* pour la *seconde* personne TE, TOI, *singul ;* VOUS, *plur ;* pour la *troisième* personne au *masculin*, LE, LUI, *singul ;* LES, LEUR, EUX, *plur ;* pour la *troisième* personne au *féminin* LA, LUI, ELLE, *singul ;* LES, LEUR, ELLES, *plur ;* mais ces mots ne s'emploient pas indifféremment.

The — — (of the) — are for - first — me, *singular ;* us, *plural ; - - — —* thee, *singular ;* you, *plural ; - - third - in the masculine,* him, him *singular ;* them, *plural ; - - — — (in the) feminine* her, *singular ;* them, them *plural ; but these — are used not indiscriminately.*

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe se placent tantôt *avant*, et tantôt *après* le verbe ; et le choix de ces mots dépend de la *place* que ces pronoms occupent dans la phrase.

The — — (of the) — are placed sometimes before, - - after - - ; - - choice of - — depends on - place - - - keep in - sentence.

24. Prenez pour règle générale[16] que les pronoms objets du verbe, se placent en français *avant* le verbe qui les[24] régit ; dans ces cas ME s' exprime par ME, et THEE par TE ; ainsi on dit :

Take for rule — that - — - (of the) -, are placed in — before - — which -[24] governs ; - these instances - is expressed - me, *- — by* te ; *so we say :*

Il ME *voit.*	ME *voit-il ?*	*He* me *sees.*	Me *sees he ?*†
Il TE *voit.*	TE *voit-il ?*	- thee -.	Thee - -?
Il LE *voit.*	LE *voit-il ?*	- him -.	Him - -?
Il LA *voit.*	LA *voit-il ?*	- her -.	Her - -?
Il NOUS *voit.*	NOUS *voit-il ?*	- us -.	Us - -?
Il VOUS *voit.*	VOUS *voit-il ?*	- you -.	You -?
Il LES *voit.*	LES *voit-il ?*	- them -.	Them - -?
Il ne ME *voit pas.*	*Ne* ME *voit-il pas ?*	*He* me *sees not.*	Me *sees he not ?*‡
Il ne TE *voit pas.*	*Ne* TE *voit-il pas ?*	- thee - -.	Thee - - -?
Il ne LE *voit pas.*	*Ne* LE *voit-il pas ?*	- him - -.	Him - - -?
Il ne LA *voit pas.*	*Ne* LA *voit-il pas ?*	- her - -.	Her - - -?
Il ne NOUS *voit pas.*	*Ne* NOUS *voit-il pas ?*	- us - -.	Us - - -?
Il ne VOUS *voit pas.*	*Ne* VOUS *voit-il pas ?*	- you - -.	You - - -?
Il ne LES *voit pas.*	*Ne* LES *voit-il pas ?*	- them - -.	Them - - -?

25. Observez seulement que si le verbe qui régit ces pronoms est composé d'un des verbes auxiliaires[16] AVOIR ou ÊTRE, et d'un participe passé[16], les pronoms se placent *avant* le verbe *auxiliaire*[16], non entre le verbe auxiliaire et le participe ; ainsi on dit :

Observe only that if - — - governs - - is compounded - - (- -) - auxiliary[16] have *or* be, *and - - participle past[16], - — are placed* before *- - —, not between - - — - - — ; so we say :*

Il M' *a vu.*	M' *a-t*-il vu ?*	*He* me *has seen.*	Me *has he -?*§
Il T' *a vu.*	T' *a-t-il vu ?*	- thee - -.	Thee - - -?
Il L' *a vu.*	L' *a-t-il vu ?*	- him - -.	Him - - -?
Il L' *a vue.*	L' *a-t-il vue ?*	- her - -.	Her - - -?
Il NOUS *a vus.*	NOUS *a-t-il vus ?*	- us - -.	Us - - -?
Il VOUS *a vus.*	VOUS *a-t-il vus ?*	- you - -.	You - - -?
Il LES *a vus.*	LES *a-t-il vus ?*	- them - -.	Them - - -?
Il ne M' *a pas vu.*	*Ne* M' *a-t*-il pas vu ?*	*He* me *has not seen.*	Me *has he -?*‖
Il ne T' *a pas vu.*	*Ne* T' *a-t-il pas vu ?*	- thee - - -.	Thee - - -?
Il ne L' *a pas vu.*	*Ne* L' *a-t-il pas vu ?*	- him - - -.	Him - - -?
Il ne L' *a pas vue.*	*Ne* L' *a-t-il pas vue ?*	- her - - -.	Her - - -?
Il ne NOUS *a pas vus.*	*Ne* NOUS *a-t-il pas vus ?*	- us - - -.	Us - - -?
Il ne VOUS *a pas vus.*	*Ne* VOUS *a-t-il pas vus ?*	- you - - -.	You - - -?
Il ne LES *a pas vus.*	*Ne* LES *a-t-il pas vus ?*	- them - - -.	Them - - -?

* The letter (*t*) has not any meaning here, it is added only to soften the pronunciation.

† Proper english, *Does he see me, &c.*

‡ *Does he not see me ? &c.*

§ Proper english, *Has he seen me, &c.*

‖ *Has he not seen me ? &c.*

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS

26. Cette règle est sujette[13] à *deux exceptions;* la *première*[13] est que si on[46] *commande,* les pronoms se placent *après* le verbe; alors on[46] exprime *ME* par MOI, et *THEE* par TOI.

This rule is liable to two — ; - first is that if we[46] command, - — *are placed after* - — ; *then we*[46] *express* — *by* moi, *and* — *by* toi.

27. Mais si le verbe *défend,* les pronoms rentrent dans la règle générale[16], et se placent *avant* le verbe; alors *ME* s'exprime par ME, et *THEE* par TE; ex.

Commandement.[26]	Défense.[27]
Regarde-MOI.	*Ne* ME *regarde pas.*
Regarde-TOI.	*Ne* TE *regarde pas.*
Regardez-NOUS.	*Ne* NOUS *regardez pas.*
Regardez-VOUS.	*Ne* VOUS *regardez pas.*
Regardons-LE.	*Ne* LE *regardons pas.*
Regardons-LA.	*Ne* LA *regardons pas.*
Regardons-LES.	*Ne* LES *regardons pas.*

But if - — *forbids,* — — *return into* - — —, - *are placed* before - — ; *then* — *is expressed by* me, - — *by* te; *ex.*

Commanding	Forbidding.
I look at me,	Me *look at not.*
— - thyself,	Thyself - - -.
— - us,	Us - - -.
— - yourself.	Yourself - - -.
Let us look at him,	Him *let us not look* -.
- - - - her,	Her - - - - -.
- - - - them.	Them - - - - -.

28. Les pronoms ne sont pas toujours régis[13] par les verbes; ils sont souvent régis par une *préposition* qui les[24] unit au verbe qui les[24] accompagne; alors le pronom étant l'objet de la préposition, et non l'objet du verbe, il se place *après* la préposition; et *ME* s'exprime par MOI; *THEE* par TOI; *HIM* par LUI; *HER* par ELLE; *THEM* par EUX; *masc.;* par ELLES; *fém.;* ex.

Viens à MOI. *Assieds-toi* (près de) MOI.
Nous parlions de TOI. *Allons* avec LUI.
Je ne puis pas y aller sans ELLE.
Avez-vous pensé à EUX, *mas.;* à ELLES *f.?*

The — *are not always governed by the* — ; *they are often* — - - — *which them*[24] *unites (to the)* — — *them*[24] *attends; then* - — *being the object of the* —, — *not* - — *(of the)* —, *it is placed* after - — ; - — *is expressed by* moi; — *by* toi; — *by* lui; — *by* elle; — *by* eux; —; *by* elles, —; *ex.*

Come to me. *Sit thyself by* me. - *were speaking* - thee. *Let us go* - him *I cannot go there without* her. *Have you thought of* them?

29. S'il arrive que plusieurs pronoms soient régis par le même verbe, ils se placent ensemble dans l'ordre qui suit;

Les pronoms de la *première* personne ME, NOUS; ceux de la *seconde* TE, VOUS; et celui de la *troisième* SE, se placent *avant* TOUTS les autres pronoms; LE, LA, LES, se placent *avant* LUI, LEUR, Y, EN; LUI, LEUR, *avant* Y, EN; et Y *avant* EN.

Excepté, lorsqu' on emploie MOI, TOI, au lieu de ME, TE; car alors MOI, TOI, se placent *après* les autres pronoms.

Et lorsque MOI ou TOI rencontrent le pronom EN, ils se changent en M', T', et se placent *avant* EN. Toutes ces variations se font pour la[7] mélodie; ex.

If it happens that several — *are governed by* - *same* —, *they are placed together in* - *order* — *follows* - *The* — - - *first* — me, nous; *those* - - — te, vous; - *that* - - *third* se; *are placed* before ALL - *other* —; le, la, les, - — - lui, leur, y, en; lui, leur, — y, en; - y — en.

Except, when we use moi, toi, *instead of* me, te; *for then* moi, toi, *are placed* after - *other* —.

And when moi *or* toi *meet* - — en, - *are changed into* m' t', - *are placed* — en. *All these* — *are made for*[7] *melody; ex.*

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Pronoms AVANT *le verbe, règle 24 et 25.* *Pronoms* APRÈS *le verbe, règle 26.*

PREMIÈRE PERSONNE.

Il ME LE *donna*,	*He* me him *or* it* *gave*.	*Donnez*-LE-MOI ;	*Give* it *or* him* me
Il ME LA *donna* ;	- - her *or* it* -.	*Donnez*-LA-MOI ,	- it *or* her* -.
Il ME LES *donna* ;	- - them -.	*Donnez*-LES-MOI ;	- them -.
Il M' EN *donna* ;	- me some -.	*Donnez*-M' EN ;	- me some.
Il NOUS LE *donna* ;	- us him *or* it* -.	*Donnez*-NOUS-LE ;	- us, him *or* it.
Il NOUS LA *donna* ;	- - her *or* it* -.	*Donnez*-NOUS-LA ;	- - her *or* it.
Il NOUS LES *donna* ;	- - them -.	*Donnez*-NOUS-LES ;	- - them.
Il NOUS EN *donna* ;	- - some -.	*Donnez*-NOUS-EN ;	- - some.
Il M' Y *a envoyé* ;	- me there *has sent*.	*Envoyez*-Y-MOI ;	*Send* there me.
Il ME L' Y *a envoyé* ;	- - it - - -.	*Envoyez*-L'-Y-MOI ;	- it - -.
Il ME LES Y *a envoyés* ;	- - them - - -.	*Envoyez*-LES-Y-MOI ;	- them - -.
Il M' Y EN *a envoyé* ;	- - - some - -.	*Envoyez*-Y-EN-MOI ;	- - some -.
Il NOUS Y *a envoyés* ;	- us - - -.	*Envoyez*-NOUS-Y ;	- - -.
Il NOUS L' Y *a envoyé* ;	- - it - - -.	*Envoyez*-NOUS-L'-Y ;	- - it -.
Il NOUS LES Y *a envoyés* ;	- - them - - -.	*Envoyez*-NOUS-LES-Y ;	- - them -.
Il NOUS Y EN *a envoyé* ;	- - some - -.	*Envoyez*-NOUS-Y-EN ;	- - - (some.)

SECONDE PERSONNE.

Il TE LE *donna* ,	*He* thee him *or* it* -.	*Représente*-LE-TOI ,	*Represent* it (*to* thee.)
Il TE LA *donna* ,	- - her *or* it* -.	*Représente*-LA-TOI ;	- her *or* it* (- -.)
Il TE LES *donna* ;	- - them -.	*Représente*-LES-TOI ;	- them (- -.)
Il T' EN *donna* ;	- thee some -.	*Représente*-T' EN ;	- thee (*of* it.)
Il VOUS LE *donna* ;	- you him *or* it -.	*Représentez*-VOUS-LE ;	- yourself him *or* it.
Il VOUS LA *donna* ;	- - her *or* it* -.	*Représentez*-VOUS-LA ;	- - her *or* it.
Il VOUS LES *donna* ;	- - them -.	*Représentez*-VOUS-LES ;	- - them.
Il VOUS EN *donna* ;	- - some -.	*Représentez*-VOUS-EN ;	- - (*of* it.)
Il T' Y *a envoyé* ;	- thee there *has sent*.		
Il TE L' Y *a envoyé* ;	- - it - - -.		
Il TE LES Y *a envoyés* ;	- - them - - -.		
Il T' Y EN *a envoyé* ;	- - there some - -.		
Il VOUS Y *a envoyé* ;	- you - - -.	*Transportez*-VOUS-Y ;	*Carry* yourself there.
Il VOUS L' Y *a envoyé* ;	- - it - - -.		
Il VOUS LES Y *a envoyés* ;	- - them - - -.		
Il VOUS Y EN *a envoyé* ;	- - - some - -.	*Informez*-VOUS-Y-EN ;	*Enquire*-there (*of* it.)

TROISIÈME PERSONNE.

Il SE LE *rappelle* ;	*He* to himself it *recalls*.		
Il SE LA *rappelle* ;	- - - her *or* it* -.		
Il SE LES *rappelle* ;	- - - them -.		
Il S' EN *repent* ;	-himself (*of* it) *repents*.		
Il S' Y *applique* ;	- - (*to* it) applies.		
Il LE LUI *a donné* ;	- it (*to* him *or* her) - -.	*Donnez*-LE-LUI ;	*Give* it (*to* him *or* her.)
Il LA LUI *a donnée* ;	- it, her* (- -) - *given*.	*Donnez*-LA-LUI ;	- it *or* her* (- - - -.)
Il LES LUI *a donnés* ;	- them (- -) - -.	*Donnez*-LES-LUI ;	- them (- - - -.)
Il LE LEUR *a donné* ;	- it, him (*to* them) - -.	*Donnez*-LE-LEUR ;	- - - (to them.)
Il LA LEUR *a donnée* ;	- her *or* it* (- -) - -.	*Donnez*-LA-LEUR ;	- it *or* her (- -.)
Il LES LEUR *a donnés* ;	- them (- -) - -.	*Donnez*-LES-LEUR ;	- - (- -.)
Il L' EN *avertit* ;	- him (*of* it) *warned*,	*Avertissez*-L' EN ;	*Warn* him (*of* it.)
Il LES EN *avertit* ;	- them (*of* it) -.	*Avertissez*-LES-EN ;	- them (- -.)
Il L' Y *envoya* ;	- him there *sent* ;	*Envoyez*-L' Y ;	*Send* him *or* it there
Il LES Y *envoya* ;	- them - -.	*Envoyez*-LES-Y ;	- them -.
Il LE LUI Y *envoya* ;	- - (*to* him *or* her) - -.	*Envoyez*-LE-LUI-Y ;	- - - (*to* him *or* her) -.
Il LA LUI Y *envoya* ;	- - (- -) - -.	*Envoyez*-LA-LUI-Y ;	- her *or* it (- -) -.
Il LES LUI Y *envoya* ;	- - (- -) - -.	*Envoyez*-LES-LUI-Y ;	- - (- -) -.
Il LE LEUR Y *envoya* ;	- it (*to* them) - -.	*Envoyez*-LE-LEUR-Y ;	- it *or* him (- -)
Il LA LEUR Y *envoya* ;	- it *or* her (- -) - -.	*Envoyez*-LA-LEUR-Y ;	- her *or* it* (- -) -
Il LES LEUR Y *envoya* ;	- them (- -) - -.	*Envoyez*-LES-LEUR-Y ;	- them (- -) -.
Il LUI EN *envoya* ;	- (*to* him *or* her) - -.	*Envoyez*-LUI-EN ;	- (*to* him) some.
Il LEUR EN *envoya* ;	- (- -) - -.	*Envoyez*-LEUR-EN ;	- (- -) -.
Il LUI Y EN *envoya* ;	- (- -) - - -.	*Envoyez*-LUI-Y-EN ;	- (*to* him) there -.
Il LEUR Y EN *envoya* ;	- (- -) - - -.	*Envoyez*-LEUR-Y-EN ;	- (- -) - -.
Il Y EN *envoya* ;	- - - -.	*Envoyez*-Y-EN ;	- - -.

* See 30th rule.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

30. Comme (il n' y a) en français que *deux genres*, le MASCULIN et le FÉMININ, les pronoms *IT*, *THEY*, *THEM* qui (se rapportent) aux[7] choses, et qui sont du genre NEUTRE[16] en anglais, (s' expriment) par IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES; LE, LA, LES, de même que si on parlait des[7] personnes; ainsi on dit; en parlant d'un *homme* ou d'un *habit;*

IL *est bien fait;*

Je vous LE[24] *montrerai.*

En parlant d'une *femme* ou d'une *fleur;*

ELLE *est belle; Regardez*-LA[26].

As (there are) in french only two genders, the — and the —, the — -, -, - which refer to[7] things, and which are (of the) — neuter - —, *are expressed by* il, elle, ils, elles; le, la, les, *the same as if we[46] spoke of[7] — ; so we say ; in speaking* - - man *or* - - coat;

He *or* it *is well made.*

I you[29] it *or* him *(will shew.)*

- — - - woman - - - flower;

She *or* it *is fine ; look at* her *or it.*

Remarquez que les mots LE, LA, LES, *pronom*, sont précisément les mêmes que LE, LA, LES, *article;* mais il est aisé de ne pas les[24] confondre. LE, LA, LES, *article* est toujours suivi d'un nom; LE, LA, LES, *pronom* est toujours précédé ou suivi d'un verbe; ainsi, dans cette phrase;

Voici LE *père*, LA *mère, et* LES *enfants;* LE, LA, LES est article.

Et dans ces autres; *Je* LE[24] *vois, je* LA[24] *vois, je* LES[24] *vois;*

Voyez-LE[26], *voyez*-LA[26], *voyez*-LES[26]; LE, LA, LES est pronom.

Remark that — words le, la, les, —, *are precisely the same as* le, la, les, — ; *but it is easy to not them[24] confound.* Le, la, les, —, *is always followed by a noun ;* le, la, les — *is always preceded or followed by a — ; so, in this sentence ;*

(Here is) - —, - *mother,* - - *children*, le, la, les *is an article.*

And - these others ; I him see, - her -, - them - ;

See him, - her, - them ; le, la, les *is a* —.

31. Les pronoms *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, *HIM*, *HER*, *THEM* s' emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé dans la phrase, mais avec rapport aux mots MAN, WOMAN, ou PEOPLE sous-entendus; alors *HE*, *HIM* s' expriment par CELUI; *SHE*, *HER* par CELLE; *THEY*, *THEM*, par CEUX; ex.

The — HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, *are used sometimes without reference to a — expressed in the —, but with — (to the) words* MAN, WOMAN, - PEOPLE *understood ; then* HE, HIM *are expressed by* celui; SHE, HER *by* celle; THEY, THEM, *by* ceux; *ex.*

CELUI *à qui*, c'est-à-dire, L'HOMME *à qui personne ne plaît, est plus malheureux que* CELUI *qui*, i. e., *que* L' HOMME *qui ne plaît à personne.*

He *to whom*, i. e., - man *to whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than* he *who*, i. e., *than the* man *who pleases nobody.*

CELLE *qui*, c'est-à-dire, LA FEMME *qui refuse un mari, n' est pas toujours sûre d'en trouver un autre.*

She *who*, i. e., - woman *who refuses a husband, is not always sure of finding another.*

CEUX *qui*, c'est-à-dire, LES GENS *qui paraissent heureux, ne le[24] sont pas toujours.*

They *who*, i. e., - people *who appear happy, so are not always.*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

Le mot RELATIF signifie qui a *rapport*.

The - - means which has reference.

Quoique touts les pronoms par leur nature soient *relatifs*, c'est-à-dire aient du rapport à quelque substantif exprimé ou sous-entendu, on[46] a donné à (ceux-ci) le nom de relatifs, (à l' exclusion) des autres, parcequ' ils servent plutôt à rappeler l'idée des êtres dont on[46] a parlé, qu' à les[24] représenter.

Though all the pronouns by their nature be relative, i. e. have some reference to some — expressed or —, people[46] have given to these the name of —, exclusively (of the) others, because they — rather to recall - idea (- -) beings of which we have spoken, than to them[24] represent.

Les pronoms relatifs[16] sont QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL ; en anglais *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.*

The — relative are qui, que, dont, quoi, quel, lequel ; *in english,* —, —, —, —, —, —.

Ces mots semblent ne présenter aucune difficulté, cependant, comme le même mot est représenté par plusieurs mots différents[16] dans (les deux) langues ; ils embarrassent souvent les commençants ; ainsi faites attention aux règles suivantes.

These — seem - (to present) any difficulty, yet, as - same word is represented by several — —[16] in both languages ; they embarrass often the beginners ; so pay — (to the) — following.

32. Quand *WHO, THAT, WHICH,* sont le *nominatif* d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par QUI ;

Quand *WHOM, THAT, WHICH,* sont *l' objet* d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par QUE* ;

WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, s'expriment par DONT.

When —, —, —, *are the — of a* —, *they are expressed by* qui ;

When —, —, —, *are the — of a* —, *they are expressed by* que* ;

—, *of* —, *of* — *are expressed by* dont.

N. B. QUI, QUE, DONT ne connaissent ni genre ni nombre ; c' est-à-dire, se disent également des[7] personnes et des choses, d'un ou de plusieurs ; ainsi on dit ;

L'homme QUI, *le cheval* QUI, *le carrosse* QUI *est à la porte.*

L'homme QUE, *le cheval* QUE, *le carrosse* QUE *nous avons rencontré.*

L'homme DONT, *le cheval* DONT, *le carrosse* DONT *je vous*[25] *ai parlé.*

N. B. Qui, que, dont, *know neither — nor — ; that is to say, are said both of[7] — and of[7] things, of one or - several ; so we say :*

The man who, - *horse* that, - *coach* which *is at - door.*

The — whom, *the* — that, *the* — which - *have met.*

- — (*of* whom,) - — (*of* which) - - (*of* which) - (*to you*[25]) *have spoken.*

---

* Persons not versed in grammatical terms are often at a loss to distinguish the *object* from the *nominative*, i. e. when to express THAT, WHICH by QUI, and when by QUE.

To these I will observe, that THAT, WHICH are the *nominative*, and expressed by QUI, when they are followed immediately by a verb ; as,

The coach THAT or WHICH is at the door ; *Le carrosse* QUI *est à la porte.*

THAT, WHICH are the *object* of the verb, and expressed by QUE, when, between them and the verb, there is a noun or a pronoun which is the nominative of the verb ; as,

The coach THAT or WHICH we have met ; *Le carrosse* QUE *nous avons rencontré.*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

33. Quelquefois *WHOM*, *WHICH*, sont régis par une préposition, et non par un verbe; alors ils s'expriment,

WHOM par QUI, pour (les deux) genres et (les deux) nombres;

WHICH par *le*QUEL, *la*QUELLE, *les*QUELS, *les*QUELLES.

From *WHICH* par *du*QUEL, *de la*QUELLE, *des*QUELS, *des*QUELLES.

To, at *WHICH* par *au*QUEL, *à la*QUELLE, *aux*QUELS, *aux*QUELLES, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom auquel ils (se rapportent); ainsi on dit;

Voici les gens avec QUI *j'ai dîné.*
Le cheval sur LEQUEL *je suis venu.*
La chaise dans LAQUELLE *j'étais.*
Les chevaux AUXQUELS *je l'*[25]*ai donné.*

Sometimes —, —, are governed by a —, and not a —; then they are expressed, — by qui, *for both —, and both —;*
— by lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles.
From —, by duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles.
To, at — by auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, *(agreeably to) the — and the — (of the) - to which they refer; so we say; (Here are) - people with* whom - - *dined.*
- horse on which - *am come* or - *came.*
- chaise in which - *was.*
- horses to which - *it*[25] *have given.*

34. *WHO*, *WHOM*, *WHOSE* s'emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais par rapport au mot *PERSON* sous-entendu. Ces mots peuvent alors (se tourner) par *WHAT PERSON*, QUELLE PERSONNE, et s'expriment par QUI; ex.

QUI *vous*[25] a *dit cela?* (c'est-à-dire,) QUELLE PERSONNE *vous*[25] *a dit cela?*

Je ne sais QUI *vous (voulez dire);* (c'est-à-dire) QUELLE PERSONNE *vous voulez dire).*

À QUI *ou à* QUELLE PERSONNE *est cette maison?*

De QUI *ou de* QUELLE PERSONNE *est-elle fille?*

—, —, — *are used — without reference to a — expressed, but with — (to the) word — understood. These words may then (be turned) into —*
—, quelle personne, *and are expressed by* qui; *ex.*
Who *you*[25] *has told that?* i. e. what — [25] - - - ?
I know not whom — *mean,* i. e. *what* — — —.
To whom *or* - what — *belongs that house, (or* whose *house is that?)*
Of whom *or* - what — *is she daughter?* whose *daughter* - - ?

Dans les phrases interrogatives[16], *WHICH* demande trois distinctions.

In — sentences interrogative[16] *— requires three distinctions.*

35. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le[24] suit, c'est-à-dire sans le secours des[7] prépositions; comme, *WHICH man? WHICH carriage? WHICH horses?* alors *WHICH* s'exprime par QUEL, QUELLE, QUELS, QUELLES, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom qui le[24] suit; ex.

De QUEL *homme parlez-vous?*
Dans QUELLE *voiture (mettrai-je) ceci?*
À QUELS *chevaux le*[24] *(donnerai-je?)*

Sometimes — is joined like an - (to the) - which follows it,[24] i. e., *without the help (of the) —; as,* — — ? — — ? — — ? *then — is expressed by* quel, quelle, quels, quelles *(agreeably to)* — — *and* - — *(of -)* — - *follows it*[24]; *ex.*
Of which *man speak you?*
In which — *(shall I put) this?*
To which *horses it (shall I give?)*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

36. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint comme un substantif au nom qui le[24] suit, par le moyen d'une préposition; comme, *WHICH of these men? WHICH of the carriages?* ou il s'emploie sans être suivi d'un nom, mais par rapport à un nom dont on a déjà fait mention; comme, *It is one of these men; WHICH is it?* alors

Sometimes — is joined like - — (to the) noun - follows it,[24] *by - means - - —; as, - - - —? - - - —? or it is used — being followed by - —, but with reference to a —, (of which) - - already made —; as, - - - - - -; - is -? then*

WHICH s'exprime par *le*QUEL, *la*QUELLE, *les*QUELS, *les*QUELLES;

which *is expressed by* lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles;

Of, from WHICH par *du*QUEL, *de la*QUELLE, *des*QUELS, *des*QUELLES;

-, - which, *by* duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles;

To, at WHICH par *au*QUEL, *à la*QUELLE, *aux*QUELS, *aux*QUELLES, (c'est-à-dire) l'article défini[16] *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux,* suivant le genre et le nombre du nom, s'ajoute aux mots QUEL, QUELLE, QUELS, QUELLES, comme s'ils étaient eux-mêmes des[8] noms; ex.

-, - which *by* auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, (i. e.) - — — le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, *(agreeably to - — - - — (- -) —, is added (to the)* — quel, quelle, quels, quelles, *as if they were themselves* - [8] N.B. *nouns; ex.*

DUQUEL *de ces hommes parlez-vous?* — (Of which) - - - *speak you?*
LEQUEL *est le plus grand?* — Which *is - most tall,* or - *tallest?*
LAQUELLE *des voitures préférez-vous?* — Which (- -) *carriages prefer you?*
LAQUELLE *est la plus belle?* — Which - - *most fine,* or - *finest?*
LESQUELS *de ces chevaux aurons-nous?* — Which *of these - (shall have) we?*
LESQUELS *sont les meilleurs?* — Which *are the best?*

37. Quelquefois le relatif *WHICH* renferme le mot *THAT* ou *THOSE* sous-entendu, comme, quand, en réponse à cette question; *WHICH horse shall I ride?* Je dis, *Ride WHICH you will,* c'est-à-dire, *THAT WHICH you will; WHICH* dans ce sens s'exprime par CELUI QUE, *mas.;* CELLE QUE, *fém.;* CEUX QUE, *masc. pl.;* CELLES QUE, *fém. plur.;* suivant le genre et le nombre du nom auquel il (se rapporte); ex.

Sometimes - relative which *implies the — — - — understood, as, when, in answer to - question; — — - - —? I say, — — - -,* i. e., *— — - -; — - - sense is expressed by* celui que, *mas.;* celle que, *fem.;* ceux que, - -; celles que, - -; *(agreeably to) - — - - — (of the) — (to which) it refers; ex.*

Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je? — *Which - - — (shall ride) I?*
Montez CELUI QU' *il vous*[24] *plaira?* — *Ride* which, *i. e.* that which - *please.*
Dans quelle voiture mettrai-je ceci? — *In which carriage (shall put)* I *this?*
Mettez-le dans CELLE QUE *je vous ai dit.* — *Put it in* which, *i.e.* that which - - - *told.*
Auxquels des garçons le donnerai-je? — (To which) (- -) *boys it*[24] *(shall give)* I?
Donnez-le[26] *à* CEUX QUE *vous voudrez.* — *Give it* to which, *i.e.* those which - will.

WHAT, (de même que) WHICH, demande trois distinctions.

—, *(as well as)* —, *requires three distinctions.*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

38. Quelquefois *WHAT* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le suit; alors il s'exprime par QUEL, QUELLE, QUELS, QUELLES de la même manière que *WHICH*; ex.

De QUEL *homme, de* QUELLE *voiture, de* QUELS *chevaux parlez-vous?*

Sometimes — is joined like - — (to the) - - follows it[24]*; then it is expressed by* quel, quelle, quels, quelles, *in the same manner as — ; ex.*

Of what —, - what *carriage,* - what *horses speak —?*

39. Quelquefois *WHAT* s'emploie absolument, c'est-à-dire, sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais avec rapport au mot *THING* sous-entendu; alors *WHAT* peut se tourner par *WHAT THING*, et s'exprime par QUE, ou par QUOI.

WHAT s'exprime par QUE, quand il est l' objet d'un verbe; comme,

QUE *dites-vous?* QUE *faites-vous?*

WHAT s'exprime par QUOI, quand il est régi par une préposition; comme,

De QUOI *parle-t-il?* *à* QUOI *pensez-vous?*

Ou employé comme interjection; ex.

QUOI! *vous n'êtes pas encore levé.*

— — is used absolutely, i. e., *without reference - - — expressed, but with — (to the) - — understood; then — may be turned into — —, - is expressed by* que, *or by* quoi.

— is expressed - que, *when it is - object - - —; as,*

What *say —? — do —?*

— is expressed - quoi, — - *- governed - - —; as,*

Of what *speaks - ? To* what *think -!*

Or used as an interjection; ex.

What! *— are not yet up.*

40. *WHAT* s'emploie quelquefois au lieu des mots *THAT, WHICH*; comme, quand on dit; *Do WHAT is just*; c'est-à-dire, *THAT WHICH is just*; alors *WHAT* s'exprime par CE QUI, quand il est le *nominatif* d'un verbe, et par CE QUE, quand il en[24] est l'*objet*; ex.

Faites CE QUI *est juste.*

CE QUE *je vous*[24] *dis est vrai.*

Mais quand *WHAT* dans le sens de *THAT WHICH* est régi par les prépositions *OF, TO*, (il faut) considérer si la préposition vient *avant* ou *après WHAT*; car, *OF WHAT* s'exprime par *de* CE QUI, *nomin.*; par *de* CE QUE, *objet*; ex.

Parlez de CE QUI *vous*[24] *regarde.*

— is used — instead (of the) — —, —; as, when we[48] *say; — — - —; that is to say, — — - —; then — is expressed by* ce qui, *when it is - — of - —, - -* ce que, *— it (of it*[24]*) is - —; ex.*

Do that which *or* what *- just.*

That which *or* what *- - say - true.*

But when — in - sense - — — - governed by - — -, -, (it is necessary) (to -) whether - — comes before *or* after *—; for, - — is expressed by* de ce qui, *—; by* de ce que, *—; ex.*

Speak of what, *i. e. of* that which *concerns.*

WHAT OF, s'exprime par CE DONT;

CE DONT *je parle ne vous regarde pas.*

TO WHAT s'exprime par *à* CE QUI, *à* CE QUE; comme,

(Appliquez-vous) à CE QUI *est utile.*

WHAT TO s'exprime par CE *à* QUOI; comme,

CE *à* QUOI *il s' applique n'est pas utile.*

— -, is expressed by ce dont; *-* (of which) *- - or* what *- speak of - - not - — - — by* à ce qui, à ce que; *as, Apply to* that which *or* what *- useful. — - is expressed by* ce à quoi; *as, —to* which *- applies or* what *- - to - not -.*

DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

On appelle pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] certains mots qu' on[46] emploie à désigner la possession des objets dont on[46] parle.

We[46] call — possessive certain — which are used[46] to denote - — (of the) - (of which) we[46] speak.

Les pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] sont,
MIEN, TIEN, SIEN, pour le *masc.*
MIENNE, TIENNE, SIENNE, *fém.*
NÔTRE, VÔTRE, LEUR, servent pour *(les deux) genres.*

The — — are,
Mine, thine, his *or* hers, *for* - —.
Mine, thine, his *or* hers, —.
Ours, yours, theirs, *serve for both genders.*

N. B. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] sont toujours précédés[18] de l'article défini[16] *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux*, de même que s'ils étaient des noms; ainsi on[46] dit;

N. B. *The — — are always preceded by - — —* le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, *the same as if they were nouns so we[46] say,*

Le MIEN, *la* MIENNE, *les* MIENS, *les* MIENNES. — Mine.
Du MIEN, *de la* MIENNE, *des* MIENS, *des* MIENNES. — *Of* mine.
Au MIEN, *à la* MIENNE, *aux* MIENS, *aux* MIENNES. — *To* mine.
Le TIEN, *la* TIENNE *les* TIENS, *les* TIENNES. — Thine.
Du TIEN, *de la* TIENNE, *des* TIENS, *des* TIENNES. — *Of* thine.
Au TIEN, *à la* TIENNE, *aux* TIENS, *aux* TIENNES. — *To* thine.
Le SIEN, *la* SIENNE, *les* SIENS, *les* SIENNES. — His, Hers.
Du SIEN, *de la* SIENNE, *des* SIENS, *des* SIENNES. — *Of* his, *of* hers
Au SIEN, *à la* SIENNE, *aux* SIENS, *aux* SIENNES. — *To* his, *to* hers.
Le NÔTRE, *la* NÔTRE, *les* NÔTRES. — Ours.
Du NÔTRE, *de la* NÔTRE, *des* NÔTRES. — *Of* ours.
Le VÔTRE, *la* VÔTRE, *les* VÔTRES, *&c.* — Yours.
Le LEUR, *la* LEUR, *les* LEURS, *&c.* — Theirs.

41. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] s'accordent en *genre* et en *nombre* avec le nom qu'ils représentent; ex.

The — — agree in gender - in number with - — which - represent; ex.

Votre cheval est meilleur que LE MIEN; c'est-à-dire, *que* MON CHEVAL.

Your horse is better than mine; i. e., *than my* —.

Ma maison est mieux située que LA SIENNE; c'est-à-dire, *que* SA MAISON.

My house - better situated than his; i. e., *than his* —.

Je préfère cette situation à LA LEUR.

I prefer this situation to theirs.

Vous avez pris mes gants, et moi, j'ai pris LES VÔTRES.

- have taken - gloves, - I have — yours.

Mêlez-vous[26] de vos affaires, et ne vous[27] mêlez pas DES NÔTRES.

Meddle yourself[26] with your —, - yourself[27] meddle not with ours.

DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

42. Les Anglais emploient les pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] *MINE*, *THINE*, *HIS*, *HERS*, *OURS*, *YOURS*, *THEIRS*, dans des cas où les Français font usage des pronoms personnels[16] MOI, TOI, LUI, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, EUX, ELLES ; c'est lorsque ces pronoms (se rencontrent) avec le verbe *To be*, ÊTRE, employé dans le sens du verbe *To belong*, APPARTENIR ; car alors *MINE* s'exprime par *à* MOI ; *THINE*, par *à* TOI ; *HIS*, par *à* LUI ; *HERS*, par *à* ELLE ; *OURS*, par *à* NOUS ; *YOURS*, par *à* VOUS ; *THEIRS*, par *à* EUX, *masculin ;* par *à* ELLES, *féminin ;* ex.

Ce cheval est-il[52] à VOUS?
Oui, il est à MOI.
Je pensais qu' il était à VOTRE *frère.*
Qui vous[25] *a dit qu' il était* à LUI ?
Ne savez-vous pas que tout ce qui est ici est à MOI ?
Je pense que ces livres sont à EUX.
Ils ne sont pas à EUX ; *ils sont* à NOUS.

The English use - — — mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs, *in some - (in which) - — make use (of the)* — — moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles ; *it is when - — meet with* - — TO BE, être, *used in the sense (of the)* — - — —; *for then — is expressed by* à moi ; —, *by* à toi ; his, *by* à lui ; hers, *by* à elle ; ours, *by* à nous ; yours, *by* à vous ; theirs, *by* à eux, — ; *by* à elles, —; *ex.*

This horse is it[52] yours *i. e.* to you ?
Yes, it is mine *i. e.* to me.
I thought - it was to your *brother.*
Who - has told that it was his ?
Know - not that all that which is here is mine ?
- *think* - - - *are* to them *i. e.* theirs.
They are not theirs ; - - ours.

43. Les Anglais font encore usage des pronoms POSSESSIFS[16] *MINE*, *THINE*, *HIS*, *HERS*, *OURS*, *YOURS*, *THEIRS*, dans un autre cas où les Français emploient l'article possessif MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS ; c' est dans ces sortes d'idiotismes ; *A friend* OF MINE ; *A book* OF YOURS ; dans ces cas *MINE* s'exprime par MES ; *THINE*, par TES ; *HIS* ou *HERS*, par SES ; *OURS*, par NOS ; *YOURS*, par VOS ; *THEIRS*, par LEURS, qui, suivant les règles sur l' article, se placent *avant* le nom ; ex.

Un de VOS *amis est venu ici.*
Un de SES *enfants est mort.*
Un de NOS *voisins me*[25] *l' a dit.*
J'ai rencontré un de LEURS *valets.*

The — make still use (of the) — — mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs, *in another instance (in which)* - — *use* - — — mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs ; *it is* - - *kinds of idioms ;* A friend of mine ; A book of yours ; - - - MINE *is expressed by* mes ; THINE, - tes ; HIS *or* HERS, *by* ses ; OURS, - nos ; YOURS, - VOS ; THEIRS, - leurs, -, *(agreeably to)* - - *on the —, are placed before* - - ; *ex.*

One of your friends is come here.*
One of his children† is dead.
One of our neighbours‡ - it has told.
I have met one of their servants.§

---

* Or, *a friend* of yours. † Or, *a child* of his. ‡ Or, *a neighbour* of ours. § Or, *a servant* of theirs.

DES PRONOMS DÉMONSTRATIFS.

On appelle pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS[16] certains mots qui servent à indiquer les objets dont on parle.

We[46] call — demonstrative certain — which — to (point out) - — (of which) we[46] speak.

Ces pronoms sont CELUI, CELLE ; CEUX, CELLES, formés des pronoms *personnels*[16] [46]LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES, auxquels on ajoute CE.

These — - celui, celle ; *(this, that ;)* ceux,celles ; *(these,those,) formed*(- -)— — lui, elle, eux, elles, *(to which) we[46] add* ce.

44. Les pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS, de même que les autres pronoms, s'accordent en *genre* et en *nombre* avec le nom qu' ils représentent ; ex.

The — —, *the same as - other* —, *agrees in — and - — with - — which they represent ; ex.*

Ce cheval vaut mieux que CELUI, (c'est-à-dire) *le* CHEVAL *que vous avez vendu.*

This - is better than that, (i. e.,) *the horse which - have sold.*

Cette maison est mieux située que CELLE, (c'est-à-dire) *la* MAISON *où je demeure.*

This - is better situated than that, i. e., — *house (in which) - live.*

Vos livres sont plus amusants que CEUX *de votre sœur.*

- books are more entertaining than those - - —.

Les rues de Paris ne sont pas si larges, ni si commodes que CELLES *de Londres.*

The streets - — are not so broad, nor so commodious as those - *London.*

N. B. Les mots *THIS, THESE ; THAT, THOSE*, indiquent une distinction locale[16] que les mots CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES ne désignent pas ; (c'est pourquoi) lorsqu' on[46] veut marquer cette distinction en français, (il faut) ajouter aux mots CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, la particule adverbiale[16] CI pour désigner un objet proche, et LÀ pour désigner un objet éloigné ; ex.

N. B. *The* — this, these ; that, those, *(point out)* - — *local*[16] *which* - - celui, celle, ceux, celles *denote not ; therefore when we[46] wish (to shew) that* — - —, *(it is necessary) (to add) (to the)*—celui,celle, ceux, celles, - — *adverbial*[16] *(ci, here,) to denote - object near, - (là, there,) - — - — (far off) ; ex.*

Ce cheval-CI *vaut mieux que* CELUI-LÀ.

This — here *is better - that* there.

Cette maison-LÀ *est mieux située que* CELLE-CI.

That - there *is better situated than this* here.

Ces livres-CI *sont plus amusants que* CEUX-LÀ.

These — here *are more* — *than those* there.

Ces rues-LÀ *sont plus larges que* CELLES-CI.

Those - there *are broader - these* here.

45. CECI, CELA se trouvent aussi dans la classe des pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS[16]. Ces mots représentent le substantif CHOSE sous-entendu, et peuvent se tourner par CETTE CHOSE-CI, CETTE CHOSE-LÀ ; ainsi quand je dis :

(Ceci, *this ;*) (cela, *that ;*) *are found - - - class (of the)* — —.

CECI *est bon* ; c'est comme si je disais, CETTE CHOSE-CI *est bonne.*

These - — - — thing *understood, - may be turned into* this thing, that thing ; *so when - - :* This *is good* ; it is (the same) as if - *said* this thing - *good.*

CELA *est mauvais ;* c'est-à-dire, CETTE CHOSE-LÀ *est mauvaise.*

That - *bad* · i. e. that thing - -.

DES PRONOMS INDÉFINIS.

Les pronoms INDÉFINIS sont des[8] mots qui servent (ainsi que) les autres pronoms à désigner les objets, mais d'une manière indéterminée[15]; comme quand je dis :

ON *vient;* QUELQU' UN *vient;*

Ces mots ON, QUELQU'UN, (bien qu'ils se rapportent à quelque) personne, ne désignent personne en particulier.

The — indefinite are -[8] N.B. — — — *like - other — to denote - —, but in a — indeterminate*[16] *; as when I say :*

People come ; Somebody comes ;

These — people, somebody, *though they refer to some —, denote not (any body) in particular.*

Les pronoms INDÉFINIS[16] sont (en assez grand nombre,) comme on le[24] verra dans la seconde partie de ce traité; mais je ne parlerai ici que du pronom ON, le plus usité de touts.

The — — are (rather numerous,) as we[16] *it (shall see - - — part of this treatise ; but I (will speak) here only (of the) -* On, *most used of all.*

46. ON désigne *quelqu' un, quelque personne,* et représente les mots ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, employés dans un sens indéfini; ainsi, quand je dis : ON *vient;* c'est comme si je disais, QUELQU'UN *vient.*

On *denotes* somebody, some person, - *represents* — — ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, *used - a — — ; so, when I say : one comes ; it is (the same) as - - said, somebody —.*

47. Les Anglais ont une autre manière indéfinie[16] de s[24] exprimer, au moyen du pronom indéfini[16] *IT,* que les Français expriment par ON ; ex.

ON *dit ;* ON *croit ;* ON *rapporte.*

The English have another way — to themselves —, (by the) means (- -) — — IT, which the French express by On ; *ex.*

It is said ; - is believed ; - is reported.

48. Les expressions passives[16] étant contraires au génie de la langue française, on y[24] supplée au moyen du pronom ON ; ainsi, au lieu de dire comme les Anglais ; J'AI ÉTÉ DIT *que des nouvelles* ONT ÉTÉ *reçues ;* les Français disent ;

ON *m' a dit qu'* ON *a reçu des*[8] *nouvelles.*

The expressions passive being contrary to the genius of - — —, we them supply (by the) - (of the) - On, *so, instead of saying like - — ; I have been told that news has been received ; - — say ;*

One - - told - - - received[8] N.B. *news.*

Voilà ce qui rend l'usage du pronom ON si fréquent, que vous trouverez (peu de[8] N.B.) pages où ce petit mot (ne se[24] présente) à vos yeux.

(It is) that which renders - - (of the) On *so frequent, that you (will find) few pages (in which) this small - (itself will not present) - - eyes.*

Remarquez que ON est toujours *nominatif* du verbe, et que, quoiqu' il représente souvent les mots WE, THEY, PEOPLE, qui sont du nombre plurier[16], il demande toujours le verbe à la *troisième* personne au *singulier,* comme on le[24] voit dans ces exemples ;

ON *vient ;* ON *dit ;* ON *croit ;*

ON *pense ;* ON *rapporte ;* ON *a reçu, &c.*

Remark that On *is always nominative (of the) —, - -, though it represents often - —* WE, THEY, PEOPLE, *which are (of the) — —, it requires always - — in - third — (in the) — as we it*[24] *see these — ,*

People come ; — say , - believe ; - think ; — report ; - have received.

CHAP. VI.

DES VERBES.

Le VERBE est un mot dont l'usage est de désigner l' *existence*, ou l' *action* des êtres qui sont le sujet de nos pensées.

The verb is - — (of which) - use - to denote - —, or - — (of the) beings that are - — of our thoughts.

L' *existence;* comme, JE *suis*, J'*existe*. L' *action;* comme, JE *parle*, JE *chante*, JE *marche*, JE *bois*, JE *mange*, *&c.*

The — ; as, I am, I exist. - —; *as,* I speak, I sing, - walk, - drink, - eat, *&c.*

Toute action demande un *agent*, c'est-à-dire, un être pour produire cette action, et cet *agent* s' appelle en grammaire le *nominatif* du verbe.

Every — requires - agent, that is to say, - being to produce - —, - this — is called in grammar - — (of the) —.

Nous avons vu page 41, qu' (il y a) *trois* personnes, dont la *première* est celle qui parle ; la *seconde* celle à qui on parle, et la *troisième* celle dont on parle.

We have seen - 41, that (there are) three —, (of which) - first - that who speaks ; - — that to whom we speak, - - third - (of whom) - —.

49. Le verbe doit être du *même nombre* et de la *même personne* que le *nominatif*, et ceci s'appelle en grammaire accord du verbe avec son nominatif ; ex.

The — must be (of the) same — - of - same — as - —, - this is called in — agreement (of the) — with its — ; ex

J'*apprends ;* TU *apprends ;* IL *apprend ;* ELLE *apprend.*

I learn ; thou learnest ; he learns she learns.

MON FRÈRE *apprend ;* MA SŒUR *apprend.*

- brother learns ; - sister learns.

NOUS *apprenons ;* VOUS *apprenez.*

- learn ; - learn.

ILS OU ELLES *apprennent ;* MES FRÈRES *apprennent ;* MES SŒURS *apprennent.*

- learn ; - brothers learn ; - sisters learn.

Le *nominatif* du verbe se place tantôt *avant*, et tantôt *après* le verbe.

The — (- -) — is placed sometimes before, - — after - —.

50. Dans les phrases qui ne sont pas interrogatives, le nominatif se place *avant* le verbe ; ex.

In - sentences which are not interrogative, - — is placed before - —; *ex.*

J' *apprends bien ;* TU *apprends bien ;*

I learn well ; - learnest well ;

IL *apprend bien ;* ELLE *apprend bien.*

- learns - ; - learns —.

MON FRÈRE *apprend bien ;* MA SŒUR *apprend bien.*

- — — well ; - — — —.

NOUS *apprenons bien ;* VOUS *apprenez bien.*

- learn - ; - learn well.

ILS *apprennent bien ;* ELLES *apprennent bien.*

- learn - ; - learn well.

MES FRÈRES *apprennent bien ;* MES SŒURS *apprennent bien.*

- — — well ; - — — well.

DES VERBES.

Mais quand la phrase est *interrogative*, c' est-à-dire, quand on fait une question, (il faut) considérer si le nominatif du verbe est un NOM ou un PRONOM.

But when - — - —, i. e., - - ask - -, (it is necessary) (to -) whether - — (of the) — - - noun or a —.

51. Si, quand on[46] fait une *question*, le nominatif du verbe est un PRONOM *personnel*[16], ou le pronom *indéfini*[16] ON ou CE, ces pronoms se placent en français comme en anglais *après* le verbe; ex.

If, — we[46] ask a —, - — (of the) — - - — —, or - — — — on or ce, *these — are placed - — as - — - - — ; ex.*

*Apprends-*JE* bien? Apprends-*TU *bien?* — *Learn I* well? Learnest thou — ?*
*Apprend-*IL *bien? Apprend-*ELLE *bien?* — *Learns he —? Learns she — ?*
*Apprenons-*NOUS *? Apprenez-*VOUS *bien?* — *Learn we —? Learn you — ?*
*Apprennent-*ILS *? Apprennent-*ELLES *bien?* — *Learn they — ? Learn they — ?*
*Que dit-*ON *? Est-*CE *là tout?* — *What say people? Is that all?*

52. Si, dans une phrase *interrogative*[16], le nominatif du verbe est un NOM, on place ce nom *avant* le verbe, de même que si la phrase n'était pas interrogative; mais pour marquer qu' on fait une *question*, on ajoute après le verbe un des *pronoms personnels*[16] IL, ELLE, ILS, ou ELLES, suivant le *genre* et le *nombre* du nom qui est le nominatif du verbe; ex.

If, in a sentence —, - — (of the) — - - noun, we[46] — this — before - —, the same as if - — was not — ; but to shew that we ask - —, we add after - — one (of the) — — il, elle, ils, or elles, (agreeably to) - — and - — (of the) — which - - — (of the) — ; ex.

Votre FRÈRE *apprend-*IL* *bien?* — *- brother learns* he* *well?*
Votre SŒUR *apprend-*ELLE *bien?* — *- sister learns* she — ?
Vos FRÈRES *apprennent-*ILS *bien?* — *- brothers learn* they — ?
Vos SŒURS *apprennent-*ELLES *bien?* — *- sisters learn* they — ?

CHAP. VII.

DES ADVERBES.

Nous avons vu page 55, que le verbe est un mot qui sert à exprimer une *action;* mais comme la *même action* peut se faire de *différentes*[13] *manières*, on[46] a adopté certains mots auxquels on[46] a donné le nom d' ADVERBE, pour exprimer la manière dont se fait cette action; comme, *Je marche* VITE; *Tu marches* LENTEMENT. *Nous parlons* BIEN; *Vous parlez* MAL.

We have seen - -, that - - is - - - serves to express - — but as - same — may be performed in — manners, we[46] have adopted — — (to which) - - given - - - —, to express - — (in which) is done this — ; as, - walk fast; *- walkest* slowly *- speak* well; *- speak* badly.

* When the English ask a question, they are obliged to have recourse to the signs *do, does, did*; as, *Do* I learn well? *Does* thou learn well? *Does* he learn well? *Does* your brother learn well? *Does* your sister learn well? *Do* we learn well? *Do* you learn well? *Do* they learn well? *Do* your brothers learn well? *Do* your sisters learn well? *Did* I learn well? *&c.*; the French, as you see, do not require any signs, and when these signs occur in english, they must be left out in french.

DES ADVERBES.

Les mots VITE, LENTEMENT, BIEN, MAL sont des[8] ADVERBES.

- — fast, slowly, well, badly *are* - [8]N.B. adverbs

53. L'adverbe, étant (à l'égard du) verbe ce que l'adjectif est à l'égard du nom, c'est-à-dire, exprimant quelque circonstance du verbe, doit se placer immédiatement *après* le verbe ; ex.

Je vis HIER *votre sœur.*
Elle parle TRÈS-BIEN *français.*
Elle aime FORT *la*[7] *lecture.*

- - *being (with respect to the)*
- *what*[40] - - *is* - — - -
—, i. e. *expressing some*
— *(of the)* —, *must be placed*
— *after* - —; *ex.*
- *saw* yesterday - —.
- *speaks* very well *french.*
- *likes* much -[7] *reading.*

54. Les adverbes se placent souvent en anglais, indifféremment *avant* ou *après* le verbe ; comme, I OFTEN *see him, or* I *see him* OFTEN. I VERY SELDOM *speak to him,* or I *speak to him* VERY SELDOM ; en français, touts ces adverbes doivent se placer *après* le verbe ; ex.

Je (me promène) SOUVENT *seul.*
Je vais RAREMENT *à la ville.*
Je vais TOUJOURS *à la campagne.*

— — *are placed often in*
—, *indiscriminately* before *or* after -
—; *as,* - often - -, *or* -
- - often. - very seldom - -
—, *or* - - - - very seldom ;
in —, *all these* — *must be placed* after - —; *ex.*
- *walk* often *alone.*
- *go* seldom *to town.*
- *go* always *into* - *country.*

55. Les adverbes *négatifs* sont NE-PAS ; NE-POINT ; NE-PLUS ; NE-JAMAIS ; NE-GUÈRE ; NE-NULLEMENT ; NE se place toujours *avant* le verbe, et PAS, POINT, PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT, comme les autres adverbes, se placent immédiatement *après* le verbe ; EX.

Je NE *l'*[24]*aime* PAS OT POINT.
Je NE *veux* PLUS *la*[24] *voir.*
Je NE *lui*[24] *parlerai* JAMAIS.
Je N' *y*[24] *consens* NULLEMENT.
Vous N' *y*[24] *avez* GUÈRE *pensé.*

The — *negative are* no, not ; no, not ; no more ; never ; but little ; by no means ; ne *is placed* — before - —, - pas, point, plus, jamais, guère, nullement, *like* - *other* —, *are placed immediately* after - — ; *ex.*
- *her*[24] *love* not.
- *will* no more *her*[24] *see.*
- *(to her)*[24] *(will speak)* never.
- *(to it*[24]*) consent* (by no means.)
- *(of it) have* (very little) *thought.*

CHAP. VIII.

DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

Les PRÉPOSITIONS sont des[8] mots qui servent à exprimer le rapport que plusieurs mots de la même phrase ont les uns aux autres ; comme quand je dis ;

Je viens DE *Londres.*
Je vais À *Bath* AVEC *ma sœur.*
Je passerai CHEZ *votre mère.*
Je ne partirai pas SANS *vous*[24] *voir.*

The — *are* -[8]N.B. *words which* — *to express* - *relation* - *several* - *of* - *same sentence have the one (to the) other ; as when I say*
- *come* from *London.*
- *(am going)* to — with - *sister.*
- *(will call)* upon - —.
- *will not set out* without - *seeing.*

Les mots DE, À, AVEC, CHEZ, SANS, sont des[8] PRÉPOSITIONS qui servent

- - de, à, avec, chez, sans, *are* -[8]N.B. — - —

DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

à exprimer le rapport qu' (il y a) entre le verbe qui les[34] précède, et le substantif qui les[34] suit, et à les[34] unir ensemble.

- — - relation - (there is) between - - - them[34] precedes, - - — - them follows, - to - unite together

56. Les prépositions se placent souvent en anglais indifféremment *avant* ou *après* le substantif qu'elles régissent; comme,

WITH *whom were you?* or,
Whom were you WITH?
OF *what do you speak?* or,
What do you speak OF?

En français, les prépositions se placent toujours *avant* le mot qu'elles régissent; ex.
AVEC *qui était-il?* DE *quoi parlez-vous?*

- — are placed often[34] - - indiscriminately - or - - — which they govern; as,
With *whom - -?* or,
Whom - - with?
Of *what - - -?* or,
What - - - of?
In —, - — are placed always[34] - - - which - govern; ex.
With *whom was -?* Of *what speak*

CHAP. IX.

DES CONJONCTIONS.

Nous voyons page 57, que les prépositions servent à unir plusieurs mots ensemble pour en former une phrase; les CONJONCTIONS servent à unir plusieurs phrases en une, et à exprimer le rapport qu'elles ont entre elles; comme, quand je dis:

J'irai à la ville, s'il fait beau tems.
Nous partirons QUAND *vous voudrez.*
Je n'irai pas (À MOINS QUE) *vous ne veniez avec moi.*

Les mots SI, QUAND, À MOINS QUE sont des[8] CONJONCTIONS.

We see - 57, that - — — to unite several - together, to (of them) form - sentence; - — - to unite several sentences in one, - to — - relation which - - between them; as when I say:
- (shall go) to town, if *it is fine weather - (shall set out)* when *- like.*
- (will go) not unless *- come with me.*
- - si, quand, à moins que *are — [8] N.B. —.*

Vous verrez dans la dernière partie de cet ouvrage, une liste des conjonctions avec leurs différents usages.

- (will see) in - last part this work, - list (of the) — with their various uses.

The learner having read the rules so far, must read them over again if he does not understand them well. But as he must now have some general idea of the difference in the construction, or arrangement of words in the two languages, he should try at the same time, to translate the following exercises into french. This will be the means of impressing the rules on his mind. If the exercise on each rule is found too long, he has no need to write any more than to be convinced that he understands it, and dwell only on such parts as seem to him the most difficult. If his time is not entirely taken up with these exercises, he should now peruse the verbs, that he may be able to go on without interruption when he comes to the exercises on the verbs, which he cannot write with ease or advantage before he has a general knowledge of the conjugations.

AN

INTRODUCTION

TO

FRENCH GRAMMAR

PART II.

EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES

CONTAINED IN THE FIRST PART.*

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, as we have seen before, is like the english, composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.

* The rules of syntax are too *numerous*, too full of *exceptions*, and *exceptions* of *exceptions* to be retained, or even understood all at once by tender or slow minds. The following exercises, upon the fundamental rules only, are intended to give a general idea of the language. The learner may write them whilst he is perusing the verbs, after which he may pass to the other exercises, which include every thing that can be reduced into rules in the french language.

CHAP. I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *being*, either REAL, as *sun, moon, earth, man, house, tree;* or IDEAL, as, *god, heaven, honour, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common.*

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is the CHRISTIAN or FAMILY name of a PERSON; as, *John, James, Voltaire, Shakespear:* of a RIVER; as, the *Thames*, the *Mersey:* of a PLACE; as, *Paris, London:* of a COUNTY; as, *Middlesex, Lancashire:* of a COUNTRY; as, *England, France, &c.*

Nouns *common*, or *common* names, are the names of beings in general, of which we know several; as, *man, woman, child, house, tree, river, city, country, horse, cow, sheep, dog, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honour*, and such like.

Two things are to be considered in nouns; the *gender* and the *number*

The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes.*

All nouns in french are either *masculine* or *feminine.*

By *masculine* is meant the *male being;* as, *man, horse, bull, dog.*

By *feminine* is meant the *female being;* as, *woman, mare, cow, bitch.*

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine* or *feminine* in french, as custom has fixed it.*

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural.*

A noun is *singular* when we speak of *one being only;* as, a book, *un livre;* a house, *une maison;* a tree, *un arbre;* a ship, *un navire*, &c.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one.*

N. B. The plural is generally formed in french as in english, by adding *s* to the singular; as, *des livres*, books; *des maisons*, houses; *des arbres*, trees; *des navires*, ships, *&c.*

Except the nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, which are the same in the plural: as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices.

Except also the nouns ending in *u*, which take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number; as, *chapeau*, hat; *chapeaux*, hats; *jeu*, game; *jeux*, games, *&c.*

And the nouns ending in *al, ail*, which change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal*, evil; *maux*, evils; *cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *général*, general; *généraux*, generals; *travail*, labour; *travaux*, labours.

---

* The gender of these nouns is known by the *termination;* rules are given in the syntax how to discriminate it; until then, in the introductory exercises, the nouns *masculine* will be marked *m.*, the *feminine* will be marked *f.*

CHAP. II.

ARTICLE.

The *same noun* admitting *different meanings*, as for example; *THE bread, THE wine; SOME bread, SOME wine; THIS bread, THAT wine; MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread; MY wine, &c.* it was necessary to adopt some *signs* which would fix its proper meaning.

These *signs*, called ARTICLE, are various, and generally receive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise,

DEFINITE, that which *defines* the object; as, *THE bread, THE wine.*

PARTITIVE, that which denotes *a portion* of the object; as, *SOME bread, SOME wine.*

NUMERAL, that which *numbers* the objects; as, *A* or *ONE shilling.**

DEMONSTRATIVE, that which *points out* the object; as, *THIS* or *THAT bread, THESE* or *THOSE clothes.*

POSSESSIVE, that which expresses the *possession* of the object; as, *MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread, HER bread, OUR bread, YOUR bread, THEIR bread; MY wine, THY wine, HIS wine, &c.**

The signs called ARTICLE, *are declined in french as follows:*

		SINGULAR. 1 *Masculine.*	2 *Feminine.*	PLURAL. 3 *Masc.* and *Fem.*
DEFINIT.	*THE;*	LE,	LA,	LES.
Of, from	*THE;*	DU,	*de* LA,	DES.
To, at	*THE;*	AU,	*à* LA,	AUX.
PARTIT.	*SOME;*	DU,	*de* LA,	DES.
NUMERAL	*A, AN;*	UN,	UNE,	
DEMONS.	*THIS, THAT;*	CE,	CETTE,*	
	THESE, THOSE;	...	....	CES.
POSSESS.	*MY;*	MON,	MA,*	MES.
	THY;	TON,	TA,	TES.
	HIS, HER, ITS;	SON,	SA,	SES.
	OUR;	NOTRE,	NOTRE,	NOS.
	YOUR;	VOTRE,	VOTRE,	VOS.
	THEIR;	LEUR,	LEUR,	LEURS

* See note* page 31, to which might be added all the NUMBERS, and the words CHAQUE, *each*; TOUT, *every*; PLUSIEURS, *several*; which exclude the article from the noun, and have the same property as the words generally known by the name of ARTICLE.

CHAP. III.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

GENERAL RULES.

1 *The signs called* ARTICLE *are* never used *without* a NOUN *after them, and they must be of the* same GENDER *and* NUMBER *as that noun; this, in grammar, is called* agreement *of the* article *with the* noun; *ex.*

SINGULAR. 1 Masculine.				2 Feminine.				PLURAL. 3 Masculine *and* Feminine.			
The	FATHER.	LE	*Père.*	*the*	MOTHER.	LA	*Mère.*	*the*	CHILDREN.	LES	*Enfants.*
of *The*		DU	*Père.*	of *the*		*de* LA	*Mère.*	of *the*		DES	*Enfants.*
to *The*		AU	*Père.*	to *the*		*à* LA	*Mère.*	to *the*		AUX	*Enfants.*
A		UN	*Père.*	*a*		UNE	*Mère.*				
The	BREAD.	LE	*Pain.*	*the*	MEAT.	LA	*Viande.*	*the*	CLOTHES.	LES	*Habits.*
of *The*		DU	*Pain.*	of *the*		*de* LA	*Viande.*	of *the*		DES	*Habits.*
to *The*		AU	*Pain.*	to *the*		*à* LA	*Viande.*	to *the*		AUX	*Habits.*
Some		DU	*Pain.*	*some*		*de* LA	*Viande.*	*some*		DES	*Habits.*
This / *That*		CE	*Pain.*	*this* / *that*		CETTE	*Viande.*	*these* / *those*		CES	*Habits.*
My	FATHER.	MON	*Père.*	*my*	MOTHER.	MA	*Mère.*	*my*	CHILDREN.	MES	*Enfants.*
of *My*		*de* MON	*Père.*	of *my*		*de* MA	*Mère.*	of *my*		*de* MES	*Enfants.*
to *My*		*à* MON	*Père.*	to *my*		*à* MA	*Mère.*	to *my*		*à* MES	*Enfants.*
My	BREAD.	MON	*Pain.*	*my*	MEAT.	MA	*Viande.*	*my*	CLOTHES.	MES	*Habits.*
of *My*		*de* MON	*Pain.*	of *my*		*de* MA	*Viande.*	of *my*		*de* MES	*Habits.*
to *My*		*à* MON	*Pain.*	to *my*		*à* MA	*Viande.*	to *my*		*à* MES	*Habits.*
Thy	BREAD.	TON	*Pain.*	*thy*	MEAT.	TA	*Viande.*	*thy*	CLOTHES.	TES	*Habits.*
His		SON	*Pain.*	*his*		SA	*Viande.*	*his*		SES	*Habits.*
Her		SON	*Pain.*	*her*		SA	*Viande.*	*her*		SES	*Habits.*
Our		NOTRE	*Pain.*	*our*		NOTRE	*Viande.*	*our*		NOS	*Habits.*
Your		VOTRE	*Pain.*	*your*		VOTRE	*Viande.*	*your*		VOS	*Habits.*
Their		LEUR	*Pain.*	*their*		LEUR	*Viande.*	*their*		LEURS	*Habits.*

EXERCISE.

The father, *the* mother, *the* children. *The* good nature *of the* father,
père, *mère,* *enfants.* * *bon* *naturel* m.

the tenderness *of the* mother, *the* civility *of the* children. Speak *to the*
* *tendresse* f. * *civilité* f. *Parlez*

father, tell it *to the* mother, give it *to the* children. *The* brother, *the*
dites-le *donnez-le* *frère,*

---

* Before you prefix an article to a noun, never omit to consider,
1 Whether the noun which follows the article is *masculine* or *feminine;*
2 Whether it is *singular* or *plural.*
If the noun which follows the article is *masc. sing.* use the *signs* contained in the 1 column.
If the noun which follows the article is *fem. sing.* use the *signs* contained in the 2 column.
If the noun which follows the article is *plural,* whether *masculine* or *feminine,* use the *signs* contained in the 3 column.
† Observe also, that if the noun is *singular* in *english,* it must be *singular* in *french,* and if it is *plural* in *english,* it must be made *plural* in *french,* agreeably to the rules, page 60.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

sister, *the* cousins. *The* complaisance *of the* brother, *the* modesty
sœur, *cousins.* * *complaisance* f. * *modestie* f

of the sister, *the* kindness *of the* cousins. *The* horse, *the* cow, *the*
* *bonté* f. *cheval,* *vache,*

dogs. *The* bridle *of the* horse, *the* horns *of the* cow, *the* ears *of the*
chiens. * *bride* f. *cornes* *oreilles*

dogs. Bring it *to the* horse, give it *to the* cow, leave it *to the* dogs.
Apportez-le *donnez-le* *laissez-le*

The nose, *the* mouth, *the* eyes. *The* tip *of the* nose, *the* size *of*
* *nez,* m. *bouche,* f. *yeux.* * *bout* m. *grandeur* f.

the mouth, *the* beauty *of the* eyes. *A* glass, *a* spoon, *a* knife, *a*
beauté f. * *verre,* m. *cuiller,* f. *couteau,* m.

fork. *Some* wine, *some* beer, *some* glasses. *This* dinner, *this*
fourchette. f. * *vin,* m. *bière,* f. * *dîner,* m.

table, *these* dishes. *That* cheese, *that* bottle, *those* apples. *My* arm,
table, f. *plats.* *fromage,* m. *bouteille,* f. *pommes.* † *bras,* m.

my hand, *my* feet. *His* hat, *his* shirt, *his* stockings. *Her* apron,
* *main,* f. * *pieds.* † *chapeau,* m. * *chemise,* f. * *bas.* * *tablier,* m.

her gown, *her* scissars. *Our* garden, *our* house, *our* fields. *Your*
* *robe,* f. * *ciseaux.* *jardin,* m. *maison,* f. *champs.*

umbrella, *your* watch, *your* gloves. *Their* coach, *their servants.*
parapluie, m. *montre,* f. *gants.* *carrosse,* m. *domestiques.*

If the noun which follows the article is SINGULAR, *and begins with a* VOWEL, *or* H mute,‡ *whether it is* MASCULINE *or* FEMININE, *use* 2

L'	LE,	LA;	as, *The*	L' *Enfant.* m.	L' *Histoire.* f.
de L'	DU,	*de* LA;	of *The*	*de* L' *Enfant.*	*de* L' *Histoire.*
à L'	AU,	*à* LA;	to *The*	*à* L' *Enfant.*	*à* L' *Histoire.*
CET	CE;		*This* or *That*	CET *Enfant.*	CETTE *Histoire.*
MON	MA;		*My*	MON *Enfant*	MON *Histoire.*
TON	TA;		*Thy*	TON *Enfant.*	TON *Histoire.*
SON	SA;		*His* or *Her*	SON *Enfant.*	SON *Histoire.*

instead of CHILD HISTORY.

EXERCISE.

The air. *The* water. *My* slate. *Her* writing. *His* school. *Her*
2 *air.* *eau.* 2 *ardoise.* 2 *écriture.* 2 *école.* 2

school. *This* man. *That* child. *This* tree. *That* bird. *The* ornament
2 *'homme* *enfant.* *arbre.* *oiseau.* *ornement*

of the mind. *The* history *of the* year. *The* wing *of the* bird. He
esprit. 2 *'histoire* *année.* *aile* *Il*

sacrificed *his* honour *to the* interest *of the* state. She has lost *the*
sacrifia *'honneur* *intérêt* *état.* *Elle* *a* *perdu*

affection *of her* friend. *Her* obstinacy is *the* cause *of his* inconstancy.
affection 2 *ami.* *opiniâtreté* *est* 1 *cause* f. *inconstance.*

---

* See note * page 62. † See note * page 33.
‡ The *h mute* is marked in these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark , before it.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

3 *The signs called* ARTICLE *must be* repeated *before every noun in french agreeably to the gender and number of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,*

The father, mother and children are (gone out,)
LE *père,* LA *mère et* LES *enfants sont sortis,* i. e. *the* father, *the &c.*
Some bread, meat, money and clothes.
DU *pain,* de LA *viande,* de L'*argent et* DES *habits,* i. e. *some* bread, *&c.*

EXERCISE.

Bring *the* bread and butter[3]; *the* tea and coffee[3]; *some* milk or
Apportez [1] *pain* m. *et beurre;* m. *thé* m. *café;* m. [1] *lait* m. *ou*
cream[3]; *a* cup and saucer[3]; *a* knife and fork[3]; *some* bread and
crème; f. *tasse* f. *soucoupe;* f. *couteau* m. *fourchette;* f.
cheese[3]; *the* dishes and plates[3]; *the* beans and bacon[3]; *the* pepper
fromage; m. [1] *plat* † *assiette;* † *fève* † *lard;* m. *poivre* m.
and salt[3]. *My* brother and sister[3] are (gone out.) *His* father and
sel. m. [1] *frère sœur sont sortis.* —*
mother[3] are dead. She has lost *her* friends and relations[3].
sont morts. Elle a perdu amis† *parent.*†

PARTICULAR RULES.

4 *The names of* PERSONS *and* PLACES *are used in french, as in english,* without article; *ex.*

I like Voltaire,	*J'aime Voltaire,*
London.	*Londres.*
I speak *of* Voltaire,	*Je parle* DE *Voltaire,*
of London.	DE *Londres.*
I prefer it *to* Voltaire,	*Je le préfère* À *Voltaire,*
to London.	À *Londres.*

Observe that DE *and* À *which are prefixed to* Voltaire, Londres, *are not* articles; *they are* prepositions *used to unite the noun to the verb.*

EXERCISE.

I have read almost all *the*[1] works *of* Voltaire and [4]Rousseau.
J' ai lu presque toutes œuvres ‡ (a)
I am reading now *the*[1] adventures of Telemachus the son *of* Ulysses
Je —* *lis à présent aventures Télémaque* —* *fils* ‡ *Ulysse*
and Penelope. Have you ever been *in* London? Yes, I have, *i. e.*, been.
(a) *Pénélope. Avez - vous jamais été à Oui, j'y ai été*
Is it as large as Paris? London is much larger than Paris.
Est-il aussi grand que est beaucoup plus grand que
London is *the*[1] largest city in Europe. Have you seen Naples? No;
plus grande ville f. *de l' vu Non;*
I have been *at* Florence and Rome, but I have not[55] been *at* Naples.
ai été à (a) *mais je n'ai pas été*

* A dash, this mark (—), under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french agreeably to rules which will be seen in the last part of this work.
† See note † page 62.
(a) The *preposition* must be *repeated* before every noun in french, in the same way as the article.
‡ See note * page 28.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

But the names of COUNTRIES *and* PROVINCES *which are used without an article in english, require in french one of the signs* LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, *agreeably to the gender and number of the noun;* as, 5

I like	Portugal,	*J'aime* LE	*Portugal,*
	France,	LA	*France,*
	England.	L'	*Angleterre.*
I speak *of*	Portugal,	*Je parle* DU	*Portugal,*
of	France, &c.	de LA	*France, &c.*
I prefer it *to*	Portugal,	*Je le préfère* AU	*Portugal,*
to	France, &c.	à LA	*France, &c.*

EXERCISE.

Italy[5] is *the* garden *of* Europe[5]. France[5] is also *a* fine country;
[2]*Italie*[*] *est* *jardin* m. [2]*Europe.*† *France* f. *est aussi* *beau* *pays;* m.

it lies between Spain[5], Italy, Switzerland, Germany[5], Holland[5],
elle (est située) *entre* *Espagne,* [5] *Suisse,* f. [5] *Allemagne,* *Hollande,* f.

and England[5]. Spain, with all *the* gold *of* Mexico[5] and Peru[5], is
et *Angleterre.* [5] *avec* *tout* [2] *or* *Mexique* m. (a) *Pérou,* m. *n'est*

not[53] so rich as France. Brazil[5] belongs *to* Portugal, Mexico *to*
pas *si* *riche* *que* [5] *Brésil* m. *appartient* [5] m. [5]

Spain, Canada[5] *to* England, Martinique[5] and Guadeloupe[5] *to* France.
[5] *Canada* m. [5] *Martinique* f. *Guadeloupe* f. [5]

Observe however that the names of COUNTRIES *are used* without *the article in french, when they come after verbs denoting* dwelling *or* movement, *such as* to BE IN, to *LIVE* IN, to *GO* TO, to *COME* FROM; *In these instances,* IN, TO *are expressed by* EN, *and* FROM *by* DE; as, 6

He is *in*	France.	*Il est*	EN *France,*
in	England.		EN *Angleterre.*
He is going *to*	France,	*Il va*	EN *France,*
to	England.		EN *Angleterre.*
He comes *from*	France,	*Il vient*	DE *France,*
from	England.		D' *Angleterre.*

EXERCISE.

My brother lives *in* Switzerland and my sister *in* France. I intend
demeure [6] [6] *J' (ai dessein)*

to go *to* France and Italy, (as soon) as *the* war is over. I come
d' aller [6] [6] (a) *aussitôt* *que* [1] *guerre* f. *sera* *finie.* *Je viens*

from Portugal, and I (am going) *to* Holland and England. Have you
[6] *Je* *vais* [6] [6] (a) *Avez - vous*

ever been *to* Spain? No; I (am going) *to* Turkey and *to* Greece,
jamais été [6] *Non;* *Je* *vais* [6] *Turquie* [6] *Grèce,*

whence I (will pass) *into* Spain. I would rather go *to* Italy.
(d' où) *je* *passerai* *en* [6] *J' aimerais mieux* *aller* [6]

---

* The figures at the top of the words or under the words, indicate the number of the paragraph where the rule concerning that word is to be found; if you do not perfectly recollect the rule, never omit to look for it, and read it every time with the example.

† The *parts* of the *world* follow the same rules as the names of countries.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

THE; LE, LA, LES, DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX.

7 *All common names used in a* GENERAL *sense; as,* BREAD is good; *or in a* PARTICULAR *sense; as,* the BREAD which I eat is good, *must have before them one of the definite signs* LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, *agreeably to the* gender *and* number *of the noun; ex.*

GENERAL *sense,* no article *in english before the noun.*

I like bread,	*J'aime* LE *pain,*
meat,	LA *viande,*
money,	L' *argent,*
clothes.	LES *habits.*
I speak *of* bread,	*Je parle* DU *pain,*
of meat, *of* clothes.	de LA *viande,* DES *habits.*

I prefer it *to* bread, *to* meat, &c. *Je le préfère* AU *pain,* à LA *viande, &c*

PARTICULAR *sense, in english* THE *before the noun.*

I like *the* bread	*J'aime* LE *pain*
the meat	LA *viande*
the money } I have.	L' *argent* } *que j'ai.*
the clothes	LES *habits*

I speak *of the* bread & meat I have. *Je parle* DU *pain et* de LA *viande que j'ai.*
I prefer it *to the* bread & meat he has. *Je le préfère* AU *pain et* à LA *viande qu'il a.*

EXERCISE.

Gold[7] and silver[7] are precious, but [7]iron and steel[7] are more useful.
[6]or * *[2]argent sont précieux, mais fer* m. *[2]acier sont plus utiles.*

The gold and silver *of* Peru are purer[16] than those *of* [5]Europe.
[3] [3] *Pérou* m. *sont (plus purs) que ceux* [2]

Modesty[7] and virtue are preferable *to* beauty and [7]riches. I prefer
modestie f. *[3]vertu* f. *sont préférables* *[7]beauté* f. (a)*richesse. Je préfère*

the modesty and virtue of your sister, *to the* beauty and [3]riches of your
[1] [3] *de* [1] (a)

cousin. Peace[7] and plenty[7] make men[7] happy. (Let us preserve) *the*
cousine. *paix* f. *[7]abondance rendent hommes heureux.* *conservons* [1]

peace and plenty which we enjoy. Patience and perseverance are
[3] *dont nous jouissons.* *[7]patience* f. *[7]persévérance* f. *sont*

necessary *to* happiness. I admire *the* patience and perseverance of
nécessaires *[7]bonheur.* m. *J' admire* [1] f. [3] f.

your brother. Pride[7] and vanity are generally *the* cause *of the* mis-
[2]orgueil *[7]vanité* f. *ordinairement* [1] *cause* f. [1] *mal-*

fortunes *of* men. (Let us go) into *the* garden to see if *the* fruit is
heur *[7]homme.* *allons dans* [1] *jardin* m. — *voir si* [1] *fruit* m. *est*

ripe. Which fruit do you[55] like best? Gooseberries or strawber-
mûr. *Quel* — *aimez-vous le mieux?* *[7]groseille* *ou [7]fraise?*

ries? I do not[55] like gooseberries; I like cherries and peaches.
Je — *n'* *aime pas* ? *J' aime* *[7]cerise* *[7]pêche.*

Children generally like fruit. I prefer milk[7] and cheese *to* fruit.
enfant [7] *en général aiment* [7] *Je préfère lait* m. *[7]fromage* m. [7]

* The figures annexed to the words indicate the rule which that word requires.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

OF expressed by DE; *not by* du, *de* la, des.

Observe that the preposition OF *before a noun used in a* GENERAL sense, *preceded by another noun, used in a* PARTITIVE sense, *cannot be expressed by* du, *de* la, des, *which would render the expression* particular *and mean* OF THE, *it must be expressed by* DE *only, without any regard to gender or number;* as, 8

He gave me a pound *of* bread,	*Il me donna une livre*	DE	*pain,*
a piece *of* meat,	*un morceau*	DE	*viande,*
a bag *of* money,	*un sac*	D'*	*argent,*
a heap *of* clothes.	*un tas*	D'	*habits.*

Not, *Une livre* DU *pain; Un morceau* de LA *viande, &c.* which would mean *a pound* of the *bread; a piece* of the *meat, &c.*

N. B. *In this rule must be included the following words, which, though they have no sign after them in english, require the connective particle* DE *to unite them to the noun which follows them:*

ASSEZ, *enough;*	*Assez*	DE	*pain.*
BEAUCOUP, *much, many;*	*Beaucoup*	DE	*viande.*
COMBIEN, *how much, how many;*	*combien*	D'	*argent.*
TANT, *so much, so many;*	*Tant*	D'	*habits.*
AUTANT, *as much, as many;*	*Autant*	DE	*pain.*
PLUS, *more;*	*Plus*	DE	*viande.*
MOINS, *less;*	*Moins*	D'	*argent.*
TROP, *too much, too many;*	*Trop*	D'	*habits.*
PEU, } *little, few;*	*Peu*	DE	*pain.*
GUÈRE,† } *little, few;*	*Guère*	DE	*viande.*
PAS, POINT, *no, not;*	*Pas,* or *Point,*	D'	*argent.*
JAMAIS, *never;*	*Jamais*	D'	*habits.*

Not, *assez* DU *pain, &c.*, which would mean *enough* of the *bread, &c.*

EXERCISE.

I have bought a pair *of* boots, and two pairs *of* shoes. Drink a
J' ai acheté [1] *paire f.* [8] *botte, deux* [8] *soulier. Buvez* [1]

glass *of* wine. Have a *little* patience[8]. This is (a day) *of* rest.
verre m *vin. Ayez un peu* N.B. *C' est (aujour d'hui jour)* [8] *repos.*

I have *many* things[8] to do. I have *no* money[8], and I have very
beaucoup chose N.B. *à faire. Je n'ai pas argent* N.B. *j' ai très-*

few friends[8]. You have *more* property[8] than I have. I have not[55]
peu ami. N.B. *avez plus bien* N.B. *que moi — Je n'ai pas*

(so many) friends[8] as you. Your friends have *(as much)* interest[8] as
tant N.B. *que ont autant crédit* N.B. *que*

mine. Give me *little* wine[8] and *much* water[8]. You give me[24]
les miens. Donnez-moi peu N.B. *eau.* N.B. *Vous me*[24] *donnez*

(too much) wine[8]; you do not[55] give me[24] water *enough*[8]. I never
trop N.B. *vous — ne me*[24] *donnez pas assez.* N.B. *Je ne*[55]

drink wine[8] without putting a *(good deal) of* water[8] (into it[24].)
bois jamais N.B. *sans y*[24] *mettre — beaucoup* N.B. —

* See note * p. 28. † Observe that GUÈRE is used only in *negative* sentences.

ARTICLE AND NOUN.

SOME, ANY; DU, *de* LA, DES

9 *If you want to express only a* part *of the substance of which you are speaking; as* SOME BREAD, SOME MEAT, *&c. use before the noun one of the partitive signs* DU, *de* LA, DES, *agreeably to gender and number. These signs are the same as those of the definite article* OF THE; as,

He gave me *some* bread,	*Il me donna* DU *pain,*
some meat,	de LA *viande,*
some money,	de L' *argent,*
some clothes.	DES *habits.*

i. e. a portion *of the* bread, *of the* meat, *of the* money, *of the* clothes.

N. B. *The sign* SOME *is often understood in english, before such nouns as* bread, meat, money, *&c., but the sign which represents it in french, cannot be omitted; and it must be* repeated *before every noun;* as,

He gave me bread, meat, money, clothes; i. e. *some* bread, *some* meat.
Il me donna DU *pain,* de LA *viande,* de L' *argent,* DES *habits.*

EXERCISE.

The dinner is on the table. Will you have meat[9 N.B.] or fish[9 N.B.]?
diner m. *est sur* f. *Voulez-vous* — *viande* f. *ou poisson* m.?

Will you have *some* beef and cabbage; *some* mutton and turnips? I
— *bœuf* m. [2]*choux;* plur. *mouton* m. [3]*navet? Je*

(shall eat) *some* fish and potatoes. Bring me *some* salt and pepper.
mangerai [2](*pommes de terre.*) *Apportez-moi* *sel* m. [3]*poivre.* m.

What will you drink? Will you have beer[9], or cider[9]? I (will drink)
Que voulez-vous boire? — *bière,* f. *ou cidre* m.? *Je boirai*

some wine and water[3]. Put *some* bread and cheese, on *the* table.
vin m. [2]*eau.* *Mettez* *pain* m. [3]*fromage,* m. *sur* f.

SOME, ANY expressed by DE; *not by* du, *de* la, des.

10 *The partitive signs* DU, *de* LA, DES, *require the noun immediately after them; therefore if a noun used in a partitive sense is* preceded *by an* ADJECTIVE, *use* DE *before that* adjective, *for both genders and numbers, instead of* du, de la, des, *before the noun;* as,

He gave me very *good* bread,	*Il me donna* DE *très-bon pain,*
excellent meat,	D' *excellente viande,*
fine clothes.	DE *beaux habits.*

EXERCISE.

(This is) [10]excellent wine, but (that is) [10]very bad beer. Have you any
Voici *excellent vin,* *mais* *voilà* *très - mauvaise bière.* *Avez - vous* [10]

good beer in France? No; but we have [10]good wine and good brandy.
bonne bière en *Non;* *nous avons* *bon* [10]*bonne (eau-de-vie.)*

Good small beer is better than bad wine. You must have fine
[10]*bonne petite bière est meilleure que* [10]*mauvais* *devez avoir* [10]*beau*

fruit in France. Yes; we have very fine fruit. (Are there) any large trees
en *Oui;* *avons* [10]*très - beau* *Y a-t-il* [10] *grands arbre*

in your garden[1]? No; (There are only) young trees. Have you not
dans [1] *jardin?* *Non;* *(il n'y a que)* [10]*jeunes* *N' avez-vous pas*

better pens to lend me? I have good pens, but bad[10] ink.
[10]*meilleures plume à me*[24] *prêter* [24]*?* *J' ai* [10]*bonnes* *mais mauvaise encre*

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

How to place *TWO NOUNS* together.

When TWO NOUNS *come together, the French always place* first *the noun which is the* subject *of* discourse, *with* DU, *de* LA, DES, DE, OR À, *before the* second *noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used;* as, 11

Peter's book, *i. e.* the book *of Peter.*	*Le livre* DE *Pierre.*	
Some London beer, *i. e. Some* beer *of London.*	*De la bière* DE *Londres.*	DE, *4th rule,* proper *names.*
The *master*'s pen, *i. e.* the pen *of the master.*	*La plume* DU *maître.*	
The *street* door, *i. e* the door *of the street.*	*La porte* de LA *rue.*	DU, *de* LA, *7th rule,* particular *sense.*
A *gold* watch, *i. e.* a watch *of gold.*	*Une montre* D' *or.*	
Some *silk* stockings, *i. e.* Some stockings *of silk.*	*Des bas* DE *soie.*	DE, OF, *8th rule,* general *sense.*

EXERCISE.

Where is William's[4] hat[7]? Have you seen Mary's[4] apron[7]?
Où est Guillaume chapeau m.? *Avez- vous vu Marie tablier* m.?

Will you drink a glass *of* Port[4] wine[8]? Nature's[7] voice[7] proclaims
Voulez-vous boire verre m. *Oporto vin?* *Nature* f. *voix* f. *proclame*

god's[4] power[7]. Ignorance[7] is the mother *of* error[7]. Have you seen my
dieu pouvoir. m. [2]*Ignorance mère* [2]*erreur.* *vu*

father's horse[7]? I (will wait for you[24]) at the garden gate[7], or (at the)
cheval? *Je (vous*[24] *attendrai) à jardin* m. *porte,* f. *ou au*

corner of my sister's house[7]. Shut the kitchen door[7], and open the
coin m. *maison.* f. *Fermez* [7]*cuisine* f. *porte,* f. *ouvrez*

parlour[7] window. Bring my gold[8] watch, and clean my silver[8] buckles.
salle f. [7]*fenêtre.* f. *Apportez* [1] *or montre,* f. *nettoyez* [1] *argent boucle.*

Sometimes however the order of the words could not be changed in english in the above manner, without changing also their meaning; for ex. A WINE glass, AN INK bottle, A TEA spoon, *could not be changed into* A glass *of* WINE, A bottle *of* INK, A spoon *of* TEA; *yet the nouns require this order in french; but instead of* DE *between the two nouns, we use* À. 12

N. B. *This is done when the* first noun *denotes the* use *of the other;* as,

A *wine* glass, *i. e.* a glass *used for* wine.	*Un verre* À *vin.*
A *tea* spoon, *i. e.* a spoon *used for* tea.	*Une cuiller* À *thé.*

EXERCISE.

Give me the wine[12] bottle, and the water[12] pot. Put some wine[12]
Donnez-moi vin bouteille, f. *eau pot.* m. *Mettez*

glasses on the table. Bring the tea[12] board and the coffee[12] cups.
verre sur table. f. *Apportez thé cabaret* m. *café tasse.*

There is no powder[8] in my powder[12] bag. (Let us go) and sit
Il n'y a pas poudre[N.B.] *dans sac.* m. *Allons — (nous assevir)*

in the dining[12] room. Have you any fire[12] arms in your house?
dans dîner chambre. f. *Avez* [9] *feu arme maison* f.?

CHAP. IV.

ADJECTIVE.

An ADJECTIVE is a word joined to a noun, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun; as, *good* BREAD, *bad* MEAT, &c.

13 *The* ADJECTIVE *must be of the* same GENDER *and* NUMBER *as the noun which it* qualifies.

An adjective is made feminine *by adding* E mute *to the* masculine; as,

(That is) a *pretty* boy.	*Voilà un* JOLI *garçon.*
(This is) a *pretty* girl.	*Voici une* JOLIE *fille.*
He is well *dressed.*	*Il est bien* HABILLÉ.
She is very well *dressed.*	*Elle est très-bien* HABILLÉE.

Except *the adjectives ending in* E mute, *which are of* both genders; as,

Un JEUNE *homme* AIMABLE.	An *amiable young* man.
Une JEUNE *femme* AIMABLE.	An *amiable young* woman.

And *the adjectives in* X, *which change* X *into* SE *for the* feminine; as,

Mon frère est PARESSEUX.	My brother is *lazy*
Ma sœur est PARESSEUSE.	My sister is *lazy.*

The PLURAL *number of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding* S *or* X *to the* singular; *see nouns, page* 60. ex.

Une JOLIE *fille.* A *pretty* girl. *Un* BEAU *chapeau.* A *fine* hat.
De JOLIES *filles. Pretty* girls. *De* BEAUX *chapeaux. Fine* hats.

N. B. *A* past PARTICIPLE *used to* qualify *a* NOUN, or *coming* after the *verb* to BE *to express an* action *or the* state *of the* NOUN, *follows the same rules as an adjective;* ex.

My brother is *gone* out.	*Mon frère est* SORTI.
My sister is *gone* out.	*Ma sœur est* SORTIE.

EXERCISE.

Your brother is *diligent;* your sister is *diligent*[13]*;* your brothers are
est diligent; * 1 *sont*
diligent[13]*;* your sisters are *diligent*[13]. Your father is *esteemed;* your mo-
* 1 * *estimé;*
ther is *esteemed*[13]*;* your sons are *esteemed;* your daughters are *esteemed.*
* 1 *fils* 13* 1 *fille* 13*
That boy is very *civil;* that girl is very *civil;* these gentlemen are
1 *très - civil;* 1 * 1 *messieurs*
very *civil;* these ladies are very *civil*[13]. Our man servant is *lazy;*
* 1 *dame* * —— *valet* *paresseux;*
our maid servant is *lazy*[13]*;* our men servants are *lazy*[13]*;* our maid servants
—— *servante* * 1 —— * 1 ——
are *lazy*[13]. My son is very *young;* my daughter is very *young;* my
* *très - jeune;* 1
sons are very *young;* my daughters are very *young.* Your cousin is
* 1 *cousine* f.
very *amiable;* she is *officious*[13] and *complaisant*[13].
aimable; *elle* *officieux** *complaisant.**

* The *masculine singular* only of adjectives is here given; the learner must make the adjective of the *gender* and *number* which the noun requires, agreeably to the above rules.

ADJECTIVE.

If an adjective qualifies SEVERAL *nouns* SINGULAR *of the* SAME *gender, that adjective must be of the* SAME *gender as those nouns, and* PLURAL, AS 14

Her father and her uncle are *angry*. *Son père et son oncle sont* FÂCHÉS.
Her mother and her aunt are *angry*. *Sa mère et sa tante sont* FÂCHÉES.

But if the nouns are of DIFFERENT *genders, the adjective must be of the* MASCULINE *gender, and in the* PLURAL *number;* AS, 15

Her father and mother are *angry*. *Son père et sa mère sont* FÂCHÉS.

EXERCISE.

My mother and sister are *ready*. His daughter and his niece are
1 *et* 3 *sont prêt.* 14 1 *fille* *nièce*
civil and *obliging*. Her son and daughter are *dead*[15]. The horse and
civil[14] *obligeant.*[14] 1 *fils* 3 *mort.** *cheval*
the cow have *escaped*[15]. The gate and the door were *open*[14]. The
*vache (se sont) échappé.** 1 *barrière* f. *porte* f. *étaient ouvert.**
man and the woman were *gone*. I found a glass and a bottle *broken*.
étaient parti. *Je trouvai* *verre* m. *bouteille* f. *cassé.**

Adjectives are generally placed in english BEFORE *the* NOUN; *in french they are* placed AFTER *the* NOUN; AS, 16

A *red* coat.	A *round* table.	A *new* house.
Un habit ROUGE.	*Une table* RONDE.	*Une maison* NEUVE.

Except *these adjectives, which are generally placed* BEFORE *the* NOUN; 17
PREMIER, 1*st;* SECOND, 2*d;* and all the adjectives of NUMBER.

BEAU, BEL, *m.* } *fine,*	MAUVAIS, *bad.*
BELLE, *fem.* } *handsome.*	MÉCHANT, *wicked.*
BON, *m.* BONNE, f. *good.*	MEILLEUR, *better.*
GRAND, *great, large.*	MOINDRE, *less.*
GROS, *m.* GROSSE, f. *big.*	PETIT, *little, small.*
JEUNE, *young.*	TOUT, *all, whole.*
JOLI, *pretty.*	VIEUX, *m.* VIEILLE, f. *old;*†

A *good* husband.	A *handsome* woman.	A *pretty little* bird.
Un BON *mari.*	*Une* BELLE *femme.*	*Un* JOLI PETIT *oiseau.*

EXERCISE.

England is a *fruitful* country. The *english*[16] nation has made several
5*Angleterre est* 1 *fertile*[16] *pays.* m. 1 *anglais*[13] *nation* f. *a* *fait* *plusieurs*†
useful[16] discoveries. Your sister is a *charming*[16] woman. She has the
utile[13] *découverte.* *est* 1 *charmant*[13] *femme.* *Elle a* 1
most *engaging*[16] manners[7]. Does she[51] know the *french*[16] language?
plus *engageant*[13] *manières.* f. — *sait* - *elle*[51] 1 *français*[13] *langue* f.?
I have met her near the *white*[16] house. She lives in a[1] *small*[17]
Je l'[23]*ai* *rencontrée* [25] *(près de)* 1 *blanche* *maison.* f. *demeure dans* 13
house in a *large* garden. It is an *old*[17] house, and (there is) a *bad*[17] road
maison f. 1 17 *jardin.* m. *C' est* 1 *vieille* *il y a* *chemin* m.
to go (to it) but it is the *best*[17] situation in this neighbourhood.
pour y[24] *aller* 24 *mais c' est* 1 *meilleur*[13] f. *de* 1 *voisinage.* m.

* A *participle* used to qualify a noun, follows the same rule as an *adjective;* 13 r N.B.
† Add to them MÊME, *same,* and PLUSIEURS, *several,* which also come *before* the noun.

ADJECTIVE.

COMPARISON *of* ADJECTIVES.

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also by the means of *certain* ADVERBS to COMPARE their qualities.

18 *The comparative of* SUPERIORITY, *MORE before the adjective, or* R *or* ER *added to it, is formed in french by* PLUS* before *the adjective;* as.
I am more *strong*, or *strong*er than you. *Je suis* PLUS *fort* QUE *vous.*

19 *The comparative of* INFERIORITY, *LESS, or NOT so before the adjective, is formed by* MOINS†, *or* PAS SI before *the adjective;* as,
I am *less* strong *than* you. *Je suis* MOINS *fort* QUE *vous.*
I am *not so* strong *as* you. *Je ne suis* PAS SI *fort* QUE *vous.*

20 *The comparative of* EQUALITY, *formed by AS* before *the adjective is formed in french by* AUSSI before *the adjective;* as,
I am *as* strong *as* you. *Je suis* AUSSI *fort* QUE *vous.*

21 *The superlative MOST or LEAST* before *the adjective, or ST or EST added to it, is formed by adding* LE, LA, LES, *to the comparative words* PLUS, MOINS, *agreeably to the* gender *and* number *of the noun;* as,
My brother is the *strong*est. *Mon frère est* LE PLUS *fort.*
My sister is the *least* strong. *Ma sœur est* LA MOINS *forte.*

EXERCISE.

The country is *more* pleasant than the town. My horse is *young*er
1 *campagne* f. *est* 18 *agréable* *que* 1 *ville.* f. 1 *cheval* *jeune* 19
and runs *fast*er than yours. That[1] house is *larg*er[18] and *more*
court *vite* 18 *le vôtre.* *maison-là* f. *grand* 18 18
convenient than this[44], but this[44] is *better* built. You write *better*
commode *celle-ci,* *celle-ci* (b) *bâti.*[13] *écrivez* (b)
than I do, because you have [10]*better* pens. Vice[7] is *less* dangerous
moi —, *parceque* (b) *plume.* f. *Vice* m. 19 *dangereux*
than hypocrisy[7]. She is not *so* handsome *as* her sister, but she is *more*
[2]*hypocrisie.* *Elle n'est pas* 19 *belle* 19 *sœur,* *elle est*
amiable. She is *as* rich *as* you. She is the *handsom*est woman *in*
aimable. 20 *riche* 20 1 *belle* 21 (c)
the town. Her father is the *proud*est[21] man that I have ever known.
ville. f. *orgueilleux*[16] *que* *aie* (d) *jamais connu.*

---

* Except MEILLEUR, *better;* PIRE, *worse;* MIEUX, *better;* PIS, *worse;* adjectives, adverbs, adjective, } which are *comparative* of themselves.
† Except MOINDRE, *less;*

(b) Beginners are apt to mistake the words MEILLEUR & MIEUX, which are both expressed by *BETTER.*
MEILLEUR, *better,* is the comparative of BON, *good,* an adjective, and is added to nouns; as,
My pen is *good,* yours is *better.* *Ma plume est* BONNE, *la vôtre est* MEILLEURE.
MIEUX, *better,* is the comparative of BIEN, *well,* an adverb, and is added to verbs; as,
I write *well,* but you write *better.* *J' écris* BIEN, *mais vous écrivez* MIEUX.

(c) *IN,* after a superlative, is expressed in french in the same manner as *OF;* ex.
She is the finest woman *in the* town. *C' est la plus belle femme* de LA *ville.*

(d) QUI, QUE, DONT, after a *superlative* require the verb in the *subjunctive;* as,
She is the finest woman I *have* ever seen. *C' est la plus belle femme que j'* AIE *jamais vue.*

CHAP. V.

PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to *represent* a NOUN; as when I say, *I*, instead of naming my *own name*, *THOU*, *YOU*, *HE*, *SHE*, *IT*, *THEY*, instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS are either *agents* or *nominatives* of VERBS, or they are *objects*.

The *nominat.* are,	*I*,	*THOU*,	*HE*,	*SHE*,	*IT*,	*WE*,	*YE*,	*YOU*,	*THEY*.
The *objects* are,	*ME*,	*THEE*,	*HIM*,	*HER*,	*IT*,	*US*,		*YOU*,	*THEM*.

OF AGENTS *or* NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, *are the* nominative *of a verb*, i. e. *when there is before or after them, a verb of the same* number *and* person *that agrees with them, they are,* 22

I.	JE.	*HE, IT.*	IL.
THOU.	TU.	*THEY*, mas.	ILS.
WE.	NOUS.	*SHE, IT.*	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	*THEY*, fem.	ELLES.

N. B. *The* nominative *pronouns keep the* same place *in the sentence in french as in english;* ex.

I have. *thou* hast. *he* has, &c. HAVE *I?* HAST *thou?* HAS *he? &c.*
J'*ai.* TU *as.* IL *a, &c.* *Ai*-JE? *As*-TU? *A-t*-IL? &c.

EXERCISE.

I speak. *Thou* writest. *He* plays. *She* sings. *We* walk. *You* dance.
parle. *écris.* *joue.* *chante.* *marchons.* *danses.*
They study. Have *you* done? Is *he* come? Are *they* gone
étudient. *Avez* *fini?* *Est* *venu?* *Sont* *partis?*

If I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU, THEY, *have* not a verb *to agree with them, or if they are* joined *to* another substantive,* *they are,* 23

I.	MOI.	*HE.*	LUI.
THOU.	TOI.	*THEY*, mas.	EUX.
WE.	NOUS.	*SHE, IT.*	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	*THEY*, fem.	ELLES. ex.

It is *I* who have done that. *C'est* MOI *qui ai fait cela.*
He and *I* have done that. LUI *et* MOI *nous avons fait cela.*
You and *they* have done that. VOUS *et* EUX *vous avez fait cela.*

EXERCISE.

Who has done that? It is not[35] *I;* it is *he.* It was neither
Qui a fait cela? Ce n'est pas [22] *c' est* [22] *Ce n'était ni*
he nor *I*, it was either *you* or *they*. *He* and *I* were together.
[22] *ni* [22] *c' était ou* *ou* [22] [22] [22] *(nous étions) ensemble.*
I can do that better than *he*. You can not do it[24] better than *I*.
[22] *puis faire cela* (b) *que* [22] *ne pouvez pas le*[24] *faire* (b) [22]

* By *substantive* is meant here every word which either *names* or *represents* a *substance*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A TABLE *shewing how the* OBJECTIVE *pronouns are expressed, according to the* PLACE *which they keep with the* VERB.

	Before the verb. 24, 25, 27, rules.	*After the verb. 26 rule.*	*After a preposition. 28 rule.*
ME, to ME.	ME.	MOI.	MOI.
THEE, to THEE.	TE.	TOI.	TOI
HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF, THEMSELVES.	SE.		SOI.
	Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.		
US, to US.	NOUS.		NOUS.
YOU, to YOU.	VOUS.		VOUS
HIM, IT; mas.	LE.		LUI.
HER, IT; fem.	LA.		ELLE.
THEM.	LES.		EUX, *m.* ELLES, *f.*
to HIM, to HER.	LUI.		
to THEM.	LEUR.		
of, from, for, with *IT, THEM.*	EN.		
to, at, in, by *IT, THEM.*	Y. (e)		

This table shews in one point of view all the rules concerning the OBJECTIVE pronouns.

These pronouns, as you see in the table above, are sometimes *governed* by *verbs*, and sometimes by *prepositions*.

When the objective pronouns are *governed* by *a verb*, they are placed invariably *before* that verb. See rules 24, 25 and 27.

Except when the verb *commands*, for then the pronouns must be placed *after* the verb, and MOI, TOI must be used, instead of ME, TE. See rule 26.

If the pronouns are governed by a *preposition*, they are then independent of the verb, and must be placed *after* the *preposition*. See rule 28.

(e) EN, Y, are also *adverbs* of *place*, used, EN for *THENCE*; Y for *THERE, THITHER*, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER *which the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep with the* VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

24 *When the* PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM, are governed by a verb, the pronouns* ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y, *which represent them, must be placed* immediately BEFORE *that verb;* EX.

He sees *me.*	*Il* ME *voit.*	literally he *me*	sees.
thee.	*Il* TE *voit.*	he *thee*	
us.	*Il* NOUS *voit.*	he *us*	
you.	*Il* VOUS *voit.*	he *you*	
him, or *it.*	*Il* LE *voit.*	he *him*, or *it*	
her, or *it.*	*Il* LA *voit.*	he *her*, or *it*	
them.	*Il* LES *voit.*	he *them*	
Does he see *me?*	ME *voit-il?*	*me*	sees he?
thee?	TE *voit-il?*	*thee*	
us?	NOUS *voit-il?*	*us*	
you?	VOUS *voit-il?*	*you*	
him, or *it?*	LE *voit-il?*	*him*, or *it*	
her, or *it?*	LA *voit-il?*	*her*, or *it*	
them?	LES *voit-il?*	*them*	
He does not see *me; &c.*	*Il ne* ME *voit pas.*	he *me* sees not.	
Does he not see *me? &c.*	*Ne* ME *voit-il pas?*	*me* sees he not?	
Does he not see *thee? &c.*	*Ne* TE *voit-il pas?*	*thee* sees he not?	

EXERCISE.

I see *you.* I see *him.* I see *her.* I see *them.* Do you[51] see *me?*
vois [24] [24] [24] [24] — *voyez-vous* [24]

Do you see *us?* Do you see *him?* Do you see *her?* Do you see
— [51] [24] — [51] [24] — [51] [24] — [51]

them? I do not[55] know *you.* I do not know *him.* I do not know
[24] — *ne connais pas* [24] — [55] [24] — [55]

her. I do not know *them.* Do you[51] not know *me?* Do you
[24] — [55] [24] — *ne connaissez-vous pas* [24]? — [51]

not know *us?* Do you not know *him?* Do you not know *her?*
[55] [24]? — [55] [24]? — [55] [24]

Do you not know *them?* I meet *them* sometimes, but I do not[5]
— [55] [24]? *rencontre* [24] *quelquefois,* — *ne*

speak (to *them*). Have you seen your mother lately? I saw *her*
parle pas — *leur*[24]. *Avez* *vu* *depuis peu?* *vis* [24]

yesterday. Did she[51] bring *you* any thing? She brought *me* a
hier. — *apporta-t-elle* [24] *quelque chose?* *apporta* [24]

new book. Did you[51] tell *her* that I wished to see *her?*
nouveau *livre.* m. — *dites-vous* *lui*[24] *que* *souhaitais* — *voir* *la*[24]?

I told *her* that we (should go) to see *her* on sunday. What did
dis *lui*[24] *que* *irions* — *voir* *la*[24] — *dimanche.* *Que*

she[51] say to *you?* She told *me* that she (would be) glad to see *us*
dit-elle — [24] *dit* [24] *qu'* *serait* *(bien aise)* *de voir* [24]

PERSONAL PRONOUN

The ORDER *which the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep with the* VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

25 *If the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs* HAVE, *or* BE, *and of a* participle past, *the pronouns* ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y, *which represent them, must be placed* BEFORE *the* auxiliary *verb; not between the auxiliary and the participle;* as,

He has seen *me.*	*Il* M'* a *vu.*	literally he *me*	has seen.
thee.	*Il* T' a *vu.*	he *thee*	
him, or *it.*	*Il* L' a *vu.*	he *him,* or *it*	
her, or *it.*	*Il* L' a *vue.*	he *her,* or *it*	
us.	*Il* NOUS a *vus.*	he *us*	
you.	*Il* VOUS a *vus.*	he *you*	
them.	*Il* LES a *vus.*	he *them*	
Has he seen *me?*	M' †a-*t-il vu?*	*me*	has he seen?
thee?	T' a-*t-il vu?*	*thee*	
him, or *it?*	L' a-*t-il vu?*	*him,* or *it*	
her, or *it?*	L' a-*t-il vue?*	*her,* or *it*	
us?	NOUS a-*t-il vus?*	*us*	
you?	VOUS a-*t-il vus?*	*you*	
them?	LES a-*t-il vus?*	*them*	
He has not seen *me; &c.*	*Il ne* M'a *pas vu.*	he *me* has not seen.	
Has he not seen *me? &c.*	*Ne* M'a-*t-il pas vu?*	*me* has he not seen?	

EXERCISE.

I have seen *you.* I have seen *him.* I have seen *her.* I have
ai vu 25 *vu* 25* *vue* 25*

seen *them.* Have you seen *me?* Have you seen *us?* Have you seen
vus 25 *Avez-vous vu* 25* ? *vus* 25 ? *vu*

him? Have you seen *her?* Have you seen *them?* Where have you
25* ? *vue* 25* ? *vus* 25 ? *Où*

seen *him?* I have met *him* at the door. He had seen *me*
vu 25* ? *rencontré* 25* *à* *porte.* f. *avait vu* 25*

(coming out) of the house. He has kept *me* all this while. I would
sortir 1 *maison.* f. *retenu* 25 *tout* 1 *tems.* m. —

have told *him*[25] that I wanted to go. I have told *him*[25] that you
aurais dit lui ‡ *que voulais,* — *(m'en aller.)* *dit lui* ‡ *que*

had forbid *me* to stop. I have heard *you.* Had you never[55]
aviez défendu 25 *de m'arrêter.* *entendu* 25 *Ne aviez-vous jamais*

seen *him* before? I had met *him* once or twice, but I had
*vu le*25* *auparavant?* *avais rencontré le*25* *une ou deux fois, mais ne avais*

never[55] spoken (to *him*), and he had never[55] spoken (to *me.*) I have
jamais parlé — *lui*25 *ne avait jamais* — 25

written (to *him*) this morning, but he has not[55] yet answered *me.*
écrit — *lui*25 1 *matin,* m. *ne a pas encore (fait réponse)* 25.

* See note * page 28. † See note * page 43. ‡ See note (f) page 79.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER *which the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep with the* VERB.

EXCEPTIONS.

1st Exception. *When the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by the* IMPERATIVE *of a verb used in a* COMMANDING *sense*, i. e. *without a negation, the pronouns which represent them, are placed* immediately AFTER *the* verb; 26

In these instances ME *is expressed by* MOI, *and* THEE *by* TOI.

But if the IMPERATIVE *is used in a* FORBIDDING *sense*, i. e. *if it is attended by a* negation, *the pronouns must be placed* immediately BEFORE *the* verb, *agreeably to the general rule;* 27

Then ME *is expressed by* ME, *and* THEE *by* TE; *ex.*

	Imperative COMMANDING, 26 *rule.*	*Imperative* FORBIDDING, 27 *rule.*	
Look at *me.*	*Regarde*-MOI.	*Ne* ME	*regarde pas.*
thyself.	TOI.	*Ne* TE	
Look at *us.*	*Regardez*-NOUS.	*Ne* NOUS	*regardez pas.*
yourself.	VOUS.	*Ne* VOUS	
Let us look at *him*, or *it.*	*Regardons*-LE.	*Ne* LE	*regardons pas.*
her, or *it.*	LA.	*Ne* LA	
them.	LES.	*Ne* LES	

Do *not* look at *me.*

EXERCISE.

Speak to *me.* Do not[55] speak to *me.* Do not interrupt *me.* Warm
Parlez — [26] — *ne* *pas*— [27] — [55] *interrompez* [27] *Chauffe*
thyself a little. Do not warm *thyself* (so much.) Write to *her.* Do
[26] *un peu.* — [55] [27] *tant.* *Ecrivez* — *lui*[26]. —
not write to *her.* Send *it* (to *him.*) Do not send *it* to *him.*
[55] — [27] *Envoyez-le*[26] — *lui.*[26] — [55] *le*[27]— *lui*[27].

2d Exception. *The* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *are not always governed by* verbs, *they are sometimes governed by a* preposition *which some verbs require to be united to the substantive* that follows them; then the pronoun being the* object *of the* preposition, *and not the object of the verb it is placed* after *the* preposition, *and we express* 28

ME,	*by*	MOI.	*US,*	*by*	NOUS.
THEE,	*by*	TOI.	*YOU,*	*by*	VOUS.
HIM,	*by*	LUI.	*THEM,* m.	*by*	EUX.
HER,	*by*	ELLE.	*THEM,* fem.	*by*	ELLES; ex.

Was he speaking *of me?*	*Parlait-il* de MOI?
I will not go *with him.*	*Je n' irai pas* avec LUI.
He is come *without her.*	*Il est venu* sans ELLE.
He applied *to them.*	*Il s'adressa* à EUX, *m.* à ELLES, *f.*†

EXERCISE.

Come *to me.* I do not[55] care *for thee.* I went *to her*, and she
Viens *à* [26] — *ne* *me soucie pas de* [26] *allai* [26] *et*
sent me *to him.* I will not go *with them.* I am tired *of them.*
envoya [24] [26] — [55] *irai avec* [26] *ennuyé d'* [26]
Have you thought *of me?* I always[54] think *of you.*
Avez *pensé* *à* [26] *toujours* *pense* *à* [26]

* See note * page 73. † This is more fully explained in the third part of this work.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER *which* SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep* TOGETHER.

29 *When* SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *are governed by the* same *verb they must be placed* TOGETHER *in the following order :*

Before the verb, 24, 25 rules. ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, SE, } *bef.* LE, LA, LES, Y, EN.

After the verb, 26 rule. LE, LA, LES, Y, } *bef.* MOI, TOI.

Whether bef. or aft. the verb ; 24, 25, 26, 27 rules. ME, TE, } *bef.* EN.

Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

LE, LA, LES, } *bef.* LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.

LUI, LEUR, } *bef.* Y, EN.

Y, *bef.* EN.*

* Having uniformly observed that the arrangement of *several pronouns* together is one of those rules which learners find the greatest difficulty to attain, I have given examples shewing how *several pronouns* are placed together in all possible instances, by the means of which errors may always be rectified.

	BEFORE *the verb, 24,25 rules.*	AFTER *the verb, 26 rule.*	
	FIRST PERSON.	*IMPERATIVE COMMANDING.*	
He gave *him* or *it to me.*	*Il* ME LE *donna.*	*Donnez*-LE-MOI.	Give *it me, &c.*
He gave *her* or *it to me.*	*Il* ME LA *donna.*	*Donnez*-LA-MOI.	
He gave *them to me.*	*Il* ME LES *donna.*	*Donnez*-LES-MOI.	
He gave *me some.*	*Il* M' EN *donna.*	*Donnez*-M' EN.	
He gave *him* or *it to us.*	*Il* NOUS LE *donna.*	*Donnez*-NOUS-LE.	
He gave *her* or *it to us*	*Il* NOUS LA *donna.*	*Donnez*-NOUS-LA.	
He gave *them to us.*	*Il* NOUS LES *donna.*	*Donnez*-NOUS-LES.	
He gave *us some.*	*Il* NOUS EN *donna.*	*Donnez*-NOUS-EN.	
He sent *me there.*	*Il* M' Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-Y-MOI.	Send *me there, &c.*
He sent *him, her,* or *it to me there.*	*Il* ME L' Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-L' Y-MOI.	
He sent *them to me there.*	*Il* ME LES Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-LES-Y-MOI.	
He sent *me some there.*	*Il* M' Y EN *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-Y-EN-MOI.	
He sent *us there.*	*Il* NOUS Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-NOUS-Y.	
He sent *him, her,* or *it to us there.*	*Il* NOUS L' Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-NOUS-L' Y.	
He sent *them to us there.*	*Il* NOUS LES Y *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-NOUS-LES-Y.	
He sent *some to us there.*	*Il* NOUS Y EN *envoya.*	*Envoyez*-NOUS-Y-EN.	
	SECOND PERSON.		
He gave *him* or *it to thee.*	*Il* TE LE *donna.*	*Représente*-LE-TOI.	Represent *it to thee, &c.*
He gave *her* or *it to thee.*	*Il* TE LA *donna.*	*Représente*-LA-TOI.	
He gave *them to thee.*	*Il* TE LES *donna.*	*Représente*-LES-TOI.	
He gave *thee some.*	*Il* T' EN *donna.*	*Représente*-T' EN.	
He gave *him* or *it to you.*	*Il* VOUS LE *donna.*	*Représentez*-VOUS-LE.	
He gave *her* or *it to you.*	*Il* VOUS LA *donna.*	*Représentez*-VOUS-LA.	
He gave *them to you.*	*Il* VOUS LES *donna.*	*Représentez*-VOUS-LES.	
He gave *you some.*	*Il* VOUS EN *donna.*	*Représentez*-VOUS-EN.	
He sent *thee there.*	*Il* T' Y *envoya.*		
He sent *him, her,* or *it to thee there.*	*Il* TE L' Y *envoya.*		
He sent *them to thee there*	*Il* TE LES Y *envoya.*		
He sent *some to thee there.*	*Il* T' Y EN *envoya.*		
He sent *you there.*	*Il* VOUS Y *envoya.*	*Transportez*-VOUS-Y.	
He sent *him, her,* or *it to you there.*	*Il* VOUS L' Y *envoya.*		
He sent *them to you there.*	*Il* VOUS LES Y *envoya.*		
He sent *some to you there.*	*Il* VOUS Y EN *envoya.*	*Informez*-VOUS-Y-EN.	
	THIRD PERSON.		
He recalls *him* or *it to himself.*	*Il* SE LE *rappelle.*		
He recalls *her* or *it to himself.*	*Il* SE LA *rappelle.*		
He recalls *them to himself.*	*Il* SE LES *rappelle.*		
He repents *of it, of them.*	*Il* S' EN *repent.*		
He applies *himself to it to them.*	*Il* S' Y *applique.*		

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER *which* SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep* TOGETHER.

BEFORE *the verb*, 24, 25 *rules*. AFTER *the verb*, 26 *rule*.

THIRD PERSON.

He has given *him* or *it to him, to her*.	*Il* LE LUI *a donné*.	*Donnez*-LE-LUI.	Give it *him*, *&c.*
He has given *her* or *it to him, to her*.	*Il* LA LUI *a donnée*.	*Donnez*-LA-LUI.	
He has given *them to him, to her*.	*Il* LES LUI *a donnés*.	*Donnez*-LES-LUI.	
He has given *him* or *it to them*.	*Il* LE LEUR *a donné*.	*Donnez*-LE-LEUR.	
He has given *her* or *it to them*.	*Il* LA LEUR *a donnée*.	*Donnez*-LA-LEUR.	
He has given *them to them*.	*Il* LES LEUR *a donnés*.	*Donnez*-LES-LEUR.	
He warned *him*, or *her of it*.	*Il* L' EN *avertit*.	*Avertissez*-L' EN.	
He warned *them of it*.	*Il* LES EN *avertit*.	*Avertissez*-LES-EN.	
He sent *him, her* or *it there*.	*Il* L' Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-L' Y.	
He sent *them there*.	*Il* LES Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LES-Y.	
He sent *him* or *it to him, to her there*.	*Il* LE LUI Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LE-LUI-Y.*	Send it to him *there*, *&c.*
He sent *her* or *it to him, to her there*.	*Il* LA LUI Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LA-LUI-Y.	
He sent *them to him, to her there*.	*Il* LES LUI Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LES-LUI-Y.	
He sent *him* or *it to them there*.	*Il* LE LEUR Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LE-LEUR-Y.	
He sent *her* or *it to them there*.	*Il* LA LEUR Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LA-LEUR-Y.	
He sent *them to them there*.	*Il* LES LEUR Y *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LES-LEUR-Y.	
He sent *some to him, to her*.	*Il* LUI EN *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LUI-EN.	
He sent *some to them*, or *them some*.	*Il* LEUR EN *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LEUR-EN.	
He sent *some to him, to her there*.	*Il* LUI Y EN *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LUI-Y-EN.	
He sent *some to them there*.	*Il* LEUR Y EN *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-LEUR-Y-EN.	
He sent *some* (g) *there*.	*Il* Y EN *envoya*.	*Envoyez*-Y-EN.	

EXERCISE.

I have brought *you* the book which I had promised *you*. Where
ai apporté [25] *livre* m. *que avais promis* [25] *Où*

is it? Shew *it*[29] *me*. I (will shew) *it*[24] *you* (by and by.) Will you give
est-il? Montrez-le [26] *montrerai le* [29] *tantôt. Voulez donner*

it[24] *me?* Give *it*[26] *me*. I can not give *it*[24] *you*. It does not belong
le [29]*? Donnez-le* [29] *ne puis pas donner le* [29] *Il — n' est pas*

to me. I (will lend) *it*[24] *you*. When will you[51] lend *it*[24] *me?*
à [29] *prêterai le* [29] *Quand — prêterez-vous le* [29]*?*

Lend *it*[29] *me* now. I (will return) *it*[24] to *you* (to-morrow). I (will lend)
Prêter-le [26] *à présent. rendrai le —* [29] *demain. prêterai*

it[24] *you* next[16] week[7]. I (shall be) in the country then. I (will send)
le [29] *prochaine semaine.* f. *serai à campagne* f. *alors. enverrai*

them to *you there*. You will not find (any body) to bring *them*
[24] — [29] *y* [26] — *ne trouverez personne pour apporter* [24]

to *me there*. I (will take) *them* to *you there* myself. Has she given
— [29] *y* [29] *porterai* [24] — [29] [29] *moi-même. A-t-elle donné*

him[25] any money? No; she has lent *him*[25] a guinea. Tell *her*[25]
(f) [9] *argent? Non; prêté* (f) [1] *guinée.* f. *Dites* (f)

not to lend *him*[24] *any* more, for he will never return *it*[24] *her*.
de ne pas prêter (f) (g)[29] *davantage, car — ne*[53] *rendra jamais le* (f)[29]

---

* LUI Y is grammatical, but *i, i*, at the end of a sentence do not sound well, therefore, instead of Y for *there*, use LÀ, and say LUI *là* instead of LUI Y.

(f) When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pronouns, one of them has a preposition expressed or understood, but the preposition is generally understood before the pronoun which represents the person. In these instances *HIM*, *HER*, must be expressed by LUI, and *THEM* by LEUR, the same as when *to* is prefixed to them; ex.
I will send *him* money, *i. e.* money *to him*; *Je* LUI *enverrai de l'argent*; not *L'enverrai*.
I have offered *them* some, *i. e.* some *to them*; *Je* LEUR EN *ai offert*; not *je* LES EN *ai offert*.

(g) *SOME*, *ANY*, implying *of it, of them*, understood after *them*, are expressed by EN.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

30 *As there are only* TWO *genders in french, the* masculine *and the* feminine, *the* NEUTER PRONOUNS *IT, THEY, THEM must be expressed by* IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES; LE, LA, LES, *the same as* HE, SHE, THEY; HIM, HER, THEM, *masculine or feminine, agreeably to the* gender *of the* noun *which they represent; so we say:*

Of a man *or a* tree.
IL *est grand; je* LE *vois.* — *He* or *it* is tall; I see *him*, or *it*.
Of a woman *or a* flower;
ELLE *est belle; regardez*-LA. — *She* or *it* is fine; look at *her*, or *it*.(h)
Of men *or* trees;
ILS *sont ici; je* LES *ai vus.* — *They* are here; I have seen *them*.
Of women *or* flowers;
ELLES *sont belles; je* LES *admire.* — *They* are fine; I admire *them*.

EXERCISE.

You have a fine hat. *It* is new. I can not wear *it*[24]. *It* is too small. (Here is) another; try *it*[26]. This watch has cost me a (good deal) of money[8], but *it* is not[35] good; *It* does not go well. Get *it*[26] mended. Give *it*[30] me. (That is) a good house; *it* is well built, but *it* is not well situated. *It* is too near the road. If *it* was mine,[42] I (would sell) *it*[24]. Eat some of these grapes; *they* are good. I (would rather have) apples, if *they* were ripe. *It* is not the time for apples. Is *it* astonishing that *they* are not[35] ripe? *It* (would be) an astonishing thing if *they* were.

avez [1] *beau chapeau.* m. [30] *est neuf. ne saurais porter* [30](h) [30] *trop petit. En voici un autre; essayez* [30](h) [1] *montre* f. *a coûté* [25] — *beaucoup argent,*N.B. [30] *n'est pas bonne;* [30] — *ne va pas bien.* *Faites* [30](h) *raccommoder. Donnez* (h) [26] *Voilà* [1] *bonne maison;* f. [30] *bien bâti,*[13] [30] *bien situé* [13]. [30] *trop près de route.* f. *Si it était (à moi) vendrais* [30](h) *Mangez (quelques-uns)* [1] *raisins;* m [30] *bon.* [13] *J' aimerais mieux* — [9]*pommes,* f. [30] *étaient mûr.*[13] (i) *n'est pas tems* m. *des* (i) *étonnant qu'* [30]*ne soient pas* [13] (i) *serait étonnante* [16] *chose* f. *qu'* [30] *le fussent.*

(h) Learners are sometimes embarrassed how to discriminate *IT* the *object* from *IT* the *agent* or nominative, *i. e.* when to express *IT* by IL, ELLE, and when by LE, LA.

IT is the *agent*, and expressed by IL, ELLE, agreeably to the *gender* of the noun to which it relates, when, if you were speaking of a *person*, you would use *HE* or *SHE*; as,
HE or *IT* is come. IL *est venu.* *SHE* or *IT* will fall. ELLE *tombera.*

IT is the *object*, and expressed by LE, LA, agreeably to the *gender* of the noun, when, if you were speaking of a *person*, you would use *HIM* or *HER*; as,
I see *HIM* or *IT*. *JE* LE vois. I know *HER* or *IT*. *Je* LA *connais.*

(i) *IT* is often used in an *impersonal* sense, *i. e.* without reference to any substantive mentioned in the sentence; as, *IT* is glorious, shameful, necessary, &c.
In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by IL, or by CE.

IT is expressed by IL, if the verb is followed by an *adjective* without a substantive; as,
IT is glorious, shameful, necessary. IL *est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, &c.*

IT is expressed by CE, when the verb is followed by a *substantive*, either with or without an adjective; as,
IT is I. *IT* is he. *IT* is she. *IT* is you. *IT* is your brother. *IT* is a shameful thing.
C'*est moi.* C'*est lui.* C'*est elle.* C'*est vous.* C'*est votre frère.* C'*est une chose honteuse.*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

He, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, *are sometimes used without* 31
relation to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words MAN, WOMAN, *or* PEOPLE *understood;* as,

He who is honest is esteemed; i. e. *the man* who is honest is &c.
Do you know *her* whom I love? i. e. *the woman* whom I love?

In this sense they are expressed;
HE, HIM; *by* CELUI. *SHE, HER;* *by* CELLE. *THEY, THEM;* *by* CEUX; as,
He who is honest is esteemed. CELUI *qui est honnête est estimé.*
Do you know *her* whom I love? *Connaissez-vous* CELLE *que j'aime?*

N. B. CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, *and the relative* QUI, QUE, DONT *which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words sometimes are in english; they must be* placed TOGETHER; as,

He knows men but little *who* relies on their promises.
CELUI QUI *compte sur les promesses des hommes ne les connaît guère;* i. e. *He who* relies on the promises of men knows them but little (k).

EXERCISE.

He who can live dishonoured does not deserve to live. *He* who
31 *qui peut vivre déshonoré — 55 mérite de* 31

betrays a friend is unworthy of friendship. *He* can not be happy
trahit ami m. *indigne amitié.* 31 *ne saurait — être heureux*

*whose*31 happiness depends on others. Do not55 trust *him* who
*dont*N.B. 7*bonheur* m. *dépend des autres.* — *Ne vous fiez pas à* 31

has deceived you. *She* (of whom) you speak (will come) (by and by.)
trompé 25 31 *dont parlez viendra tantôt.*

She is not come *(of whom*31*)* you (were speaking.) Do you51 know *her*
31 *est* 55 *venue* N.B. *parliez.* — *Connaissez-vous* 31

(of whom) we (are speaking?) *They* who prefer 7riches to 7honour
parlons? 31 *préfèrent richesses* 2*honneur*

are contemptible. *They* are mistaken *who*31 think that riches make
*méprisable*18. 31 *— se trompent* N.B. *pensent que* 7 *rendent*

men7 happy. Do you51 know that gentleman? *He* is a physician.
homme heureux. — *Connaissez-vous* 1 *monsieur?* (1) *médecin.*

(That is) his wife. *She* is a fine woman. *They* are 10very honest people.
Voilà 1 *femme.* (1) *belle femme.* (1) *très - honnêtes gens.*

(k) We may also say without changing the order of the words;
CELUI-LÀ *ne connaît guère les hommes* QUI *compte sur leurs promesses;*
or C' EST *ne connaître guère les hommes* QUE DE *compter sur leurs promesses;*
but these two modes of expression are more adapted to oratory than to conversation.

(1) HE, SHE, THEY, coming with the verb BE followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by CE, though the noun to which they refer has been mentioned before; as,
He is a merchant. C'*est un négociant.*
She is a milliner. C'*est une marchande de modes.*
They are great rogues. Ce *sont de grands fripons.*

N. B. If the substantive which follows the verb denotes *trade* or *profession*, HE, SHE, THEY, may be expressed by IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, but the *article* must be *left out;* as,
IL *est négociant.* ELLE *est marchande de modes.*
But the learner will do well, in these instances, to use CE until he has seen the second part of this book, in which this is more fully explained.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.
QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

32 *When* WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, *come after one or several substantives which they* particularize, *they are expressed,*

Nomin.	*WHO, THAT, WHICH;* QUI.	The man *who* / The horse *that* / The *chaise which*	comes.	*L' homme* QUI / *Le cheval* QUI / *La chaise* QUI	*vient.*
Object.	*WHOM, THAT, WHICH;* QUE. (m)	The man *whom* / The horse *which* / The coach *that*	I see.	*L' homme* QUE / *Le cheval* QUE / *Le carrosse* QUE	*je vois.*
Possess.	*WHOSE, Of WHOM, Of WHICH;* DONT.	The man *of whom* / The horse *of which* / The chaise *of which*	I speak.	*L' homme* DONT / *Le cheval* DONT / *La chaise* DONT	*je parle.*

N. B. QUI, QUE, DONT *must be placed* immediately AFTER *the noun to which they* relate; as,

Is the *ship* arrived *which* was expected? } i. e. the *ship which* was
Le NAVIRE QU'*on attendait est-il*[32] *arrivé?* } expected, is *it*[32] arrived?

EXERCISE.

Do you[51] know the master *who* teaches me french[7]? The scholars
— *Connaissez-vous maître* [32] *enseigne* [24] *français* m.? *écoliers* m.

whom you have recommended to me are very diligent. (This is)
[32] *avez recommandés* — [25] *sont très* [13]. *Voici*

the person *of whom* I (was speaking.) Have you seen the ships *that*[32]
[1] *personne* f. [32] *parlais.* *vu* [1] *navire* (m)

(are just) (come in?) You have bought a book *which*[32] is very dear.
viennent d'arriver? *acheté livre* m. (m) *est très - cher.*

The book *which*[32] (m) you have bought is very dear. The book *of which*[32]

you speak is very dear. That house is sold *which*[32] you wanted to buy.
parlez [1] *maison* f. *vendue* N.B. *vouliez* — *acheter*

The ladies you want to see are here. The gentleman is gone *who*[32]
dame (n) *voulez voir ici.* *monsieur parti* N.B.

has brought you a letter. He has lost all the money he had.
apporté [25] [1] *lettre.* f. *perdu tout* [2] *argent*(n) *avait.*

(m) Persons not versed in grammatical terms, are often at a loss to distinguish the *object* from the *nominative*, i. e. when to express THAT, WHICH by QUI, and when by QUE.

To these I will observe, that THAT, WHICH are the *nominative*, and expressed by QUI, when they are followed immediately by a *verb;* as,
The coach *that* or *which* is at the door. *Le carrosse* QUI *est à la porte.*

THAT, WHICH are the *object* of the verb, and expressed by QUE, when, between them and the verb, there is a *noun* or *pronoun* which is the *nominative* of the verb; as,
The coach *that* or *which* we have met. *Le carrosse* QUE *nous avons rencontré.*

(n) The distinctive pronouns WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often *left out* in english; as, *The man I saw;* for *the man* whom *I saw;* but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must *always* be *expressed* in french; as,
The man I saw, i. e. *whom* I saw. *L' homme* QUE *je vis.*
The wine we drank, i. e. *which* we drank. *Le vin* QUE *nous bûmes.*
The woman I speak of, i. e. *of whom* I speak. *La femme* DONT *je parle.*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

After any preposition *but* OF, *or a* preposition *synonymous to it,* 33
WHOM is expressed by QUI *for* both *genders and numbers.*

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH	by	*le* QUEL,	*la* QUELLE,	*les* QUELS,	*les* QUELLES;
From WHICH	by	*du* QUEL,	*de la* QUELLE,	*des* QUELS,	*des* QUELLES;
To, at WHICH	by	*au* QUEL,	*à la* QUELLE,	*aux* QUELS,	*aux* QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender *and* number *of the noun to which it relates;* as,

The man *with whom* The horse *on which* The chaise *in which*	I came.	*L' homme* avec QUI *Le cheval* sur LEQUEL *La chaise* dans LAQUELLE	*je vins.*
The man *from whom* The horse *from which*	this fell.	*L' homme* de QUI *Le cheval* duQUEL	*ceci tomba.*
The man *to whom* The horse *to which*	he gave it.	*L' homme* à QUI *Le cheval* auQUEL	*il le donna.*

EXERCISE

You know the lady *to whom* I have spoken. The study *to which*
Connaissez dame 33 *ai parlé.* 2 *étude* f. 33

he applies is not very useful. The chair *on which* you sit is
s'applique est 55 *très - utile.* *chaise* f. *sur* 33 *(êtes assis)*

broken[13]. The coach *in which* I came was overturned. The people
rompu. N.B. *carrosse* m. *dans* 33 *vins fut renversé.* *gens* m.

with whom I was were very civil. (This is) the stick *with which*
avec 33 *étais étaient civil*[18]. *Voici* *bâton* m. 36

he struck me. Where is the horse *to which* you have given the corn?
frappa 24 . *Où* 33 *avez donné* 2 *avoine?*

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE used absolutely, i. e. *without reference to any* 34
noun mentioned before, imply the word PERSON understood.

WHO, WHOM are then expressed by QUI; as,
Who is there? i. e. *what person* is there? QUI *est là?*
I know *whom* you love, i. e. *what person, &c. Je sais* QUI *vous aimez.*

WHOSE is expressed by DE QUI, *when it is used for* OF WHAT PERSON; *and by* À QUI, *when it is used for* TO WHAT PERSON; as,

Whose daughter is she? i. e. *(of what person)* is she the daughter?	DE QUI *est-elle fille?*
Whose house is that? i. e. *(to what person)* does that house belong?	À QUI *est cette maison?*

EXERCISE.

Whom did you send? *Whom* have you found? *Whom* did you
34 *avez* 51 *envoyé?* 34 *avez* *trouvé?* 34 *avez*

speak to[56]? I know *whom* you are speaking of[30]. *Whose* hat
parlé à ? *sais* 34 — *parlez de* 34 *chapeau* m.

is this? *Whose* coach is that? I do not know *whose* it is.
est 1 *?* 34 *carrosse* m. 1 *?* — *ne sais pas* 34 30

Whose son is he? *Whose* wife is she? *Whose* relations are they?
34 *fils* *?* *femme* *?* 34 *parent* *sont - ils* *?*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an INTERROGATIVE *sentence* WHICH *requires* THREE distinctions.

WHICH INTERROGATIVE *is either joined to the noun like an* adjective, i. e. without *the help of a* preposition; as,
WHICH *man?* WHICH *carriage?* WHICH *horses?*

Or, like a substantive, *joined to it by the* preposition OF; as,
WHICH OF *the men?* WHICH OF *the carriages?* WHICH OF *my horses?*

Or like a pronoun *used* absolutely *after the noun;* as,
It is one of these men; WHICH *is it?*

35 WHICH INTERROGATIVE *joined like an* adjective, *i. e.* without a preposition, *to the noun to which it relates, is*

	Masc. SING	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	*de*QUEL,	*de*QUELLE,	*de*QUELS,	*de*QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	*à* QUEL,	*à* QUELLE,	*à* QUELS,	*à* QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender *and* number *of the noun;* as,

Which man / *Which* carriage / *Which* horses } will you have? QUEL *homme* / QUELLE *voiture* / QUELS *chevaux* } *voulez-vous?*

36 WHICH INTERROGATIVE *joined by a* preposition *to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it* absolutely, *i. e.* without a noun, *is*

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	*le* QUEL,	*la*QUELLE,	*les* QUELS,	*les* QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	*du*QUEL,	*de la*QUELLE,	*des* QUELS,	*des* QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	*au*QUEL,	*à la*QUELLE,	*aux*QUELS,	*aux*QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender *and* number *of the noun;* as,

Which of these men / *Which* of the coaches / *Which* of my horses } will you have? LEQUEL *de ces hommes* / LAQUELLE *des voitures* / LESQUELS *de mes chevaux* } *voulez-vous?*

Which is the tallest? LEQUEL *est le plus haut?*
Which is the finest? LAQUELLE *est la plus belle?*
Which are the best? LESQUELS *sont les meilleurs?*

37 WHICH *sometimes implies the* DEMONSTRATIVE *pronoun* THAT *or* THOSE *understood, this demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and* WHICH, *as including the two words, is expressed by*

CELUI QUE *m.* / CELLE QUE *f.* } THAT *which;* CEUX QUE *m.* / CELLES QUE *f.* } THOSE *which;*

agreeably to the gender *and* number *of the noun to which it relates;* as, Which of these horses shall I ride? *Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?* Ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which Montez* CELUI que *vous voudrez.*

EXERCISE.

Which book shall I read? *Which* of these books shall I read?
35 *livre* m. — 51 *lirai-je*51 *?* 36 1 51 *?*

Read *which* you please. *Which* pen shall I make use of[56]?
Lisez 37 *il vous plaira.* 35 *plume* f. — 51 *me servirai-je de?*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Which of these pens shall I[51] make use of? Use *which* you will.
[36] * 1 — *me servirai-je* [56] ? *Servez-vous de* [37] *voudrez.*

Which boy shall I[51] give this to? *Which* of the boys shall I give
[35] *garçon* — *donnerai-je ceci* [56] ? [36] * 1 [51]

this to? Give it to *which* you like. *Which* lady is the handsomest?
[56] ? *Donnez-le* [37] *voudrez.* [35] *dame est belle* [21] ?

Which of these ladies is the handsomest? *Which* ladies do you
[36] 1 [21] [35] — [51]

speak of[56]? To *which* do you[51] give the preference? *Which*
parlez-vous[51] ? [36] — *donnez-vous*[51] *préférence* f.? *Which*

fruit do you[51] like best? *Which* of these fruits do you like best?
fruit m. — *aimez-vous le mieux?* * 1 — ?

Which is the ripest? Eat of *which* you like. *Which* road shall
est mûr[21]? *Mangez* *voudrez.* *route* f. —

we go by[56]? *Which* of these roads shall we go by[56]? *Which*
[51] *irons par?* 1 [51] *par?*

house shall we[51] go to? *Which* is the best[13]? Go to *which*
maison f. — *irons-nous* [56] ? *meilleur?* *Allez à*

you choose. *Which* door must I go through? *Which* of these
voudrez. *porte* f. *faut-il que je passe par*[56] ?

doors must I go through? Go through *which* you please.
par [56] ? *Passez par* *il vous plaira.*

WHAT requires the same *distinction as* WHICH.

WHAT FOLLOWED *by a noun, or* RELATING *to a noun mentioned before, is expressed in the same manner as* WHICH; 38

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
	WHAT;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from	*WHAT;*	*de*QUEL,	*de*QUELLE,	*de*QUELS,	*de*QUELLES;
To, at	*WHAT;*	*à* QUEL,	*a* QUELLE,	*à* QUELS,	*à* QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender *and* number *of the noun;* as,

What man
What carriage } will you have? QUEL *homme* / QUELLE *voiture* / QUELS *chevaux* } *voulez-vous?*
What horses

It is my opinion, *what* is yours? *C'est mon opinion,* QUELLE *est la vôtre?*

EXERCISE.

What man has he employed? *What* language do you[51] like best?
[38] *a-t-il employé* ? [38] *langue* f. — *aimez-vous le mieux?*

What study do you[51] apply to[56]? *What* sort of books do
[38] *étude* f. — *vous*[24] *appliquez-vous* [51] ? [38] *sorte* f. * *livre* —

you[51] read? To *what* use shall I put it[24]? *What* news
lisez-vous[51] ? [38] *usage* m. — [51] *mettrai-je*[51] *le?* [38] *nouvelle* f.

are you[51] speaking of? *What* is your sentiment? *What* is yours[41]?
— *parlez-vous*[51] [56] ? [38] *est* *sentiment* m.? [38] *le vôtre?*

---

* WHICH may here be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

39 *WHAT used* ABSOLUTELY, *i. e.* without reference *to a noun mentioned, implies the word* thing *understood, and is expressed by* QUE *or by* QUOI.

WHAT is expressed by QUE, *when it is the* object *of a verb;* as,
What are you doing there? QUE *faites-vous là?*
I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais* QUE *lui dire.*

WHAT is expressed by QUOI, *when it is governed by a* preposition, *or used as an* interjection; ex.
What do you meddle *with*[56]? *De*[56] QUOI *vous*[24] *mêlez-vous*[51]?
What! you have not done yet. QUOI! *vous n'avez pas encore fini.*

EXERCISE.

What do you want? *What* do you think of that? *What* shall
89 — 51 *cherchez?* 89 — 51 *pensez de cela?* 89 —
I do with this? Do you know *what* this is made *of?* *What*
51 *ferai de ceci?* — 51 *savez* 89 *ceci* *fait* 56 *?* 89
is it good *for*[56]? I do not know *what* you (are talking) *about.*
il bon à ? — 55 *sais* 89 *parlez de* 56.
What! are you not gone yet[53]? *What!* you do not answer me.
89 55 *parti encore?* 89 55 *répondez* 24.

40 *WHAT sometimes implies the* DEMONSTRATIVE *pronoun* THAT, *and the distinctive* WHICH; *it is then expressed,*
Nom. *WHAT,* CE QUI; Always do *what* is right; i. e. *that which* is right.
Faites toujours CE QUI *est juste.*

Obj. *WHAT,* CE QUE; *What* I say is true; i. e. *that which* I say is true.
(m) CE QUE *je dis est vrai.*

But with the prepositions OF, TO, *or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the* preposition *comes* before *or* after *WHAT; for,*

Of *WHAT is* de CE QUI, de CE QUE; { I speak OF *what* is true; i. e. OF *that which*
Je parle de CE QUI *est vrai.*

WHAT of *is* CE DONT; as, *What* he speaks *OF* is not true; i. e. *that* OF *which*
CE DONT *il parle n'est pas vrai.*

To *WHAT is* à CE QUI, à CE QUE; { You do not apply *TO what* is useful; TO *that which*
Vous ne vous appliquez pas à CE QUI *est utile.*

WHAT to *is* CE à QUOI; as, *What* you apply *TO* is not useful; *that* TO *which*
CE à QUOI *vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.*

EXERCISE.

Say *what* is true, and do *what* is just. *What*[40] we do hastily
Dites 40 *est vrai, et faites* 40 *juste.* (m) *faisons (à la hâte)*
is often imperfect. Shew me *what*[40] you have done. Pay attention to
souvent imparfait. *Montrez* 26 (m) *fait.* *Faites attention*
what[40] I say to you. Are you sure *of what*[40] you say? It is *what* you
(m) *dis* — 24 *Etes sûr* (m) *dites?* *C'est* 40
may be sure *of.* I would not[55] trust *to what*[40] he proposes. *What*
pouvez être 56 *ne voudrais pas me fier* (m) *propose.* 48

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

you trust *to* is very uncertain. He complains *of what*[40] he has
vous vous fiez [56] *est très - incertain.* *se plaint* (m) *a*

suffered. *What* he complains *of* is right. They attribute it to *what*[40]
souffert. [40] *se plaint* [56] *juste.* *attribuent* *le*[24] (m)

I have told you. *What* they attribute it *to* has never[55] happened.
dit [25] [40] [24] *n' est* *jamais* *arrivé.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
	MINE.	*le* MIEN,	*la* MIENNE,	*les* MIENS,	*les* MIENNES.
Of, from	*MINE.*	*du* MIEN,	*de la* MIENNE,	*des* MIENS,	*des* MIENNES
To, at	*MINE.*	*au* MIEN,	*à la* MIENNE,	*aux* MIENS,	*aux* MIENNES
	THINE.	*le* TIEN,	*la* TIENNE,	*les* TIENS,	*les* TIENNES.
	HIS. HERS.	*le* SIEN,	*la* SIENNE,	*les* SIENS,	*les* SIENNES.
	OURS.	*le* NÔTRE,	*la* NÔTRE,	*les* NÔTRES,	*les* NÔTRES.
	YOURS.	*le* VÔTRE,	*la* VÔTRE,	*les* VÔTRES,	*les* VÔTRES.
	THEIRS.	*le* LEUR,	*la* LEUR,	*les* LEURS,	*les* LEURS.

The POSSESSIVE *pronouns* le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c. *must be of* 41
the same gender *and* number *as the noun which they* represent; as,

Your horse is better than *hers*, i. e. *her horse.*
Votre cheval est meilleur que le SIEN.
My house is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his house.*
Ma maison n' est pas si belle que la SIENNE.
Your histories are prettier than *his*, i. e. *his histories.*
Vos histoires sont plus jolies que les SIENNES.

EXERCISE.

Why do not[55] you[51] eat your cake? Your brother has eaten *his.*
Pourquoi — ne *mangez-vous pas* [1] *gâteau* m.? [1] *a* *mangé* [41]

My sister has not eaten *hers.* I (will eat) *mine* (by and by). Your
a [55] [41]. *mangerai* [41] *tantôt.* [1]

lesson is shorter[18] than *mine*, but (I shall know) *mine* before you
leçon f. *court*[18] [41] *mais* *saurai* [41] *avant que*

know *yours.* It is not[55] your business, it is *his.* My books are
sachiez [41] *Ce n'est pas* [1] *affaire* f. , *c' est* [41] *livre* m. *sont*

finer[18] than *yours* and *his.* They are not finer than *mine.* Have
beaux [41] [41] [30] [55] [18] [41]

you cleaned my boots? *Yours* and *mine* are clean[18], but *his* are not.
décrotté [1] *botte* f.? [41] [41] *décrotté,* [41] *ne le sont pas.*

The POSSESSIVE *words* MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, 42
THEIRS, *do not always* represent *a noun mentioned before them; they often come with the verb* BE *used in the sense of* BELONG, *instead of the* PERSONAL *pronouns* ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM; *as for example,* This book is MINE, i. e. belongs to ME; in this sense MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, *are expressed by*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

À MOI, À TOI, À LUI, À ELLE, À NOUS, À VOUS, À EUX, *m.* À ELLES, *f. as,*

This book is *mine.*	*Ce livre est* À MOI ;	*i. e.* belongs *to me.*
is *thine.*	*est* À TOI ;	*to thee.*
is *his.*	*est* À LUI ;	*to him.*
is *hers.*	*est* À ELLE ;	*to her.*
is *ours.*	*est* À NOUS ;	*to us.*
is *yours.*	*est* À VOUS ;	*to you.*
is *theirs.*	*est* À EUX ; *m.* À ELLES ;	*f. to them.*

EXERCISE.

This stick is *mine,* and this umbrella is *his.* It[30] is neither
1 *bâton* m. 42 1 *parapluie* m. 42 *n' est ni*
yours nor *his,* it is *hers.* Is this horse[52] *yours?* It is not *mine;*
42 *ni* 42 30 42 *Ce cheval est-il*[52] 42 *?* 30 55 42
it is my cousin's. If it was *yours,* what would you[51] do (with it)?
30 (o) S' 30 *était* 42 39 — *feriez-vous*[51] *en*[24] *?*
If it was *mine,* I (would sell) it[24]. I wish it was *ours.*
30 42 *vendrais* 30 (h) *souhaiterais qu'* 30 *fût* 42.

43 *The* POSSESSIVE *pronouns* MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, *by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition* OF *;* AS A FRIEND OF MINE ; A BOOK OF YOURS ; *this* POSSESSIVE *pronoun can not be expressed by the* POSSESSIVE *pronoun in french ; it must be expressed by the* possessive ARTICLE MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS, *placed* BEFORE *the noun, which must always be* PLURAL *in french ;* AS,

A friend of *mine.*	*un* de MES *amis ;*	*i. e.* one *of my*	friends.
of *thine.*	*un* de TES *amis ;*	one *of thy*	
of *his.*	*un* de SES *amis ;*	one *of his*	
of *hers.*	*un* de SES *amis ;*	one *of her*	
of *ours.*	*un* de NOS *amis ;*	one *of our*	
of *yours.*	*un* de VOS *amis ;*	one *of your*	
of *theirs.*	*un* de LEURS *amis ;*	one *of their*	

EXERCISE.

(This is) a relation *of mine.* He is a cousin *of ours.* A brother *of*
Voici 1 *parent* m. 42 (l) *est* 42
mine has married a sister *of his.* (That is) a child *of theirs.* I have
42 *a épousé* 1 42 *Voilà enfant* m. 42
seen to-day a scholar *of yours.* I (shall dine) to-morrow with
vu (aujour d'hui) écolier m. 42 *dînerai demain avec*
a friend *of ours.* I have found a book *of yours* amongst mine.
42 *trouvé livre* m. 42 *parmi* 41
It[30] is not mine; it is my brother's. It is a friend's *of mine.*
n'est pas 42 30 (o) 30 (o) 42

(o) The possession denoted in english by adding *s* to the noun, is expressed in french by *à* before it ; as, It is my father's. *Il est* à *mon père ;* Not, *il est* de *mon père.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	*Fem.*		*Masc.* PLUR.	*Fem.*
THIS, THAT;	CELUI;	CELLE.	*THESE, THOSE;*	CEUX;	CELLES.

The DEMONSTRATIVE *pronouns* CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES *must be of* 44
the same gender *and* number *as the noun which they represent;* as,
He has eaten his apple and *that* of his brother; i. e. *the apple* of, &c.
Il a mangé sa pomme et CELLE *de son frère.*

EXERCISE.

She has spoiled her hat and *that* of her brother. He has torn
a gâté 1 *chapeau* m. 44 1 *déchiré*
my gown and *that* of my sister. Bring my shoes and *those* of my
1 *robe* f. 44 *Apportez* 1 *souliers* m. 44
mother. (Look at) these[1] guineas and *those* which[22] he has given us.
Regardez (p) *guinées* f. 44 (m) *a données.* 25

N. B. *The* DEMONSTRATIVE *words* THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE *imply a* local *distinction which* CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES *do not express; if you wish to make that distinction in french, you must add to these pronouns the adverbs* CI, here; *and* LÀ, there; *thus,*

THIS; CELUI-*ci*, CELLE-*ci*. *THESE;* CEUX-*ci*, CELLES-*ci*.
THAT; CELUI-*là*, CELLE-*là*. *THOSE;* CEUX-*là*, CELLES-*là;* as,
This horse is better than *that;*
Ce cheval-ci *est meilleur que* CELUI-là; *i. e.* this horse *here*—that *there.*

EXERCISE.

That[1] horse is young, and *this*[44] is old, but I *prefer *this*[44] to
(p) *cheval-là est jeune,* N.B. *vieux, mais préfère* N.B.
that[44]. These[1] girls dance much better than *those*[44].
N.B. (p) *fille-ci dansent beaucoup* (b) N.B.

If THIS, THAT *are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun* 45
mentioned, they imply the word THING *understood, and are expressed,*
THIS by CECI; *THAT, by* CELA; as,
This is good, i. e. *this thing* is good. CECI *est bon.*
That is better, i. e. *that thing* is better. CELA *est meilleur.*

EXERCISE.

Take this. Leave *that.* Have you seen *this.* *That* is very pretty.
Prenez 45 *Laissez* 45 *vu* 45 45 *très-joli.*

(p) The demonstrative words THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, have *three* different *properties.*

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are *followed* by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative *article*, and are expressed by CE, CETTE, CES; as,
This bread, *that* meat, *those* clothes. CE *pain*, CETTE *viande*, CES *habits*. See rule 1.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE do not point out a noun after them, but *represent* one mentioned before, they are *pronouns*, and are expressed by CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun which they *represent* (rule 44.); as,
He has eaten his apple & *that* of his brother. *Il a mangé sa pomme &* CELLE *de son frère.*

If THIS, THAT do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as *substantives*, and are expressed THIS by CECI, THAT by CELA.
This is good, but *that* is better. CECI *est bon, mais* CELA *est meilleur.* (rule 45.)

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

46 *ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, used in an* indefinite sense, i. e. *not relating to any particular person, are expressed by* ON.

N. B. Observe that ON *is always the* nominative *of a verb, and though it represents* WE, THEY, PEOPLE, *which are plural, it requires the verb in the* THIRD person SINGULAR; as,

One says, / *They* say, *people* say. } ON *dit;* i. e. *one* says.

EXERCISE.

People are never[35] so happy nor so miserable as *they* imagine.
[46] *n'est jamais si heureux ni malheureux qu'* [46] *s'imagine.*

They say that we (are going) to have peace. *They* say so; but can
[46] *dit que nous allons - avoir* [7]*paix.* f. [46] *le*[24]*; peut*

one believe it, when *they* (are making) such preparations for war[7]?
[46] *croire le*[24]*, quand* [46] *fait tant de préparatif pour guerre* f.*?*

47 *The* following *and other like* INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS, *are also expressed in french by* ON, *with the verb in its* active *sense.*

N. B. *The verb is rendered* active *by* leaving out *the* auxiliary *verb* BE, *and making the* participle *into a verb of the* same tense *and* person *as the auxiliary verb is;* ex.

It was said. ON *disait;* i. e. *one* said.
It is reported. ON *rapporte;* *one* reports.

EXERCISE.

It is thought that (there will be) a war. *It is* said that hostilities
[47] *pense qu' il y aura - guerre.* [47] *dit que* [7]*hostilités*

have already begun. *It is* supposed that the two fleets have met.
ont déjà commencé. [47] *s'imagine que deux flotte se sont rencontrées.*

48 *The english* PASSIVE VERBS *used* indefinitely, *require the* active *signification in french, with* ON *for nominative; but observe that by adding* ON *to the sentence, the substantive,* which is the* nominative *of the verb in english, becomes its* object *in french;* as,

I have *been* told that news has *been* received; *turn this sentence* thus,
One has told *me* that *one* has received news.
ON m[25]*'a dit qu'* ON *a reçu des nouvelles.*

EXERCISE.

We have *been* told that you were married. *I* have *been* told so
[48] *dit que étiez marié.* [48] *le*[24]

too, but that is not true. *I* was advised to do it. *I* have not
aussi, cela n'est pas vrai. [48] *avait conseillé de faire le*[24]*.* [48] *ne a pas*

been permitted to do it. Do you[51] know what *is* said of you?
[48] *permis de* [24] *- savez - vous*[51] [40] [48] *dit de* [28]*?*

What can *be* said of me? *It is* said that great news *is*
[39] *peut* [48] *dire* [28]*?* [47] *- dit que* [10]*grandes nouvelles* [48]

expected. Have the letters *been* received which *were* expected?
attend. [48] *lettre* [48] *reçu* [28] [43] *attendait?*

---

* By *substantive* is here meant *every word* which either *names* or *represents* a *substance.*

CHAP. VI.

VERB.

A VERB is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.
Being; as, I AM; I EXIST; *thou* ART; *he* IS; *my brother* IS; *we* ARE, &c.
Acting; as, I SPEAK; I BLAME; I WALK; I DRINK; I SING, &c.

Every *action* requires an *agent*, i. e. a being to *perform* that action; this *agent*, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb.

The VERB *must be of the* same NUMBER *and* PERSON *as the* agent *or* nominative; *this is called* AGREEMENT *of the verb with its* NOMINATIVE; ex. 49

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1p. *I* sing.	*Je* CHANTe.		*Nous* CHANTons.	*we, you, they* sing.
2p. *Thou* singest.	*Tu* CHANTes.		*Vous* CHANTez.	
3p. *He* sings.	*Il* CHANTe.		*Ils* CHANTent.	
She sings.	*Elle* CHANTe.		*Elles* CHANTent.	
My brother sings.	*Mon frère* CHANTe.		*Mes frères* CHANTent.	
My sister sings.	*Ma sœur* CHANTe.		*Mes sœurs* CHANTent.	

EXERCISE.

I speak. Thou playest. He walks. She dances. My brother
parler. *jouer.* *marcher.* *danser.*
stays. My sister forgets. We blame. You study. They look. My
rester. *oublier.* *blâmer.* *étudier.* *regarder.*
brothers call or (*are* calling.*) My sisters dispute or (*are* disputing.*)
appeler. *disputer.*

In a DECLARATIVE *sentence,* i. e. *when a question is not asked, the* NOMINATIVE *of the verb is placed in french, as in english,* BEFORE *the verb; as,* 50

I sing.	*Je* CHANTe.	*Nous* CHANTons.	*we, you, they* sing.
Thou singest.	*Tu* CHANTes.	*Vous* CHANTez.	
He sings.	*Il* CHANTe.	*Ils* CHANTent.	
She sings.	*Elle* CHANTe.	*Elles* CHANTent.	
My brother sings.	*Mon frère* CHANTe.	*Mes frères* CHANTent.	
My sister sings.	*Ma sœur* CHANTe.	*Mes sœurs* CHANTent.	

EXERCISE.

I speak[49] french. Thou speakest french. He speaks french. She
parler français. *parler*[49] *parler*[49]
speaks french. My brother speaks french. My sister speaks french.
parler[49] *parler*[49] *parler*[49]
We speak french. You speak french. They speak french. My bro-
parler[49] *parler*[49] *parler*[49]
thers speak french. My sisters speak french. They speak it very well.
parler[49] *parler*[49] *parler le*[24] *très-bien.*

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, i. e. *when a* QUESTION *is asked, it is necessary to consider whether the* NOMINATIVE *of the verb is a* NOUN *or a* PRONOUN.

---

* These two modes of expression are rendered in the same manner in french. See the conjugations, page 112 and following.

VERB.

51 *If, when a* QUESTION *is asked, the* NOMINATIVE *of the verb is one of the pronouns* JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON *or* CE, *these pronouns are placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english,* immediately AFTER *the* verb; as,

Do (q) *I* sing well?	*Chanté* – JE *bien?*	i. e. sing *I* well?
Doest *thou* sing well?	*Chantes* – TU *bien?*	singest *thou* well?
Does *he* sing well?	*Chante*-t*-IL *bien?*	sings *he* well?
Does *she* sing well?	*Chante*-t*-ELLE *bien?*	sings *she* well?
Do *we* sing well?	*Chantons*-NOUS *bien?*	sing *we* well?
Do *you* sing well?	*Chantez* – VOUS *bien?*	sing *you* well?
Do *they* sing well?	*Chantent*-ILS *bien?*	sing *they* well?
Do *they* sing well?	*Chantent*-ELLES *bien?*	sing *they* well?

EXERCISE.

Do *I* speak[49] french well[53]? Doest *thou* speak french well? Does
(q) 51 *parler français bien*† ? (q) 51 *parler*[49] 53 ? (q)
he speak french well? Does *she* speak french well? Do *we* speak french
51 *parler*[49] 53 ? 51 *parler*[49] 53 ? 51 *parler*[49]
well? Do *you* speak french well? Do *they* speak french well?
53 ? 51 *parler*[49] 53 ? 51 *parler*[49] 53 ?

52 *If, when we ask a* QUESTION, *the* NOMINATIVE *of the verb is a* NOUN, *that noun is placed* BEFORE *the verb in french, the same as when the sentence is not interrogative; but to shew that a* QUESTION *is* ASKED, *one of the personal pronouns* IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, *agreeably to the* GENDER *and* NUMBER *of the noun, is placed* immediately AFTER *the* VERB; as,

Does *my brother* sing	*Mon* frère *chante*-t-IL *bien?*	i.e. *my b.* sings *he?*
Does *my sister* sing	*Ma* sœur *chante*-t-ELLE *bien?*	*my s.* sings *she*
Do *my brothers* sing	*Mes* frères *chantent*-ILS *bien?*	*my b.* sing *they*
Do *my sisters* sing	*Mes* sœurs *chantent*-ELLES *bien?*	*my s.* sing *they*

well?

EXERCISE.

Does my *brother* speak[49] french well[53]? Does my *sister* speak french
(q) 52 *parler français bien*† ? (q) 52 *parler*[49]
well? Do my *brothers* speak french well? Do my *sisters* speak
53 ? (q) 52 *parler*[49] 53 ? (q) 52 *parler*[49]
french well? Does your *son* go to school now? Does your *daughter*
53 ? (q) 52 *va à l'école à présent?* 52
go to school now? Do your *sons* go to school now? Do your
va ? (q) 52 *vont* ?
daughters go to school now? Do the *boys*[52] make any progress?
52 *vont* ? (q) *garçons font* ? *progrès* plur.
Do the *girls*[52] make any progress? Is all your *family*[52] well?
filles ? ? *se porte toute famille* f. ?

(q) The auxiliary words *do, did, shall, will, should, would, may, might* are not expressed in french; their meaning is implied in the *termination* of the verb.

* When IL, ELLE, ON come after a verb ending with a *vowel*, – t – is placed *between* these pronouns and the verb to soften the pronunciation.

† Place the adverb *bien* before *français*; thus, *bien français*. See 53 rule.

CHAP. VII.

ADVERB

An ADVERB is a word added to a verb to denote the manner in which an action is performed; as, *I walk* FAST; *He walks* SLOWLY; *you write* WELL; *she writes* BADLY; the words *FAST*, *SLOWLY*, *WELL*, *BADLY*, which denote the manner in which the action of the verbs *WALK* and *WRITE* is performed, are ADVERBS.

The ADVERB *being to the* verb *what the* ADJECTIVE *is to the* noun, *i. e.* 53
expressing some circumstance *of the* verb, *must be placed* immediately AFTER *the verb which it modifies;* as,

I saw your sister *yesterday.*	*Je vis* HIER *votre sœur.*
She speaks french *very well.*	*Elle parle* TRÈS-BIEN *français.*
I will come to see her *soon.*	*Je viendrai* BIENTÔT *la voir.**

EXERCISE.

You read french *very well.* I wish to learn it[24] *(very much.)*
lisez [7]*français* m. *très - bien*[53]. *souhaite - apprendre* [30] *fort*[53].

You will *soon*[53] know it[24], if you read the rules *attentively*[53]. I (will do)
- bientôt saurez [30], *lisez règles attentivement. ferai*

what you have recommended to me *carefully*[53]. We (shall go) into
[40] *recommandé - [25] soigneusement. irons à*

the country *to-morrow.* I hope you (will come) to see us *often*[53].
campagne f. *demain*[53]. *espère que viendrez - voir* [24] *souvent.*

Some ADVERBS *may be placed in english either* BEFORE *or* AFTER *the* 54
verb which they modify; as, I *OFTEN* see him, or I see him *OFTEN.* I *VERY SELDOM* speak to him, *or* I speak to him *VERY SELDOM; but the adverbs which represent them in french, must always be placed* AFTER *the verb;* as,

I *often* see him.	*Je le vois* SOUVENT.
I *sometimes* meet her.	*Je la rencontre* QUELQUEFOIS.
I *seldom* speak to them.	*Je leur parle* RAREMENT.

EXERCISE.

You *always*[54] walk alone. I *seldom*[54] go to town. I *generally*
Vous toujours vous promenez seul. rarement vais à la ville. ordinairement

go into the country. I *often*[54] think of you. You *seldom*[54] come
vais à campagne f, *souvent pense à* [28] *rarement venez*

to see us now. I *sometimes* think that you *soon*[54] (will forget)
- voir [24] *à présent. quelquefois*[54] *pense que bientôt oublierez*

us. You *certainly*[54] can not think so. I *sincerely*[54] wish that
[24] *certainement pouvez* [55] *penser le*[24] *sincèrement souhaite que*

you may succeed. I *heartily*[54] wish you the same.
puissiez réussir. de bon cœur souhaite [24] *la même chose.*

---

* The perspicuity of a sentence often depends on the placing of the adverbs. These sentences for example; *J'aime* BEAUCOUP *à lire*, and *J'aime à lire* BEAUCOUP, though formed of the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime* BEAUCOUP *à lire*; means, I *am fond* of reading; *J'aime à lire* BEAUCOUP; means, I like to read a *great deal.*

ADVERB.

55 *The* NEGATIVE *adverbs*

NO, NOT, are	NE—PAS, NE—POINT
NO MORE, *NOT ANY MORE;*	NE—PLUS.
NEVER;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE, *VERY LITTLE;*	NE—GUÈRE.
BY NO MEANS;	NE—NULLEMENT.

NE *is always placed* BEFORE *the verb, and* PAS, POINT, PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT *are placed* immediately AFTER *the verb;* as,

I do *not* like that woman. *Je* N'*aime* PAS *cette femme.*
I have *never* liked her. *Je* NE *l'ai* JAMAIS *aimée.*
I will *not* speak to her *any more.* *Je* NE *lui parlerai* PLUS.

EXERCISE.

Do *not* you[51] know that man? Have you *never* seen him before?
– [55] *connaissez* [2] *'homme? Avez* [51] [55] *vu* [25] *auparavant?*

Were you *not* in his company yesterday? I know him *but little.*
étiez [51] [55] *à* [1] *compagnie* f. *hier*[53] *?* *connais* [24] [55]

I do *not* wish to see him *any more.* I *by no means* consent (to it.)
– [55] *souhaite* – [24] [55] [55] *consens* *y*[24].

CHAP. VIII.

PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are words which serve to *connect* other words together, in order to form a sentence; as,

I am going TO *London* WITH *my father.*

The words TO, WITH, which connect the substantives, *London*, *father* to the verb GO, are called PREPOSITIONS.

56 *The* PREPOSITIONS *may often be placed in english either* BEFORE *or* AFTER *the substantive which they govern;* as,

WITH whom were you, *or* whom were you WITH? OF what do you speak, *or* what do you speak OF? *In french the* PREPOSITIONS *must always be placed* BEFORE *the substantive which they govern;* as,

With whom were you? *or* whom were you *with?*	AVEC *qui étiez-vous?*
To whom did you speak? *or* whom did you speak *to?*	À *qui avez-vous parlé?*
Of what are you speaking? *or* what are you speaking *of?*	DE *quoi parlez-vous?*

EXERCISE.

What country do you come *from?* What people did you come
[38] *pays* m. – [51] *venez* *de*[56] *?* [38] *gens* f. *êtes* [51] *venu*

with? What news do you speak *of?* Which road shall
avec[56] *?* [38] *nouvelles* f. [51] *parlez* *de*[56] *?* [35] *chemin* m. –

we go *by*[56] *?* Which of these houses shall we go *to?* What
[51] *irons* *par?* [36] [1] *maisons* f. – [51] *irons* *à*[56] *?* [39]

are you laughing *at?* It is what you may depend *upon.*
[51] *riez* *de*[56] *?* *C' est* [39] *pouvez* *compter* *sur*[56].

EXERCISE *on the* FOUR *conjugations* ER, IR, OIR, RE ;

And RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.**

VERBS in *er*.†

AFFIRMATIVELY. I like[49] wine. Thou askest[49] for beer. He
aimer† *7vin* m. *demander*† – *9bière* f.

gives[49] me water. We *are* looking[49] for flowers. You go[49] to see
donner† [24] *9eau.* (r) *chercher*† – *9fleur.* *aller*† – *voir*

them. They *are* looking[49] at us.——I *was* helping[49] him. He
[24] (r) *regarder*† – [24]. (r) *aider*† *lui*[24].

was disturbing me. We *were* studying our lessons. You *were*
troubler[49] [24] (r) *étudier*[49] [1] *leçon.*

singing a song. They *were* playing in the corner.——I brought[49]
chanter [1] *chanson.* f. *jouer* *dans* *coin.* m. *apporter* †

him[24] a book. He admired it[24] much. We invited them to stay.
(f) *livre.* m. *admirer* [30] (h) *beaucoup.* *inviter* [24] *à* *rester.*

You went away too soon. They arrived in time.—I *shall* dine[49]
Vous vous en *aller* – *trop tôt* *arriver* *à* *tems.* (q) *diner*

with you. He *will* send it[24] me. We *will* accompany you. You
avec [28]. (q) *envoyer*‡ [29] *accompagner* [24]

will sup with us. They *will* bring it[24] to them.——I *should* like[49]
souper [28]. *apporter* – [29]. (q) *aimer*

to see it[24]. He *would* give it you, if you asked him[24] for it[29].
à *voir* *le.* (q) *donner* [24] [29], *si* *demandiez* (f) – *le.*

We *should* stay with you, if we had time. You *would* avoid his
rester [28], *avions* *7tems.* m. *éviter* [1]

company, if you knew him. They *would* pay them, if they had
compagnie, f. *connaissiez* [24]. *payer* [24], *avaient*

money. They *would* lend them[24] some, if they asked them[24] for it[29].
9argent. *prêter* (f) (g) [29], *demandaient* (f) – *le.*

INTERROGATIVELY. *Do* I speak[49] too fast? *Doest* thou advise me
(q) [51] *parler* *trop* *vite?* (q) [51] *conseiller* [24]

to do it[24]? *Does* he converse well? *Do* we spend (too much)
de *faire* *le?* (q) [51] *converser* *bien?* [51] *dépenser* *trop*

money[9]? *Do* you live in town now? *Do* they call us?
argent[N.B.]? [51] *demeurer* *à* *la ville* f. *à présent?* [51] *appeller* [24]?

Was I striking too hard? *Was* he speaking french? *Were* we
(r) [51] *frapper*[49] *trop* *fort* ? [51] *parler* *français?* (r) [51]

going too far? *Were* you eating fruit? *Were* they scolding you?
aller *trop* *loin?* [51] *manger* *9fruit* m.? [51] *gronder* [24] ?

——*Did* I hurt[49] him? *Did* he shut the door? *Did* we
(q) [51] *blesser* [24]? [51] *fermer* [1] *porte* f.? [51]

---

* The learner must peruse the verbs before he writes these exercises.

† Make the *same difference* in the verbs which are here given, as is marked in *italic characters* in the verb BLAMer, page 112, agreeably to *tense, number,* and *person.*

‡ See the irregular verb ENVOYer, page 117.

(r) Do not express the auxiliary words *be, am, art, is, are, was, wast, were,* when they are followed by the present participle in *ing*. Consider them only as signs which indicate the tense in which the verb which follows them must be in french.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *er.*

gain any thing? *Did* you invite them? *Did* they insult you?
gagner quelque chose ? (q) *inviter* [24] ? *insulter* [24]

——*Shall* I begin[49] it[24] again? *Will* he bring it with him?
(q) [51] *recommencer le* — ? (q) *apporter* [24] [28]

Shall we divide it amongst us? *Will* you think of me? *Will*
partager [24] *entre* [28] ? *penser à* [28] ?

they take it[24] along with them? —*Should* I lend it him[29], it
emporter le — *avec* [28] ? (q) [51] *prêter* [24] (f),

he asked me for it? *Would* he stay with us, if we asked him?
demandait [24] – [29] ? (q) *rester avec* [28], *en priions* [24]

Should we dance, if it was not so late? *Would* you shew it[24] me,
(q) *danser,* (i) *était* [55] *si tard?* (q) *montrer* [29] ,

if I called at (your house)? *Would* they change it, if I sent it
passais chez vous ? (q) *changer* [24], *si renvoyais*

back to them? *Would* they forgive me, if I begged their pardon?
— – [29] ? *pardonner* [24], *demandais leur*[24] *pardon* ?

NEGATIVELY. I *do* not blame you. He *does* not deny it. We
(q) [55] *blâmer*[49] [24] (q) [55] *nier* [24]

do not breakfast so soon. You *do* not give me money[8] enough.
[55] *déjeuner* [49] *si tôt.* [55] *donner* [24] *argent*[N.B.] *assez.*

They *do* not cost (so much.)——I *was* not touching it. He *was*
[55] *coûter tant.* (r) [55] *toucher* [49] *y*[24].

not taking it away. We *were* not disputing. You *were* not listening
emporter le[24] — (r) *disputer* [49]. *écouter*

to me. They *were* not looking at you.——I *did* not speak to
– [24] *regarder* – [24]. (q) [55] *parler*[49]

her. She *did* not look at me. We *did* not shew it to them.
[24] *regarder* – [24] *montrer* [24] [29]

You *did* not eat any[24]. They *did* not invite us.—I *shall* not stay[49]
manger[*] (g) *inviter* [24] (q) [55] *rester*

long. He *will* not incommode you. We *shall* not play to-night.
long tems. (q) *incommoder* [24] *jouer ce soir.*

You *will* not fail to ask for it[24]. They *will* not shew it[24] you.
manquer de demander – *le.* *montrer* [29]

I *should* not like[49] to go there. He *would* not borrow money[8], if he
(q) [55] *aimer à aller y*[24]. (q) *emprunter argent*[N.B.], *s'*

had any[24]. We should not despise others, if we had no pride[8].
avait (g) *mépriser les autres, si n'avions pas orgueil.*[N.B.]

You *would* never pardon him, if you knew what he has done.
[55] *pardonner lui*[24], *saviez* [40] *fait*

They *would* not blame me, if they knew the pains I have taken.
blâmer [24], *savaient peines* (n) *prises.*

NEGATIVELY *and* INTERROGATIVELY. *Do* I not begin[49] right?
(q) [51] [55] *commencer bien?*

Does she not dance well? *Do* we not incommode you? *Do* you
(q) [51] [55] *danser bien?* [51] [57] *incommoder* [24] ? [51]

---

[*] See note *, page 110.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *er.*

not breakfast this morning? *Do* they not deserve it?—*Was* I
[55] *déjeuner* [1] *matin* m.? [51] *mériter le*[24]? (r) [51]

not relating it right? *Was* he not shaking the table? *Were* we not
[55] *raconter* [24] *bien* ? [51] *remuer* *table* f.? (r) [51]

walking too fast? *Were* you not speaking to me? *Were* they not
marcher *trop* *vite* ? [51] *parler* – [24] ? [5].

asking you for it[29]?—*Did* I not shut the door? *Did* he not give
demander [24] – *le* ? (q) [51] [55] *fermer* *porte* f.? [51] *donner*

her[24] some? *Did* we not stay too long? *Did* you not encourage
(f) (g)[29] ? [51] *rester* *trop* *long-tems*? [51] *encourager*

them? *Did* they not accompany you?—*Shall* I not bring it[24] you?
[24] ? [51] *accompagner* [24] ? (q) [51] [55] *apporter* *le* [29] ?

Will he not marry her? *Shall* we not sing a song? *Will* you not
(q) [51] *épouser* [24] ? [51] *chanter* *chanson* f.? [55]

grant him[24] that favour? *Will* they not refuse it[24] me?—*Would* not
accorder (f) [1] *grâce* f.? *refuser* *le* [29] ? (q) [55]

that book cost less in London than here? *Would* not your father
[52] *coûter* *moins* *à* *Londres* *qu'* *ici* ? (q) [55] [52]

send him to France, if he was older? *Would* he not go himself,
*envoyer** [24] [6] *était* *âgé* [18] ? (q) [51] *aller*† *lui-même*,

if he had time? *Would* not your sister go with him, if he went?
avait [7]*tems* m.? (q) [52] *aller*† [28] , *s' il y allait*?

VERBS in *ir.*‡

REGULAR. I *am* finishing the work I had begun. He *is* building
(r) *finir* [2] *ouvrage* (n) *avais commencé.* (r) *bâtir*

a new[16] house. We *are* demolishing ours. You *are* embellishing it[24]
neuve *maison.* f. (r) *démolir* [41] *embellir* [30]

much. They *are* filling it[24] with furniture.—I *was* reflecting on
beaucoup. *remplir* [30] *de* *meubles.* (r) *réfléchir* *à*

what I have to do. He *was* languishing in misery. We *were*
[40] *à* *faire.* *languir* *dans* [7]*misère.* f. (r)

warning them of the danger. You *were* not applauding what they
avertir [24] *danger.* m. [55] *applaudir* *à* [40]

have done. *Were* they not betraying us?—I punished him severely.
fait. (r) [51] [55] *trahir* [24] ? *punir* [24] *sévèrement.*

Did he not accomplish his purpose? *Did* we not obey your orders?
(q) [51] [55] *accomplir* *dessein* m.? (q) [51] *obéir* *à* [1] *ordre* ?

You *did* not choose a good colour. They matched them as well as
(q) [55] *choisir* *bonne* *couleur.* f. *assortir* [24] *aussi bien* *qu'*

they could.—I *will* banish him from my house. That *will* rejoice
purent. (q) *bannir* [24] *de* [1] [45] *réjouir*

us (very much.) We *will* bless you (as long) as we live. You
[24] *beaucoup.* *bénir* [24] *tant* *que* *vivrons.*

---

* See the irregular verb ENVOYER, page 117. † See ALLER, page 116.
‡ See page 118 the regular verb FINIR, and make the same difference in these verbs.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *ir*.

REGULAR. *will* fill what you can find. That *will* not impoverish
emplir [40] *pourrez trouver.* *appauvrir*

them much.—I *would* cure him, if I could. You *would* finish
[24] *beaucoup.* (q) *guérir* [24], *si pouvais.* *finir*

at once our misfortunes. We *would* abolish it, if we could. You
tout d'un coup [1] *malheur.* *abolir* [24], *pouvions.*

would divert them much. Your brothers *would* succeed better, if
divertir [24] [1] *réussir* (b),

they were more careful. *Will* this tree[32] blossom this year? *Did*
étaient soigneux. (q) [2] *arbre* m. *fleurir* [1] *année* f.? (q)

it[50] blossom last[16] year? Young trees seldom[54] blossom two years
[51] *fleurir* *dernière* [7] ? [7]*Jeunes* *rarement* *fleurir* *deux*

together. *Do* the fruits ripen well? *Do* they[51] not often[54] wither on
(de suite.) (q) [52] m. *mûrir* ? [30] *souvent* *se flétrir* *à*

the tree? *Do* they[51] not commonly[54] (grow rotten)? (Here are) several
[2] ? (q) [30] *ordinairement* *pourrir* ? *Voici* *plusieurs*

sorts of fruit; choose which you like best. Fill† your basket
sorte f. [8] ; *choisir*† [37] *aimer le mieux.* *Remplir* *corbeille* f

(with it.) Enjoy it while it *will* last. We *will* supply you
en[26]. *Jouir* † *en*[26] *pendant que* [30] *durer.* *fournir* [24]

with pears and apples, as fast as they *will* ripen. The children
– [9]*poire* f. [9]*pomme* f., *aussi vite qu'* [30] *mûrir.* *enfant* m.

will rejoice (very much,) for they are very[54] fond of fruit, and it
se réjouir *beaucoup,* *car* – *beaucoup aimer* – [7]*fruit,* [30]

is growing dearer every day. I hope that they *will* obey you, for
– *enchérir* – *touts les jours.* *espérer qu'* *obéir* [24], *car*

children who disobey their parents seldom[54] succeed.
[7] [32] *désobéir à* [1] *parent* *rarement* *réussir.*

IRREGULAR. I *am* perusing this book. *Does* it[51] belong to you?
(r) *parcourir** [1] *livre.* m. (q) [30] *appartenir** – [24] ?

It belongs to a friend of mine. Run† fast. Why *do* not you run
[30] *appartenir** [43] *Courir* *vite.* *Pourquoi* [55] *courir*

faster? We *are* running as hard as we can. For whom *are*
vite [18] ? (r) *courir* [20] *vite* [20] *pouvons.* *Pour* [34] ? (r)

you gathering these flowers? We *are* gathering them for your
cueillir [1] *fleur* ? *cueillir* [24] *pour*

mother. I *will* offer them to her, that she *may* remember me.
offrir [24] – [20], *afin qu'* *se souvenir de* [23]

Does not your mother hate me? Why *should* she hate you?
(q) [52] *haïr* [24] ? [51] *haïr* [24] ?

Because she never comes to see us. He maintains that he has not
Parce que [55] *venir* – *voir* [24]. *soutenir* *qu'* [55]

done it, but I firmly[54] believe that he lies. *Was* your sister asleep,
fait [25], *fermement* *crois* *qu'* *mentir.* (r) [52] *dormir,*

when we set out? They came in as we *were* going out.
quand *partir* – ? *entrer* – *comme* (r) *sortir* –

---

* See the table of the *irregular* verbs in *ir*, p. 120. † 2d person imperative

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *ir.*

IRREGULAR. They *were* running to us, when we discovered
accourir vers [28], *découvrir*

them. I came yesterday to see you, but you were not in. I went out
[24] *venir pour* [24], *étiez* [55] *y*[24]. *sortir* –

early in the morning, and I *did* not return till late. I met
de bon – – *matin*, m. (q) *ne** *revenir que** *tard*. *rencontrer*

your father, and he consented to every thing that I proposed to
consentir à tout ce que proposer

him. *Did* my father offer you any money? He offered me all
[24]. (q) [52] *offrir* [24] [9] *argent* ? *offrir* [24] *tout*

the money that I should want. We went out (as soon) as the
dont aurais besoin. *sortir* – *aussitôt que*

dinner was over. You *did* not set out so soon as you intended.
diner m. *fut fini*, , *partir* – *si tôt que* (*aviez dessein.*)

They detained us a good while at the inn. At what time *will*
retenir [24] – *long tems à* [2] *auberge.* *à* [38] *heure* f. (q)

you set out to-morrow? We *shall* set out as soon as we are
partir – *demain* ? (q) *partir* – *aussitôt que serons*

ready. When *will* you return? We *shall* not return before the
prêt[13]. *Quand revenir* ? [55] *revenir avant*

end of next[16] week. *Shall* I help you to a glass of wine?
fin f *prochaine* [7]*semaine.* f. *servir* [24] – *verre* m. [8] *vin* ?

Help yourself first. I *will* help myself after you. I *will*
Servir vous[26] *le premier.* *servir me*[24] *après* [28]

never consent (to it.) You grow more ceremonious every day.
[55] *consentir y* [24]. *devenir cérémonieux touts les jours.*

Why *do* you not come to see us oftener? Why *does* not
Pourquoi [55] *venir* – *voir* [24] *souvent* [18] ?

your sister come with you? When *will* your brother return from
[52] *venir avec* [28] ? [52] *revenir de*

his journey? *Will* he not set out as soon as he hears that
voyage m. ? [55] *partir* – *aussitôt que apprendra que*

you *are* going (to be married?) *Will* your mother consent to your
aller vous marier ? [52] *consentir*

marriage? *Will* she not obtain your father's consent? If I were
mariage ? [55] *obtenir* [11] *consentement* m. ? *étais*

in your place, I *would* not go out so soon. *Would* my brother
à place, (q) [55] *sortir* – *si tôt.* (q) [52]

obtain that place, if he asked for it[24]? *Should* the children go
obtenir [1] *place*, f. *demandait* – [30] (h) ? [52] *sortir*

out, if it was fine weather? It is too late; they *would* not
–, *s' il faisait beau tems* ? (i) *trop tard*; [55]

return in time for supper. They would not remember it[24].
revenir à tems pour souper. [55] *se souvenir en*[19].

They *would* soon[34] feel the want (of it.)
bientôt sentir besoin m. *en* [24].

---

* *Ne que*, without *pas*, expresses *not till.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *oir.**

Does that man[28] owe you any thing? He owes me a
(q) [2] *homme* *devoir* [24] *quelque chose* ? *devoir* [24] –

(great deal) of money. (How much) *does* he owe you? I *do* not
beaucoup [8] *argent.* m. *Combien* *devoir* [24] ? [55]

know exactly; but I can get nothing from him. You should tell
savoir au juste ; *ne pouvoir tirer rien de* [28] *devoir* (s) *dire*

him[24] that you want it. You should get him arrested. He is
(f) *que* *avez besoin en*[24]. (s) *faire* [24] *arrêter.* *devoir* (t)

to pay me part (of it) in a day or two. If you receive it[24]
– *payer* [24] *une partie* [24] *en* [29] *dans* *jour* m. *ou* *deux.* *recevoir* [30]

to-morrow, will you lend me eighteen or twenty pounds? I
demain, *vouloir* *prêter* [24] *dix-huit* *ou* *vingt* *livres sterling?*

can not[55] lend you (so much.) I can lend you[24] ten or twelve
pouvoir *prêter* [24] *tant.* *pouvoir* *prêter vous* *en*[29] *dix* *douze.*

Lend me what you can. Were we not to take a walk this
Prêter [26] [40] *pourrez.* *Devoir* (t) [55] – *faire un tour de promenade* [4]

evening? Yes, we were; but the master will not let me (go out)
soir m. ? *Oui,* *le devoir* (t); *vouloir* *laisser* [24] *sortir*

before I have said my lesson. Can you say it[24] now? I *do*
(avant que) *aie* *dit* [1] *leçon.* f. *Pouvoir* *dire* [30] *à présent?*

not know whether I can say it[24] or not; but I knew it[24], when
savoir *si* *pouvoir* *dire* [30] *ou* *non ;* *savais* [30], *quand*

I came in. You *do* not know it[24] yet. I shall know it[24] in a little[8]
suis entré. *savoir* [30] *encore.* *savoir* [30] *en* – *peu*[N.B.]

time. I can say it[24] now. I see your sister who *is* coming
tems. *pouvoir* *dire* [30] *à présent.* *voir* [22] (r) *venir*

to help us. We *do* not see her often, but we sometimes hear
– *aider* [24] *voir* [24] *souvent,* *quelquefois* [54] *recevoir*

(from her.) You *shall* see her to-morrow, if you will, for I
(de ses nouvelles.) *voir* [24] *demain,* *vouloir, car*

know that she intends to call upon you. If you will believe me,
savoir *qu'* *(a dessein)* *de* *passer* *chez* [28] *vouloir croire* [24],

we *will* go. I think that it *will* rain soon. If it rains, *do*
s'en aller. *penser* *pleuvoir* *bientôt.* *pleuvoir,*

you know what we *will* do? We *will* sit down under that large
savoir [40] *ferons?* *s'asseoir* *sous* (p) *gros* [17]

tree, until the rain is over. I can not[55] stay. I *do* not
arbre m. *(jusqu' à ce que)* *pluie* f. *soit* *passée.* *pouvoir* *rester.*

know what I must do. It *will* not rain much. It is only a shower.
savoir [40] *devoir faire.* *pleuvoir* *Ce n'est qu'* [1] *ondée.* f.

---

* See the table of verbs in *oir*, page 134, 135.

(s) *Should*, denoting *duty*, or the *necessity* of doing a thing, is expressed by the *conditional* of DEVOIR; as, You *should* or *ought* to do it. *Vous* DEVRIEZ *le faire.*

(t) The present tense of the verb BE, *am, art, is, are,* and the imperfect *was, were,* followed by the *infinitive* of a verb, are expressed by the same tenses of DEVOIR; as, I *am* to go there. *Je* DOIS *y aller.* I *was* to go there. *Je* DEVAIS *y aller.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *re.**

What *are* you doing there? I *am* waiting for my brother
[39] (r) [51] *faire là ?* (r) *attendre* –

He *is* learning his lesson in the garden. If you see him,
(r) *apprendre* [1] *leçon* f. *dans jardin.* m. *voir* [24],

tell him[26] that I *am* waiting for him here. I hear you. Why
dire (f) *que* *attendre* [24] *ici.* *entendre* [24]. *Pourquoi*

do you interrupt me so often? *Do* you pretend to know that better
(q) *interrompre* [24] *si souvent?* *prétendre* – *savoir* [45] (b)

than I do? I *will* not interrupt you (any more.) These people
que [23] – ? (q) *ne* *interrompre* [24] *plus* [55] [1] *gens*

sell [10]very bad[17] wine. They sell it[24] very dear. I never drink
vendre très - *mauvais vin.* m. *vendre* [30] *cher.* [55] *boire*

wine[8], when they[46] sell it[24] so dear. *Do* you hear that man?
vin N.B., *quand* N.B. *vendre* [30] *si* (q) *entendre* [2] ?

He *is* speaking to us. I hear him, but I *do* not understand what
(r) *parler* – [24]. *entendre* [24], *comprendre* [40]

he says. I *was* answering your letter, when I heard that you were
dire. (r) *répondre à* *lettre,* *quand* (*ai appris*) *que* *étiez*

in town. You surprise us quite, for we *did* not expect you
en ville. *surprendre* [24] (*tout à fait,*) *car* (q) *attendre* [24]

so soon. I came down as soon as I heard you. If I return
si tôt. *descendre* – *aussitôt* *que* *entendre* [24]. *rendre*

them[24] their goods, *will* they return me my money? They *would*
(f) *marchandise,* *rendre* [24] [2] *argent* ?

not return you one half (of it.) I *would* lose the whole rather
rendre [24] *la moitié* [24] *en* [29]. *perdre* *tout* m. *plutôt*

than submit to such terms. What *are* you learning now?
que (*de me soumettre*) *à* [10]*telles conditions.* [39] (r) *apprendre à présent?*

I *am* learning mathematics. *Do* you understand them well? I
apprendre [7]*mathématiques.* *entendre* [24] *bien* ?

understand them pretty well. If you take [9] pains, you *will* make
entendre [24] *assez bien.* *prendre de la peine,* *faire*

great[17] progress in a short[8] time. *Does* your sister learn [7]music
[10] *progrès* *en* – *peu* N.B. (q) [52] *apprendre musique*

still[56]? No; she *is* learning french[7] and geography. *Do* you read
encore? *Non;* (r) *apprendre français* m. [7]*géographie.* f. (q) *lire*

french[16] books now? I *am* reading Marmontel's tales. I *do* not
[9]*livre* *à présent?* (r) *lire* [11] [7]*contes.*

like tales. I like plays. *Do* you translate any book? I translate
aimer [7] [7]*comédies.* *traduire* *quelque* ? *traduire*

english[16] histories into french. I pity you much. Why *do* you
anglais [13] [9]*histoire* f. *en français.* *plaindre* [24] *fort.* *Pourquoi*

pity me? Because you are losing your time, and you displease all
plaindre [24] ? *Parce que* (r) *perdre* *tems,* *et* *que* *déplaire à tout*[13]

your friends. I *do* not fear them. I do not depend upon them.
[1] *ami.* m. *craindre* [24]. *dépendre, d'* [28].

* See the table of verbs in re, p. 146, 147, 148.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *re.*

I *will* do what I think proper. That man *is* always[54] laughing.
faire [40] *croire à propos.* [2] (r) *toujours rire.*

Do you know what he *is* laughing at? He *does* not know it[24]
savoir [39] (r) *rire de*[56]? [55] *savoir le*

himself. Let us drink* your friend's health. What *shall* we drink?
lui-même. – – *boire à* [11] *7santé.* f. [39] (q) *boire?*

Drink a glass of wine. I *will* drink a glass of beer. I *will* not
Boire † *verre* m.[8] (q) *boire* [8] *bière.* [55]

permit you to do that. Promise me not to do it[24]. Well! I
permettre [24] *de faire* [45] *Promettre* † [26] *de ne pas faire le. Eh bien!*

promise it to you. You always promise, but you seldom[54] keep
promettre [24] – [29]. *toujours*[54] *promettre, mais rarement tenir*

your word. I *do* not believe what he says. Why *do* not you
parole. [55] *croire* [40] *dire Pourquoi* [55] [51]

believe him? *Do* you mean to say that he lies? I *do* not say
croire [24] ? [51] *vouloir – dire qu' mentir?* [55] *dire*

so; I only[54] say that people often[54] promise what they[45] *do* not
cela; seulement dire que [46] N.B. *souvent promettre* [40] N.B. [55]

intend to perform. What *are* you sewing there? I *am* making a
avoir dessein de faire. [39] (r) *coudre là* ? (r) *faire* [1]

gown for a sister of mine. For which of your sisters *are* you
robe f. *pour* [43] [36] [1] (r)

making it[24]? For the youngest. You *are* always[54] doing and undoing the
faire [30] ? *jeune* [21]. *toujours faire défaire* [1]

same thing over again. Put out one of these candles. Put† these
même chose f. – – *Éteindre* † *une* (p) *chandelles.* f. *Remettre* (p)

books into their places again. Why *do* you not pay attention to
livre à [1] – *Pourquoi faire attention*

what I say to you? *Will* the master permit us to (go out)
[40] *dire* – [24]? [52] *permettre* [24] *de sortir*

to-day? I *do* not know; ask it[26] him[29]. He *will* not live long,
aujourd'hui? savoir; demander le (f). *vivre (long tems)*

if he drinks (so much.) Yet, he appears to enjoy good health.
si boire tant. Cependant, paraître – jouir d'une bonne santé. f.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Have you seen my mother? I have seen her, but I have not spoken
voir ? *voir*‡ [25], *parler*

to her. Has your sister done what she had promised me to do?
[25] [52] *faire* [40] *avait promettre* [25] *de faire?*

Why has she not done it? Has your father forbid her to do
Pourquoi [55] *faire* [25]? [52] *défendre lui*[25] *de faire*

it[24]? Has your brother been where I had told him? Has he
le? [52] *être où avais dire lui*[25]?

received the letter which[32] my sister has sent him[25]? Have you read
recevoir lettre f. (m) *envoyer* ‡ (f)? *lire*‡

* 1st person imperative. † 2nd person imperative. ‡ This participle must be *feminine*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

it[25]? Has your father bought the horse which[29] I had recommended
[30] (h)? [52] *acheter* (m) *avais recommander*

to him[25]? Has he tried it? Has my mother brought any body
(f)? *essayer* [25]? [52] *amener quelqu' un*

with her? Are your brothers gone out? Have your sisters
avec [26]? [52] *sortir* plur. – ? [52]

finished the work they had begun? They *would* not have done
finir *ouvrage* (n) *avaient* *commencer*? [55] *faire*

it so soon, if they had not been compelled (to it.) I have met
[25] *si tôt,* *avaient* [55] *forcées* *y* [25]. *rencontrer*

a man on (horseback) who has asked me the way to (your house.
à *cheval* *demander* [25] *chemin* m. *chez* *vous* [22].

REFLECTIVE VERBS.†

AFFIRMAT. I *am* getting up. He *is* washing himself. We
(r) *se lever* – (r) *se laver* [24]

are dressing ourselves. You *are* amusing yourselves. They *are*
(r) *s'habiller* [24] *s'amuser* [24]

getting ready to (go out). I *was* getting up, when you called me.
s'apprêter – *à* *sortir* – . (r) *se lever* – , *quand* *appeler* [24]

He *was* warming himself in the parlour. We *were* conversing by
se chauffer [24] *dans* *salle* f. (r) *s'entretenir* *près*

the fire. You *were* (making merry). They *were* laughing at us.
du *feu.* *se divertir.* *se moquer* *de* [28].

INTERROG. *Do* I get up too late? *Does* that man (run away)?
(q) [51] *se lever* – *trop tard*? (q) [2] [52] *s'enfuir*?

Does your bird[28] (grow tame)? *Do* we warm ourselves
(q) *oiseau* m. *s'apprivoiser*? [51] *se chauffer* [24]

(too much)? How *do* you do? How *does* your sister do?
trop? *Comment* [51] *se porter*? [52] *se porter*?

Was I coming too near? *Was* he hiding himself? *Did* we
(r) *s'approcher* *près* ? *se cacher* [24] ? [51]

expose ourselves (too much)? *Were* you inquiring after them?
s'exposer [24] *trop* ? *s' informer* *d'* [28] ?

NEGATIV. I *do* not care for him. He *does* not mistrust them.
(q) [55] *se soucier de* [28] (q) [55] *se méfier* *de* [28]

We *do* not repent (of it[29]). You *do* not rise early enough. They
se repentir *en*[24]. *se lever* *assez* *matin.*

do not meddle with his affairs. I *did* not stop. He *did* not
se mêler *de* [1] *affaire.* (q) *s'arrêter.* [55]

undress himself. We *did* not sit down. You *did* not awake in
se déshabiller [24] . *s'asseoir* – . *s'éveiller* *à*

time. I *did* not expect that they[46] *would* have called me up so soon.
tems. *s'attendre* N.B. (q) *éveiller* [25] – *si* *tôt.*

† See the *reflective* verb *se* BLÂMER, p. 114.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

INTERR. *and* NEGAT. *Am* I not mistaken? *Does* he not apply to
(r) 51 55 *se tromper* ? (q) 51 55 *s'appliquer*
study[7]? *Do* we not walk to-day? Why *do* not you (make
étude ? 51 *se promener* *aujourd'hui* ? *Pourquoi* 55 51 *se*
haste)? Why *do* not you (get ready)? *Do* you not rejoice (at the)
dépêcher ? 51 *s'apprêter* ? 51 *se réjouir* *des*
good[18] news we have received? *Do* you not remember what I
17 *nouvelles* f. (n.) *reçues* ? *se souvenir de* 40
have told you? No; I *do* not remember it[29]. I *do* not recollect it[29].
dit 25 *se souvenir* *en*[24]. *se rappeler* *le*[24]

COMPOUND TENSES.

AFFIR. I have (gone to bed) late. Thou hast soon (fallen asleep).
* *se coucher* *tard.* * *bientôt* *s'endormir.*†
He has awoke early. We have (got up) before you. You have
* *s'éveiller de bon matin.* * *se lever*† *avant* 28 *
hurried yourself (too much). They have dressed themselves in haste.
se presser† *trop*‡. * *s'habiller*† *à la hâte.*

INTER. Have I (gone away) too soon? Hast thou bathed lately?
* 51 *s'en aller*† *trop tôt* ? * 51 *se baigner depuis peu* ?
Has he amused himself well? Have we undressed ourselves
* 51 *s'amuser* *bien*‡ ? * 51 *se déshabiller*†
too soon? Have you been well since I saw you? Have
tôt ? * 51 *se porter* ‡ *depuis que* *n'ai vu* 25 ? *
they stopped too long? Have they (got ready) in time?
51 *s'arrêter*† *trop long-tems* ? * 51 *s'apprêter*† *à* *tems* ?

NEGAT. I have not been well to-day. Thou hast not complained (of it).
* 55 *se porter* ‡ * 55 *se plaindre* *en* 29
He has not perceived it much. We have not walked long.
* 55 *s'apercevoir* *en*[29] ‡ * 55 *se promener*† *long-tems.*
You have not rested enough. They have not (sat down) a moment.
* 55 *se reposer*† *assez.* ‡ * 55 *s'asseoir* † *un moment.*

INTER *and* NEGAT. Have I not (made haste) enough? Hast thou
* 51 55 *se dépêcher* † *assez* ‡ ? * 51
not (caught cold)? Has she not married too young? Have we
55 *s'enrhumer* ? * 51 55 *se marier* † *jeune* ? * 51
not mistaken the way? Have you not inquired after them?
55 *se méprendre* † *de* *chemin* ? * 51 55 *s'informer* † *d'* 28 ?
Have they not applied to you? Have they not (been mistaken)?
* 51 55 *s'adresser* † 28 ? * 51 55 *se tromper* † ?

---

* In the compound tenses of the verbs that are made reflective, the auxiliary verb HAVE can never be expressed by the verb AVOIR; it must be expressed by the *same tense* and *person* of the *auxiliary* verb ÊTRE *to* BE. See the compound tenses of the *reflective* verb BLÂMER, page 115.

† This participle must agree in *gender* and *number* with the *nominative* of the verb. See SYNTAX, Rule 158.

‡ This adverb must be placed *before* the *participle* in french. See SYNTAX, Rule 183.

CONJUGATIONS
OR
ACCIDENCE OF VERBS.

A VERB, as has been seen, page 91, is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.

As the same action may be performed in *different manners*, at *different times*, and by *different persons*, it was found necessary to *modify* or *vary* the same word, so as to denote the MANNER in which an action is done, the TIME in which it is done, and the PERSON or PERSONS by whom it is done, and this is what grammarians call *conjugation*.

The MANNERS of acting, in grammar called MODES or MOODS, are *four;* INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The TIMES, in grammar called TENSES, are properly *three* only; PAST, PRESENT, and FUTURE; but, in order to express time with more precision, these are again divided into other tenses, the use of which will be seen in the syntax of verbs.

The PERSONS who act in a verb are generally *three* for each number.

1. The *person* or persons *who speak;* as, *I* BLAME; *we* BLAME.
2. The *person* or persons *spoken to;* as, *thou* BLAMEST; *you* BLAME.
3. The *person*, persons, or things *spoken of;* as, *he, she, my brother, my sister* BLAMES; *they, my brothers, my sisters* BLAME.

The *modifications* or *variations* by which these moods, tenses, and persons are known, *differ*, according to the different languages.

In english, the difference is shewn by the means of certain *signs* prefixed to the verb; as, *do* BLAME; *did* BLAME; *shall* or *will* BLAME; *should* or *would* BLAME; *may* BLAME, *might* BLAME.

In french, it is made by *changing the last syllable* of the word; as, *je* BLÂM *e, tu* BLÂM *es, il* BLÂM *e, nous* BLÂM *ons, vous* BLÂM *ez, ils* BLÂM *ent; je* BLÂM *ais; je* BLÂM *ai; je* BLÂMER *ai; je* BLÂMER *ais*, &c.*

This *variation* in the *tenses* and *persons*, simple as it is, because it is nearly uniform, is nevertheless found embarrassing by some persons.

The difficulty lies chiefly in the *present* and *perfect* tenses of the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods, and in the *imperative*.

In order to remove it as much as possible, I have placed *in one point of view*, the tenses which are either *similar* or partly similar, or *formed from one another*, that, by perceiving at once the similarity or the difference, the learner's mind may be more easily impressed with it.

---

* The signs by which these inflections or variations are made, not being the same in all verbs, the conjugations must also be various.

The number of them is not exactly fixed, and varies in almost every grammar. Some fix it at *four*, some at *six*, some at *ten*, some at *eleven*, some at *twelve*.

It appears to me that their number must either be limited to *four*, or extended to *twelve*.

As amongst such a number of conjugations, out of which there will still be a great number of irregular verbs, it is very difficult for learners to distinguish of what conjugation a verb is; and as the infinitive of all the french verbs ends in one of these terminations ER, IR, OIR, RE, the only signs by which each different conjugation may be discriminated, I have thought it more simple to fix their number at *four*.

All verbs which may be conjugated after the same manner as one of these four, are called *regular*.

Those verbs which can not be conjugated like one of these four, are called *irregular*, and set in an alphabetical order after the regular, so that the learner can never be mistaken as to the manner of conjugating any verb which he may have need of, by paying attention to the termination of the infinitive only.

INFINITIVE MOOD OR MANNER

To HAVE. AV*oir.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

HAVE. AIE, *sing.* AYEZ, *plur.**

LET *us* have. AYONS.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.			*SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*		
Present tense.	*I* have.	*J'*†	ai[5].‡	*Que j'*	aie[6].	have, *may* have.
	Thou hast.	*Tu*	as[26].	*Que tu*	aies.	
	He has.	*Il*	a.	*Qu'il*	ait[26].	
	We have.	*Nous*[25]	AV *ons*[25].	*Que nous*	ayons[4].	
	You have.	*Vous*	AV *ez*[26].	*Que vous*	ayez.	
	They have.	*Ils*	ont[26].	*Qu'ils*	aient[6].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* had.	*J'*	AV *ais*[6].			
	Thou hadst.	*Tu*	AV *ais.*§			
	He had.	*Il*	AV *ait*[26].			
	We had.	*Nous*[25]	AV *ions.*			
	You had.	*Vous*	AV *iez.*			
	They had.	*Ils*	AV *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* had.	*J'*†	eus[18].	*Que j'*	eusse[3].	had, *might* have.
	Thou hadst.	*Tu*	eus.‖	*Que tu*	eusses[26].	
	He had.	*Il*	eut[26].	*Qu'il*	eût[26],	
	We had.	*Nous*[25]	eûmes.	*Que nous*	eussions.	
	You had.	*Vous*	eûtes[26].	*Que vous*	eussiez.	
	They had.	*Ils*	eurent[18].	*Qu'ils*	eussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* shall or will have.	*J'*	[8]aurai[5].			
	Thou shalt, wilt have.	*Tu*	auras[26].			
	He shall, will have.	*Il*	aura.			
	We shall, will have.	*Nous*[25]	aurons.			
	You shall, will have.	*Vous*	aurez.			
	They shall, will have.	*Ils*	auront[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* should, wld. have.	*J'*	[8]aurais[6].			
	Thou shd. wld. have.	*Tu*	aurais.§			
	He shd. wld. have.	*Il*	aurait[26].			
	We shd. wld. have.	*Nous*[25]	aurions.			
	You shd. wld. have.	*Vous*	auriez.			
	They shd. wld. have.	*Ils*	auraient[6].			

GERUND, or present *participle.* *PARTICIPLE* past.

HAVING. AYANT. EU. HAD.

The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Have *I?*	AI-*je*[51] ?	AVONS-*nous*[51] ?	have *we?* &c.
Hast *thou?*	AS-*tu*[51] ?	AVEZ-*vous*[51] ?	
Has *he?*	A-t-*il*[51] ?	ont-*ils*[51] ?	
Has *she?*	A-t-*elle*[51] ?	ont-*elles*[51] ?	
Has *my brother?*	MON frère a-t-*il*[52] ?	MES frères ont-*ils*[52] ?	
Has *my sister?*	MA sœur a-t-*elle*[52] ?	MES sœurs ont-*elles*[52] ?	

* The *plural* is generally used instead of the *singular*, though speaking to a *single* person.
† See note * page 28. ‡ These figures refer to the pronunciation, see page 4.
§ See note 6, page 6. ‖ See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*

The same verb AVOIR *conjugated* negatively

INFINITIVE.

Not to HAVE. *Ne pas* AVOIR.

IMPERATIVE.

Have *not.* N'*aie, or N' ayez } *pas.*†
Let us *not* have. N' ayons }

INDICATIVE.

I have *not.*	Je	*n'* ai[5]	*pas.*†
Thou hast *not.*	Tu	*n'* as	
He has *not.*	Il	*n'* a	
We } have *not.*	Nous	*n'* avons[26]	
You	Vous	*n'* avez	
They	Ils	*n'* ont[23]	
I } had *not.*	Je	*n'* avais[6]	*pas.*
Thou	Tu	*n'* avais	
He	Il	*n'* avait[26]	
We	Nous	*n'* avions	
You	Vous	*n'* aviez	
They	Ils	*n'* avaient[6]	
I } had *not.*	Je	*n'* eus[26]	*pas.*
Thou	Tu	*n'* eus	
He	Il	*n'* eut[26]	
We	Nous	*n'* eûmes	
You	Vous	*n'* eûtes	
They	Ils	*n'* eurent[18]	
I } shall, will *not* have.	Je	*n'* aurai[5]	*pas.*
Thou	Tu	*n'* auras	
He	Il	*n'* aura	
We	Nous	*n'* aurons	
You	Vous	*n'* aurez	
They	Ils	*n'* auront[26]	
I } shld. wld. *not* have.	Je	*n'* aurais[6]	*pas.*
Thou	Tu	*n'* aurais	
He	Il	*n'* aurait	
We	Nous	*n'* aurions	
You	Vous	*n'* auriez	
They	Ils	*n'* auraient[6]	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Que je	*n'*aie[6]	*pas.*	may *not* have.
Que tu	*n'*aies		
Qu'il	*n'*ait[26]		
Que nous	*n'*ayons		
Que vous	*n'*ayez		
Qu'ils	*n'*aient[18]		
Que je	*n'*eusse	*pas.*	might *not* have.
Que tu	*n'*eusses		
Qu'il	*n'*eût[26]		
Que nous	*n'*eussions		
Que vous	*n'*eussiez		
Qu'ils	*n'*eussent[18]		

GERUND.

Not having. N' ayant *pas.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pas eu. *Not* had.

The same verb conjugated negatively *and* interrogatively.

Have I } *not?*	N' ai-*je*[51]	*pas?*	N' avons-*nous* } *pas?*
Hast thou	N' as-*tu*[51]		N' avez-*vous*
Has he	N' a-t-*il*[51]		N' ont-*ils*[51]
Has she	N' a-t-*elle*		N' ont-*elles*[51]

Has *not* my brother? Mon frère *n'*a-t-*il*[52] *pas?* Mes frères *n'* ont-*ils pas?*
Has *not* my sister? Ma sœur *n'*a-t-*elle*[52] *pas?* Mes sœurs *n'*ont-*elles pas?*

* See note * page 26. † See the *negative* adverbs, rule 55, page 94.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To BE. *être.*

IMPERATIVE.

BE.	sois, *sing.*	soyez, *plur.**
LET *us* be.		soyons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* am.	*Je*[3] †suis[26].	*Que je*[3]	sois[23].	be, *may* be.
	Thou art.	*Tu* es[26].	*Que tu*	sois[26].	
	He is.	*Il* est[26].	*Qu'il*	soit[26].	
	We are.	*Nous* sommes.	*Que nous*	soyons[4].	
	You are.	*Vous* êtes[26].	*Que vous*	soyez.	
	They are.	*Ils* sont[26].	*Qu'ils*	soient[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* was.	*J'* ÉT *ais*[6].			
	Thou wast.	*Tu* ÉT *ais.*			
	He was.	*Il* ÉT *ait*[26].			
	We were.	*Nous* ÉT *ions*[26].			
	You were.	*Vous* ÉT *iez.*			
	They were.	*Ils* ÉT *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* was.	*Je*[3] †fus[26].	*Que je*[3]	fusse[2].	were, *might* be.
	Thou wast.	*Tu* fus.‡	*Que tu*	fusses[26].	
	He was.	*Il* fut[26].	*Qu'il*	fût[26].	
	We were.	*Nous* fûmes.	*Que nous*	fussions.	
	You were.	*Vous* fûtes[26].	*Que vous*	fussiez.	
	They were.	*Ils* furent[18].	*Qu'ils*	fussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* shall or will be.	*Je*[3] serai[5].			
	Thou shalt, will be.	*Tu* seras[26].			
	He shall, will be.	*Il* sera.			
	We shall, will be.	*Nous* serons.			
	You shall, will be.	*Vous* serez[26].			
	They shall, will be.	*Ils* seront[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* should, wld. be.	*Je*[3] serais[6].			
	Thou shd. wld. be.	*Tu* serais.			
	He shd. wld. be.	*Il* serait[26].			
	We shd. wld. be.	*Nous* serions.			
	You shd. wld. be.	*Vous* seriez.			
	They shd. wld. be.	*Ils* seraient[6].			

GERUND, or present *participle.* *PARTICIPLE* past

BEING. ÉT *ant.* ÉTé. BEEN.

The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Am *I?*	suis-*je*[51] ?	sommes-*nous*[51] ?	are *we?* &c.
Art *thou?*	ES-*tu*[51] ?	êtes *vous*[51] ?	
Is *he?*	EST-*il*[51] ?	sont-*ils*[51] ?	
Is *she?*	EST-*elle*[51] ?	sont-*elles*[51] ?	
Is *my brother?*	MON frère est-*il*[52] ?	MES frères sont-*ils*[52] ?	
Is *my sister?*	MA sœur est-*elle*[52] ?	MES sœurs sont-*elles*[52] ?	

* The *plural* is generally used instead of the *singular*, though speaking to a *single* person
† See note 2, page 1. ‡ See. syntax of verbs, the distinction between *étais* and *fus*

The same verb ÊTRE *conjugated* negatively.

INFINITIVE.

Not to BE. *Ne pas* ÊTRE.

IMPERATIVE.

BE *not.* *Ne* sois, or *Ne* soyez } *pas.*
LET US *not* be. *Ne* soyons }

INDICATIVE.					*SUBJUNCTIVE.*			
I am *not.*		Je[3]	*ne* suis	*pas.*	Que je[3]	*ne* sois[23]	*pas.*	may *not* be.
Thou art *not.*		Tu	*n'* es[26]		Que tu	*ne* sois		
He is *not.*		Il	*n'* est[23]		Qu'il	*ne* soit[26]		
We	are *not.*	Nous	*ne* sommes		Que nous	*ne* soyons		
You		Vous	*n'* êtes		Que vous	*ne* soyez		
They		Ils	*ne* sont[26]		Qu'ils	*ne* soient[18]		
I	was *not.*	Je[3]	*n'* étais[6]	*pas.*				
Thou		Tu	*n'* étais*					
He		Il	*n'* était[26]					
We	were *not.*	Nous	*n'* étions					
You		Vous	*n'* étiez					
They		Ils	*n'* étaient[6]					
I	was *not.*	Je[3]	*ne* fus	*pas.*	Que je[3]	*ne* fusse	*pas.*	might *not* be.
Thou		Tu	*ne* fus*		Que tu	*ne* fusses		
He		Il	*ne* fut[26]		Qu'il	*ne* fût[26]		
We	were *not.*	Nous	*ne* fûmes		Que nous	*ne* fussions		
You		Vous	*ne* fûtes		Que vous	*ne* fussiez		
They		Ils	*ne* furent[18]		Qu'ils	*ne* fussent[18]		
I	shall, will *not* be.	Je[3]	*ne* serai[5]	*pas.*				
Thou		Tu	*ne* seras					
He		Il	*ne* sera					
We		Nous	*ne* serons					
You		Vous	*ne* serez					
They		Ils	*ne* seront[26]					
I	shld. wld. *not* be.	Je[3]	*ne* serais[6]	*pas.*				
Thou		Tu	*ne* serais					
He		Il	*ne* serait					
We		Nous	*ne* serions					
You		Vous	*ne* seriez					
They		Ils	*ne* seraient[6]					

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE*

Being *not.* *N'*étant *pas.* *Pas* été *Not* been

The same verb conjugated negatively *and* interrogatively.

Am I	*not?*	*Ne* suis-*je*	*pas?*
Art thou		*N'* es-*tu*	
Is he		*N'* est-*il*	
Is she		*N'* est-*elle*	

Ne sommes-*nous*	*pas?*	
N' êtes-*vous*		
Ne sont-*ils*		
Ne sont-*elles*		

Is *not* my brother? MON frère *n'*est-*il pas?* MES frères *ne* sont-*ils pas?*
Is *not* my sister? MA sœur *n'*est-*elle pas?* MES sœurs *ne* sont-*elles pas?*

* See, syntax, rule 140, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*; *étais* and *fus*.

A TABLE *shewing in one point of view, the* difference *between the* FOU

ER.**

	INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
	BLÂM *er.*	*ant.*	*é.*

	INDICAT.	IMPERAT.		SUBJUNCT.
Present tense.	*Je* BLÂM	*e.*		*e.*
	Tu	*es.*	*e.*	*es.*
	Il	*e.*		*e.*
	Nous	*ons.*	*ons.*	*ions.*
	Vous	*ez.*	*ez.*	*iez*
	Ils.	*ent.*		*ent.*
Imperfect tense.	*Je* BLÂM	*ais.*†		
	Tu	*ais.*		
	Il	*ait.*		
	Nous	*ions.*		
	Vous	*iez.*		
	Ils	*aient.*		
Perfect tense.	*Je* BLÂM	*ai.*		*asse.*
	Tu	*as.*		*asses.*
	Il	*a.*		*ât.*
	Nous	*âmes.*		*assions.*
	Vous	*âtes.*		*assiez.*
	Ils	*èrent.*		*assent.*
Future positive.	*Je* BLÂMER	*ai.*		
	Tu	*as.*		
	Il	*a.*		
	Nous	*ons.*		
	Vous	*ez.*		
	Ils	*ont.*		
Fut. conditional.	*Je* BLÂMER	*ais.*†		
	Tu	*ais.*		
	Il	*ait.*		
	Nous	*ions.*		
	Vous	*iez.*		
	Ils	*aient.*		

** After the same manner as BLÂMER are conjugated *all* the verbs the infinitive of which ends in ER (about 2700 in number), except ALLER and ENVOYER. Observe only that in the verbs in *ger*, as CHANGER, MANGER, SONGER, the *e* is retained before *a*, *o*, in order to soften the sound of *g*; so instead of saying CHANGons, MANGons, SONGons; CHANGais, MANGais, SONGais; we say CHANGEons, MANGEons, SONGEons; CHANGEais, MANGEais, &c.‡

IR.

	INFINIT.	GERUND	PART.
FIN	*ir.*	*issant.*	*i.*

	INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
FIN	*is.*		*isse.*
	is.	*is.*	*isses.*
	it.		*isse.*
	issons.	*issons.*	*issions.*
	issez.	*issez.*	*issiez.*
	issent.		*issent.*
FIN	*issais.*†		
	issais.		
	issait.		
	issions.		
	issiez.		
	issaient.		
FIN	*is.*		*îsse.*
	is.		*îsses.*
	it.		*ît.*
	îmes.		*îssions.*
	îtes.		*îssiez.*
	irent.		*îssent.*
FINIR	*ai.*		
	as.		
	a.		
	ons.		
	ez.		
	ont.		
FINIR	*ais.*†		
	ais.		
	ait.		
	ions.		
	iez.		
	aient.		

After the same manner as FINIR are conjugated about 220 verbs in *ir*, both *primitive* and *compound*.

Compound verbs are those whose signification changes by the means of a preposition prefixed to them; as, dé*fleurir*, to lose the blossom; re*fleurir*, to blossom again; which are conjugated like their primitive *fleurir*, to blossom; dé*faire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again, which are conjugated like their primitive *faire*, to do.

* These are the *only signs* by which it can be known to what conjugation a verb belongs. By paying attention t in *er* after BLÂM *er*, those in *ir* after FIN *ir*, those in *oir* after DEV *oir*, and those in *re* after ATTEND *re*; and with himself able to rectify.

‡ Verbs ending in the infinitive in *cer*, as *menacer*, *placer*, must have a cedilla under the *c*, before either *a* or *o*

Verbs in *er*, having an *é* preceding the last syllable, as in *considérer*, *régler*, change the *é* into *è* before a syllabl ending in *éger* must be excepted; thus: *abréger*, *j'abrège*, nous *abrégerons*.

Verbs in *er*, having an *e* mute before the last syllable in the infinitive, as *lever*, *mener*, change the *e* mute into

Verbs ending in the infinitive in *eler* or *eter* (not *éler* or *éter*), as *appeler*, *jeter*, double the consonant *l* and *t* be verbs: *acheter*, *bourreler*, *deceler*, *geler*, *harceler*, *peler*, which are spelt j'*achete*, tu *bourrèles*, ils *decèlent*, il *gele*, ne

Verbs ending in *yer*, as *ployer*, *payer*, *appuyer*, change the *y* into *i* before *e* mute; thus: *payer*, je *paie*; *ployer*,

UR conjugations, *and how the tenses of a verb* proceed *from* one another.

OIR.

INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
DEV *oir.*	*ant.*	DÛ.

INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
DOIS.		DOIVE.
DOIS.	DOIS.	DOIVES.
DOIT.		DOIVE.
DEV *ons.*	*ons.*	*ions.*
ez.	*ez.*	*iez.*
DOIVENT.		DOIVENT.
DEV *ais.*†		
ais.		
ait.		
ions.		
iez.		
aient.		
DUS.		DUSSE.
DUS.		DUSSES.
DUT.		DÛT.
DÛMES		DUSSIONS.
DÛTES		DUSSIEZ.
DURENT.		DUSSENT.
DEV *rai.*		
ras.		
ra.		
rons.		
rez.		
ront.		
DEV *rais.*†		
rais.		
rait.		
rions.		
riez.		
raient.		

After the same manner as DEVOIR are conjugated REDEV*oir*, PERCEV*oir*, APERCEV*oir*, S'APERCEV*oir*, CONCEV*oir*, RECEV*oir*.

N.B. This verb is not regular; if it is found here amongst the regular, it is because its termination requires a conjugation of its own. The words which are *irregular* are printed wholly in *roman* characters; the *regular* are the *italic terminations* added to the *capital letters*.

RE.

INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
ATTEND *re.*	*ant.*	*u.*

INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
ATTEND *s.*		*e.*
s.	*s.*	*es.*
ATTEND		*e.*
ons.	*ons.*	*ions.*
ez.	*ez.*	*iez.*
ent.		*ent.*
ATTEND *ais.*†		
ais.		
ait.		
ions.		
iez.		
aient.		
ATTEND *is.*		*isse.*
is.		*isses.*
it.		*ît.*
îmes.		*issions.*
îtes.		*issiez.*
irent.		*issent.*
ATTENDR *ai.*		
as.		
a.		
ons.		
ez.		
ont.		
ATTENDR *ais.*†		
ais.		
ait.		
ions.		
iez.		
aient.		

After the same manner as ATTENDRE are conjugated BATT*re*, ABATT*re*, COMBATT*re* DÉBATT*re*, RABATT*re*, REBATT*re*, FEND*re*, DÉFEND*re*, DESCEND*re*, CONDESCEND*re*, FOND*re*, CONFOND*re*, REFOND*re*, MORFOND*re*, ROMP*re*, CORROMP*re*, INTERROMP*re*, POND*re*, RÉPOND*re*, CORRESPOND*re*, RÉPAND*re*, MORD*re*. DÉMORD*re*, TEND*re*, ÉTEND*re*, ENTEND*re*, PRÉTEND*re*, REND*re*, PEND*re*, DÉPEND*re*, VEND*re*, PERD*re*, TORD*re*, RETORD*re*, TOND*re*.

* the *termination* of the *infinitive*, and *altering* the same *number of letters* as are here marked in *italics*, *i.e.* those ending the assistance of the tables of the irregular verbs, it is impossible for any person to commit errors which he is not

† See note 6, page 6.

; thus, *il menaça, nous plaçons.*

r ending in *e* mute; thus: *considérer*, je *considère*; *régler*, il *règle*; *répéter*, il *répètera*. But from this rule the verbs

> before a syllable ending in *e* mute; thus: *lever*, je *lève*; *semer*, tu *sèmes*: *mener*, nous *mènerons*.

fore *e* mute; thus: *appeler*, j'*appelle*, j'*appellerai*; *jeter*, il *jette*, il *jettera*. Except from this rule the six following

s *harcèlerons*, vous *pelerez*.

il *ploie*; *appuyer*, j'*appuierai*,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To BLAME. BLAM *er*

IMPERATIVE.

Blame.	BLÂM *e, sing.*	BLÂM *ez, plur.*
Let *us* blame.		BLÂM *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* blame, or *am* blaming.	*Je*[3] BLÂM *e*[2].	*Que je*[3] BLÂM *e*[2].		blame, *may* blame
	Thou blamest, *art* blaming.	*Tu* BLÂM *es*[26].	*Tu* BLÂM *es*[26].		
	He blames, or *is* blaming.	*Il* BLÂM *e.*	*Il* BLÂM *e.*		
	We / *You* / *They* blame, *are* blaming.*	*Nous* BLÂM *ons.*	*Nous* BLÂM *ions.*		
		Vous BLÂM *ez.*	*Vous* BLÂM *iez.*		
		Ils[26] BLÂM *ent*[18].	*Ils*[26] BLÂM *ent*[18].		
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* blaming.*	*Je*[3] BLÂM *ais*[6].			
		Tu BLÂM *ais.*			
		Il BLÂM *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* blaming.	*Nous* BLÂM *ions.*			
		Vous BLÂM *iez.*			
		Ils[26] BLÂM *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* blamed or *did* blame.	*Je*[3] BLÂM *ai*[5].	*Que je*[3] BLÂM *asse*[2]		blamed, *might* blame.
		Tu BLÂM *as*[26].	*Tu* BLÂM *asses.*		
		Il BLÂM *a.*	*Il* BLÂM *ât*[26].		
		Nous BLÂM *âmes.*	*Nous* BLÂM *assions.*		
		Vous BLÂM *âtes.*	*Vous* BLÂM *assiez.*		
		Ils[26] BLÂM *èrent.*[18]	*Ils*[26] BLÂM *assent*[18]		
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* blame, or *be* blaming.	*Je*[3] BLÂMER *ai*[5].			
		Tu BLÂMER *as*[26]			
		Il BLÂMER *a.*			
		Nous BLÂMER *ons.*			
		Vous BLÂMER *ez.*			
		Ils[26] BLÂMER *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, would* blame, or *be* blaming.	*Je*[3] BLÂMER *ais*[6].			
		Tu BLÂMER *ais.*			
		Il BLÂMER *ait.*[26]			
		Nous BLÂMER *ions.*			
		Vous BLÂMER *iez.*			
		Ils[26] BLÂMER *aient.*[6]			

GERUND.	*PARTICIPLE*
Blaming. BLÂM *ant.*	BLÂM *é.* Blamed.

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*			*Interrogativ. and Negativ.*		
BLÂMÉ-*je?*	do I blame? &c.	JE *ne* BLÂME	*pas.*	I do *not* blame.	*Ne* BLÂMÉ-*je*	*pas?*	do I *not* blame?
BLÂMES-*tu?*		TU *ne* BLÂMES			*Ne* BLÂMES-*tu*		
BLÂME-t-*il?*		IL *ne* BLÂME			*Ne* BLÂME-t-*il*		
BLÂMONS-*nous*		NOUS *ne* BLÂMONS			*Ne* BLÂMONS-*nous*		
BLÂMEZ-*vous?*		VOUS *ne* BLÂMEZ			*Ne* BLÂMEZ-*vous*		
BLÂMENT-*ils?*		ILS *ne* BLÂMENT			*Ne* BLÂMENT-*ils*		

N. B. *After the same manner as* BLÂMER *conjugate all the verbs, the infinite of which ends in* ER, *except* ALLER *and* ENVOYER, p. 116, 117.†

* Never say *je* suis *blámant, tu* es *blámant, il* est *blámant, j'* étais *blámant, &c.* See note (1) p. 95.

† See note * page 110.

Compound tenses of the verb BLÂMER,

Formed by adding the participle BLÂMÉ *to the auxiliary* AVOIR.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

To have blamed. *Avoir* BLÂMÉ.

	INDICATIVE.				*SUBJUNCTIVE.*			
Pres. compound.	I *have* / Thou *hast* / He *has* blamed.	J'	*ai*	BLÂMÉ.*	*Que j'*	*aie*	BLÂMÉ	*may have* blamed.
	We / You / They *have* blamed.	Tu	*as*		Tu	*aies*		
		Il	*a*		Il	*ait*		
		Nous	*avons*		Nous	*ayons*		
		Vous	*avez*		Vous	*ayez*		
		Ils	*ont*		Ils	*aient.*		
Imperf. compnd.	I / Thou / He / We / You / They *had* blamed.	J'	*avais*	BLÂMÉ.				
		Tu	*avais*					
		Il	*avait*					
		Nous	*avions*					
		Vous	*aviez*					
		Ils	*avaient*					
Perf. compound.	I / Thou / He / We / You / They *had* blamed.	J'	*eus*	BLÂMÉ.	*Que j'*	*eusse*	BLÂMÉ.	*might have* blamed.
		Tu	*eus*		Tu	*eusses*		
		Il	*eut*		Il	*eût*		
		Nous	*eûmes*		Nous	*eussions*		
		Vous	*eûtes*		Vous	*eussiez*		
		Ils	*eurent*		Ils	*eussent*		
Future compound.	I / Thou / He / We / You / They *shall, will have* blamed.	J'	*aurai*	BLÂMÉ.				
		Tu	*auras*					
		Il	*aura*					
		Nous	*aurons*					
		Vous	*aurez*					
		Ils	*auront*					
Condit. compnd.	I / Thou / He / We / You / They *should, wld. have* blamed.	J'	*aurais*	BLÂMÉ.				
		Tu	*aurais*					
		Il	*aurait*					
		Nous	*aurions*					
		Vous	*auriez*					
		Ils	*auraient*					

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE*

HAVING blamed. *Ayant* BLÂMÉ. EU BLÂMÉ. HAD blamed.

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*		*Interrogatively and Negatively.*	
Ai-*je*	BLÂMÉ?	JE *n'*ai	*pas* BLÂMÉ.	*N'*ai-*je*	*pas* BLÂMÉ?
As-*tu*		TU *n'*as		*N'*as-*tu*	
A-t-*il*		IL *n'*a		*N'*a-t-*il*	
Avons-*nous*		NOUS *n'*avons		*N'*avons-*nous*	
Avez-*vous*		VOUS *n'*avez		*N'*avez-*vous*	
Ont-*ils*		ILS *n'*ont		*N'*ont-*ils*	

* See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.

The verb BLAMER *made* reflective.*

INFINITIVE.

To BLAME oneself. SE BLÂM*er*.

IMPERATIVE.

Commanding 26 rule, page 77.

Blame thyself. blâm *e* - TOI.
yourself. blâm *ez* - VOUS.
LET *us* blame ourselves. blâm *ons*-NOUS.

Forbidding 27 rule, page 77.

Ne TE blâm *e*
Ne VOUS blâm *ez* } *pas*
Ne NOUS blâm *ons*

INDICATIVE. — *SUBJUNCTIVE.* — *may* blame myself.

I	blame	myself.	*Je*	ME	blâm *e.*	*Que je*	ME	blâm *e.*
Thou		thyself.	*Tu*	TE	blâm *es.*	*Tu*	TE	blâm *es.*
He		himself.	*Il*	SE	blâm *e.*	*Il*	SE	blâm *e.*
We		ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	blâm *ons.*	*Nous*	NOUS	blâm *ions.*
You		yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	blâm *ez.*	*Vous*	VOUS	blâm *iez.*
They		themselves.	*Ils*	SE	blâm *ent.*	*Ils*	SE	blâm *ent.*
I	*was* blaming.	myself.	*Je*	ME	blâm *ais.*			
Thou		thyself.	*Tu*	TE	blâm *ais.*			
He		himself	*Il*	SE	blâm *ait.*			
We		ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	blâm *ions.*			
You		yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	blâm *iez.*			
They		themselves.	*Ils*	SE	blâm *aient*			
I	blamed	myself.	*Je*	ME	blâm *ai*	*Que je*	ME	blâm *asse*
Thou		thyself.	*Tu*	TE	blâm *as.*	*Tu*	TE	blâm *asses.*
He		himself.	*Il*	SE	blâm *a.*	*Il*	SE	blâm *ât.*
We		ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	blâm *âmes*	*Nous*	NOUS	blâm *assions.*
You		yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	blâm *âtes.*	*Vous*	VOUS	blâm *assiez.*
They		themselves.	*Ils*	SE	blâm *èrent.*	*Ils*	SE	blâm *assent.*
I	*shall will* blam.	myself.	*Je*	ME	blâmer *ai.*			
Thou		thyself.	*Tu*	TE	blâmer *as.*			
He		himself.	*Il*	SE	blâmer *a.*			
We		ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	blâmer *ons.*			
You		yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	blâmer *ez.*			
They		themselves.	*Ils*	SE	blâmer *ont.*			
I	*shd. wd.* blame	myself.	*Je*	ME	blâmer *ais.*			
Thou		thyself.	*Tu*	TE	blâmer *ais.*			
He		himself.	*Il*	SE	blâmer *ait.*			
We		ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	blâmer *ions.*			
You		yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	blâmer *iez.*			
They		themselves.	*Ils*	SE	blâmer *aient.*			

might blame myself.

Interrogatively.		*Negatively*		*Interrogatively and Negatively.*	
ME	blâmé-*je?*	*Je ne* ME	blâme } *pas.*	*Ne* ME	blâmé-*je* } *pas?*
TE	blâmes-*tu?*	*Tu ne* TE	blâmes	*Ne* TE	blâmes-*tu*
SE	blâme-t-*il?*	*Il ne* SE	blâme	*Ne* SE	blâme-t-*il*
NOUS	blâmons-*nous?*	*Nous ne* NOUS	blâmons *pas.*	*Ne* NOUS	blâmons-*nous pas?*
VOUS	blâmez-*vous?*	*Vous ne* VOUS	blâmez *pas.*	*Ne* VOUS	blâmez-*vous pas?*
SE	blâment-*ils?*	*Ils ne* SE	blâment *pas.*	*Ne* SE	blâment-*ils pas?*

* Sometimes it happens that the agent or person who acts is also the object, i. e. acts upon himself, as when I say; *I* blame *myself*; *Thou* preparest *thyself*; *He* distinguishes *himself*; *We* wash *ourselves*; *You* dress *yourself*; *They* expose *themselves* &c by which

Compound tenses of the reflective *verb* SE BLÂMER, *formed by adding the* participle BLÂMÉ, *to the auxiliary verb* ÊTRE.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

To *have* blamed oneself. s'*être* BLÂMÉ.

	INDICATIVE.					*SUBJUNCTIVE.*				
I	myself.	*Je*	ME	*suis*	BLÂMÉ, m.	*Que je*	ME	*sois*	BLÂMÉ.	*may have* blamed.
Thou	thyself.	*Tu*	T'*	*es*	†ée. f.	*Tu*	TE	*sois*		
He	himself.	*Il*	S'	*est*		*Il*	SE	*soit*		
We	ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	*sommes*	BLÂMÉS, m.	*Nous*	NOUS	*soyons*		
You	yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	*êtes*	ées. f.	*Vous*	VOUS	*soyez*		
They	themselves.	*Ils*	SE	*sont*		*Ils*	SE	*soient*		
I	myself.	*Je*	M'	*étais*	BLÂMÉ, m.					
Thou	thyself.	*Tu*	T'	*étais*	ée. f.					
He	himself.	*Il*	S'	*était*						
We	ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	*étions*	BLÂMÉS, m.					
You	yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	*étiez*	ées. f.					
They	themselves.	*Ils*	S'	*étaient*						
I	myself.	*Je*	ME	*fus*	BLÂMÉ, m.	*Que je*	ME	*fusse*	BLÂME.	*might have* blamed.
Thou	thyself.	*Tu*	TE	*fus*	ée. f.	*Tu*	TE	*fusses*		
He	himself.	*Il*	SE	*fut*		*Il*	SE	*fût*		
We	ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	*fûmes*	BLÂMÉS, m.	*Nous*	NOUS	*fussions*		
You	yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	*fûtes*	ées. f.	*Vous*	VOUS	*fussiez*		
They	themselves.	*Ils*	SE	*furent*		*Ils*	SE	*fussent*		
I	myself.	*Je*	ME	*serai*	BLÂMÉ, m.					
Thou	thyself.	*Tu*	TE	*seras*	ée. f.					
He	himself.	*Il*	SE	*sera*						
We	ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	*serons*	BLÂMÉS, m.					
You	yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	*serez*	ées. f.					
They	themselves.	*Ils*	SE	*seront*						
I	myself.	*Je*	ME	*serais*	BLÂMÉ, m.					
Thou	thyself.	*Tu*	TE	*serais*	ée. f.					
He	himself.	*Il*	SE	*serait*						
We	ourselves.	*Nous*	NOUS	*serions*	BLÂMÉS, m.					
You	yourselves.	*Vous*	VOUS	*seriez*	ées. f.					
They	themselves.	*Ils*	SE	*seraient*						

have blamed — *had* blamed — *had* blamed — sh. wll. *have* blamed — shd. *have* blamed

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*		*Interrogatively and Negatively.*	
ME *suis-je*	BLÂMÉ?	*Je ne* ME *suis*	*pas* BLÂMÉ.	*Ne* ME *suis-je*	*pas* BLÂMÉ?
T' *es-tu*		*Tu ne* T' *es*		*Ne* T' *es-tu*	
S' *est-il*		*Il ne* S' *est*		*Ne* S' *est-il*	
NOUS *sommes-nous*	BLÂMÉS	*Nous ne* NOUS *sommes pas*	BLÂMÉS	*Ne* NOUS *sommes-nous pas*	BLÂMÉS
VOUS *êtes-vous*		*Vous ne* VOUS *êtes pas*		*Ne* VOUS *êtes-vous pas*	
SE *sont-ils*		*Ils ne* SE *sont pas*		*Ne* SE *sont-ils pas*	

you see that the person who is the *agent*, performs the action on *himself*, and consequently is also the *object*. These verbs the French call *réfléchis*, i. e. reflective, or reflected, because the energy of the verb returns to its agent. They differ in nothing from the other verbs, but in requiring an OBJECTIVE pronoun of the same number and person as the agent, or nominative, and in having their compound tenses formed with the *auxiliary* ETRE, instead of the *auxiliary* AVOIR.

N. B. These verbs are known in the dictionaries by having SE before their infinitive.

* See note * page 28. † See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.

INFINITIVE.

To GO. ALL*er*.

IMPERATIVE.

GO. va, *sing.* ALL *ez, plur.*
LET *us* go. ALL *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* go, or *am* going.	*Je*[3]	vais[6].	*Que j'*	aille.	go, *may* go.
	Thou goest, *art* going.	*Tu*	vas[26].	*Tu*	ailles.	
	He goes, or *is* going.	*Il*	va.	*Il*	aille.	
	We go, or *are* going.	*Nous*	ALL *ons.*	*Nous*	ALL *ions.*	
	You go, or *are* going.	*Vous*	ALL *ez.*	*Vous*	ALL *iez.*	
	They go, or *are* going.	*Ils*	vont[26].	*Ils*	aillent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* was going.	*J'*	ALL *ais*[6].			
	Thou was going.	*Tu*	ALL *ais.*			
	He was going.	*Il*	ALL *ait*[26]			
	We were going.	*Nous*	ALL *ions.*			
	You were going.	*Vous*	ALL *iez.*			
	They were going.	*Ils*	ALL *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* went, or did go.	*J'*	ALL *ai*[5].†	*Que j'*	ALL *asse*[2].	went, *might* go.
	Thou went, or did go.	*Tu*	ALL *as*[26].	*Tu*	ALL *asses.*	
	He went, or did go.	*Il*	ALL *a.*	*Il*	ALL *ât*[26].	
	We went, or did go.	*Nous*	ALL *âmes.*	*Nous*	ALL *assions.*	
	You went, or did go.	*Vous*	ALL *âtes.*	*Vous*	ALL *assiez.*	
	They went, or did go.	*Ils*	ALL *èrent*[18].	*Ils*	ALL *assent.*	
Future positive.	*I* shall, will go, or be going.	*J'*	irai[5]			
	Thou shall, will go, or be going.	*Tu*	iras[26].			
	He shall, will go, or be going.	*Il*	ira.			
	We shall, will go, or be going.	*Nous*	irons.			
	You shall, will go, or be going.	*Vous*	irez.			
	They shall, will go, or be going.	*Ils*	iront[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* should, wd. go, or be going.	*J'*	irais[6].			
	Thou should, wd. go, or be going.	*Tu*	irais.			
	He should, wd. go, or be going.	*Il*	irait[26].			
	We should, wd. go, or be going.	*Nous*	irions.			
	You should, wd. go, or be going.	*Vous*	iriez.			
	They should, wd. go, or be going.	*Ils*	iraient[6]			

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
GOING.	ALL *ant.*	ALL *é.*	GONE.

N. B. ALLER, *to* GO, *requires a* place *mentioned after it;* as, *Je* VAIS *à la* maison, *à la* ville, &c. I *am going* home, *to* town, &c.

If no place *is mentioned, we make the verb reflective as follows:*

---

* A verb is called *irregular*, when all its tenses and persons cannot be formed from the infinitive, by changing only the last syllable, as you see in the verb BLAMER.

In order to render the difference more obvious, the tenses or persons which are formed *regularly* from the infinitive, have their terminations printed in *italic* characters, the words which are *irregular* are printed *wholly* in *roman*.

† *Fus, Fus, Fut; Fûmes, Fûtes, Furent*, the perfect tense of ÊTRE, is often used instead of *Allai, Allas, Alla; Allâmes, Allâtes, Allèrent*, the perfect of ALLER; as, *J'* allai *or je* fus *en France l' année dernière;* I *went* to France last year. I would prefer *allai* to *fus*.

INFINITIVE.

To GO *away*. S'*en* ALL *er*.

IMPERATIVE.

Commanding rule 26, p. 77.	*Forbidding rule 27, page 77*
GO *away*, *or* be gone, va-T'*en*, sing. / ALL*ez*-VOUS-*en*, pl.	NE T'*en* va pas. / NE VOUS *en* ALL*ez* pas. — do not go *away*.
Let *us* go *away*, ALL*ons*-NOUS-*en*.	NE NOUS *en* ALL*ons* pas. let *us* not go

INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
I go, or *am* going away.	*Je*	M'*en* vais	*Que je*	M'*en* aille.
Thou goest, *art* going away.	*Tu*	T'*en* vas.	*Tu*	T'*en* ailles.
He goes, or *is* going away.	*Il*	S'*en* va.	*Il*	S'*en* aille.
We go, *are* going away.	*Nous*	NOUS *en* ALL*ons*.	*Nous*	NOUS *en* ALL*ions*.
You go, *are* going away.	*Vous*	VOUS *en* ALL*ez*.	*Vous*	VOUS *en* ALL*iez*.
They go, *are* going away.	*Ils*	S'*en* vont.	*Ils*	S'*en* aillent.
I was going *away*.	*Je*	M'*en* ALL*ais*.		
I went *away*.	*Je*	M'*en* ALL*ai*.	*Que je*	M'*en* ALL*asse*.
I shll, will go *away*.	*Je*	M'*en* irai.		
I shd, wld go *away*.	*Je*	M'*en* irais.		
I am *not going away*.	*Je* ne M'*en* vais pas, &c.			

Compound tenses, formed by adding the participle ALLÉ to the auxiliary verb ÊTRE.

I *have* gone away.	*Je*	M'*en* suis ALLÉ.
Thou *hast* gone away.	*Tu*	T'*en* es ALLÉ.
He *has* gone away.	*Il*	S'*en* est ALLÉ.
We *have* gone away.	*Nous*	NOUS *en* sommes ALLÉS.
You *have* gone away.	*Vous*	VOUS *en* êtes ALLÉS.
They *have* gone away.	*Ils*	S' *en* sont ALLÉS

ENVOYER. *To* SEND.

The sole irregularity of this verb is in the *future* and in the *conditional*, the other tenses being formed regularly in the same manner as BLÂMER.

INFINITIVE

To SEND. ENVOY *er*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*
Pres.	*I* send.	*J'*	ENVOI*e*.	*Que j'* ENVOI*e*, *&c.*
Imp.	*I did* send.	*J'*	ENVOY*ais*.	
Perf.	*I* sent.	*J'*	ENVOY*ai*, *&c.*	*J'* ENVOY*asse*, *&c*
Futu.	*I* shall, or will send.	*J'*	enverrai[5].	
	Thou shall, or will send.	*Tu*	enverras.	
	He shall, or will send.	*Il*	enverra.	
	We shall, or will send.	*Nous*	enverrons.	
	You shall, or will send.	*Vous*	enverrez.	
	They shall, or will send.	*Ils*	enverront[26].	
Cond.	*I* shld, or wld send.	*J'*	enverrais[6].	
	Thou shld, or wld send.	*Tu*	enverrais.	
	He shld, or wld send.	*Il*	enverrait[26].	
	We shld, or wld send.	*Nous*	enverrions.	
	You shld, or wld send.	*Vous*	enverriez.	
	They shld, or wld send.	*Ils*	enverraient[6].	

Conjugate in the same manner, RENVOY *er*, to *Send back*, to *Dismiss*.

INFINITIVE.

To FINISH. FIN *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

Finish. FIN *is, sing.* FIN *issez, plur.*
Let *us* finish. FIN *issons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* finish, or *am* finishing.	*Je*[3] [20]FIN *is*[26].	*Que je*[3] [20]FIN *isse*[2].	finish, *may* finish.
	Thou finishest, *art* finishing.	*Tu* FIN *is*.	*Tu* FIN *isses*.	
	He finishes, or *is* finishing.	*Il* FIN *it*[26].	*Il* FIN *isse*.	
	We / *You* / *They* finish, or *are* finishing.	*Nous* FIN *issons*.	*Nous* FIN *issions*.	
		Vous FIN *issez*.	*Vous* FIN *issiez*.	
		Ils FIN *issent*[18].	*Ils* FIN *issent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* finishing.	*Je*[3] FIN *issais*[6].		
		Tu FIN *issais*.		
		Il FIN *issait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* finishing.	*Nous* FIN *issions*.		
		Vous FIN *issiez*.		
		Ils FIN *issaient*[6]		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* finished, *did* finish.	*Je*[3] FIN *is*[26].	*Que je*[3] FIN *îsse*[2].	finished, *might* finish.
		Tu FIN *is*.	*Tu* FIN *îsses*.	
		Il FIN *it*[26].	*Il* FIN *ît*[26].	
		Nous FIN *îmes*.	*Nous* FIN *îssions*.	
		Vous FIN *îtes*.	*Vous* FIN *îssiez*.	
		Ils FIN *irent*[11].	*Ils* FIN *îssent*[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* finish, *be* finishing.	*Je*[3] FINIR *ai*[5].		
		Tu FINIR *as*.		
		Il FINIR *a*.		
		Nous FINIR *ons*		
		Vous FINIR *ez*.		
		Ils FINIR *ont*[10].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, would* finish, *be* finishing.	*Je*[3] FINIR *ais*[6].		
		Tu FINIR *ais*.		
		Il FINIR *ait*[26].		
		Nous FINIR *ions*.		
		Vous FINIR *iez*.		
		Ils FINIR *aient*[6].		

GERUND.

Finishing. FIN *issant.*

PARTICIPLE.

FIN *i.* Finished.

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*		*Interrogatively and Negat.*	
FINIS-*je?*	do I fin?	Je *ne* FINIS	I do *not* finish.	*Ne* FINIS-*je*	do I *not* finish?
FINIS-*tu?*		Tu *ne* FINIS		*Ne* FINIS-*tu* *pas?*	
FINIT-*il?*		Il *ne* FINIT		*Ne* FINIT-*il*	
FINISSONS-*nous?*		NOUS *ne* FINISSONS *pas.*		*Ne* FINISSONS-*nous p.*	
FINISSEZ - *vous?*		VOUS *ne* FINISSEZ		*Ne* FINISSEZ - *vous p.*	
FINISSENT-*ils?*		Ils *ne* FINISSENT		*Ne* FINISSENT-*ils pas*	

After the same manner as FINIR, *are conjugated the following verbs,*

s'Abâtardir, *to degenerate.* Abolir, *to abolish.* Aboutir, *to end.*
s'Abêtir, *to grow stupid.* Abonnir, *to better.* s'Abrutir, *to become stupid.*
Accomplir

Accomplir, *to accomplish.*
Accourcir, *to shorten.*
s'Accroupir, *to sit squat.*
Adoucir, *to soften.*
Affadir, *to render tasteless.*
Affermir, *to strengthen.*
Affaiblir, *to weaken.*
Affranchir, *to free.*
Agir, *to act.*
Agrandir, *to enlarge.*
Aguerrir, *to inure to war.*
Aigrir, *to exasperate.*
Alentir, *to slacken.*
Amaigrir, *to grow lean.*
Ameublir, *to make moveable.*
Amoindrir, *to lessen.*
Amollir, *to soften.*
Amortir, *to redeem.*
Anéantir, *to annihilate.*
Anoblir, *to ennoble.*
Appauvrir, *to empoverish.*
Appesantir, *to make heavy.*
Applanir, *to level.*
Applatir, *to flatten.*
Applaudir, *to applaud.*
Approfondir, *to fathom.*
Asservir, *to enslave.*
Assortir, *to match.*
Assoupir, *to make drowsy.*
Assouplir, *to supple.*
Assourdir, *to deafen.*
Assouvir, *to glut, to satiate.*
Assujettir, *to subdue.*
Attendrir, *to move to pity.*
Atterrir, *to approach the land.*
Avertir, *to warn.*
Avilir, *to revile, to debase.*
Bannir, *to banish.*
Bâtir, *to build.*
Bénir, *to bless.*
Blanchir, *to whiten.*
Blêmir, *to grow pale.*
Bleuir, *to make blue.*
Blondir, *to grow fair.*
se Blottir, *to lie squat.*
Bondir, *to skip.*
Brandir, *to brandish.*
Brouir, *to blast.*
Brunir, *to burnish.*
Candir, *to candy.*
Chérir, *to cherish.*
Choisir, *to choose.*
Clapir, *to squat, to clap.*
Compatir, *to compassionate.*
Convertir, *to convert.*
Crépir, *to roughcast.*
Croupir, *to stagnate.*
Débrutir, *to take the roughness.*
Définir, *to define.*
Défleurir, *to lose the blossom.*
Dégarnir, *to disgarnish.*
Dégourdir, *to warm a little.*
Déguerpir, *to move off.*
Démolir, *to demolish.*
Dépérir, *to decay.*
Dépolir, *to unpolish.*
Déroidir, *to take off stiffness.*
Dérougir, *to take off redness.*
Désobéir, *to disobey.*
se Dessaisir, *to give up.*
Désunir, *to disunite.*
Divertir, *to divert.*
Durcir, *to harden.*
Eblouir, *to dazzle.*
Eclaircir, *to brighten.*
Elargir, *to widen.*
Embellir, *to embellish.*
Emplir, *to fill.*
Enchérir, *to grow dearer.*
Endurcir, *to harden.*
Enforcir, *to grow strong.*
Enfouir, *to bury.*
Enhardir, *to embolden.*
Engloutir, *to swallow up.*
Engourdir, *to benumb.*
Enlaidir, *to grow ugly.*
s'Enorgueillir, *to grow proud.*
Enrichir, *to enrich.*
Ensevelir, *to put in a shroud.*
Envahir, *to invade.*
Epaissir, *to thicken.*
Epanouir, *the bud opening.*
Equarrir, *to square.*
Etablir, *to establish.*
Etourdir, *to stun.*
Etrécir, *to narrow.*
s'Evanouir, *to faint.*
Farcir, *to stuff.*
Fléchir, *to bend, to move.*
Flétrir, *to wither.*
Fleurir, *to blossom, to flourish.*
Fouir, *to dig.*
Fourbir, *to furbish.*
Fournir, *to supply.*
Franchir, *to leap over.*
Frémir, *to shudder.*
se Froidir, *to grow cold.*
Garantir, *to warrant.*
Garnir, *to furnish.*
Gémir, *to groan.*
Grandir, *to grow tall.*
Grossir, *to grow big.*
Guérir, *to cure.*
Hennir, *to neigh.*
Investir, *to invest.*
Jaillir, *to spout out.*
Jaunir, *to grow yellow.*
Jouir, *to enjoy.*
Languir, *to languish.*
Meurtrir, *to bruise.*
Moisir, *to grow mouldy.*
Mollir, *to grow soft.*
Mugir, *to low.*
Munir, *to store.*
Mûrir, *to ripen.*
Nantir, *to give security.*
Noircir, *to blacken.*
Nourrir, *to feed.*
Obéir, *to obey.*
Obscurcir, *to obscure.*
Ourdir, *to warp.*
Pâlir, *to grow pale.*
Parfournir, *to make up.*
Pâtir, *to suffer.*
Périr, *to perish.*
Pervertir, *to pervert.*
Pétrir, *to knead.*
Polir, *to polish.*
Pourir, *to grow rotten.*
Prémunir, *to provide.*
Punir, *to punish.*
Raccourcir, *to shorten.*
Racornir, *to make tough.*
Radoucir, *to soften.*
Raffermir, *to strengthen again.*
Rafraîchir, *to refresh.*
Ragrandir *to enlarge again.*
Rajeunir, *to grow young again.*
Ralentir, *to slacken.*
Ramoitir, *to moisten.*
Ramollir, *to soften.*
Rancir, *to grow rancid.*
Ravilir, *to debase.*
Ravir, *to ravish, to delight.*
Rebâtir, *to build again.*
Reblanchir, *to whiten again.*
Rebondir, *to rebound.*
Réfléchir, *to reflect.*
Refleurir, *to blossom again.*
Refroidir, *to cool.*
Régir, *to rule, to govern.*
Rejaillir, *to spurt up.*
Réjouir, *to rejoice.*
Rembrunir, *to darken.*
Remplir, *to fill again.*
Renchérir, *to grow dearer.*
Rendurcir, *to make harder.*
Renhardir, *to grow bold again*
Répartir, *to distribute equally*
Repolir, *to polish again.*
Résaisir, *to seize again.*
Resplendir, *to shine.*
Ressortir, *to resort.*
Retentir, *to resound.*
Rétrécir, *to straiten.*
Reverdir, *to grow green again*
Réunir, *to reunite.*
Réussir, *to succeed.*
Rôtir, *to roast.*
Rougir, *to blush.*
Rouir, *to steep.*
Roussir, *to make reddish.*
Rugir, *to roar.*
Saillir, *to gush out.*
Saisir, *to seize.*
Salir, *to soil.*
Sévir, *to exercise severity.*
Subir, *to undergo.*
Subvertir, *to subvert.*
se Tapir, *to squat.*
Tarir, *to drain.*
Ternir, *to tarnish.*
Terrir, *to land.*
Trahir, *to betray.*
Transir, *to chill.*
Travestir, *to disguise.*
Unir, *to unite.*
Verdir, *to grow green.*
Vernir, *to varnish.*
Vieillir, *to grow old.*
Vomir, *to vomit.*

The IRREGULAR verbs *belonging to this conjugation are,*

s'*Abstenir*, to abstain..... *like* VENIR.
Accourir, to run to..... *like* COURIR.
Accueillir, to welcome..... *like* CUEILLIR.
Appartenir, to belong..... *like* VENIR.
ACQUERIR, to acquire ..... *page* 121.
BOUILLIR, to boil ..... *page* 122.
Concourir, to concur ..... *like* COURIR.
Conquérir, to conquer ..... *like* ACQUÉRIR.
Consentir, to consent..... *like* SENTIR.
Contenir, to contain .....
Contrevenir, to contravene . } *like* VENIR.
Convenir, to agree .....
COURIR, to run..... *page* 123.
Couvrir, to cover..... *like* OUVRIR.
CUEILLIR, to gather ..... *page* 124.
Découvrir, to discover..... *like* OUVRIR.
Démentir, to give the lie ...
se *Départir*, to give up .... } *like* SENTIR.
Desservir, to take off the
Détenir, to detain..[dishes.
Devenir, to become ..... } *like* VENIR.
se *Dévêtir*, to undress ..... *like* REVÊTIR.
Disconvenir, to disagree..... *like* VENIR.
Discourir, to discourse ..... *like* COURIR.
Dormir, to sleep.....
Endormir, to lull asleep.... } *like* SENTIR.
s'*Endormir*, to fall asleep...
Encourir, to incur ..... *like* COURIR.
s'*Enfuir*, to run away ..... *like* FUIR.
Entretenir, to keep up..... *like* VENIR.
Entr'ouvrir, to open a little .. *like* OUVRIR.
FUIR, to flee, to shun, to avoid.
Haïr, to hate.†..... *page* 125.
Intervenir, to intervene .... } *like* VENIR.
Maintenir, to maintain ....
Mentir, to lie..... *like* SENTIR.
MOURIR, to die ..... *page* 126.

Obtenir, to obtain..... *like* VENIR.
Offrir, to offer..... *like* OUVRIR.
OUVRIR, to open ..... *page* 127.
Parcourir, to over-run ..... *like* COURIR.
Partir, to set out .....
Pressentir, to have a foresight } *like* SENTIR.
Parvenir, to attain.....
Prévenir, to prevent..... } *like* VENIR.
Provenir, to proceed.....
Querir, to fetch.‡ .....
Recourir, to have recourse to. *like* COURIR.
Recouvrir, to cover again .... *like* OUVRIR.
Recueillir, to collect..... *like* CUEILLIR.
Redevenir, to become again... *like* VENIR.
se *Rendormir*, to sleep again
Repartir, to set out again .. } *like* SENTIR.
se *Repentir*, to repent.....
Requérir, to require..... *like* ACQUÉRIR.
Ressentir, to resent .....
Ressortir, to go out again.... } *like* SENTIR.
Ressouvenir, to remember...
Retenir, to retain..... } *like* VENIR.
Revenir, to return .....
REVÊTIR, to invest ..... *page* 128.
Secourir, to succour ..... *like* COURIR.
SENTIR, to feel, to smell... *page* 129.
Servir, to serve, to use.....
Sortir, to go out ..... } *like* SENTIR.
Souffrir, to suffer ..... *like* OUVRIR
Soutenir, to maintain.....
se *Souvenir*, to remember ..
Subvenir, to afford ..... } *like* VENIR.
Survenir, to befall .....
Tenir, to hold .....
TRESSAILLIR, to start.... *page* 130.
VENIR, to come ..... *page* 131.
Vêtir, to clothe..... *like* REVÊTIR.

---

* Several of these irregular verbs having a similarity in their conjugation, as, for example, the verbs in *tir*, which are all but two (*vêtir* and *revêtir*) conjugated like SENTIR, the verbs in *enir* which are conjugated like VENIR; I have conjugated only one verb of each termination, as a model for the others; and all the verbs which may be conjugated in the same manner as that verb are found under it.

† HAIR is regular only in the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons singular of the *present* of the *indicative*, and in the *second* person singular of the *imperative*, where *ai* are pronounced in *one* syllable,

Je	*hais.*	I hate.	pronounce	*haye.*
Tu	*hais.*	Thou hatest.		*haye.*
Il	*hait.*	He hates.		*hay.*

in the other tenses and persons *ai* are pronounced in *two* distinct syllables, and the *i* is marked over with *two dots*,

Nous	*haïssons.*	We hate.	pronounce	*ha-isson.*
Vous	*haïssez.*	You hate.		*ha-issay.*
Ils	*haïssent.*	They hate.		*ha-iss.*
Je	*haïssais.*	I did hate.		*ha-issaye.*
Je	*haïs.*	I hated.		*ha-ee.*
Je	*haïrai.*	I shall hate.		*ha-eeray.*
Je	*haïrais.*	I should hate, &c. like FINIR.		

‡ Used only in the *infinitive* after *Aller* and *Envoyer*: as,
Aller querir, to go and fetch. *Envoyer querir*, to send for.

INFINITIVE.

To ACQUIRE. *ACQUÉR*ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

ACQUIRE. ACQUIERS, *sing.* ACQUÉR *ez, plur.*
LET *us* ACQUIRE. ACQUÉR *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* acquire, or *am* acquiring.	*J'* *acquiers.	*Que j'* *acquière.	acquire, *may* acquire.
	Thou acquirest, *art* acquiring.	*Tu* acquiers.	*tu* acquières.	
	He acquires, or *is* acquiring.	*Il* acquiert[26].	*il* acquière.	
	We / *You* / *They* acquire, *are* acquiring.	*Nous* acquér *ons.*	*nous* acquér *ions.*	
		Vous acquér *ez.*	*vous* acquér *iez.*	
		Ils acquièrent[18].	*ils* acquièrent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* acquiring.	*J'* *acquér *ais*[6].		
		Tu acquér *ais.*		
		Il acquér *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* acquiring.	*Nous* acquér *ions.*		
		Vous acquér *iez.*		
		Ils acquér *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* acquired, *did* acquire.	*J'* *acquis.†	*Que j'* *acquisse[2].	acquired, *might* acquire.
		Tu acquis.	*tu* acquisses.	
		Il acquit[26].	*il* acquît[26].	
		Nous acquîmes.	*nous* acquissions.	
		Vous acquîtes.	*vous* acquissiez.	
		Ils acquirent.	*ils* acquissent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* acquire, *be* acquiring.	*J'* *acquer *rai*[5].‡		
		Tu acquer *ras.*		
		Il acquer *ra.*		
		Nous acquer *rons.*		
		Vous acquer *rez.*		
		Ils acquer *ront*[26].		
Fut. conditional	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, would* acquire, *be* acquiring.	*J'* *acquer *rais*[6] ‡		
		Tu acquer *rais.*		
		Il acquer *rait*[26].		
		Nous acquer *rions.*		
		Vous acquer *riez.*		
		Ils acquer *raient*[6].		

GERUND.

ACQUIRING. ACQUÉR *ant.*

PARTICIPLE.

ACQUIS. ACQUIRED.

Conjugate in the same manner,

REQUÉRir, to *require*, and CONQUÉRir, to *conquer*.

N. B. CONQUÉR *ir* is used only in the *infinitive*, in the *gerund* CONQUÉR*ant*, in the *participle* CONQU*is*, and in the *perfect*

Je conquis.	*I* conquered.	*Que je* conquisse.		*might* conq.
Tu conquis.	*Thou* conquerédst.	*Tu* conquisses.		
Il conquit.	*He* conquered.	*Il* conquît.		
Nous conquîmes, &c.	*We* conquered.	*Nous* conquissions.		

* See *qu*, page 13. † See note 4, page 2.
‡ These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first r

INFINITIVE.

To BOIL. BOUILL*ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

BOIL. BOUS, *sing*. BOUILL *ez plur*.
LET *us* BOIL. BOUILL *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* boil, or *am* boiling.	*Je*[8] [14]bous[26].	*Que je* bouill *e*.	boil, *may* boil.
	Thou boilest, *art* boiling.	*Tu* bous.	*Tu* bouill *es*.	
	He boils, or *is* boiling.	*Il* bout[26].	*Il* bouill *e*.	
	We / *You* / *They* boil, or *are* boiling.	*Nous* bouill *ons*.	*Nous* bouill *ions*.	
		Vous bouill *ez*.	*Vous* bouill *iez*.	
		Ils bouill *ent*[18].	*Ils* bouill *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* boiling.	*Je* [14]bouill *ais*[6].		
		Tu bouill *ais*.		
		Il bouill *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* boiling.	*Nous* bouill *ions*.		
		Vous bouill *iez*.		
		Ils bouill *aient*[6]		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* boiled, *did* boil.	*Je* [14]bouill *is*[26].	*Que je* bouill *isse*[8].	boiled, *might* boil.
		Tu bouill *is*.	*Tu* bouill *isses*.	
		Il bouill *it*[26].	*Il* bouill *ît*[26].	
		Nous bouill *îmes*.	*Nous* bouill *issions*.	
		Vous bouill *îtes*.	*Vous* bouill *issiez*.	
		Ils bouill *irent*[18].	*Ils* bouill *issent*.	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* boil, *be* boiling.	*Je* [14]bouillir *ai*[5].		
		Tu bouillir *as*.		
		Il bouillir *a*.		
		Nous bouillir *ons*.		
		Vous bouillir *ez*.		
		Ils bouillir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* boil, *be* boiling.	*Je* [14]bouillir *ais*.[6]		
		Tu bouillir *ais*.		
		Il bouillir *ait*[26].		
		Nous bouillir *ions*.		
		Vous bouillir *iez*.		
		Ils bouillir *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
BOILING.	BOUILL *ant*.	BOUILL *i*.	BOILED.

N. B. To BOIL, used in an *active* sense, *i. e.* followed by an *object*, is not expressed by *bouillir*, but by *faire bouillir*; as,

I / *Thou* / *He* boil, or *am* boiling	water, meat, &c.	*Je* *fais* bouillir	*de l'eau, de la viande*
		Tu *fais* bouillir	
		Il *fait* bouillir	
We / *You* / *They* boil, or *are* boiling.		*Nous* *faisons* bouillir	
		Vous *faites* bouillir	
		Ils *font* bouillir	

I *have* / Thou *hast* boiled, or *been* boiling. — *J'* ai / *Tu* as fait bouillir, &c.

And so on, by adding the infinitive BOUILLIR to the verb *faire*. See FAIRE.

INFINITIVE.

To RUN. [14]COUR ir.

IMPERATIVE.

RUN. COUR *s, sing.* COUR *cz, plur.*
LET *us* RUN. COUR *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*
Present tense.	*I* run, or *am* running.	*Je*[8] [14]cour *s*[26].	*Que je* [14]cour *e*.
	Thou runnest, *art*	*Tu* cour *s*.	*Tu* cour *es*.
	He runs, or *is*	*Il* cour *t*[26].	*Il* cour *e*.
	We / *You* / *They* run, or *are* running.	*Nous* cour *ons*.	*Nous* cour *ions*.
		Vous cour *ez*.	*Vous* cour *iez*.
		Ils cour *ent*[18].	*Ils* cour *ent*[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* running.	*Je* [14]cour *ais*[6].	
		Tu cour *ais*.	
		Il cour *ait*[26].	
	We / *You* / *They* *were* running.	*Nous* cour *ions*.	
		Vous cour *iez*.	
		Ils cour *aient*[6].	
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* ran, *did* run.	*Je* [14]cour *us*[26]	*Que je* [14]cour *usse*[8].
		Tu cour *us*.	*Tu* cour *usses*.
		Il cour *ut*[26].	*Il* cour *ût*[26].
		Nous cour *ûmes*.	*Nous* cour *ussions*.
		Vous cour *ûtes*.	*Vous* cour *ussiez*.
		Ils cour *urent*[18].	*Ils* cour *ussent*.
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* run, *be* running.	*Je* [14]cour *rai*[5].*	
		Tu cour *ras*.	
		Il cour *ra*.	
		Nous cour *rons*.	
		Vous cour *rez*.	
		Ils cour *ront*[26].	
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* run *be* running.	*Je* [14]cour *rais*[6].*	
		Tu cour *rais*.	
		Il cour *rait*[26].	
		Nous cour *rions*.	
		Vous cour *riez*.	
		Ils cour *raient*[6].	

GERUND.

RUNNING. COUR *ant.*

PARTICIPLE.

COUR *u.* RUN.

After the same manner as COURIR, *conjugate*

ACCOURIR. to *run to.*
CONCOURIR. to *concur.*
DISCOURIR. to *discourse.*
ENCOURIR. to *incur.*
PARCOURIR. to *peruse*, to *overrun.*
RECOURIR. to *run again*, to *have recourse to.*
SECOURIR. to *succour*, to *relieve.*

N. B. The compound tenses of ACCOURIR are formed with either *Avoir* or *Etre*; as,

I *have* run,	*J'*	ai	*accouru*, or	*Je*	suis *accouru*.
Thou *hast* run,	*Tu*	as	*accouru*,	*Tu*	es *accouru*.
He *has* run,	*Il*	a	*accouru*,	*Il*	est *accouru*.
We *have* run, &c.	*Nous*	avons	*accouru*,	*Nous*	sommes *accourus*, &c.

* These two rr must be sounded *distinctly*; in order to do it, lay a *stress* on the first

INFINITIVE.

To GATHER. CUEILL*ir.

IMPERATIVE.

gather. cueill *e*, *sing*. CUEILL *ez*. *plur*.
Let *us* gather. CUEILL *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* gather, or *am* gathering.	*Je*[3]	cueill*e.	*Que je*	cueill *e*.	gather, *may* gather.
	Thou gatherest, *art* gathering.	*Tu*	cueill *es*[26].	*Tu*	cueill *es*.	
	He gathers, or *is* gathering.	*Il*	cueill *e*.	*Il*	cueill *e*.	
	We / *You* / *They* gather or *are* gathering.	*Nous*	cueill *ons*.	*Nous*	cueill *ions*.	
		Vous	cueill *ez*.	*Vous*	cueill *iez*.	
		Ils	cueill *ent*[18].	*Ils*	cueill *ent*[18]	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* gathering.	*Je*	cueill *ais*[6].			
		Tu	cueill *ais*.			
		Il	cueill *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* gathering.	*Nous*	cueill *ions*.			
		Vous	cueill *iez*.			
		Ils	cueill *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* gathered, *did* gather.	*Je*	cueill *is*[26].	*Que je*[3]	cueill *isse*[3].	gathered, *might* gather.
		Tu	cueill *is*.	*Tu*	cueill *isses*.	
		Il	cueill *it*[26].	*Il*	cueill *ît*[26].	
		Nous	cueill *îmes*.	*Nous*	cueill *issions*.	
		Vous	cueill *îtes*.	*Vous*	cueill *issiez*.	
		Ils	cueill *irent*[18].	*Ils*	cueill *issent*.	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll*, *wll* gather *be* gathering.	*Je*	cueill *erai*[5].			
		Tu	cueill *eras*.			
		Il	cueill *era*.			
		Nous	cueill *erons*.			
		Vous	cueill *erez*.			
		Ils	cueill *eront*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* gather, *be* gathering.	*Je*	cueill *erais*[6].			
		Tu	cueill *erais*.			
		Il	cueill *erait*[26].			
		Nous	cueill *erions*.			
		Vous	cueill *eriez*.			
		Ils	cueill *eraient*[6].			

GERUND.

gathering. CUEILL *ant*.

PARTICIPLE.

CUEILL *i*. gathered

After the same manner as CUEILLIR *are conjugated,*
ACCUEILLIR, *to welcome*, and RECUEILLIR, *to receive, to collect.*

N. B. ACCUEILLIR is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use *Faire bon accueil*; as,
They *welcomed* us. *Ils nous* firent bon accueil.

TO BE WELCOME is, *Etre bien venu*; as,
You are *welcome*. *Vous êtes* bien venu.

* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of CUEILL, is *kheughl*.

INFINITIVE.

To SHUN; *To* FLEE. FU *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

shun. FU *is, sing*. FUY *ez, plur*.
Let *us* shun. FUY *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* shun, or *am* shunning.	*Je*[3] [23]fu *is*[26].		*Que je* fu *ie*.	shun, *may* shun.
	Thou shunnest, *art*	*Tu* fu *is*.		*Tu* fu *ies*.	
	He shuns, or *is*	*Il* fu *it*[26].		*Il* fu *ie*.	
	We, *You*, *They* shun, or *are* shunning.	*Nous* fu *yons*.		*Nous* fu *yions*.	
		Vous fu *yez*.		*Vous* fu *yiez*.	
		Ils fu *ient*[18].		*Ils* fu *ient*.	
Imperfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He* *was* shunning.	*Je* [4]fu *yais*[6].			
		Tu fu *yais*.			
		Il fu *yait*[26].			
	We, *You*, *They* *were* shunning.	*Nous* fu *yions*.			
		Vous fu *yiez*.			
		Ils fu *yaient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* shunned, *did* shun.	*Je* fu *is*[26].		*Que je* fu *isse*[2].	shunned, *might* shun.
		Tu fu *is*.		*Tu* fu *isses*.	
		Il fu *it*[26].		*Il* fu *ît*[26].	
		Nous fu *îmes*.		*Nous* fu *issions*	
		Vous fu *îtes*.		*Vous* fu *issiez*.	
		Ils fu *irent*[18].		*Ils* fu *issent*.	
Future positive.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shall*, *will* shun, *be* shunning.	*Je* fuir *ai*[5].			
		Tu fuir *as*.			
		Il fuir *a*.			
		Nous fuir *ons*.			
		Vous fuir *ez*.			
		Ils fuir *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shd*, *wd* shun *be* shunning.	*Je* fuir *ais*[6].			
		Tu fuir *ais*.			
		Il fuir *ait*[26].			
		Nous fuir *ions*.			
		Vous fuir *iez*.			
		Ils fuir *aient*[6].			

GERUND.

shunning. FUY *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE.

FU *i*. shunned.

After the same manner is conjugated S'ENFUIR, *to run away*; thus,

I run, or *am*	running *away*.	*Je* M'	enfu*is*.
Thou runnest, *art*		*Tu* T'	enfu*is*.
He runs, or *is*		*Il* S'	enfu*it*[26].
We run, *are*		*Nous* NOUS	enfu*yons*.
You run, *are*		*Vous* VOUS	enfu*yez*.
They run, *are*		*Ils* S'	enfu*ient*[18].

N. B. The compound tenses of *s'*ENFUIR are formed with *Etre*, not *Avoir*; as,

I *have* run *away*.
Thou *hast* run *away*.
He *has* run *away*

Je ME *suis*, *Tu* T' *es*, *Il* S' *est* } ENFUI, &c.

INFINITIVE.

To DIE. MOUR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

DIE. MEURS, *sing.* MOUR *ez, plur*
LET *us* die. MOUR *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* die, or *am* dying.	*Je* [12]meurs[26].	*Que je* meure.	die, *may* die.
	Thou diest, *art* dying.	*Tu* meurs.	*Tu* meures.	
	He dies, or *is* dying.	*Il* meurt[26].	*Il* meure.	
	We / *You* / *They* die, or *are* dying.	*Nous* mour *ons.*	*Nous* mour *ions.*	
		Vous mour *ez.*	*Vous* mour *iez.*	
		Ils meurent[18].	*Ils* meurent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* dying.	*Je* [14]mour *ais*[6].		
		Tu mour *ais.*		
		Il mour *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* dying.	*Nous* mour *ions.*		
		Vous mour *iez.*		
		Ils mour *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* died, *did* die.	*Je* [14]mour *us*[26].	*Que je* mour *usse*[8].	died, *might* die.
		Tu mour *us.*	*Tu* mour *usses.*	
		Il mour *ut*[26].	*Il* mour *ût*[26].	
		Nous mour *ûmes.*	*Nous* mour *ussions.*	
		Vous mour *ûtes.*	*Vous* mour *ussiez.*	
		Ils mour *urent*[18].	*Ils* mour *ussent.*	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, will* die, *be* dying.	*Je* [14]mour *rai*[5].*		
		Tu mour *ras.*		
		Il mour *ra.*		
		Nous mour *rons.*		
		Vous mour *rez.*		
		Ils mour *ront*[21].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* die, *be* dying.	*Je* [14]mour *rais*[6].*		
		Tu mour *rais.*		
		Il mour *rait*[26].		
		Nous mour *rions.*		
		Vous mour *riez.*		
		Ils mour *raient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
DYING.	MOUR *ant*[26].	MORT[26].	DEAD.

After the same manner as MOURIR *is conjugated se* MOURIR, to *be dying;*

Je	ME	meurs.	*I* am	dying *away.*
Tu	TE	meurs.	*Thou* art	
Il	SE	meurt.	*He* is	
Nous	NOUS	mour *ons.*	*We* are	
Vous	VOUS	mour *ez.*	*You* are	
Ils	SE	meurent.	*They* are	

N. B. The compound tenses of MOURIR are formed by adding *Mort* to the auxiliary *Etre;* as, He *has* died. *Il* est *mort.*
They *have* died. *Ils* sont *morts, &c.*

* These two *rr* must be sounded *distinctly;* in order to do it, lay a *stress* on the *first* r

INFINITIVE.

To OPEN. OUVR *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

open. OUVR *e*, *sing*. OUVR *ez*, *plur*.
Let *us* open. OUVR *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* open, or *am* opening.	*J'*	[14]ouvr *e*.	*Que j'* [14]ouvr *e*.	open, *may* open.
	Thou openest, *art* opening.	*Tu*	ouvr *es*.	*Tu* ouvr *es*.	
	He opens, or *is* opening.	*Il*	ouvr *e*.	*Il* ouvr *e*.	
	We open, or *are* opening.	*Nous*	ouvr *ons*.	*Nous* ouvr *ions*.	
	You open, or *are* opening.	*Vous*	ouvr *ez*.	*Vous* ouvr *iez*.	
	They open, or *are* opening.	*Ils*	ouvr *ent*[18].	*Ils* ouvr *ent*.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* was opening.	*J'*	[14]ouvr *ais*[6].		
	Thou was opening.	*Tu*	ouvr *ais*.		
	He was opening.	*Il*	ouvr *ait*[26].		
	We were opening.	*Nous*	ouvr *ions*.		
	You were opening.	*Vous*	ouvr *iez*.		
	They were opening.	*Ils*	ouvr *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* opened, *did* open.	*J'*	[14]ouvr *is*[26].	*Que j'* [14]ouvr *isse*[2].	opened, *might* open.
	Thou opened, *did* open.	*Tu*	ouvr *is*.	*Tu* ouvr *isses*.	
	He opened, *did* open.	*Il*	ouvr *it*[26].	*Il* ouvr *ît*[26].	
	We opened, *did* open.	*Nous*	ouvr *îmes*.	*Nous* ouvr *issions*.	
	You opened, *did* open.	*Vous*	ouvr *îtes*.	*Vous* ouvr *issiez*.	
	They opened, *did* open.	*Ils*	ouvr *irent*[18]	*Ils* ouvr *issent*.	
Future positive.	*I* *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*J'*	[14]ouvrir *ai*[5].		
	Thou *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*Tu*	ouvrir *as*.		
	He *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*Il*	ouvrir *a*.		
	We *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*Nous*	ouvrir *ons*.		
	You *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*Vous*	ouvrir *ez*.		
	They *shall*, *will* open, *be* opening.	*Ils*	ouvrir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*J'*	[14]ouvrir *ais*[6].		
	Thou *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*Tu*	ouvrir *ais*.		
	He *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*Il*	ouvrir *ait*[26].		
	We *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*Nous*	ouvrir *ions*.		
	You *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*Vous*	ouvrir *iez*.		
	They *shd*, *wd* open, *be* opening.	*Ils*	ouvrir *aient*[6].		

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE.*

opening. OUVR *ant*[26]. ouvert[26]. opened.

After the same manner as OUVRIR, *are conjugated*

ENTR'OUVRIR, *to open a little.*
COUVRIR, *to cover.*
DÉCOUVRIR, *to discover.*
RECOUVRIR, *to cover again*
OFFRIR, *to offer.*
SOUFFRIR, *to suffer.*

INFINITIVE.

To INVEST *with.** REVÊT *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

invest. REVÊT *s, sing.* REVÊT *ez, plur.*
let *us* invest. REVÊT *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* invest, or *am* investing.	*Je*[3]	revêt *s*[26].	*Que je*	revêt *e.*	invest, *may* invest.
	Thou investest, *art* investing.	*Tu*	revêt *s.*	*Tu*	revêt *es.*	
	He invests, or *is* investing.	*Il*	revêt [26].	*Il*	revêt *e.*	
	We / *You* / *They* invest, *are* investing.	*Nous*	revêt *ons.*	*Nous*	revêt *ions.*	
		Vous	revêt *ez.*	*Vous*	revêt *iez.*	
		Ils	revêt *ent*[18].	*Ils*	revêt *ent.*	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* investing.	*Je*	revêt *ais*[6].			
		Tu	revêt *ais.*			
		Il	revêt *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* investing.	*Nous*	revêt *ions.*			
		Vous	revêt *iez.*			
		Ils	revêt *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* invested, *did* invest.	*Je*	revêt *is*[26].	*Que je*	revêt *isse.*	invested, *might* invest.
		Tu	revêt *is.*	*Tu*	revêt *isses.*	
		Il	revêt *it*[26].	*Il*	revêt *ît*[26].	
		Nous	revêt *îmes.*	*Nous*	revêt *issions.*	
		Vous	revêt *îtes.*	*Vous*	revêt *issiez.*	
		Ils	revêt *irent*[18].	*Ils*	revêt *issent.*	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* invest, *be* investing.	*Je*	revêtir *ai*[5].			
		Tu	revêtir *as.*			
		Il	revêtir *a.*			
		Nous	revêtir *ons.*			
		Vous	revêtir *ez.*			
		Ils	revêtir *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* invest, *be* investing.	*Je*	revêtir *ais*[26].			
		Tu	revêtir *ais.*			
		Il	revêtir *ait.*			
		Nous	revêtir *ions.*			
		Vous	revêtir *iez.*			
		Ils	revêtir *aient*[6].			

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE.*

investing. REVÊT *ant*[26]. REVÊT *u.* invested.

After the same manner as REVÊTIR, *are conjugated*

VÊTIR, *to clothe;* and DÉVÊTIR, *to undress;*

but these two verbs are seldom used, except in the infinitive VÊTIR, DÉVÊTIR, and in the participle VÊTU, *clothed;* instead of the former, we make use of HABILLER, *to clothe, to dress;* and instead of the latter, we use DÉSHABILLER, *to undress.*

---

* To *invest* with *honours, dignities, &c.* but not to *surround.*

INFINITIVE.

To FEEL; *To* SMELL. SENT *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

Feel.	sens, *sing.*	SENT *ez, plur.*
Let *us* feel.		SENT *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE*		
Present tense.	*I* feel, or *am* feeling.	*Je*[3]	[16]sens[26].	*Que je*	sent *e*[3].	feel, *may* feel.
	Thou feelest, *art* feeling.	*Tu*	sens.	*Tu*	sent *es.*	
	He feels, or *is* feeling.	*Il*	sent[26].	*Il*	sent *e.*	
	We feel, *are* feeling.	*Nous*	sent *ons.*	*Nous*	sent *ions.*	
	You feel, *are* feeling.	*Vous*	sent *ez.*	*Vous*	sent *iez.*	
	They feel, *are* feeling.	*Ils*	sent *ent*[18].	*Ils*	sent *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* was feeling.	*Je*	sent *ais*[6].			
	Thou was feeling.	*Tu*	sent *ais.*			
	He was feeling.	*Il*	sent *ait*[26].			
	We were feeling.	*Nous*	sent *ions*			
	You were feeling.	*Vous*	sent *iez.*			
	They were feeling.	*Ils*	sent *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* felt, *did* feel.	*Je*[3]	sent *is*[26].	*Que je*	sent *isse*[3].	felt, *might* feel.
	Thou felt, *did* feel.	*Tu*	sent *is.*	*Tu*	sent *isses.*	
	He felt, *did* feel.	*Il*	sent *it*[26].	*Il*	sent *ît.*[26]	
	We felt, *did* feel.	*Nous*	sent *îmes.*	*Nous*	sent *issions.*	
	You felt, *did* feel.	*Vous*	sent *îtes.*	*Vous*	sent *issiez.*	
	They felt, *did* feel.	*Ils*	sent *irent*[18].	*Ils*	sent *issent.*	
Future positive.	*I* shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Je*	sentir *ai*[3].			
	Thou shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Tu*	sentir *as.*			
	He shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Il*	sentir *a.*			
	We shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Nous*	sentir *ons.*			
	You shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Vous*	sentir *ez.*			
	They shall, *will* feel, *be* feeling.	*Ils*	sentir *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Je*	sentir *ais*[6].			
	Thou shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Tu*	sentir *ais.*			
	He shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Il*	sentir *ait.*			
	We shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Nous*	sentir *ions.*			
	You shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Vous*	sentir *iez*			
	They shd, *wd* feel, *be* feeling.	*Ils*	sentir *aient*[6].			

GERUND.

Feeling. SENT *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE.

SENT *i.* Felt.

After the same manner as SENTIR *are conjugated*

CONSENTIR, *to consent.*
DÉMENTIR, *to give the lie.*
se DÉPARTIR, *to give up.*
DESSERVIR, *to take off the dishes; to do an ill office.*
DORMIR, *to sleep.*
ENDORMIR, *to lull asleep.*
*s'*ENDORMIR, *to fall asleep.*
MENTIR, *to lie; to tell a lie.*
PARTIR, *to set out; to depart.*
PRESSENTIR, *to have a foresight.*
REPARTIR, *to set out again; to reply*
se REPENTIR, *to repent.*
RESSENTIR, *to resent.*
RESSORTIR, *to go out again.*
SERVIR, *to serve; se* SERVIR *to use.**
SORTIR, *to go out.*

* Observe that the *third person singular* of the *present tense* of SERVIR, is *sert*, not *sers*

INFINITIVE.

To LEAP *for joy.*
To START *out of fear.* } TRESSAILL *tr* de *joie*, de *peur*.*

IMPERATIVE.

start. TRESSAILL *e, sing.* TRESSAILL *ez, plur.*
LET *us* start. TRESSAILL *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* start, or *am* starting.	*Je*[3]	tressaill *e.*†	*Que je*	tressaill *e.*	*may* start.
	Thou startest, *art* starting.	*Tu*	tressaill *es.*	*Tu*	tressaill *es.*	
	He starts, or *is* starting.	*Il*	tressaill *e.*	*Il*	tressaill *e.*	
	We / *You* / *They* start, *are* starting.	*Nous*	tressaill *ons.*	*Nous*	tressaill *ions.*	
		Vous	tressaill *ez.*	*Vous*	tressaill *iez.*	
		Ils	tressaill *ent*[18].	*Ils*	tressaill *ent.*	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* starting.	*Je*	tressaill *ais*[6].			
		Tu	tressaill *ais.*			
		Il	tressaill *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* starting.	*Nous*	tressaill *ions.*			
		Vous	tressaill *iez.*			
		Ils	tressaill *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* started, *did* start.	*Je*	tressaill *is*[26].	*Que je*	tressaill *isse*[8].	*might* start.
		Tu	tressaill *is.*	*Tu*	tressaill *isses.*	
		Il	tressaill *it*[31].	*Il*	tressaill *ît.*	
		Nous	tressaill *îmes.*	*Nous*	tressaill *issions.*	
		Vous	tressaill *îtes.*	*Vous*	tressaill *issiez.*	
		Ils	tressaill *irent*[18].	*Ils*	tressaill *issent.*	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* start, *be* starting.	*Je*	tressaillir *ai*[5].			
		Tu	tressaillir *as.*			
		Il	tressaillir *a.*			
		Nous	tressaillir *ons.*			
		Vous	tressaillir *ez.*			
		Ils	tressaillir *ont*[23].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* start, *be* starting.	*Je*	tressaillir *ais*[6].			
		Tu	tressaillir *ais.*			
		Il	tressaillir *ait*[26].			
		Nous	tressaillir *ions.*			
		Vous	tressaillir *iez.*			
		Ils	tressaillir *aient*[6]			

GERUND. starting. TRESSAILL *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE. TRESSAILI *i.* started.

After the same manner as TRESSAILLIR *are conjugated*

ASSAILLIR, *to assault*, but it is not used in the *first, second*, and *third* persons *singular* of the *present* tense, and is seldom used, except in the infinitive ASSAILLIR, and in the participle ASSAILLI, *assaulted.*

SAILLIR, *to jet out*, used only in the *infinitive* SAILLIR, in the *gerund* SAILLANT, in the *participle* SAILLI, and in the *third person* of each tense

* TRESSAILLIR is seldom used without the words *joie*, joy ; or *peur*, fear.
† See *ll* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.

To COME, VEN *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

come. viens, *sing*. VEN *ez plur*.
Let *us* come. VEN *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* come, or *am* coming.	*Je*[3]	viens[23].	*Que je*[3]	vienne[2].	come, *may* come.
	Thou comest, *art* coming.	*Tu*	viens.	*Tu*	viennes.	
	He comes, or *is* coming.	*Il*	vient[23]	*Il*	vienne.	
	We / *You* / *They* come, or *are* coming.	*Nous*	ven *ons*.	*Nous*	ven *ions*.	
		Vous	ven *ez*.	*Vous*	ven *iez*.	
		Ils	viennent[18].	*Ils*	viennent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* coming.	*Je*[3]	ven *ais*[6].			
		Tu	ven *ais*			
		Il	ven *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* coming.	*Nous*	ven *ions*.			
		Vous	ven *iez*.			
		Ils	ven *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* came, or *did* come.	*Je*	[19]vins[26].	*Que je*[3]	vinsse[2].	came, might come
		Tu	vins.	*Tu*	vinsses.	
		Il	vint[26].	*Il*	vînt[26].	
		Nous	vînmes.	*Nous*	vinssions.	
		Vous	vîntes.	*Vous*	vinssiez.	
		Ils	vinrent[18].	*Ils*	vinssent[19]	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall*, *will* come, or *be* coming.	*Je*[3]	viendrai[5]			
		Tu	viendras.			
		Il	viendra.			
		Nous	viendrons.			
		Vous	viendrez.			
		Ils	viendront[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* come, or *be* coming.	*Je*[3]	viendrais.			
		Tu	viendrais.			
		Il	viendrait[26].			
		Nous	viendrions.			
		Vous	viendriez.			
		Ils	viendraient[6].			

coming. VEN *ant*[26]. VEN *u*. come.

After the same manner as VENIR *are conjugated*,

s'ABSTENIR,	*to abstain.*	OBTENIR,	*to obtain.*
APPARTENIR,	*to belong.*	PARVENIR,	*to attain, to arrive*
CONVENIR,	*to agree, to become.*	PRÉVENIR,	*to prevent, to anticipate.*
CONTREVENIR,	*to contravene.*	PROVENIR,	*to proceed.*
CONTENIR,	*to contain.*	REVENIR,	*to come again, to return.*
DISCONVENIR,	*to disagree, to disown.*	RETENIR,	*to retain, to keep.*
DÉTENIR,	*to detain.*	SOUTENIR,	*to maintain.*
DEVENIR,	*to become.*	se SOUVENIR,	*to remember.*
ENTRETENIR,	*to keep up.*	SUBVENIR,	*to afford.*
INTERVENIR,	*to intervene.*	SURVENIR,	*to befal, to happen.*
MAINTENIR,	*to maintain.*	TENIR,	*to hold.*

N. B. The compound tenses of VENIR, CONVENIR, DEVENIR, DISCONVENIR, PARVENIR, PROVENIR, REVENIR, and SURVENIR, are formed with the auxiliary *Etre*, not *Avoir* as, I *have* agreed, *Je* suis *convenu*; not *J'*ai *convenu*.

A TABLE *shewing, in one point of view, how to conju*

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
FIN	*ir,*	*issant,*	*i.*

	INDIC.	IMPER.	SUBJ.
Present tense. *Je* FIN	*is*		*isse*
Tu	*is*	*is*	*isses*
Il	*it*		*isse*
Nous	*issons*	*issons*	*issions*
Vous	*issez*	*issez*	*issiez*
Ils	*issent.*		*issent.*
Imperf. tense. *Je*	*issais*		
Tu	*issais*		
Il	*issait*		
Nous	*issions*		
Vous	*issiez*		
Ils	*issaient*		
Perfect tense. *Je*	*is*		*isse*
Tu	*is*		*isses*
Il	*it*		*ît*
Nous	*îmes*		*issions*
Vous	*îtes*		*issiez*
Ils	*irent.*		*issent.*
Fut. Positive. *Je* FINIR	*ai*		
Tu	*as*		
Il	*a*		
Nous	*ons*		
Vous	*ez*		
Ils	*ont.*		
Fut condit. *Je*	*ais*		
Tu	*ais*		
Il	*ait*		
Nous	*ions*	Like *FINIR*, conjugate all the verbs in *IR*, the following excepted.	
Vous	*iez*		
Ils	*aient.*		

ACQUER	*ir,*	*ant,*	acquis.
Present tense. *J'*	acquiers		acquière
Tu	acquiers	acquiers	acquières
Il	acquiert		acquière
Nous	*ons*	*ons*	*ions*
Vous	*ez*	*ez*	*iez*
Ils	acquièrent.		acquièrent
Imperf. tense. *J'* ACQUÉR	*ais*		
Tu	*ais*		
Il	*ait*		
Nous	*ions*		
Vous	*iez*		
Ils	*aient.*		
Perfect tense. *J'*	acquis		acquisse
Tu	acquis		acquisses
Il	acquit		acquît
Nous	acquîmes		acquissions
Vous	acquîtes		acquissiez
Ils	acquirent.		acquissent.
Fut. positive. *J'* ACQUER	*rai*		
Tu	*ras*		
Il	*ra*		
Nous	*rons*		
Vous	*rez*		
Ils	*ront.*		
Fut. condit. *J'*	*rais*		
Tu	*rais*		
Il	*rait*		
Nous	*rions*		
Vous	*riez*		
Ils	*raient*		

In the same manner conjugate Conquérir, Requérir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
BOUILL	*ir,*	*ant,*	*i.*

	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
	bous		*e*
	bous	bous	*es*
	bout		*e*
BOUILL	*ons*	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*it*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
BOUILLIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		

COUR	*ir,*	*ant,*	*u.*
	s		*e*
	s	*s*	*es*
	t		*e*
	ons	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	us		*usse*
	us		*usses*
	ut		*ût*
	ûmes		*ussions*
	ûtes		*ussiez*
	urent.		*ussent.*
COUR	*rai*		
	ras		
	ra		
	rons		
	rez		
	ront.		
	rais		
	rais		
	rait		
	rions		
	riez		
	raient.		

Like COURIR conjugate Accourir, Concourir, Discourir, Encourir, Parcourir, Recourir, Secourir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
CUEILL	*ir,*	*ant,*	*i.*

	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
CUEILL	*e*		*e*
	es	*e*	*es*
	e		*e*
	ons	*ons*	*ions*
	ez.	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
CUEILL	*erai*		
	eras		
	era		
	erons		
	erez		
	eront.		
	erais		
	erais		
	erait		
	erions		
	eriez	Accueill	
	eraient.	Recueill.	

FU	*ir,*	*yant,*	*i.*
	is		*ie*
	is	*is*	*ies*
	it		*ie*
	yons	*yons*	*yions*
	yez	*yez*	*yiez*
	ient.		*ient.*
	yais		
	yais		
	yait		
	yions		
	yiez		
	yaient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
FUIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		

Like FUIR conjugate s'Enfuir, *to run away.*

ugate all the verbs *in* IR, *both* regular *and* irregular.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
MOUR	*ir,*	*ant,*	mort.

	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
	meurs		meure
	meurs	meurs	meures
	meurt		meure.
MOUR	*ons*	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	meurent.		meurent.
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	us		*usse*
	us		*usses*
	ut		*ût*
	ûmes		*ussions*
	ûtes		*ussiez*
	urent.		*ussent.*
MOUR	*rai*		
	ras		
	ra		
	rons		
	rez		
	ront.		
	rais		
	rais		
	rait		
	rions		
	riez		
	raient.		*se* Mourir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
REVÊT	*ir,*	*ant,*	*u.*

	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
REVÊT	*s*		*e*
	s	*s*	*es*
	revêt		*e*
	ons	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
REVÊT	*ais*		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
REVÊTIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		Vêtir, *se* Dévêtir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
TRESSAIL	*ir,*	*ant,*	*i.*

	IND.	IMP.	SUBJ.
TRES-SAILL	*e*		*e*
	es	*e*	*es*
	e		*e*
	ons	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
TRES-	*irent.*		*issent*
SAILLIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		Assaillir, Saillir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
OUVR	*ir,*	*ant,*	ouvert.

	e		*e*
	es	*e*	*es*
	e		*e*
	ons	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
OUVRIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		

In the same manner conjugate Entr'ouvrir, Couvrir, Découvrir, Recouvrir, Offrir, Souffrir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SENT	*ir,*	*ant,*	*i.*

	sens		*e*
	sens	sens	*es*
	sent		*e*
SENT	*ons*	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	ent.		*ent.*
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*ît*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent.*
SENTIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		

Consentir, Pressentir, Ressentir, Mentir, Démentir, Partir, Repartir, se Départir, Sortir, Ressortir, se Repentir, Servir, Desservir, Dormir Endormir, s'Endormir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
VEN	*ir,*	*ant,*	*u.*

	viens		vienne
	viens	viens	viennes
	vient		vienne
VEN	*ons*	*ons*	*ions*
	ez	*ez*	*iez*
	viennent.		viennent
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		
	vins		vinsse
	vins		vinsse
	vint		vînt
	vînmes		vinssions
	vîntes		vinssiez
	vinrent.		vinssent.
	viendrai		
	viendras		
	viendra		
	viendrons		
	viendrez		
	viendront.		
	viendrais		
	viendrais		
	viendrait		
	viendrions		
	viendriez		
	viendraient.		

Convenir, Contrevenir, Devenir, Disconvenir, Intervenir, Parvenir, Prévenir, Provenir, Revenir, *se* Souvenir, Subvenir, Survenir, Tenir, s'Abstenir, Appartenir, Contenir, Détenir, Entretenir Maintenir, Obtenir, Retenir, Soutenir

INFINITIVE.

To OWE. DEV *oir*

IMPERATIVE.

owe. DOIS, *sing.* DEV *ez, plur.*
LET *us* OWE. DEV *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* owe.	*Je* [23]dois[26].	*Que je* doive[2].	owe, *may* owe.
	Thou owest.	*Tu* dois.	*Tu* doives.	
	He owes.	*Il* doit[26].	*Il* doive.	
	We / *You* / *They* owe.	*Nous* DEV *ons.*	*Nous* DEV *ions.*	
		Vous DEV *ez.*	*Vous* DEV *iez.*	
		Ils doivent[18].	*Ils* doivent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *did* owe.	*Je*[3] DEV *ais*[6].		
		Tu DEV *ais.*		
		Il DEV *ait*[26].		
		Nous DEV *ions.*		
		Vous DEV *iez.*		
		Ils DEV *aient*[6]		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* owed.	*Je* dus.†	*Que je* dusse[2].	owed, *might* owe.
		Tu dus.	*Tu* dusses.	
		Il dut[26].	*Il* dût[26].	
		Nous dûmes.	*Nous* dussions.	
		Vous dûtes.	*Vous* dussiez.	
		Ils durent[18].	*Ils* dussent.[18]	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* owe.	*Je* DEV *rai*[5].		
		Tu DEV *ras.*		
		Il DEV *ra.*		
		Nous DEV *rons.*		
		Vous DEV *rez.*		
		Ils DEV *ront*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shld, wld* owe.	*Je* DEV *rais*[6].		
		Tu DEV *rais.*		
		Il DEV *rait*[26].		
		Nous DEV *rions.*		
		Vous DEV *riez.*		
		Ils DEV *raient*[6].		

GERUND.

owing. DEV *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE.

DÛ. owed.

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*		*Interrogatively and Negativ.*	
DOIS-*je?*	do *I* owe? &c.	JE *ne* dois	I do *not* owe.	*NE* dois-*je*	do I *not* owe?
DOIS-*tu?*		TU *ne* dois		*NE* dois-*tu*	
DOIT-*il?*		IL *ne* doit		*NE* doit-*il*	
DEVONS-*nous?*		NOUS *ne* devons	*pas*	*NE* devons-*nous*	*pas?*
DEVEZ-*vous?*		VOUS *ne* devez		*NE* devez-*vous*	
DOIVENT-*ils?*		ILS *ne* doivent		*NE* doivent-*ils*	

After the same manner as DEVOIR *are conjugated,*

APERCEVOIR, s' APERCEVOIR, *to perceive.*
CONCEVOIR, *to conceive.*
PERCEVOIR, (a law term) *to receive.*
RECEVOIR, *to receive.*
REDEVOIR, *to owe still.*

* See N. B. under DEVOIR, page 111.

† See note 2, page 1.

The IRREGULAR verbs *belonging to this conjugation are*

ASSEOIR, } to sit down ; *page* 136.
s'ASSEOIR, }
Choir, to fall ..... }
Déchoir, to decay ..... } *
Echoir, to expire, to be out. }
Emouvoir, to stir up..... *like* MOUVOIR.
Entrevoir, to have a glimpse ; *like* VOIR.
Equivaloir, to be equivalent ; *like* VALOIR.
Falloir, must ; to be necessary.†
MOUVOIR, to move ; ..... *page* 137.
Pleuvoir, to rain ; ..... †
Pourvoir, to provide ; ..... *see* PRÉVOIR.
POUVOIR, to be able ; ... *page* 138.
PREVOIR, to foresee ; ... *page* 139.
Prévaloir, to prevail ; .... } *see* VALOIR.
se *Prévaloir*, to avail oneself ; }
Revaloir, return like for like ; *like* VALOIR.
Rasseoir, } to sit down } ... *like* ASSEOIR.
se *Rasseoir*, } again ; }
Revoir, to see again ; ..... *like* VOIR.
SAVOIR, to know ; ..... *page* 140.
Seoir, to fit, to suit, to become ; ‡
Surseoir, to supersede ; .... *see* PRÉVOIR.
VALOIR, to be worth ; ... *page* 141.
VOIR, to see ; ..... *page* 142.
VOULOIR, to will, to be willing ; *page* 143.

---

* These *three* verbs are now hardly ever used, but are found in many ancient writings, they are conjugated thus :

INFINITIVE.

CH*oir*. *To* FALL.
DECH*oir*. *To* DECAY.

PARTICIPLE.

CH*u*. fallen. No other tenses.
DÉCH*u*. decayed.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.

Je déch*ois*. *I* decay, or *am* decaying.
Tu déch*ois*. *Thou* decayest, *art* decaying.
Il déch*oit*. *He* decays, or *is* decaying.
Nous déch*oyons*. *We* } decay, *are* decaying.
Vous déch*oyez*. *You* }
Ils déch*oient*. *They* }

Perfect tense.

Je déch*us*. *I* }
Tu déch*us*. *Thou* }
Il déch*ut*. *He* } decayed, *did* decay.
Nous déch*ûmes*. *We* }
Vous déch*ûtes*. *You* }
Ils déch*ûrent*. *They* }

Fut. positive.

Je décherrai. *I* }
Tu décherras. *Thou* }
Il décherra. *He* } *shall, will* decay, *be* decaying.
Nous décherrons. *We* }
Vous décherrez. *You* }
Ils décherront. *They* }

Fut. condit.

Je décherrois. *I* }
Tu décherrois. *Thou* }
Il décherroit. *He* } *should, would* decay. *be* decaying.
Nous décherrions. *We* }
Vous décherriez. *You* }
Ils décherroient. *They* }

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.

Que je déch*oie*. *I* }
Tu déch*oies*. *Thou* }
Il déch*oie*. *He* } decay, *may* decay.
Nous déch*oyions*. *We* }
Vous déch*oyiez*. *You* }
Ils déch*oient*. *They* }

Perfect tense.

Que je déch*usse*. *I* }
Tu déch*usses*. *Thou* }
Il déch*ût*. *He* } decayed, *mht* decay.
Nous déch*ussions*. *We* }
Vous déch*ussiez*. *You* }
Ils déch*ussent*. *They* }

INFINITIVE.

ECHOIR. *To* EXPIRE ; speaking of the end of a term ; as,
The rent is due, the time is *expired*. *La rente est due, le terme est échu.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Il* échoit. *It* expires.
Perf. *Il* échut. *It* expired.
Fut. *Il* écherra. *It will* expire.
Con. *Il* écherroit. *It would* expire.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Qu'il échoie. *It may* expire.
Il échût. *It might* expire.

GERUND.

ÉCHÉ *ant*. EXPIRING.

PARTICIPLE.

ÉCH*u*. EXPIRED.

† FALLOIR, PLEUVOIR, see the IMPERSONAL VERBS, *page* 172, 174.

‡ SEOIR, To *fit*, to *suit*, to *become*, has only the *third* person of each tense in use. *Il sied*. It fits. *Il seyait*. It fitted. *Il siéra*. It will fit. *Il siérait*. It would fit. *Ils siéent*. They fit. *Ils seyaient*. They fitted. *Ils siéront*. They will fit. *Ils siéraient*. They wd fit

INFINITIVE.

To SIT *down.* *S'* ASSE *oir.*

IMPERATIVE.

sit down. ASSIEDS-TOI, *sing.* ASSEY*ez*-VOUS, *plur.*
LET *us* sit down. ASSEY *ons*-NOUS

	INDICATIVE.				*SUBJUNCTIVE.*				
Present tense.	*I* sit, or *am* sitting down.	*Je*[9]	M'	[21]assieds[25].	*Que je*	M'	asse *ye*[2].		*may* sit down.
	Thou sittest, *art*	*Tu*	T'	assieds.	*tu*	T'	asse *yes.*		
	He sits, or *is*	*Il*	S'	assied[26].	*il*	S'	asse *ye.*		
	We / *You* / *They* sit, *are* sitting down.	*Nous*	NOUS	asse *yons.*	*nous*	NOUS	assey *ions.*		
		Vous	VOUS	asse *yez.*	*vous*	VOUS	assey *iez.*		
		Ils	S'	asse *yent*[19].	*ils*	S'	assey *ient.*		
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* sitting down.	*Je*	M'	asse *yais*[5].					
		Tu	T'	asse *yais.*					
		Il	S'	asse *yait*[26].					
	We / *You* / *They* *were* sitting down.	*Nous*	NOUS	asse *yions*[4].					
		Vous	VOUS	asse *yiez.*					
		Ils	S'	asse *yaient*[6].					
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* sat, *did* sit down.	*Je*	M'	assis[26].	*Que je*	M'	assisse[2].		*might* sit down.
		Tu	T'	assis.	*Tu*	T'	assisses.		
		Il	S'	assit[26].	*Il*	S'	assît[23].		
		Nous	NOUS	assîmes.	*Nous*	NOUS	assissions.		
		Vous	VOUS	assîtes.	*Vous*	VOUS	assissiez.		
		Ils	S'	assirent[19].	*Ils*	S'	assissent.		
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* sit, *be* sitting dn.	*Je*	M'	[10]asse*ye*rai[5].					
		Tu	T'	asse*ye*ras.					
		Il	S'	asse*ye*ra.					
		Nous	NOUS	asse*ye*rons.					
		Vous	VOUS	asse*ye*rez.					
		Ils	S'	asse*ye*ront[23].					
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* sit, *be* sitting dn.	*Je*	M'	asse*ye*rais[6].					
		Tu	T'	asse*ye*rais.					
		Il	S'	asse*ye*rait[26].					
		Nous	NOUS	asse*ye*rions.					
		Vous	VOUS	asse*ye*riez.					
		Ils	S'	asse*ye*raient[6].					

GERUND.

sitting down. S'ASSE *yant*[26].

PARTICIPLE.

ASSIS. sat down.

Interrogatively.	*Negatively.*				*Interrogat. and Negat.*			
M' assieds-*je?*	*Je ne* M' assieds	*pas.*	*I do not*		*Ne* M' assieds-*je*	*pas?*		
T' assieds-*tu?*	*Tu ne* T' assieds				*Ne* T' assieds-*tu*			
S' assied-*il?*	*Il ne* S' assied				*Ne* S' assied-*il*			

do I sit?

COMPOUND TENSES *formed by adding* ASSIS *to the auxiliary* ÊTRE.

I *have* sat down.	*Je*	ME	*suis*	ASSIS.	*Que je*	ME	*sois*	ASSIS.	*may have* sat.
Thou *hast*	*Tu*	T'	*es*		*Tu*	TE	*sois*		
He *has*	*Il*	S'	*est*		*Il*	SE	*soit*		
We *have*	*Nous*	NOUS	*sommes*		*Nous*	NOUS	*soyons*		

In the same manner, conjugate RASSEOIR, *se* RASSEOIR, *to sit down again.*

INFINITIVE.

To MOVE — MOUV *oir**.

IMPERATIVE.

MOVE. — MEUS, *sing.* — MOUV *ez, plur.*
Let *us* move. — MOUV *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* move, or *am* moving.	*Je* [12]meus[23].		*Que je* meuve[2].	move, *may* move.
	Thou movest, *art* moving.	*Tu* meus.		*Tu* meuves[26].	
	He moves or *is* moving.	*Il* meut[26].		*Il* meuve.	
	We / *You* / *They* move, *are* moving.	*Nous* mouv *ons.*		*Nous* mouv *ions.*	
		Vous mouv *ez.*		*Vous* mouv *iez.*	
		Ils meuvent[18].		*Ils* meuvent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* moving.	*Je* [14]mouv *ais*[6].			
		Tu mouv *ais.*			
		Il mouv *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* moving.	*Nous* mouv *ions.*			
		Vous mouv *iez.*			
		Ils mouv *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* moved, *did* move.	*Je* †mus[23].		*Que je* musse[2].	moved, *might* move.
		Tu mus.		*Tu* musses.	
		Il mut[26].		*Il* mût[26].	
		Nous mûmes.		*Nous* mussions.	
		Vous mûtes.		*Vous* mussiez.	
		Ils murent[18].		*Ils* mussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* move, *be* moving.	*Je* [14]mouv *rai*[5].			
		Tu mouv *ras*[23].			
		Il mouv *ra.*			
		Nous mouv *rons.*			
		Vous mouv *rez.*			
		Ils mouv *ront*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* move, *be* moving.	*Je* [14]mouv *rais*[6].			
		Tu mouv *rais.*			
		Il mouv *rait*[26].			
		Nous mouv *rions.*			
		Vous mouv *riez.*			
		Ils mouv *raient*[6].			

GERUND. — MOVING. — MOUV *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE. — MÛ. — MOVED.

After the same manner as MOUVOIR *is conjugated* ÉMOUVOIR, *to move, to stir up*, speaking of *vapours*, or the *passions;* as,

Le soleil émeut *les vapeurs.* The sun *stirs up* the vapours.
Cet homme s'émeut *de rien.* That man is *moved* with the least thing

* MOUVOIR is a *technical* term, used only in some general propositions; as for example
Every free body *moves* in a straight line. *Tout corps libre* se meut *en ligne droite.*

The general acceptation of MOVE is REMUER; as,
Move your arm, your leg, your foot, the chair, the dish, the table, &c.
Remuez *le bras, la jambe, le pied, la chaise, le plat, la table, &c.*

† See note 2 page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To be ABLE. POUV *oir*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* can, or *am* able.	*Je* [23]puis[26].		*Que je* puisse[2].		may,* *may* be able.
	Thou canst, *art* able.	*Tu* [12]peux.		*Tu* puisses[26].		
	He can, or *is* able.	*Il* peut.[26]		*Il* puisse.		
	We	*Nous* pouv *ons*.		*Nous* puissions.		
	You } can, *are* able.	*Vous* pouv *ez*.		*Vous* puissiez.		
	They	*Ils* peuvent[18].		*Ils* puissent[18].		
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*Je* [14]pouv *ais*[6].				
	Thou } could, *was* able.	*Tu* pouv *ais*.				
	He	*Il* pouv *ait*[26].				
	We	*Nous* pouv *ions*.				
	You } could, *were* able.	*Vous* pouv *iez*.				
	They	*Ils* pouv *aient*[6].				
Perfect tense.	*I*	*Je* †pus[26].		*Que je* pusse[2].		might,* *might* be able.
	Thou } could, *was* able.	*Tu* pus.		*Tu* pusses.		
	He	*Il* put[26].		*Il* pût[26].		
	We	*Nous* pûmes.		*Nous* pussions.		
	You } could, *were* able.	*Vous* pûtes.		*Vous* pussiez.		
	They	*Ils* purent[18].		*Ils* pussent[18].		
Future positive.	*I*	*Je* [14]pourrai[5].				
	Thou	*Tu* pourras[26].				
	He	*Il* pourra.				
	We } *shll, will be* able.	*Nous* pourrons.				
	You	*Vous* pourrez.				
	They	*Ils* pourront[26].				
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*Je* [14]pourrais[6].				
	Thou	*Tu* pourrais.				
	He could,	*Il* pourrait[26].				
	We *shd, wd be* able.	*Nous* pourrions.				
	You	*Vous* pourriez.				
	They	*Ils* pourraient[6].				

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
being able.	POUV *ant*[26].	PU.	*been* able

* MAY, MIGHT have, through the verbs, been considered only as *signs* of the *subjunctive mood*; but these words are not always *signs*; they are sometimes *verbs* denoting *power*.

In order to discriminate whether MAY, MIGHT, are *verbs*, or only *signs*, change them into the tenses of the verb BE, that will make the best sense with the word *power* or *able*

If MAY, MIGHT, thus changed, answer to the tenses of the *indicative* of the verb BE, they must be expressed by the *same tenses* of the verb POUVOIR; as,

I *may see* it, if I choose, *i. e.* it *is in my power*, or *I am able* to see it, if I choose.
Je puis *le voir, si je veux.*
I *might* see it, if I chose, *i. e.* it *would be in my power*, or *I should be able* to see it, if chose. *Je* pourrais *le voir, si je voulais.*

If MAY, MIGHT, answer to the tenses of the *subjunctive* of the verb BE, they may be expressed either by the *subjunctive* of the *following verb*, or by the *subjunctive* of POUVOIR; as

Bring it me, that I *may* see it, *i. e.* that *I may be able* to see it.
Apportez-le-moi, afin que je le voie, or *afin que je* puisse *le voir.*
He brought it me, that I *might* see it, *i. e.* that *I might be able* to see it
Il me l'apporta, afin que je le visse, or *afin que je* pusse *le voir.*

† See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To FORESEE. PRÉV *oir.*

IMPERATIVE.

FORESEE. PRÉV *ois, sing.* PRÉV *oyez, plur.*
LET *us* FORESEE. PRÉV *oyons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* foresee.	*Je*	prév *ois*[23].	*Que je*	prév *oie*[23].	foresee, *may* foresee.
	Thou foreseest.	*Tu*	prév *ois.*	*Tu*	prév *oies*[26].	
	He foresees.	*Il*	prév *oit*[23].	*Il*	prév *oie.*	
	We / *You* / *They* foresee.	*Nous*	prév *oyons*[4].	*Nous*	prév *oyions.*	
		Vous	prév *oyez.*	*Vous*	prév *oyiez.*	
		Ils	prév *oient*[18].	*Ils*	prév *oient.*	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *did* foresee.	*Je*	prév *oyais*[6].			
		Tu	prév *oyais.*			
		Il	prév *oyait*[26].			
		Nous	prév *oyions.*			
		Vous	prév *oyiez.*			
		Ils	prév *oyaient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* foresaw, *did* foresee.	*Je*	prév *is*[26]	*Que je*	prév *isse*[2].	foresaw, *might* foresee.
		Tu	prév *is.*	*Tu*	prév *isses.*	
		Il	prév *it*[26].	*Il*	prév *ît*[26].	
		Nous	prév *îmes.*	*Nous*	prév *issions.*	
		Vous	prév *îtes.*	*Vous*	prév *issiez.*	
		Ils	prév *irent*[18].	*Ils*	prév *issent*[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* foresee.	*Je*	prévoir *ai*[5].			
		Tu	prévoir *as*[26].			
		Il	prévoir *a.*			
		Nous	prévoir *ons.*			
		Vous	prévoir *ez.*			
		Ils	prévoir *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shuld, wuld* foresee.	*Je*	prévoir *ais*[6].			
		Tu	prévoir *ais.*			
		Il	prévoir *ait*[26].			
		Nous	prévoir *ions.*			
		Vous	prévoir *iez.*			
		Ils	prévoir *aient*[6].			

FORESEEING. PRÉV *oyant*[26]. PRÉV *u.* FORESEEN.

After the same manner is conjugated SURSEOIR, *to supersede*, participle SURSIS. POURVOIR, *to provide*, except the *perfect* tense,

I / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* provided, *did* provide.	*Je*	pourv *us.*	*Que je*	pourv *usse*[2].	might provide.
	Tu	pourv *us.*	*Tu*	pourv *usses.*	
	Il	pourv *ut*[26].	*Il*	pourv *ût*[26].	
	Nous	pourv *ûmes.*	*Nous*	pourv *ussions.*	
	Vous	pourv *ûtes.*	*Vous*	pourv *ussiez.*	
	Ils	pourv *urent*[18].	*Ils*	pourv *ussent*[18].	

N.B. MAY, expressing a *wish*, is rendered by the *present* of the *subjunctive* of POUVOIR; as, *May* you be happy! Puissiez-*vous être heureux!*
But observe that, these instances excepted, the *subjunctive* never *begins* a sentence; so this, *May* I see it? is, Puis-*je le voir?* Not *Le* voie-*je*, or Puissé-*je le voir?*

INFINITIVE.

To KNOW. SAV *oir.**

IMPERATIVE.

KNOW. sache, *sing.* sachez, *plur.*
LET *us* know. sachons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* know.	*Je* sais[6].	*Que je* sache.†	know, *may* know.
	Thou knowest.	*Tu* sais.	*Tu* saches[26].	
	He knows.	*Il* sait[26].	*Il* sache.	
	We / *You* / *They* know.	*Nous* sav *ons*	*Nous* sachions.	
		Vous sav *ez.*	*Vous* sachiez.	
		Ils sav *ent*[18].	*Ils* sachent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *did* know.	*Je* sav *ais*[6].		
		Tu sav *ais.*		
		Il sav *ait*[26].		
		Nous sav *ions.*		
		Vous sav *iez.*		
		Ils sav *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* knew, *did* know.	*Je* sus[26].	*Que je* susse[2].	knew, *might* know.
		Tu sus.	*Tu* susses.	
		Il sut[26].	*Il* sût[26].	
		Nous sûmes.	*Nous* sussions.	
		Vous sûtes.	*Vous* sussiez.	
		Ils surent[18].	*Ils* sussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* know.	*Je* *saurai[5].		
		Tu sauras[26].		
		Il saura.		
		Nous saurons.		
		Vous saurez.		
		Ils sauront[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, wld* know.	*Je* *saurais[6].		
		Tu saurais.		
		Il saurait[26]		
		Nous saurions.		
		Vous sauriez.		
		Ils sauraient[6]		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
KNOWING.	sachant[26].	SU.	KNOWN.

* Meaning *mental knowledge, science, information*; as,
I *know* my lesson, French, English, mathematics.
Je sais *ma leçon, le Français, l'Anglais, les mathématiques.*
I *know* your brother will come. *Je* sais *que votre frère viendra.*

But *To* KNOW, meaning to be *acquainted with*, to *know by sight*, is not expressed by SAVOIR, it is expressed by CONNAÎTRE; as,
I *know* your brother, your sister, *i. e.* I *am acquainted* with them, I *know* them by *sight*. *Je* connais *votre frère, votre sœur, &c.* See CONNAÎTRE.

† *Not that I know, &c.* so often used in answer to a question, is expressed by the present of the subjunctive of this verb; thus,
Not that I *know.* *Non pas que je* sache.
Not that we *know.* *Non pas que nous* sachions.

INFINITIVE.

To be WORTH. VAL *oir*.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I am* worth.	*Je* [8]vaux[26].	*Que je* vaille[2].*	*may be* worth.
	Thou art worth.	*Tu* vaux.	*Tu* vailles[26].	
	He is worth.	*Il* vaut[26].	*Il* vaille.	
	We / *You* / *They* *are* worth.	*Nous* val *ons*.	*Nous* val *ions*.	
		Vous val *ez*.	*Vous* val *iez*.	
		Ils val *ent*[18].	*Ils* vaillent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* worth.	*Je* val *ais*[6].		
		Tu val *ais*.		
		Il val *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* worth.	*Nous* val *ions*.		
		Vous val *iez*.		
		Ils val *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* worth.	*Je* val *us*[26].	*Que je* val *usse*[2].	*might be* worth.
		Tu val *us*.	*Tu* val *usses*.	
		Il val *ut*[21].	*Il* val *ût*[26].	
	We / *You* / *They* *were* worth.	*Nous* val *ûmes*.	*Nous* val *ussions*.	
		Vous val *ûtes*.	*Vous* val *ussiez*.	
		Ils val *urent*[18].	*Ils* val *ussent*[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will be* worth.	*Je* [8]vaudrai[5].		
		Tu vaudras[26].		
		Il vaudra.		
		Nous vaudrons.		
		Vous vaudrez.		
		Ils vaudront[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, would be* worth.	*Je* [8]vaudrais[6].		
		Tu vaudrais.		
		Il vaudrait[26].		
		Nous vaudrions.		
		Vous vaudriez.		
		Ils vaudraient[6]		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
Being worth.	VAL *ant*[26].	VAL *u*.	*Been* worth

After the same manner as VALOIR *are conjugated*

ÉQUIVALOIR, *to be equivalent.* PRÉVALOIR, *to prevail.*

REVALOIR, *to return like for like.* *se* PRÉVALOIR, *to avail oneself*

But observe that PRÉVALOIR and *se* PRÉVALOIR have an *imperative.*

PREVAIL. PRÉVAUX, sing. PRÉVAL *ez. plur.*

LET *us* PREVAIL. PRÉVAL *ons.*

And, I *may* / Thou *mayest* / He *may* / We *may* / You *may* / They *may* prevail, is	*Que je* prév *ale*, / *Tu* prév *ales*, / *Il* prév *ale*, / *Nous* prév *alions*, / *Vous* prév *aliez*, / *Ils* prév *alent*	not	prév *aille*, &c.

* See *ll* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.

INFINITIVE.

To SEE.	V *oir*.

IMPERATIVE.

see,	v *ois, sing.*	v *oyez, plur.*
Let *us* see,		v *oyons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* see.	*Je* [23]v *ois*[26].	*Que je* v *oie*[23].	see, *may* see.
	Thou seest.	*Tu* v *ois.*	*Tu* v *oies*[26].	
	He sees.	*Il* v *oit*[26].	*Il* v *oie.*	
	We	*Nous* v *oyons*[4].	*Nous* v *oyions.*	
	You see.	*Vous* v *oyez.*	*Vous* v *oyiez.*	
	They	*Ils* v *oient*[18].	*Ils* v *oient.*	
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*Je* v *oyais*[6].		
	Thou	*Tu* v *oyais.*		
	He	*Il* v *oyait*[26].		
	We *did* see.	*Nous* v *oyions.*		
	You	*Vous* v *oyiez.*		
	They	*Ils* v *oyaient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I*	*Je* v *is*[26].	*Que je* v *isse*[2].	saw, *might* see.
	Thou	*Tu* v *is.*	*Tu* v *isses.*	
	He	*Il* v *it*[26].	*Il* v *ît*[26].	
	We saw, *did* see.	*Nous* v *îmes.*	*Nous* v *issions.*	
	You	*Vous* v *îtes.*	*Vous* v *issiez.*	
	They	*Ils* v *irent*[18].	*Ils* v *issent*[19].	
Future positive.	*I*	*Je* *verrai[5].		
	Thou	*Tu* verras[26].		
	He	*Il* verra.		
	We *shall*, *will* see.	*Nous* verrons.		
	You	*Vous* verrez.		
	They	*Ils* verront[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*Je* *verrais[6].		
	Thou	*Tu* verrais.		
	He	*Il* verrait[26].		
	We *shld, wld* see.	*Nous* verrions.		
	You	*Vous* verriez.		
	They	*Ils* verraient[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
seeing	v *oyant*[26].	v *u.*	seen

After the same manner as VOIR *are conjugated*

ENTREVOIR, *to have a glimpse.* REVOIR, *to see again.*

---

* Only one *r* is sounded, the other *r* serves to make the preceding *e* long.

INFINITIVE.

To WILL, *To be* WILLING. VOUL *oir*.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* will,* or *am* willing.	*Je* [12]veux[23].	*Que je* veuille[2].	*may be* willing.
	Thou willest, *art*	*Tu* veux.	*Tu* veuilles[26].	
	He wills, or *is*	*Il* veut[23].	*Il* veuille.	
	We / *You* / *They* will, *are* willing.	*Nous* voul *ons*.	*Nous* voul *ions*.	
		Vous voul *ez*.	*Vous* voul *iez*.	
		Ils veulent[18].	*Ils* veuillent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* would,* *was* willing.	*Je* [14]voul *ais*[6].		
		Tu voul *ais*.		
		Il voul *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* would, *were* willing.	*Nous* voul *ions*.		
		Vous voul *iez*.		
		Ils voul *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* would, willed.	*Je* [14]voul *us*[26].	*Que je* voul *usse*[6].	*might be* willing
		Tu voul *us*.	*Tu* voul *usses*.	
		Il voul *ut*[26].	*Il* voul *ût*[26].	
		Nous voul *ûmes*.	*Nous* voul *ussions*.	
		Vous voul *ûtes*.	*Vous* voul *ussiez*.	
		Ils voul *urent*[18].	*Ils* voul *ussent*[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* will,* *shall, will be* willing.	*Je* [14]voudrai[5].		
		Tu voudras.		
		Il voudra.		
		Nous voudrons.		
		Vous voudrez.		
		Ils voudront[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* would,* *should, wld be* willing.	*Je* [14]voudrais[6].		
		Tu voudrais.		
		Il voudrait[26].		
		Nous voudrions.		
		Vous voudriez.		
		Ils voudraient[6].		

GERUND.	*PARTICIPLE*
Being willing. VOUL *ant*[26].	VOUL *u*. *Been* willing.

* Frequent mistakes are committed in the use of the word WILL, which sometimes is a VERB implying *will, wish, desire, inclination*, and sometimes, as has been seen through the conjugations, only the SIGN of some of the tenses of verbs.

* Though the distinction between WILL, the *verb*, and WILL, the *sign*, in some instances be nice, yet it is necessary it should be made, as it changes the idea.

If WILL, WOULD, can be changed into the words *be willing*, they denote the WILL, and are expressed by the tenses of VOULOIR as above.

If WILL, WOULD, cannot properly be changed into *be willing*, they are mere SIGNS expressed in french by the *termination* of the verb. This sentence, for example,

Will you go to the play to-night? may be translated two ways, thus:—

VOULEZ-*vous aller à la comédie ce soir?* or, IREZ-*vous à la comédie ce soir?* with this difference, that in the first instance, I inquire whether it is the *wish, desire*, or *inclination* of the person I am addressing, to go to the play, yet he may not go for all that; in the second, I do not consult his *will* or *inclination*, for a person may do a thing against his inclination; but I ask whether *his going* to the play will *actually* take place, either because he has *resolved* to go, or because he is *compelled* to go.

† *Vouloir* has two imperatives; one (*veux, voulons, voulez*) is very *rarely* used, according to the French Academy; most other grammarians say it should *never* be used, being ridiculous for a person to command himself, and absurd to command others to do the same. The second imperative is only used in the second person plural (*veuillez*), and means have the goodness, the kindness.

A TABLE *shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugat*

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
	DEV *oir,*	*ant,*	dû.
	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
Je	dois		doive
Tu	dois,	dois,	doives
Il	doit		doive
Nous	DEV *ons*	*ons,*	*ions*
Vous	*ez,*	*ez,*	*iez*
Ils	doivent.		doivent.
Je	*ais*		
Tu	*ais*		
Il	*ait*		
Nous	*ions*		
Vous	*iez*		
Ils	*aient.*		
Je	dus		dusse
Tu	dus		dusses
Il	dut		dût
Nous	dûmes		dussions
Vous	dûtes		dussiez
Ils	durent		dussent.
Je	DEV *rai*		
Tu	*ras*		
Il	*ra*		
Nous	*rons*		
Vous	*rez*		
Ils	*ront.*		
Je	*rais*		
Tu	*rais*		
Il	*rait*		
Nous	*rions*		
Vous	*riez*		
Ils	*raient.*		

Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. positive. Fut. condit.

Like DEVOIR conjugate Redevoir. Percevoir, Apercevoir, Concevoir, Recevoir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
	POUV *oir,*	*ant,*	pu.
	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
	puis		puisse
	peux		puisses
	peut		puisse
	POUV *ons*		puissions
	ez		puissiez
	peuvent.		puissent.
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient		
	pus		pusse
	pus		pusses
	put		pût
	pûmes		pussions
	pûtes		pussiez
	purent.		pussent.
	pourrai		
	pourras		
	pourra		
	pourrons		
	pourrez		
	pourront		
	pourrais		
	pourrais		
	pourrait		
	pourrions		
	pourriez		
	pourraient.		

	ASSE *oir,*	*yant,*	assis.
J'	assieds		*ve*
Tu	assieds	assieds,	*ves*
Il	assied		*ve*
Nous	ASSE *yons,*	*yons,*	*yions*
Vous	*yez,*	*yez,*	*yiez*
Ils	*yent.*		*yent*
J'	*yais*		
Tu	*yais*		
Il	*yait*		
Nous	*yions*		
Vous	*yiez*		
Ils	*yaient*		
J'	assis		assisse
Tu	assis		assisses
Il	assit		assît
Nous	assîmes		assissions
Vous	assîtes		assissiez
Ils	assirent		assissent.
J'	asseyerai		
Tu	asseyeras		
Il	asseyera		
Nous	asseyerons		
Vous	asseyerez		
Ils	asseyeront.		
J'	asseyerais		
Tu	asseyerais		
Il	asseyerait		
Nous	asseyerions		
Vous	asseyeriez		
Ils	asseyeraient.		

Present tense. Imperf. tense. Perfect tense. Fut. positive. Fut. condit.

Like ASSEOIR, conjugate s'Asseoir, Rasseoir, se Rasseoir.

PRÉV	*oir,*	*oyant,*	*u.*
	ois		*oie*
	ois,	*ois,*	*oies*
	oit		*oie*
	oyons,	*oyons,*	*oyions*
	oyez,	*ez,*	*oyiez*
	oient.		*oient.*
	oyais		
	oyais		
	oyait		
	oyions		
	oyiez		
	oyaient.		
	is		*isse*
	is		*isses*
	it		*it*
	îmes		*issions*
	îtes		*issiez*
	irent.		*issent*
PRÉVOIR	*ai*		
	as		
	a		
	ons		
	ez		
	ont.		
	ais		
	ais		
	ait		
	ions		
	iez		
	aient.		

Pourvoir, *perfect* POURVUS, Pourvu; root Pourvis. Surseoir, participle Sursis

all the verbs *in* OIR, *both* regular *and* irregular.

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SAV *oir,*	sachant,	su.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
sais		sache
sais,	sache,	saches
sait		sache
SAV *ons,*	sachons,	sachions
ez,	sachez,	sachiez
ent.		sachent.
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
sus		susse
sus		susses
sut		sût
sûmes		sussions
sûtes		sussiez
surent		sussent.
saurai		
sauras		
saura		
saurons		
saurez		
sauront.		
saurais		
saurais		
saurait		
saurions		
sauriez		
sauraient.		

VAL *oir,*	*ant,*	*u.*
vaux		vaille
vaux		vailles
vaut		vaille
VAL *ons*		*ions*
ez		*iez*
ent.		vaillent.
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
us		*usse*
us		*usses*
ut		*ût*
ûmes		*ussions*
ûtes		*ussiez*
urent.		*ussent.*
vaudrai		
vaudras		
vaudra		
vaudrons		
vaudrez		
vaudront.		
vaudrais		
vaudrais		
vaudrait		
vaudrions		
vaudriez		
vaudraient.		

Equivaloir, Revaloir, (Prévaloir, *se* Prévaloir, *subjunctive*, Prévale, not Prévaille.)

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
V*oir,*	*oyant,*	*u.*
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
V*ois*		*oie*
ois,	*ois,*	*oies*
oit		*oie*
oyons,	*oyons,*	*oyions*
oyez,	*oyez,*	*oyiez*
oient.		*oient.*
oyais		
oyais		
oyait		
oyions		
oyiez		
oyaient.		
is		*isse*
is		*isses*
it		*ît*
îmes		*issions*
îtes		*issiez*
irent.		*issent.*
verrai		
verras		
verra		
verrons		
verrez		
verront.		
verrais		
verrais		
verrait		
verrions		
verriez		
verraient.		

Entrevoir, Revoir.

VOUL *oir,*	*ant,*	*u.*
veux		veuille
veux		veuilles
veut		veuille
VOUL *ons*		*ions*
ez		*iez*
veulent		veuillent
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
us		*usse*
us		*usses*
ut		*ût*
ûmes		*ussions*
ûtes		*ussiez*
urent.		*ussent.*
voudrai		
voudras		
voudra		
voudrons		
voudrez		
voudront.		
voudrais		
voudrais		
voudrait		
voudrions		
voudriez		
voudraient.		

INFINITIVE.

To WAIT *for*, *To* EXPECT. ATTEND *re*

IMPERATIVE.

wait. ATTEND *s*, *sing*. ATTEND *ez*, *plur*.
Let *us* wait. ATTEND *ons*.

	INDICATIVE.				*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* wait, or *am* waiting.	*J'*	ATTEND *s*[16].		*Que j'*	ATTEND *e*[2].	wait, *may* wait.
	Thou waitest, *art* waiting.	*Tu*	ATTEND *s*.		*Tu*	ATTEND *es*.[26]	
	He waits, or *is* waiting.	*Il*	ATTEND[26].		*Il*	ATTEND *e*.	
	We wait,	*Nous*	ATTEND *ons*.		*Nous*	ATTEND *ions*.	
	You wait,	*Vous*	ATTEND *ez*.		*Vous*	ATTEND *iez*.	
	They wait, *are* waiting.	*Ils*	ATTEND *ent*[18].		*Ils*	ATTEND *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*J'*	ATTEND *ais*[6].				
	Thou *was* waiting.	*Tu*	ATTEND *ais*.				
	He	*Il*	ATTEND *ait*[26].				
	We	*Nous*	ATTEND *ions*.				
	You *were* waiting.	*Vous*	ATTEND *iez*.				
	They	*Ils*	ATTEND *aient*[6].				
Perfect tense.	*I*	*J'*	ATTEND *is*[26].		*Que j'*	ATTEND *isse*.[2]	waited, *might* wait.
	Thou	*Tu*	ATTEND *is*.		*Tu*	ATTEND *isses*.	
	He	*Il*	ATTEND *it*[26].		*Il*	ATTEND *ît*[23].	
	We waited,	*Nous*	ATTEND *îmes*.		*Nous*	ATTEND *issions*.	
	You *did* wait.	*Vous*	ATTEND *îtes*.		*Vous*	ATTEND *issiez*.	
	They	*Ils*	ATTEND *irent*[18].		*Ils*	ATTEND *issent*[18].	
Future positive.	*I*	*J'*	ATTENDR *ai*[5].				
	Thou	*Tu*	ATTENDR *as*.				
	He	*Il*	ATTENDR *a*.				
	We *shll, wll* wait,	*Nous*	ATTENDR *ons*.				
	You *be* waiting.	*Vous*	ATTENDR *ez*.				
	They	*Ils*	ATTENDR *ont*[26].				
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*J'*	ATTENDR *ais*[6].				
	Thou	*Tu*	ATTENDR *ais*.				
	He	*Il*	ATTENDR *ait*[26].				
	We *shd, wd* wait,	*Nous*	ATTENDR *ions*.				
	You *be* waiting.	*Vous*	ATTENDR *iez*.				
	They	*Ils*	ATTENDR *aient*[6].				

waiting. ATTEND *ant*[26]. ATTEND *u*. waited.

After the same manner as ATTENDRE, *are conjugated*

Battre, *to beat, to fight.*
Abattre, *to pull down.*
Combattre, *to fight.*
Condescendre, *to condescend.*
Confondre, *to confound.*
Correspondre, *to correspond.*
Corrompre, *to corrupt.*
Débattre, *to debate.*
se Débattre, *to struggle.*
Défendre, *to forbid.*
se Défendre, *to defend oneself.*
Démordre, *to relax.*
Dépendre, *to depend.*
Descendre, *to go or come down.*
Entendre, *to hear, understand.*
Etendre, *to stretch, to spread.*
Fendre, *to cleave, to split.*
Fondre, *to melt, to cast.*
Interrompre, *to interrupt.*
Mordre, *to bite.*
se Morfondre, *to grow cold.*
Pendre, *to hang*
Perdre, *to lose, to ruin.*
Pondre, *to lay eggs.*
Prétendre, *to pretend.*
Rabattre, *to abate.*
Rebattre, *to beat again, to repeat*
Refondre, *to melt again.*
Rendre, *to render, to return.*
se Rendre, *to surrender.*
Répandre, *to spill, to shed.*
Répondre, *to answer.*
Retordre, *to twist anew.*
Rompre, *to break.*
Suspendre, *to suspend.*
Tendre, *to tend, to bend.*
Tondre, *to shear.*
Tordre, *to twist, to wring.*
Vendre, *to sell.*

The IRREGULAR verbs *belonging to this conjugation are*

Absoudre, to absolve,..... *see* RÉSOUDRE.
Abstraire, to abstract, ... *see* TRAIRE.
Accroître, to accrue,..... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Admettre, to admit, ... *like* METTRE.
Apparaître, to appear,..... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
APPRENDRE, to learn, ... *page* 149.
Astreindre, to restrain, ... } *like* FEINDRE.
Atteindre, to reach, to hit,.. }
BOIRE, to drink, ... *page* 150.
Braire, to bray.*
Ceindre, to gird,. ..... *like* FEINDRE.
Circoncire, to circumcise,.... *see* DIRE.
Circonscrire, to circumscribe,. *like* ÉCRIRE.
Clore, to close, to shut.†
Commettre, to commit,..... *like* METTRE.
Comparaître, to appear,..... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Complaire, to comply with, .. *like* PLAIRE.
Comprendre, to understand, .. *like* APPRENDRE.
Compromettre, compromise, .. *like* METTRE.
CONCLURE, to conclude,.. *page* 151.
Conduire, to conduct, to lead,. *like* INSTRUIRE.
Confire, to pickle,..... *see* DIRE.
Conjoindre, to join together,.. *like* FEINDRE.
CONNAÎTRE, to know,.... *page* 152.
Construire, to construct, ... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Contraindre, to compel,..... *like* FEINDRE.
Contredire, to contradict, ... *see* DIRE.
Contrefaire, to counterfeit,... *like* FAIRE.
Convaincre, to convince,..... *like* VAINCRE.
COUDRE, to sew,..... *page* 153.
Craindre, to fear, ... *like* FEINDRE.
CROIRE, to believe,..... *page* 154.
Croître, to grow up,..... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Cuire, to do victuals, to cook, *see* INSTRUIRE.
Découdre, to unsew,..... *like* COUDRE.
Décrire, to describe, ... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Décroître, to decrease,..... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
se *Dédire*, to recant, to retract, *see* DIRE.
Déduire, to deduct,..... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Défaire, to undo, to defeat,. } *like* FAIRE.
se *Défaire*, to get rid of, ... }
Déjoindre, to disjoin,..... *like* FEINDRE.
Démettre, to disjoint,..... } *like* METTRE.
se *Démettre*, to abdicate,... }
Déplaire, to displease, ... *like* PLAIRE.
Désapprendre, to unlearn,.... *like* APPRENDRE.
Déteindre, to take off the die, *like* FEINDRE.
Détruire, to destroy, ... *like* INSTRUIRE.
DIRE, to say,..... *page* 155.
Disparaître, to disappear,.... *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Dissoudre, to dissolve, ... *like* RÉSOUDRE.
Distraire, disturb attention,.. *like* TRAIRE.
Eclore, to hatch.†
ECRIRE, to write,..... *page* 156.
Elire, to elect,..... *like* LIRE.
Emoudre, to whet, to grind, . *like* MOUDRE.
Enceindre, to encompass,... *like* FEINDRE.
Enclore, to enclose.†
Enduire, to daub,..... *like* INSTRUIRE
Enfreindre, to infringe,.... } *like* FEINDRE.
Enjoindre, to enjoin,..... }
s'*Entremettre*, intermeddle,. *like* METTRE.
Entreprendre, to undertake,. *like* APPRENDRE
Epreindre, to squeeze out, } *like* FEINDRE.
Éteindre, to extinguish,... }
Exclure, to exclude,..... *see* CONCLURE.
Extraire, to extract, ... *like* TRAIRE.
FAIRE, to do, to make,.... *page* 157.
FEINDRE, to feign, ... *page* 158.
Frire, to fry, ... *see* RIRE.
Induire, to induce,..... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Inscrire, to inscribe,..... *like* ÉCRIRE.
INSTRUIRE, to instruct, . *page* 159.
Interdire, to interdict,..... *see* DIRE.
Introduire, to introduce,.... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Joindre, to join, ... *like* FEINDRE.
LIRE, to read,..... *page* 160.
Luire, to shine, ... *see* INSTRUIRE.
Maudire, to curse,..... } *see* DIRE.
Médire, to slander, ... }
Méconnaître, not to know, .. *like* CONNAÎTRE.
se *Méprendre*, to mistake, .. *like* APPRENDRE
METTRE, to put,..... *page* 161.
MOUDRE, to grind, ... *page* 162.
Naître, to come to life,..... *see* CONNAÎTRE.
Nuire, to harm, to hurt, ... *see* INSTRUIRE.
Oindre, to anoint,..... *like* FEINDRE.
Omettre, to omit, ... *like* METTRE.
Paître, to graze,..... } *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Paraître, to appear, ... }
Peindre, to paint, ... *like* FEINDRE.
Permettre, to permit,..... *like* METTRE.
Plaindre, to pity,..... } *like* FEINDRE.
se *Plaindre*, to complain,.. }
PLAIRE, to please,..... *page* 163.
se *Plaire à*, to delight in,... *like* PLAIRE.
Poursuivre, to pursue,..... *like* SUIVRE.
Prédire, to foretel,..... *see* DIRE.
Prendre, to take, ... *like* APPRENDRE.
Prescrire, to prescribe,..... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Produire, to produce,..... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Promettre, to promise, ... *like* METTRE.
Proscrire, to proscribe,..... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Reboire, to drink again,..... *like* BOIRE.
Reconduire, to lead back, ... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Reconnaître, to know again,. *like* CONNAÎTRE.
Recoudre, to sew again, ... *like* COUDRE.
Récrire, to write again,..... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Recuire, to do or cook again, *see* INSTRUIRE.
Redéfaire, to undo again, ... *like* FAIRE.
Redire, to say again, ... *like* DIRE.
Réduire, to reduce, ... *like* INSTRUIRE.

---

* BRAIRE is used only in the following tenses and persons ;

Present.		*Future.*		*Conditional.*	
Il brait,	*He, it* brays.	*Il* braira,	*He, it* will bray.	*Il* brairait.	*He, it* would bray.
Ils braient,	*They*, bray.	*Ils* brairont,	*They* will bray.	*Ils* brairaient,	*They* would bray.

† CLORE, and its compounds ÉCLORE. ENCLORE, have only the following tenses and

Refaire, to do again, ... *like* FAIRE.
Relire, to read again, ... *like* LIRE.
Reluire, to shine, ... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Remettre, to put again, ... *like* METTRE.
Rémoudre, to grind again,. *like* MOUDRE.
Renaître, to revive, ... *see* CONNAÎTRE.
Rentraire, to finedraw, ... *like* TRAIRE.
Repaître, to feed, ... *see* CONNAÎTRE.
Reprendre, to take again,.. *like* APPRENDRE.
RÉSOUDRE, to resolve,. *page* 164.
Restreindre, to restringe,.. *like* FEINDRE.
Revivre, to live again, ... *like* VIVRE.
RIRE, to laugh,..... *page* 165.
Satisfaire, to satisfy, ... *like* FAIRE.
Séduire, to seduce,..... *like* INSTRUIRE.
Soumettre, to submit,..... *like* METTRE.
Sourire, to smile, ... *like* RIRE.
Souscrire, to subscribe, ... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Soustraire, to subtract, ... *like* TRAIRE.
SUIVRE, to follow, ... *page* 166.
Suffire, to be sufficient,..... *see* DIRE.
Surfaire, to exact, ... *like* FAIRE.
Surprendre, to surprise, ... *like* APPRENDRE
Survivre, to outlive, survive,. *like* VIVRE.
se *Taire*, to hold one's tongue,. *like* PLAIRE.
Teindre, to dye,..... *like* FEINDRE.
Traduire, to translate,..... *like* INSTRUIRE.
TRAIRE, to milk, ... *page* 167.
Transcrire, to transcribe, ... *like* ÉCRIRE.
Transmettre, to transmit,..... *like* METTRE.
VAINCRE, to vanquish, ... *page* 168.
VIVRE, to live, ... *page* 169.

---

persons in use:

INFINITIVE.

CLO *re*. *To* close.

PARTICIPLE.

CLO *s*. closed.

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	*Je* clo *s*.	*I* close, or *am* closing.	
	Tu clo *s*.	*Thou* closest, *art* closing.	
	Il clo *t*.	*He* closes, *is* closing.	
Fut. positive	*Je* clor *ai*.	*I*	*shall, will* close, or *be* closing.
	Tu clor *as*.	*Thou*	
	Il clor *a*.	*He*	
	Nous clor *ons*.	*We*	
	Vous clor *ez*.	*You*	
	Ils clor *ont*.	*They*	
Fut. Condit.	*Je* clor *ais*.	*I*	*should, would* close, or *be* closing.
	Tu clor *ais*.	*Thou*	
	Il clor *ait*.	*He*	
	Nous clor *ions*.	*We*	
	Vous clor *iez*,	*You*	
	Ils clor *aient*.	*They*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

may close.

Que je	close.
Tu	closes.
Il	close.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. Compound.	I *have* / Thou *hast* / He *has* / We *have* / You *have* / They *have* closed.	*J'* ai / *Tu* as / *Il* a / *Nous* avons / *Vous* avez / *Ils* ont *clos*.	I *had* closed, &c. *J'* avais *clos*, &c.

may have closed.

Que j'	aie
Tu	aies
Il	ait
Nous	ayons
Vous	ayez
Ils	aient

clos.

Conjugate in the same manner, ENCLORE, *To* enclose.

ÉCLORE has only the following tenses and persons in use.

INFINITIVE.

ÉCLO *re*. *To* be hatching.

PARTICIPLE.

ÉCLO *s*. hatched.

INDICATIVE.

Il éclot.	*It* is hatching.
Ils éclosent.	*They* are hatching.
Il éclora.	*It* will be hatching.
Ils écloront.	*They* will be hatching.
Il éclorait.	*It* would be hatching.
Ils écloraient.	*They* would be hatching.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

may be hatching

Qu'il	éclose.
Ils	éclosent.

INFINITIVE.

To LEARN. *APPREND *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Learn.	APPREND *s*, *sing*.	Apprenez, *plur*.
Let *us* learn.		Apprenons.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* learn, or *am* learning.	*J'*†	*apprend *s*[23].	*Que j'*	apprenne[2].	learn, *may* learn.
	Thou learnest, *art* learning.	*Tu*	[16]apprend *s*.	*Tu*	apprennes[26].	
	He learns, or *is* learning.	*Il*	apprend[26].	*Il*	apprenne.	
	We / *You* / *They* learn, *are* learning.	*Nous*	apprenons.	*Nous*	apprenions.	
		Vous	apprenez.	*Vous*	appreniez.	
		Ils	apprennent[18].	*Ils*	apprennent.	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* learning.	*J'*	apprenais[6].			
		Tu	apprenais.			
		Il	apprenait[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* learning.	*Nous*	apprenions.			
		Vous	appreniez.			
		Ils	apprenaient[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* learned, *did* learn.	*J'*†	appris[26].	*Que j'*	apprisse[2].	learned, *might* learn.
		Tu	appris.	*Tu*	apprisses.	
		Il	apprit[26].	*Il*	apprît[26].	
		Nous	apprîmes.	*Nous*	apprissions.	
		Vous	apprîtes.	*Vous*	apprissiez.	
		Ils	apprirent[18].	*Ils*	apprissent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll*, *wll* learn, *be* learning.	*J'*	apprendr *ai*[5].			
		Tu	apprendr *as*[21].			
		Il	apprendr *a*.			
		Nous	apprendr *ons*.			
		Vous	apprendr *ez*.			
		Ils	apprendr *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* learn, *be* learning.	*J'*	apprendr *ais*[6].			
		Tu	apprendr *ais*.			
		Il	apprendr *ait*[26].			
		Nous	apprendr *ions*.			
		Vous	apprendr *iez*.			
		Ils	apprendr *aient*[6].			

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
Learning.	Apprenant[21].	Appris[26].	Learned.

After the same manner as APPRENDRE, *are conjugated*

DÉSAPPRENDRE, *to unlearn.*
PRENDRE, *to take.*
COMPRENDRE, *to comprehend, to understand.*
ENTREPRENDRE, *to undertake.*
se MÉPRENDRE, *to commit a* [*mistake.*
REPREND RE, *to take again, to rebuke.*
SURPRENDRE, *to surprise.*

---

* Sound only one *p*. · see pp. page 13. † See note * page 28.

INFINITIVE.

To DRINK. BOI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

DRINK.	BOI *s*, *sing*.	BUVEZ, *plur*.
LET *us* DRINK.		BUVONS.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* drink, or *am* drinking. *Thou* drinkest, *art* drinking. *He* drinks, or *is* drinking. *We*, *You*, *They* drink, *are* drinking.	*Je* [23]boi *s*[24]. *Tu* boi *s*. *Il* boi *t*[26]. *Nous* buvons. *Vous* buvez. *Ils* boi *vent*[18].	*Que je* [23]boi *ve*[2]. *Tu* boi *ves*[26]. *Il* boi *ve*. *Nous* buvions. *Vous* buviez. *Ils* boi *vent*[18].	drink, *may* drink
Imperfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He* *was* drinking. *We*, *You*, *They* *were* drinking.	*Je* *buvais[6]. *Tu* buvais. *Il* buvait[26]. *Nous* buvions. *Vous* buviez. *Ils* buvaient[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* drank, *did* drink.	*Je* *bus[26]. *Tu* bus. *Il* but[26]. *Nous* bûmes. *Vous* bûtes[26]. *Ils* burent[18].	*Que je* *busse[2]. *Tu* busses. *Il* bût[26]. *Nous* bussions. *Vous* bussiez. *Ils* bussent[18].	drank, *might* drink.
Future positive.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shall*, *will* drink, *be* drinking.	*Je* [23]boir *ai*[5]. *Tu* boir *as*[21]. *Il* boir *a*. *Nous* boir *ons*. *Vous* boir *ez*. *Ils* boir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shd*, *wd* drink, *be* drinking.	*Je* [23]boir *ais*[6]. *Tu* boir *ais*. *Il* boir *ait*.[26] *Nous* boir *ions*. *Vous* boir *iez*. *Ils* boir *aient*.[6]		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
DRINKING.	BUVANT[26].	BU.	DRUNK.

After the same manner as BOIRE *is conjugated* REBOIRE, *to drink again; to drink afresh.*

---

* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To CONCLUDE. CONCLU *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

conclude. CONCLU *s*, *sing.* CONCLU *ez*, *plur.*
LET *us* conclude. CONCLU *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* conclude, or *am* concluding.	*Je*	[21]conclu *s*[25].	*Que je*	conclu *e*[2].
	Thou concludest, *art* concluding.	*Tu*	conclu *s*.	*Tu*	conclu *es*[26].
	He concludes, or *is* concluding.	*Il*	conclu *t*[26].	*Il*	conclu *e*.
	We / *You* / *They* conclude, *are* concluding.	*Nous*	conclu *ons*.	*Nous*	conclu *ions*.
		Vous	conclu *ez*.	*Vous*	conclu *iez*.
		Ils	conclu *ent*[18].	*Ils*	conclu *ent*[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* concluding.	*Je*	[21]conclu *ais*[5].		
		Tu	conclu *ais*.		
		Il	conclu *ait*[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* concluding.	*Nous*	conclu *ions*.		
		Vous	conclu *iez*.		
		Ils	conclu *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* concluded, *did* conclude.	*Je*	[21]conclu *s*[25].	*Que je*	conclu *sse*[2].
		Tu	conclu *s*.	*Tu*	conclu *sses*.
		Il	conclu *t*[26].	*Il*	conclû *t*[26].
		Nous	conclû *mes*.	*Nous*	conclu *ssions*.
		Vous	conclû *tes*.	*Vous*	conclu *ssiez*.
		Ils	conclu *rent*[18].	*Ils*	conclu *ssent*[18].
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall*, *will* conclude, *be* concluding.	*Je*	[21]conclur *ai*[5].		
		Tu	conclur *as*[25].		
		Il	conclur *a*.		
		Nous	conclur *ons*.		
		Vous	conclur *ez*.		
		Ils	conclur *ont*.[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should*, *would* conclude, *be* concluding.	*Je*	[21]conclur *ais*[5].		
		Tu	conclur *ais*.		
		Il	conclur *ait*[26].		
		Nous	conclur *ions*.		
		Vous	conclur *iez*.		
		Ils	conclur *aient*[6].		

conclude, *may* conclude.

concluded, *might* conclude.

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE.*

concluding. CONCLU *ant*[26]. CONCLU. concluded

After the same manner as CONCLURE, *is conjugated*

EXCLURE, *to exclude;* observe only that the *participle* of EXCLURE is EXCLUS, *excluded.*

INFINITIVE.

To KNOW.* †CONNAIT *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

KNOW. connais, *sing.* connaissez, *plur.*
LET *us* know. connaissons.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* know.	*Je*[3]	†connais[6].	*Que je*	connaisse[2].	know, *may* know.
	Thou knowest.	*Tu*	connais.	*Tu*	connaisses[26].	
	He knows.	*Il*	connaît[26].	*Il*	connaisse.	
	We / *You* / *They* know.	*Nous*	connaissons.	*Nous*	connaissions	
		Vous	connaissez.	*Vous*	connaissiez.	
		Ils	connaissent[18].	*Ils*	connaissent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *did* know.	*Je*	connaissais[6].			
		Tu	connaissais.			
		Il	connaissait[26].			
		Nous	connaissions.			
		Vous	connaissiez.			
		Ils	connaissaient[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* knew, *did* know.	*Je*	connus[23].	*Que je*	connusse[2].	knew, *might* know.
		Tu	connus.	*Tu*	connusses.	
		Il	connut[26].	*Il*	connût[26].	
		Nous	connûmes.	*Nous*	connussions.	
		Vous	connûtes.	*Vous*	connussiez.	
		Ils	connurent[18].	*Ils*	connussent[18]	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* know.	*Je*	connaîtr *ai*[5].			
		Tu	connaîtr *as*[26].			
		Il	connaîtr *a*.			
		Nous	connaîtr *ons*.			
		Vous	connaîtr *ez*.			
		Ils	connaîtr *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shuld, wuld* know.	*Je*	connaîtr *ais*[6].			
		Tu	connaîtr *ais*.			
		Il	connaîtr *ait*[26].			
		Nous	connaîtr *ions*.			
		Vous	connaîtr *iez*.			
		Ils	connaîtr *aient*[3]			

KNOWING. connaissant[26]. connu. KNOWN.

After the same manner as CONNAÎTRE, *are conjugated*

MÉCONNAÎTRE, *not to know.*
RECONNAÎTRE, *to know again.*
CROÎTRE, *to grow up, to increase.*
ACCROÎTRE, *to accrue.*
DÉCROÎTRE, *to decrease.*
RECROÎTRE, *to grow again.*
RENAÎTRE, *to revive.*
NAÎTRE, *to come to life*, part. NÉ.
PARAÎTRE, *to appear.*
APPARAÎTRE, *to appear*, speaking of ghosts.
COMPARAÎTRE, (a law term,) *to appear.*
DISPARAÎTRE, *to disappear.*
PAÎTRE, *to graze.*
REPAÎTRE, *to feed.*

{ perf. ind. NAQU *-is, -is, it; -îmes, -îtes, -irent.*
{ perf.sub. NAQU-*isse, -isses, -ît; -issions, -issiez, issent.*

* Meaning *to know by sight*, or *to be acquainted with*; as,
I *know* that man, this horse, that house, your brother, your sister, *i. e.* by sight.
Je connais *cet homme, ce cheval, cette maison, votre frère, votre sœur.*
See SAVOIR, page 140.

† Sound only one *n*, and lay the accent upon *o*.

INFINITIVE.

To SEW. COUD *re*

IMPERATIVE.

sew.	coud *s*, *sing.*	cousez, *plur.*
Let *us* sew.		cousons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* sew, or *am* sewing.	*Je*[3] [14]coud *s*[26].	*Que je* [14]couse[2].	sew, *may* sew.
	Thou sewest, *art* sewing.	*Tu* coud *s*.	*Tu* couses[26].	
	He sews, or *is* sewing.	*Il* coud[26].	*Il* couse.	
	We / *You* / *They* sew, *are* sewing.	*Nous* cousons.	*Nous* cousions.	
		Vous cousez.*	*Vous* cousiez.	
		Ils cousent[18]	*Ils* cousent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* sewing.	*Je* [14]cousais[6].		
		Tu cousais.		
		Il cousait[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* sewing.	*Nous* cousions.		
		Vous cousiez.		
		Ils cousaient[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* sewed, *did* sew.	*Je* [14]cousis.†	*Que je* [14]cousisse[2].	sewed, *might* sew.
		Tu cousis[26].	*Tu* cousisses.	
		Il cousit[26].	*Il* cousît[26].	
		Nous cousîmes.	*Nous* cousissions.	
		Vous cousîtes.	*Vous* cousissiez.	
		Ils cousîrent[18].	*Ils* cousissent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll*, *wll* sew, *be* sewing.	*Je* [14]coudr *ai*[3].		
		Tu coudr *as*[26].		
		Il coudr *a*.		
		Nous coudr *ons*.		
		Vous coudr *ez*.		
		Ils coudr *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* sew, *be* sewing.	*Je* [14]coudr *ais*[6].		
		Tu coudr *ais*.		
		Il coudr *ait*[26].		
		Nous coudr *ions*.		
		Vous coudr *iez*.		
		Ils coudr *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
sewing.	cousant[26].	cousu.	sewed.

After the same manner as COUDRE, *are conjugated*
DÉCOUDRE, *to unsew.* RECOUDRE, *to sew again.*

---

* See *s* between two vowels page 14. † See note 4, page 2.

INFINITIVE.

To BELIEVE. CROI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Believe.	crois, *sing*.	croyez, *plur*
Let *us* believe.		croyons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* believe.	*Je*[3] croi *s*[26].	*Que je* [23]croi *e*.	believe *may* believe.
	Thou believest.	*Tu* [23]croi *s*.	*Tu* croi *es*[26].	
	He believes.	*Il* croi *t*[26].	*Il* croi *e*.	
	We	*Nous* croyons.	*Nous* croyions.	
	You believe.	*Vous* croyez[4].	*Vous* croyiez.	
	They	*Ils* croi *ent*[18]	*Ils* croi *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*Je* [23]croyais[4].		
	Thou	*Tu* croyais.		
	He *did* believe.	*Il* croyait[26].		
	We	*Nous* croyions.		
	You	*Vous* croyiez.		
	They	*Ils* croyaient[6]		
Perfect tense.	*I*	*Je* crus[26].	*Que je* crusse[2].	believed, *might* believe.
	Thou	*Tu* crus.*	*Tu* crusses.	
	He believed,	*Il* crut[26].	*Il* crût[26].	
	We *did* believe.	*Nous* crûmes.	*Nous* crussions.	
	You	*Vous* crûtes.	*Vous* crussiez.	
	They	*Ils* crurent[18].	*Ils* crussent[12].	
Future positive.	*I*	*Je* [23]croir *ai*[5].		
	Thou	*Tu* croir *as*[26].		
	He *shall, will*	*Il* croir *a*.		
	We believe.	*Nous* croir *ons*.		
	You	*Vous* croir *ez*.		
	They	*Ils* croir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*Je* [23]croir *ais*[6].		
	Thou	*Tu* croir *ais*.		
	He *shuld, wuld*	*Il* croir *ait*[26].		
	We believe.	*Nous* croir *ions*.		
	You	*Vous* croir *iez*.		
	They	*Ils* croir *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
Believing.	croyant[26].	cru.	Believed

* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To SAY, *To* TELL.	Di *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

say.	DI *s*, *sing*.	Dites, *plur*.
Let *us* say.		DI *sons*.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*			
Present tense.	*I* say, or *am* saying.	*Je*[3]	di *s*[26].	*Que je*	di *se*[6].		say, *may* say.
	Thou sayest, *art* saying.	*Tu*	di *s*.	*Tu*	di *ses*[26].		
	He says, or *is* saying.	*Il*	di *t*[26].	*Il*	di *se*.		
	We / *You* / *They* say, *are* saying.	*Nous*	di *sons*.	*Nous*	di *sions*.		
		Vous	dites[26]	*Vous*	di *siez*.		
		Ils	di *sent*[18].	*Ils*	di *sent*[18].		
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* saying.	*Je*	di *sais*[6].				
		Tu	di *sais*.				
		Il	di *sait*[26].				
	We / *You* / *They* *were* saying.	*Nous*	di *sions*.				
		Vous	di *siez*.				
		Ils	di *saient*[6].				
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* said, *did* say.	*Je*	di *s*[26]	*Que je*	di *sse*[6].		said, *might* say.
		Tu	di *s*.	*Tu*	di *sses*.		
		Il	di *t*[26].	*Il*	dî *t*[26].		
		Nous	dî *mes*.	*Nous*	di *ssions*.		
		Vous	dî *tes*.	*Vous*	di *ssiez*.		
		Ils	di *rent*[18].	*Ils*	di *ssent*.[18]		
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll*, *wll* say, *be* saying.	*Je*	dir *ai*[5].				
		Tu	dir *as*[26].				
		Il	dir *a*.				
		Nous	dir *ons*.				
		Vous	dir *ez*.				
		Ils	dir *ont*[26].				
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* say, *be* saying.	*Je*	dir *ais*[6].				
		Tu	dir *ais*.				
		Il	dir *ait*[26].				
		Nous	dir *ions*.				
		Vous	dir *iez*.				
		Ils	dir *aient*[6].				
	saying.	DI *sant*[26].			DI *t*[26].		said.

After the same manner as DIRE, *are conjugated*

CONTREDIRE, *to contradict.* PRÉDIRE, *to foretell.*
se DÉDIRE, *to retract, to recant.* REDIRE, *to say again.*
INTERDIRE, *to interdict.* CONFIRE, *to confect, preserve fruit in sugar.*
MAUDIRE, *to curse.* CIRCONCIRE, *to circumcise.* part. CIRCONCIS.
MÉDIRE, *to slander.* SUFFIRE, *to be sufficient.* part. SUFFI.

Observe only, that except REDIRE, the *second person plural* of the *present* of the *indicative*, and of the *imperative* of all these verbs ends in *sez*, and not in *tes*; so, *Vous* CONFIS*ez*, *Vous* CONTREDIS*ez*; and that in MAUDIRE the *s* is doubled in the middle of the word; so, *Nous* MAUDISSONS, *Vous* MAUDISSEZ; *Je* MAUDISSAIS, &c. not *Nous* MAUDISONS, &c.

INFINITIVE.

To WRITE. ÉCRI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Write.	ÉCRI *s, sing.*	ÉCRI *vez, plur.*
Let *us* write.		ÉCRI *vons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* write, or *am* writing.	*J'**	écri *s*[26].	*Que j'*	écri *ve*[8].	write, *may* write.
	Thou writest, *art* writing.	*Tu*	écri *s.*†	*Tu*	écri *ves*[20]	
	He writes, or *is* writing.	*Il*	écri *t*[26].	*Il*	écri *ve.*	
	We write, *are* writing.	*Nous*	écri *vons.*	*Nous*	écri *vions.*	
	You write, *are* writing.	*Vous*	écri *vez.*	*Vous*	écri *viez.*	
	They write, *are* writing.	*Ils*	écri *vent*[18].	*Ils*	écri *vent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* was writing.	*J'**	écri *vais*[6].			
	Thou was writing.	*Tu*	écri *vais.*			
	He was writing.	*Il*	écri *vait*[26].			
	We were writing.	*Nous*	écri *vions.*			
	You were writing.	*Vous*	écri *viez.*			
	They were writing.	*Ils*	écri *vaient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* wrote, *did* write.	*J'*	écri *vis.*†	*Que j'*	écri *visse*[8].	wrote, *might* write.
	Thou wrote, *did* write.	*Tu*	écri *vis.*	*Tu*	écri *visses.*	
	He wrote, *did* write.	*Il*	écri *vit*[26].	*Il*	écri *vît*[26].	
	We wrote, *did* write.	*Nous*	écri *vîmes.*	*Nous*	écri *vissions.*	
	You wrote, *did* write.	*Vous*	écri *vîtes.*	*Vous*	écri *vissiez.*	
	They wrote, *did* write.	*Ils*	écri *virent*[18].	*Ils*	écri *vissent*[18]	
Future positive.	*I* *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*J'*	écrir *ai*[5].			
	Thou *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*Tu*	écrir *as*[26].			
	He *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*Il*	écrir *a.*			
	We *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*Nous*	écrir *ons.*			
	You *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*Vous*	écrir *ez.*			
	They *shll, wll* write, *be* writing.	*Ils*	écrir *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional.	*I* *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*J'*	écrir *ais.*[6]			
	Thou *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*Tu*	écrir *ais.*			
	He *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*Il*	écrir *ait*[26].			
	We *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*Nous*	écrir *ions.*			
	You *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*Vous*	écrir *iez.*			
	They *shd, wd* write, *be* writing.	*Ils*	écrir *aient*[6].			

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
writing.	ÉCRI *vant*[21].	ÉCRI *t*[26].	written.

After the same manner as ÉCRIRE, *are conjugated*

CIRCONSCRIRE, *to circumscribe.*	PROSCRIRE, *to proscribe.*
DÉCRIRE, *to describe.*	RÉCRIRE, *to write again.*
INSCRIRE, *to inscribe.*	SOUSCRIRE, *to subscribe.*
PRESCRIRE, *to prescribe.*	TRANSCRIRE, *to transcribe, to copy.*

* See note * page 28. † See note 4, page 2.

INFINITIVE.

To DO, *TO* MAKE. FAI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

DO FAI *s, sing.* Faites, *plur.*
Let *us* do. FAI *sons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Present tense.	*I* do, or *am* doing.	*Je*[3]	fai *s*[6].	*Que je*	fasse[2].‡
	Thou doest, *art* doing.	*Tu*	fai *s*.	*Tu*	fasses[26].
	He does, or *is* doing.	*Il*	fai *t*[26].	*Il*	fasse.
	We do,	*Nous*	fai *sons*.	*Nous*	fassions.
	You *are* doing.	*Vous*	faites.	*Vous*	fassiez.
	They	*Ils*	font[26].	*Ils*	fassent[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*Je*	fai *sais*[6].		
	Thou *was* doing.	*Tu*	fai *sais*.*		
	He	*Il*	fai *sait*[26].		
	We	*Nous*	fai *sions*.		
	You *were* doing.	*Vous*	fai *siez*.		
	They	*Ils*	fai *saient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I*	*Je*	fis[26].	*Que je*	fisse[2].
	Thou	*Tu*	fis.	*Tu*	fisses.
	He did, or made.	*Il*	fit[26].	*Il*	fît[26].
	We	*Nous*	fîmes.	*Nous*	fissions.
	You	*Vous*	fîtes.	*Vous*	fissiez.
	They	*Ils*	firent[18].	*Ils*	fissent[18]
Future positive.	*I*	*Je*	†ferai[5].		
	Thou	*Tu*	feras[26].		
	He *shll, will* do,	*Il*	fera.		
	We *be* doing.	*Nous*	ferons.		
	You	*Vous*	ferez.		
	They	*Ils*	feront[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*Je*	†ferais[6].		
	Thou	*Tu*	ferais.		
	He *shd, wld* do,	*Il*	ferait[26].		
	We *be* doing.	*Nous*	ferions.		
	You	*Vous*	feriez.		
	They	*Ils*	feraient[6].		

do, *may* do.

did, *might* do

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE*

doing. FAI *sant*[26]. FAI *t*[26]. DONE, MADE.

After the same manner as FAIRE, *are conjugated*

CONTREFAIRE, *to counterfeit.*
DÉFAIRE, *to undo, to defeat.*
se DÉFAIRE, *to get rid of.*
REDÉFAIRE, *to undo again.*
REFAIRE, *to do again.*
SATISFAIRE, *to satisfy.*
SURFAIRE, *to exact, to ask too much.*

---

* See *s* between two vowels, page 14. † Pronounce *fray, fraw*, &c. ‡ See *ss*, p. 15.

INFINITIVE.

To PRETEND, *TO* FEIGN. FEIND *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Pretend.	Feins, *sing*.	Feignez, *plu-*
Let *us* pretend.		Feignons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* pretend.	*Je*[3] feins[26].	*Que je* [19]feigne[2].	pretend, *may* pretend.
	Thou pretendest.	*Tu* [19]feins.	*Tu* feignes[23].	
	He pretends.	*Il* feint[26].	*Il* feigne.	
	We / *You* / *They* pretend.	*Nous* feignons.	*Nous* feignions.	
		Vous feignez.	*Vous* feigniez.	
		Ils feignent[18].	*Ils* feignent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* pretending.	*Je* [19]feignais[6].		
		Tu feignais.		
		Il feignait[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* pretending.	*Nous* feignions.		
		Vous feigniez.		
		Ils feignaient[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* pretended, *did* pretend.	*Je* [19]feignis[26].	*Que je* [19]feignisse[2].	pretended, *might* pretend.
		Tu feignis.	*Tu* feignisses.	
		Il feignit[26].	*Il* feignît[26].	
		Nous feignîmes.	*Nous* feignissions.	
		Vous feignîtes.	*Vous* feignissiez.	
		Ils feignirent[18].	*Ils* feignissent[18]	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall, will* pretend.	*Je* [19]feindr *ai*[5].		
		Tu feindr *as*[23].		
		Il feindr *a*.		
		Nous feindr *ons*.		
		Vous feindr *ez*.		
		Ils feindr *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should, would* pretend.	*Je* [19]feindr *ais*[6].		
		Tu feindr *ais*.		
		Il feindr *ait*[26].		
		Nous feindr *ions*.		
		Vous feindr *iez*.		
		Ils feindr *aient*[6].		
	Pretending.	Feignant[26].	Feint[26].	Pretended

After the same manner as FEINDRE, *are conjugated*

ASTREINDRE,	*to tie, to bind.*	OINDRE,	*to anoint.*
CRAINDRE,	*to fear.*	TEINDRE,	*to die.*
CONTRAINDRE,	*to constrain.*	DÉTEINDRE,	*to take off the die.*
CEINDRE,	*to gird.*	ÉTEINDRE,	*to extinguish, to put out.*
ENCEINDRE,	*to encompass.*	ATTEINDRE,	*to reach.*
JOINDRE,	*to join.*	PEINDRE,	*to paint.*
CONJOINDRE,	*to unite.*	PLAINDRE,	*to pity.*
DÉJOINDRE,	*to disjoin.*	*se* PLAINDRE,	*to complain.*
ENJOINDRE,	*to enjoin.*	RESTREINDRE,	*to restrain, to limit.*
ENFREINDRE,	*to infringe.*	ÉPREINDRE,	*to squeeze out, to strain.*

INFINITIVE.

To INSTRUCT. INSTRUI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Instruct.	INSTRUI *s, sing.*	INSTRUI *sez, plur.*
Let *us* instruct.		INSTRUI *sons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* instruct, or *am* instructing.	*J'* [19]instrui *s*[26].	*Que j'* [19]instrui *se*[2].	instruct, *may* instruct.
	Thou instructest, *art* instructing.	*Tu* instrui *s.*	*Tu* instrui *ses*[26].	
	He instructs, or *is* instructing.	*Il* instrui *t*[26].	*Il* instrui *se.*	
	We instruct, *are* instructing.	*Nous* instrui *sons.*	*Nous* instrui *sions.*	
	You instruct, *are* instructing.	*Vous* instrui *sez.*	*Vous* instrui *siez.*	
	They instruct, *are* instructing.	*Ils* instrui *sent*[18].	*Ils* instrui *sent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* *was* instructing.	*J'* [19]instrui *sais*[6].		instructed, *might* instruct.
	Thou *was* instructing.	*Tu* instrui *sais.*		
	He *was* instructing.	*Il* instrui *sait*[26].		
	We *were* instructing	*Nous* instrui *sions.*		
	You *were* instructing	*Vous* instrui *siez.*		
	They *were* instructing	*Ils* instrui *saient*[5].		
Perfect tense.	*I* instructed, *did* instruct.	*J'* [19]instrui *sis*[22].	*Que j'* [19]instrui *sisse*[2].	
	Thou instructed, *did* instruct.	*Tu* instrui *sis.*	*Tu* instrui *sisses.*	
	He instructed, *did* instruct.	*Il* instrui *sit*[26].	*Il* instrui *sît*[26].	
	We instructed, *did* instruct.	*Nous* instrui *sîmes.*	*Nous* instrui *sissions.*	
	You instructed, *did* instruct.	*Vous* instrui *sîtes.*	*Vous* instrui *sissiez.*	
	They instructed, *did* instruct.	*Ils* instrui *sirent*[6].	*Ils* instrui *sissent.*	
Future positive.	*I* *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*J'* [19]instruir *ai*[5].		
	Thou *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Tu* instruir *as*[21].		
	He *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Il* instruir *a.*		
	We *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Nous* instruir *ons.*		
	You *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Vous* instruir *ez.*		
	They *shl, wl* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Ils* instruir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*J'* [19]instruir *ais.*		
	Thou *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Tu* instruir *ais.*		
	He *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Il* instruir *ait*[26].		
	We *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Nous* instruir *ions.*		
	You *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Vous* instruir *iez.*		
	They *shd, wd* instruct, *be* instructing.	*Ils* instruir *aient*[6].		

GERUND.	*PARTICIPLE.*
Instructing. INSTRUI *sant*[26].	INSTRUI *t*[26]. instructed

After the same manner as INSTRUIRE, *are conjugated*

CONDUIRE, *to conduct.*
RECONDUIRE, *to take* or *lead back.*
CONSTRUIRE, *to construct.*
CUIRE, *to do victuals, to cook.**
RECUIRE, *to do* or *cook over again.*
DÉDUIRE, *to deduct.*
DÉTRUIRE, *to destroy.*
ENDUIRE, *to daub.*
INTRODUIRE, *to introduce.*
LUIRE, RELUIRE, *to shine*, part. LUI, RELUI.
NUIRE, *to hurt, to injure*, part. NUI.
PRODUIRE, *to produce.*
RÉDUIRE, *to reduce, to compel.*
SÉDUIRE, *to seduce.*
TRADUIRE, *to translate.*

* To COOK, followed by an object, is generally expressed by *Faire cuire*; as, I *cook*, or am *cooking* meat, fish, &c. *Je* fais cuire *de la viande, du poisson, &c.*

INFINITIVE.

To READ. *LI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Read.	LI *s, sing.*	LI *sez, plur.*
Let *us* read.		LI *sons*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* read, or *am* reading.	*Je*[3]	*li *s*[26].	*Que je*	*li *se*[2].† read, *may* read.
	Thou readest, *art* reading.	*Tu*	li *s.*	*Tu*	li *ses*[26].
	He reads, or *is* reading.	*Il*	li *t*[26].	*Il*	li *se.*
	We read,	*Nous*	li *sons.*†	*Nous*	li *sions.*
	You read,	*Vous*	li *sez.*	*Vous*	li *siez.*
	They read, *are* reading.	*Ils*	li *sent*[18].	*Ils*	li *sent*[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I* was reading.	*Je*	*li *sais*[6].		
	Thou was reading.	*Tu*	li *sais.*†		
	He was reading.	*Il*	li *sait*[26].		
	We were reading.	*Nous*	li *sions.*		
	You were reading.	*Vous*	li *siez.*		
	They were reading.	*Ils*	li *saient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* read,	*Je*	lus[26].	*Que je*	‡lusse[2]. read, *might* read.
	Thou read,	*Tu*	‡lus.	*Tu*	lusses.
	He read,	*Il*	lut[26].	*Il*	lût[26].
	We did read.	*Nous*	lûmes.	*Nous*	lussions.
	You did read.	*Vous*	lûtes.	*Vous*	lussiez.
	They did read.	*Ils*	lurent[18].	*Ils*	lussent[18].
Future positive.	*I* shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Je*	*lir *ai*[5].		
	Thou shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Tu*	lir *as*[26].		
	He shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Il*	lir *a.*		
	We shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Nous*	lir *ons.*		
	You shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Vous*	lir *ez.*		
	They shall, *will* read, be reading.	*Ils*	lir *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Je*	*lir *ais*[6].		
	Thou shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Tu*	lir *ais.*		
	He shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Il*	lir *ait*[26].		
	We shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Nous*	lir *ions,*		
	You shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Vous*	lir *iez*		
	They shld, *wld* read, be reading.	*Ils*	lir *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
Reading.	LI *sant*[26].	Lu.	Read

After the same manner as LIRE, *are conjugated*

ÉLIRE, *to elect.* RELIRE, *to read again.*

---

* See note 4, page 2. † See p. 14, *s* between two vowels. ‡ See note 2, p. 1

INFINITIVE.

To PUT. *METT *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Put. METS, *sing.* METT *ez, plur.*
LET *us* put. METT *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* put, or *am* putting.	*Je*[3]	mets[26].	*Que je*	*mett *e*[3].	put, *may* put.
	Thou puttest, *art* putting.	*Tu*	mets.	*Tu*	mett *es*[26].	
	He puts, or *is* putting.	*Il*	met[23].	*Il*	mett *e*.	
	We / *You* / *They* put, *are* putting.	*Nous*	mett *ons*.	*Nous*	mett *ions*.	
		Vous	mett *ez*.	*Vous*	mett *iez*.	
		Ils	mett *ent*[18].	*Ils*	mett *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* putting.	*Je*	*mett *ais*[6].			
		Tu	mett *ais*.			
		Il	mett *ait*[26].			
	We / *You* / *They* *were* putting.	*Nous*	mett *ions*.			
		Vous	mett *iez*.			
		Ils	mett *aient*[6].			
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* put, *did* put.	*Je*	†mis[26].	*Que je*	†misse[3].	put, *might* put.
		Tu	mis.	*Tu*	misses.	
		Il	mit[23].	*Il*	mît[26].	
		Nous	mîmes.	*Nous*	missions.	
		Vous	mîtes.	*Vous*	missiez.	
		Ils	mirent[16].	*Ils*	missent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shll, wll* put, *be* putting.	*Je*	*mettr *ai*[3].			
		Tu	mettr *as*[26]			
		Il	mettr *a*.			
		Nous	mettr *ons*.			
		Vous	mettr *ez*.			
		Ils	mettr *ont*[26].			
Fut. conditional	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd, wd* put, *be* putting	*Je*	*mettr *ais*[6].			
		Tu	mettr *ais*.			
		Il	mettr *ait*[26].			
		Nous	mettr *ions*.			
		Vous	mettr *iez*.			
		Ils	mettr *aient*[6].			

GERUND. PUTTING. METT *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE. MIS. PUT.

After the same manner as METTRE, *are conjugated*

ADMETTRE *to admit.*
COMMETTRE, *to commit.*
COMPROMETTRE, *to compromise.*
DÉMETTRE, *to put out of joint.*
se DÉMETTRE, *to abdicate.*
*s'*ENTREMETTRE, *to intermeddle.*
OMETTRE, *to omit.*
PERMETTRE, *to permit.*
PROMETTRE, *to promise.*
REMETTRE, *to put again, to deliver up.*
SOUMETTRE, *to submit.*
TRANSMETTRE, *to transmit.*

* Sound only one *t*. † See note 4, page 2

INFINITIVE.

To GRIND. MOUD *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

grind.	MOUD *s*, *sing.*	MOULEZ, *plur.*
LET *us* grind.		MOULONS.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* grind, or *am* grinding.	*Je* [14]moud *s*[26].	*Que je* [14]moule[2].	grind, *may* grind.
	Thou grindest, *art*	*Tu* moud *s*.	*Tu* moules[26].	
	He grinds, or *is*	*Il* moud[26].	*Il* moule.	
	We / *You* / *They* grind, *are* grinding.	*Nous* moulons.	*Nous* moulions.	
		Vous moulez.	*Vous* mouliez.	
		Ils moulent[18].	*Ils* moulent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* *was* grinding.	*Je* [14]moulais[6].		
		Tu moulais.		
		Il moulait[26].		
	We / *You* / *They* *were* grinding.	*Nous* moulions.		
		Vous mouliez.		
		Ils moulaient[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* ground, *did* grind.	*Je* [14]moulus[26]	*Que je* [14]moulusse[2].	ground, *might* grind.
		Tu moulus.*	*Tu* moulusses.	
		Il moulut[26].	*Il* moulût[26].	
		Nous moulûmes.	*Nous* moulussions.	
		Vous moulûtes.	*Vous* moulussiez.	
		Ils moulurent[18].	*Ils* moulussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall*, *will* grind, *be* grinding.	*Je* [14]moudr *ai*[5].		
		Tu moudr *as*[26].		
		Il moudr *a*.		
		Nous moudr *ons*.		
		Vous moudr *ez*.		
		Ils moudr *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shd*, *wd* grind, *be* grinding.	*Je* [14]moudr *ais*[6].		
		Tu moudr *ais*.		
		Il moudr *ait*[26].		
		Nous moudr *ions*.		
		Vous moudr *iez*.		
		Ils moudr *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
grinding.	MOULANT[26].	MOULU.	ground.

After the same manner as MOUDRE, *are conjugated* ÉMOUDRE, *to grind, to whet.* RÉMOUDRE, *to grind again.*

---

* See note 2, page 1

INFINITIVE.

To PLEASE. PLAI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

please. PLAI *s, sing.* PLAI *sez, plur.*
Let *us* please. PLAI *sons.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* please.	*Je* plai *s*[6].	*Que je* plai *se*[2].	please, *may* please.
	Thou pleasest.	*Tu* plai *s.*	*Tu* plai *ses*[26].	
	He pleases.	*Il* plaî *t*[26].	*Il* plai *se.*	
	We / *You* / *They* please.	*Nous* plai *sons.*	*Nous* plai *sions.*	
		Vous plai *sez.**	*Vous* plai *siez.*	
		Ils plai *sent*[18]	*Ils* plai *sent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *did* please.	*Je* plai *sais*[6].		
		Tu plai *sais.**		
		Il plai *sait*[26].		
		Nous plai *sions.*		
		Vous plai *siez.*		
		Ils plai *saient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* pleased, *did* please.	*Je* †plus[26].	*Que je* †plusse[2].	pleased, *might* please
		Tu plus.	*Tu* plusses.	
		Il plut[26].	*Il* plût[26].	
		Nous plûmes.	*Nous* plussions.	
		Vous plûtes.	*Vous* plussiez.	
		Ils plurent[18].	*Ils* plussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *shall*, *will* please.	*Je* plair *ai*[5].		
		Tu plair *as*[26].		
		Il plair *a.*		
		Nous plair *ons.*		
		Vous plair *ez.*		
		Ils plair *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional	*I* / *Thou* / *He* / *We* / *You* / *They* *should*, *would* please.	*Je* plair *ais*[6].		
		Tu plair *ais.*		
		Il plair *ait.*[26]		
		Nous plair *ions.*		
		Vous plair *iez.*		
		Ils plair *aient*[6].		

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE.*

pleasing. PLAI *sant*[26]. PLU. pleased

After the same manner as PLAIRE, *are conjugated*

COMPLAIRE, *to comply.* *se* PLAIRE, *to delight in.*
DÉPLAIRE, *to displease.* *se* TAIRE, *to hold one's tongue, to be silent.*

* See *s* between two vowels, page 14. † See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To RESOLVE, *to* DISSOLVE. RÉSOUD *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Resolve.	Résous, *sing.*	Résolvez, *plur.*
Let *us* resolve.		Résolvons.

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* resolve, or *am* resolving.	*Je* [14]résous[26].	*Que je* résolve[2].	resolve, *may* resolve.
	Thou resolvest, *art* resolving.	*Tu* résous.	*Tu* résolves[26].	
	He resolves, or *is* resolving.	*Il* résout[26].	*Il* résolve.	
	We resolve, *You* resolve, *They* resolve, *are* resolving.	*Nous* résolvons.	*Nous* résolvions.	
		Vous résolvez.	*Vous* résolviez.	
		Ils résolvent[18].	*Ils* résolvent[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* *was* resolving.	*Je* résolvais[6].		
	Thou *was* resolving.	*Tu* résolvais.		
	He *was* resolving.	*Il* résolvait.		
	We *were* resolving.	*Nous* résolvions.		
	You *were* resolving.	*Vous* résolviez.		
	They *were* resolving.	*Ils* résolvaient[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* resolved, *did* resolve.	*Je* résolus[26].	*Que je* résolusse[2].	resolved, *might* resolve.
	Thou resolved, *did* resolve.	*Tu* résolus.	*Tu* résolusses.	
	He resolved, *did* resolve.	*Il* résolut[26].	*Il* résolût[26].	
	We resolved, *did* resolve.	*Nous* résolûmes.	*Nous* résolussions.	
	You resolved, *did* resolve.	*Vous* résolûtes.	*Vous* résolussiez.	
	They resolved, *did* resolve.	*Ils* résolurent[18].	*Ils* résolussent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Je* [14]résoudr *ai*[5].		
	Thou *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Tu* résoudr *as*[26].		
	He *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Il* résoudr *a*.		
	We *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Nous* résoudr *ons*.		
	You *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Vous* résoudr *ez*.		
	They *shll, wll* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Ils* résoudr *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Je* [14]résoudr *ais*[6].		
	Thou *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Tu* résoudr *ais*.		
	He *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Il* résoudr *ait*[26].		
	We *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Nous* résoudr *ions*.		
	You *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Vous* résoudr *iez*.		
	They *shd, wld* resolve, *be* resolving.	*Ils* résoudr *aient*[6].		

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
Resolving. Dissolving.	Résolvant[26].	Résolu.	Resolved, determined.
		Résous.	Melted, dissolved.*

After the same manner as RÉSOUDRE, *are conjugated*

ABSOUDRE, *to absolve*, part. ABSOUS, *absolved;* and DISSOUDRE, *to dissolve*, part. DISSOUS, *dissolved.*

N. B. These two verbs have no *perfect tense.*

---

* As, *Le soleil a résous le brouillard en pluie.* The sun has *melted* the mist into rain.

INFINITIVE.

To LAUGH. RI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Laugh.	RI *s*, *sing*.	RI *ez*, *plur*,
Let *us* laugh.		RI *ons*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*
Present tense.	*I* laugh, or *am* laughing.	*Je*[3] *ri *s*[26].	*Que je* *ri *e*[2].
	Thou laughest, *art*	*Tu* ri *s*.	*Tu* ri *es*[26].
	He laughs, or *is*	*Il* ri *t*[26].	*Il* ri *e*.
	We laugh,	*Nous* ri *ons*.	*Nous* riions[4].
	You *are* laughing.	*Vous* ri *ez*.	*Vous* riiez.
	They	*Ils* ri *ent*[18].	*Ils* ri *ent*[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I*	*Je* *ri *ais*[6].	laugh, *may* laugh.
	Thou *was* laughing.	*Tu* ri *ais*.	
	He	*Il* ri *ait*[26].	
	We	*Nous* riions[4].	
	You *were* laughing.	*Vous* riiez.	
	They	*Ils* ri *aient*[6].	
Perfect tense	*I*	*Je* *ri *s*[26].	*Que je* *ri *sse*[2].
	Thou	*Tu* ri *s*.	*Tu* ri *sses*.
	He laughed,	*Il* ri *t*[26].	*Il* rî *t*[26].
	We *did* laugh.	*Nous* rî *mes*.	*Nous* ri *ssions*.
	You	*Vous* rî *tes*.	*Vous* ri *ssiez*.
	They	*Ils* rî *rent*[18].	*Ils* ri *ssent*[18].
Future positive.	*I*	*Je* *rir *ai*[5].	laughed, *might* laugh.
	Thou	*Tu* rir *as*[26].	
	He *shll*, *will* laugh,	*Il* rir *a*.	
	We *be* laughing.	*Nous* rir *ons*.	
	You	*Vous* rir *ez*.	
	They	*Ils* rir *ont*[26].	
Fut. conditional.	*I*	*Je* *rir *ais*[6].	
	Thou	*Tu* rir *ais*.	
	He *shd*, *wld* laugh,	*Il* rir *ait*[26].	
	We *be* laughing.	*Nous* rir *ions*.	
	You	*Vous* rir *iez*.	
	They	*Ils* rir *aient*[6].	

GERUND.	*PARTICIPLE.*
Laughing. RI *ant*[26].	RI. Laughed.

After the same manner as RIRE, *are conjugated*

SOURIRE, *to smile*. FRIRE, *to fry*, part. FRIT, *fried*.

N.B. FRIRE is used only in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person of the present of the indicative, je *fris*, tu *fris*, il *frit*; in the future, je *frirai*, tu *friras*, *&c.* and in the conditional, je *frirais*, tu *frirais*, *&c.*; the other tenses are formed with the verb FAIRE, and the infinitive of this verb; so, We fry, *nous* faisons *frire*; you fry, *vous* faites *frire*; they fry, *ils* font *frire*.

Fry this fish, these eggs, that meat. Faites frire *ce poisson*, *ces œufs*, *cette viande*.

---

* See note 4, page 2

INFINITIVE.

To FOLLOW. SUIV *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

Follow.	suis, *sing.*	SUIV *ez, plur.*
Let *us* follow.		SUIV *ons.*

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*I* follow, or *am* following.	*Je*[3]	suis[26].	*Que je*	suiv *e*[3].
	Thou followest, *art* following.	*Tu*	[23]suis.	*Tu*	suiv *es*[26].
	He follows, or *is* following.	*Il*	suit[26].	*Il*	suiv *e.*
	We follow, *are* following.	*Nous*	suiv *ons.*	*Nous*	suiv *ions.*
	You follow, *are* following.	*Vous*	suiv *ez.*	*Vous*	suiv *iez.*
	They follow, *are* following.	*Ils*	suiv *ent*[18].	*Ils*	suiv *ent*[18].
Imperfect tense.	*I* was following.	*Je*	[23]suiv *ais*[6].		
	Thou was following.	*Tu*	suiv *ais.*		
	He was following.	*Il*	suiv *ait*[26].		
	We were following.	*Nous*	suiv *ions.*		
	You were following.	*Vous*	suiv *iez.*		
	They were following.	*Ils*	suiv *aient*[6].		
Perfect tense.	*I* followed, *did* follow.	*Je*	[23]suiv *is*[26].	*Que je*	suiv *isse*[3].
	Thou followed, *did* follow.	*Tu*	suiv *is.*	*Tu*	suiv *isses.*
	He followed, *did* follow.	*Il*	suiv *it*[26].	*Il*	suiv *ît*[26].
	We followed, *did* follow.	*Nous*	suiv *îmes.*	*Nous*	suiv *issions.*
	You followed, *did* follow.	*Vous*	suiv *îtes.*	*Vous*	suiv *issiez.*
	They followed, *did* follow.	*Ils*	suiv *irent*[18].	*Ils*	suiv *issent*[18].
Future positive.	*I* *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Je*	[23]suivr *ai*[5].		
	Thou *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Tu*	suivr *as*[26].		
	He *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Il*	suivr *a.*		
	We *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Nous*	suivr *ons.*		
	You *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Vous*	suivr *ez.*		
	They *shll, wll* follow, *be* following.	*Ils*	suivr *ont*[26].		
Fut. conditional.	*I* *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Je*	[23]suivr *ais*[6].		
	Thou *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Tu*	suivr *ais.*		
	He *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Il*	suivr *ait*[26].		
	We *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Nous*	suivr *ions.*		
	You *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Vous*	suivr *iez.*		
	They *shd, wd* follow, *be* following.	*Ils*	suivr *aient*[6].		

GERUND.

FOLLOWING. SUIV *ant*[26].

PARTICIPLE.

SUIV *i.* FOLLOWED

After the same manner as SUIVRE, *are conjugated*

*s'*ENSUIVRE, *to follow from*, i. e. *a consequence.*
POURSUIVRE, *to pursue.*

INFINITIVE.

To MILK. TRAI *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

MILK.	TRAI *s*, *sing.*	TRAYEZ, *plur.*
LET *us* milk.		TRAYONS.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I milk*, or *am* milking.	*Je*[3]	trai *s*[6].	*Que je*	trai *e*[3].	milk, *may* milk.
	Thou milkest, *art* milking.	*Tu*	trai *s*.	*Tu*	trai *es*[26].	
	He milks, or *is* milking.	*Il*	trai *t*[26].	*Il*	trai *e*.	
	We milk,	*Nous*	trayons[4].	*Nous*	trayions.	
	You milk,	*Vous*	trayez.	*Vous*	trayiez.	
	They milk, *are* milking.	*Ils*	trai *ent*[18].	*Ils*	trai *ent*[18].	
Imperfect tense.	*I* *was* milking.	*Je*	[4]trayais[6].			
	Thou *was* milking.	*Tu*	trayais.			
	He *was* milking.	*Il*	trayait[26].			
	We *were* milking.	*Nous*	trayions.			
	You *were* milking.	*Vous*	trayiez.			
	They *were* milking.	*Ils*	trayaient[6].			
Perfect tense	*I* milked, *did* milk.	*Je*	tirai.*	*Que je*	tirasse[2].	milked, *might* milk.
	Thou milked, *did* milk.	*Tu*	tiras[26].	*Tu*	tirasses.	
	He milked, *did* milk.	*Il*	tira.	*Il*	tirât[26].	
	We milked, *did* milk.	*Nous*	tirâmes.	*Nous*	tirassions.	
	You milked, *did* milk.	*Vous*	tirâtes.	*Vous*	tirassiez.	
	They milked, *did* milk.	*Ils*	tirèrent[18].	*Ils*	tirassent[18].	
Future positive.	*I* *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Je*	trair *ai*[5].			
	Thou *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Tu*	trair *as*[26].			
	He *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Il*	trair *a*.			
	We *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Nous*	trair *ons*.			
	You *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Vous*	trair *ez*.			
	They *shall*, *will* milk, *be* milking.	*Ils*	trair *ont*[20].			
Fut. conditional	*I* *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Je*	trair *ais*[6].			
	Thou *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Tu*	trair *ais*.			
	He *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Il*	trair *ait*[26].			
	We *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Nous*	trair *ions*.			
	You *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Vous*	trair *iez*.			
	They *shld*, *wld* milk, *be* milking.	*Ils*	trair *aient*[6].			

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
MILKING.	TRAYANT[26].	TRAI *t*[26].	MILKED.

After the same manner as TRAIRE, *are conjugated*

ABSTRAIRE, *to abstract.* RENTRAIRE, *to finedraw.*
DISTRAIRE, *to disturb one's attention.* SOUSTRAIRE, *to subtract.*
EXTRAIRE, *to extract.* N. B. These verbs have no perfect tense.

---

* TRAIRE having no *perfect* tense, we supply its place with the *perfect* of the verb TIRER, which may be used in the same sense as TRAIRE; example,
I *milked* my cows, my goats, &c. *Je* tirai *mes vaches, mes chèvres, &c.*

INFINITIVE.

To VANQUISH. VAINC *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

vanquish.	VAINC *s*, *sing*.	vainquez, *plur*.
Let *us* vanquish.		vainquons.

	INDICATIVE.			*SUBJUNCTIVE.*		
Present tense.	*I* vanquish, or *am* vanquishing.	*Je*[3] vainc *s*[26].		*Que je* vainque.†		*may* vanquish.
	Thou vanquishest, *art*	*Tu* [19]vainc *s*.		*Tu* vainques[26].		
	He vanquishes, or *is*	*Il* vainc *		*Il* vainque.		
	We, *You*, *They* vanquish, *are* vanquishing.	*Nous* vainquons.		*Nous* vainquions.		
		Vous vainquez.†		*Vous* vainquiez.		
		Ils vainquent[18].		*Ils* vainquent[18].		
Imperfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He* *was* vanquishing.	*Je* [19]vainquais[6].				
		Tu vainquais.†				
		Il vainquait[26].				
	We, *You*, *They* *were* vanquishing.	*Nous* vainquions.				
		Vous vainquiez.				
		Ils vainquaient[6].				
Perfect tense.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* vanquished, *did* vanquish.	*Je* [19]vainquis[26].		*Que je* vainquisse[2].		*might* vanquish.
		Tu vainquis.†		*Tu* vainquisses.		
		Il vainquit[26].		*Il* vainquît[26].		
		Nous vainquîmes.		*Nous* vainquissions.		
		Vous vainquîtes.		*Vous* vainquissiez.		
		Ils vainquirent[18].		*Ils* vainquissent[18].		
Future positive.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shll*, *wll* vanquish, *be* vanquishing.	*Je* [19]vaincr *ai*[5].				
		Tu vaincr *as*[26].				
		Il vaincr *a*.				
		Nous vaincr *ons*.				
		Vous vaincr *ez*.				
		Ils vaincr *ont*[26].				
Fut. conditional.	*I*, *Thou*, *He*, *We*, *You*, *They* *shd*, *wd* vanquish, *be* vanquishing.	*Je* [19]vaincr *ais*[6].				
		Tu vaincr *ais*.				
		Il vaincr *ait*[26].				
		Nous vaincr *ions*.				
		Vous vaincr *iez*.				
		Ils vaincr *aient*[6].				

GERUND.		*PARTICIPLE.*	
vanquishing.	vainquant[26].	vaincu,	vanquished.

After the same manner as VAINCRE, *is conjugated* CONVAINCRE, *to convince.*

---

* The 1st, 2d, and 3d person *singular* of the *present* of the *indicative*, are not much used.
† See *qu*, page 13.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
ATTEND	*re,*	*ant,*	*u.*

	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
Present tense.	J' ATTEND *s,*		*e*
	Tu *s,*	*s,*	*es*
	Il attend		*e*
	Nous *ons,*	*ons,*	*ions*
	Vous *ez,*	*ez,*	*iez*
	Ils *ent.*		*ent.*
Imperf. tense.	J' *ais*		
	Tu *ais*		
	Il *ait*		
	Nous *ions*		
	Vous *iez*		
	Ils *aient.*		
Perfect tense.	J' *is*		*isse*
	Tu *is*		*isses*
	Il *it*		*ît*
	Nous *îmes*		*issions*
	Vous *îtes*		*issiez*
	Ils *irent*		*issent.*
Fut. positive.	J' ATTENDR *ai*		
	Tu *as*		
	Il *a*		
	Nous *ons*		
	Vous *ez*		
	Ils *ont.*		
Fut. condit.	J' *ais*		
	Tu *ais*		
	Il *ait*		
	Nous *ions*		
	Vous *iez*		
	Ils *aient.*		

Battre, and its *compounds;* Fendre, Défendre, Descendre, Condescendre, Fondre, Confondre, se Morfondre, Rompre, Corrompre, Interrompre, Pondre, Répondre, Correspondre, Répandre, Mordre, Démordre, Tendre, Etendre, Entendre, Prétendre, Rendre, Pendre, Dépendre, Suspendre, Vendre, Perdre, Tordre, Tondre.

APPREND	*re,*	apprenant,	appris.

Present tense.	J'	*s*	apprenne
	Tu	*s*	apprennes
	Il	apprend	apprenne
	Nous	apprenons †	apprenions
	Vous	apprenez	appreniez
	Ils	apprennent.	apprennent.
Imperf. tense.	J'	apprenais	
	Tu	apprenais	
	Il	apprenait	
	Nous	apprenions	
	Vous	appreniez	
	Ils	apprenaient.	
Perfect tense.	J'	appris	apprisse
	Tu	appris	apprisses
	Il	apprit	apprît
	Nous	apprîmes	apprissions
	Vous	apprîtes	apprissiez
	Ils	apprirent	apprissent.
Fut. positive.	J' APPRENDR	*ai*	
	Tu	*as*	
	Il	*a*	
	Nous	*ons*	
	Vous	*ez*	
	Ils	*ont.*	
Fut. condit.	J'	*ais*	
	Tu	*ais*	
	Il	*ait*	
	Nous	*ions*	
	Vous	*iez*	
	Ils	*aient.*	

Like Apprendre *are conjugated* Désapprendre, Prendre, Comprendre, Entreprendre, se Méprendre, Reprendre, Surprendre.

The verbs CONCLURE, *to conclude;* CONI

A TABLE *shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugate* all the verbs *in* RE,

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
OI *re*,	buvant,	bu.

INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
OI *s*		*ve*
s	*s*	*ves*
t		*ve*
buvons,	buvons,	buvions
buvez,	buvez,	buviez
vent.		*vent.*
buvais		
buvais		
buvait		
buvions		
buviez		
buvaient.		
bus		busse
bus		busses
but		bût
bûmes		bussions
bûtes		bussiez
burent.		bussent.
IR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

njugate in the same manner Reboire.

NNAIT *re*, connaissant, connu.

connais	connaisse
connais	connaisses
connaît	connaisse
connaissons †	connaissions
connaissez	connaissiez
connaissent.	connaissent.
connaissais	
connaissais	
connaissait	
connaissions	
connaissiez	
connaissaient.	
connus	connusse
connus	connusses
connut	connût
connûmes	connussions
connûtes	connussiez
connurent.	connussent.
R *ai*	
as	
a	
ons	
ez	
ont.	
ais	
ais	
ait	
ions	
iez	
aient	

Méconnaître, Reconnaître, Paraître, Apparaître, Comparaître, Disparaître, Croître, Accroître, Décroître, Paître, Repaître, Naître, Renaître. (*See remark under* Connaître, p. 152.)

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
CROI *re*,	croyant,	cru.

INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
CROI *s*		*e*
s,	*s*,	*es*
t		*e*
croyons,	croyons,	croyions
croyez,	croyez,	croyiez
ent.		*ent.*
croyais		
croyais		
croyait		
croyions		
croyiez		
croyaient.		
crus		crusse
crus		crusses
crut		crût
crûmes		crussions
crûtes		crussiez
crurent.		crussent.
CROIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

DI *re*, *sunt*, *t*.

s		*se*
s,	*s*,	*ses*
t		*se*
sons,	*sons*,	*sions*
dites,	dites,	*siez*
sent.		*sent.*
sais		
sais		
sait		
sions		
siez		
saient.		
s		*sse*
s		*sses*
t		*t*
mes		*ssions*
tes		*ssiez*
rent.		*ssent.*
DIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Contredire, Dédire, Interdire, Prédire, Circoncire, Confire, Suffire. (*See remark under* Dire, p. 155.)

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
ECRI *re*,	*vant*,	*t*.

INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
ÉCRI *s*		*ve*
s,	*s*,	*ves*
t		*ve*
vons,	*vons*,	*vions*
vez,	*vez*,	*viez*
vent.		*vent.*
vais		
vais		
vait		
vions		
viez		
vaient.		
vis		*visse*
vis		*visses*
vit		*vît*
vîmes		*vissions*
vîtes		*vissiez*
virent.		*vissent.*
ÉCRIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Circonscrire, Décrire, Inscrire, Prescrire, Proscrire, Récrire, Souscrire, Transcrire.

FEIND *re*, feignant, feint.

feins	feigne
feins	feignes
feint	feigne
feignons †	feignions
feignez	feigniez
feignent.	feignent.
feignais	
feignais	
feignait	
feignions	
feigniez	
feignaient.	
feignis	feignisse
feignis	feignisses
feignit	feignît
feignîmes	feignissions
feignîtes	feignissiez
feignirent.	feignissent.
FEINDR *ai*	
as	
a	
ons	
ez	
ont.	
ais	
ais	
ait	
ions	
iez	
aient.	

Astreindre, Craindre, Contraindre, Ceindre, Enceindre, Joindre, Conjoindre, Déjoindre, Enjoindre, Enfreindre, Oindre, Teindre, Déteindre, Eteindre, Atteindre, Peindre, Plaindre, Restreindre, Epreindre.

INFIN.
FAI *re*,

INDIC.
FAI *s*
s,
t
sons,
faites
font.
sais
sais
sait
sions
siez
saient
fis
fis
fit
fîmes
fîtes
firent
ferai
feras
fera
feron
ferez
feront
ferais
ferais
ferait
ferion
feriez
feraie

Contrefaire, faire, Redéfa

INSTRU

s
s,
t
sons
sez
sent.
sais
sais
sait
sions
siez
saient.
sis
sis
sit
sîmes
sîtes
sirent.
INSTRUIR *ai*
as
a
ons
ez
ont.
ais
ais
ait
ions
iez
aient

Recuire, L (*See* Instru

to grind; RÉSOUDRE, *to resolve;* TRAIRE, *to milk;* VAINCRE, *to vanquish;* which are *not frequentlu*

oth regular *and* irregular.*

GER.	PART.
sant,	*t*.
IMP.	SUBJ.
	fasse
s,	fasses
	fasse
sons,	fassions
faites	fassiez
	fassent.
	fisse
	fisses
	fît
	fissions
	fissiez
	fissent.

faire, se Défaire, Re-
,Satisfaire, Surfaire

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
LI *re*,	*sant*,	lu.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
LI *s*		*se*
s,	*s*,	*ses*
t		*se*
sons,	*sons*,	*sions*
sez,	*sez*,	*siez*
sent.		*sent*.
sais		
sais		
sait		
sions		
siez		
saient.		
lus		lusse
lus		lusses
lut		lût
lûmes		lussions
lûtes		lussiez
lurent.		lussent.
LIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Like LIRE *conjugate* Elire, Relire.

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
PLAI *re*,	*sant*,	plu.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
PLAI *s*		*se*
s,	*s*,	*ses*
t		*se*
sons,	*sons*,	*sions*
sez,	*sez*	*siez*
sent.		*sent*.
sais		
sais		
sait		
sions		
siez		
saient.		
plus		plusse
plus		plusses
plut		plût
plûmes		plussions
plûtes		plussiez
plurent.		plussent.
PLAIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Complaire, Déplaire, se Plaire, se Taire.

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SUIV *re*,	*ant*,	i.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
suis		*e*
suis,	suis,	*es*
suit		*e*
SUIV *ons*,	*ons*,	*ions*
ez,	*ez*,	*iez*
ent.		*ent*.
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
is		*isse*
is		*isses*
it		*ît*
îmes		*issions*
îtes		*issiez*
irent.		*issent*
SUIVR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

s'Ensuivre, Poursuivre.

GER.	PART.
, sant,	*t*.
	se
s,	*ses*
	se
ons	*sions*
ez	*siez*
	sent.
	sisse
	sisses
	sît
	sissions
	sissiez
	sissent.

duire, Reconduire,
ire, Enduire, Intro-
, Produire, Réduire,
ire, Traduire, Con-
ire, Détruire, Cuire,
Reluire, Nuire.
page 159.)

METT *re*,	*ant*,	mis.
mets		*e*
mets,	mets,	*es*
met		*e*
METT *ons*,	*ons*,	*ions*
ez,	*ez*,	*iez*
ent.		*ent*.
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
mis		misse
mis		misses
mit		mît
mîmes		missions
mîtes		missiez
mirent.		missent.
METTR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Admettre, Commettre, Compromettre, Démettre, Entremettre, Omettre, Permettre, Promettre, Remettre, Soumettre, Transmettre.

RI *re*,	*ant*,	ri.
s		*e*
s,	*s*,	*es*
t		*e*
ons,	*ons*,	riions
ez,	*ez*,	riiez
ent.		*ent*.
ais		
ais		
ait		
riions,		
riiez		
aient.		
s		*sse*
s		*sses*
t		*t*
mes		*ssions*
tes		*ssiez*
rent.		*ssent*.
RIR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Sourire, Frire,
[*See remark under* Rire.]

VIV *re*,	*ant*,	vécu.
vis		*e*
vis,	vis,	*es*
vit		*e*
ons,	*ons*,	*ions*
ez,	*ez*	*iez*
ent		*ent*.
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		
vécus		vécusse
vécus		vécusses
vécut		vécût
vécûmes		vécussions
vécûtes		vécussiez
vécurent.		vécussent.
VIVR *ai*		
as		
a		
ons		
ez		
ont.		
ais		
ais		
ait		
ions		
iez		
aient.		

Revivre, Survivre.

---

have been *left out* of this table, in order to render it more convenient : they may be seen in their

Some verbs which have only the *third person singular*, and sometimes the third person plural of their tenses in use, are called *impersonal*, though they would perhaps be more properly called *monopersonal*, i. e. verbs of *one person;* the most frequently used are the following:

INFINITIVE.

TONN*er.*	ÉCLAIR*er.*	PLEUVO*ir.*	GEL*er.*	NEIG*er.*	GRÊL*er.*	VENT*er.*
To *Thunder.*	To *Lighten.*	To *Rain.*	To *Freeze.*	To *Snow.*	To *Hail.*	To *Blow.*

	INDICATIVE.		*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Present tense.	*It* thunders.	*Il* tonne.	*Qu'il* tonne.	*it may* thunder, &c.
	It lightens.	*Il* éclaire.	*Il* éclaire.	
	It rains.	*Il* pleut.	*Il* pleuve.	
	It freezes.	*Il* gèl*e.*	*Il* gèl*e.*	
	It snows.	*Il* neig*e.*	*Il* neig*e.*	
	It hails.	*Il* grêl*e.*	*Il* grêl*e.*	
	The wind blows.	*Il* vent*e.*	*Il* vent*e.*	
Imperfect tense.	*It did* thunder.	*Il* tonn*ait.*		
	It did lighten.	*Il* éclair*ait.*		
	It did rain.	*Il* pleuv*ait.*		
	It did freeze.	*Il* gel*ait.*		
	It did snow.	*Il* neige*ait.*		
	It did hail.	*Il* grêl*ait.*		
	The wind *did* blow.	*Il* vent*ait.*		
Perfect tense.	*It* thundered.	*Il* tonn*a.*	*Qu'il* tonn*ât.*	*it might* thunder, &c.
	It lightened.	*Il* éclair*a.*	*Il* éclair*ât.*	
	It rained.	*Il* plut.	*Il* plût.	
	It froze.	*Il* gel*a.*	*Il* gel*ât.*	
	It snowed.	*Il* neige*a.*	*Il* neige*ât.*	
	It hailed.	*Il* grêl*a.*	*Il* grêl*ât.*	
	The wind blew.	*Il* vent*a.*	*Il* vent*ât.*	
Future positive.	*It will* thunder.	*Il* tonner*a.*		
	It will lighten.	*Il* éclairer*a.*		
	It will rain.	*Il* pleuvr*a.*		
	It will freeze.	*Il* gèler*a.*		
	It will snow.	*Il* neiger*a.*		
	It will hail.	*Il* grêler*a.*		
	The wind *will* blow.	*Il* venter*a.*		
Future conditional.	*It would* thunder.	*Il* tonner*ait.*		
	It would lighten.	*Il* éclairer*ait.*		
	It would rain.	*Il* pleuvr*ait.*		
	It would freeze.	*Il* gèler*ait.*		
	It would snow.	*Il* neiger*ait.*		
	It would hail.	*Il* grêler*ait.*		
	The wind *would* blow.	*Il* venter*ait.*		

Interrogatively.		*Negatively.*		*Interrogatively & Negatively*	
Tonne-t-*il?*	does *it* thunder?	Il *ne* tonne	*it does not* thunder.	*Ne* tonne-t-*il*	does *it* not thunder?
Eclaire-t-*il?*		Il *n'* éclaire		*N'* éclaire-t-*il*	
Pleut-*il?*		Il *ne* pleut		*Ne* pleut-*il*	
Gèle-t-*il?*		Il *ne* gèle	*pas.*	*Ne* gèle-t-*il*	*pas?*
Neige-t-*il?*		Il *ne* neige		*Ne* neige-t-*il*	
Grêle-t-*il?*		Il *ne* grêle		*Ne* grêle-t-*il*	

INFINITIVE.

There BE. Y AVOIR.

INDICATIVE.	*SUBJUNCTIVE.*	
Affirmatively.		
There is, *There* are ..... Il *y* a.	Qu' il *y* ait.	*there* may be.
There was, *There* were ..... Il *y* avait		
There was, *There* were ..... Il *y* eut. *There* will be ..... Il *y* aura. *There* would be..... Il *y* aurait.	Il *y* eût.	
There is not, *There* are not..... Il n'*y* a pas.	Il n'*y* ait pas.	*there* may not be.
There was not, *There* were not .... Il n'*y* avait pas.		
There was not, *There* were not..... Il n'*y* eut pas. *There* will not be ... Il n'*y* aura pas. *There* would not be . Il n'*y* aurait pas.	Il n'*y* eût pas.	
Interrogatively.		
Is *there*, Are *there*?..... Y a-t-il?		
Was *there*, Were *there*? ..... Y avait-il?		
Was *there*, Were *there*? ..... Y eut-il? Will *there* be?..... Y aura-t-il? Would *there* be?.... Y aurait-il?		
Is *there* not, Are *there* not? ..... N'*y* a-t-il pas?		
Was *there* not, Were *there* not? .... N'*y* avait-il pas?		
Was *there* not, Were *there* not? .... N'*y* eut-il pas? Will not *there* be? .. N'*y* aura-t-il pas? Would not *there* be?. N'*y* aurait-il pas?		
COMPOUND TENSES.		
There has been, *There* have been.... Il *y* a eu.	Il *y* ait eu.	
There had been..... Il *y* avait eu.		
There had been..... Il *y* eut eu. *There* will have been. Il *y* aura eu. *There* wd have been . Il *y* aurait eu.	Il *y* eût eu.	
There has not been, *There* have not been. Il n'*y* a pas eu.		

Has *there* been? Y a-t-il eu? Has not *there* been? N'*y* a-t-il pas eu?

MUST. **FALLOIR.**

The verb MUST is conjugated through its *different persons;* but its representative FALLOIR has only the *third* PERSON *singular* of *each* tense, with *Il* for nominative; then the *nominative* of MUST becomes the *nominative* of the *following* verb in french, which verb must be in the *present* of the *subjunctive* after *Il faut, Il faudra;* and in the *perfect,* after *Il fallait, Il fallut, Il faudrait,* as appears by the following example,

I must *Thou* must *He* must *My brother* must *We* must *You* must *They* must	go out.	*Il* faut	*que* je *sorte.* *que* tu *sortes.* *qu'* il *sorte.* *que* mon frère *sorte.* *que* nous *sortions.* *que* vous *sortiez.* *qu'* ils *sortent.*
It was necessary for *me* for *thee* for *him* for *my brother* for *us* for *you* for *them*	to go out, or that *I, thou, he, &c. should* go out.	*Il* fallait *Il* fallut	*que* je *sortisse.* *que* tu *sortisses.* *qu'* il *sortît.* *que* mon frère *sortît.* *que* nous *sortissions.* *que* vous *sortissiez.* *qu'* ils *sortissent*
It will be necessary for *me* for *thee* for *him* for *my brother* for *us* for *you* for *them*	to go out, or that *I* go out.	*Il* faudra	*que* je *sorte.* *que* tu *sortes.* *qu'* il *sorte.* *que* mon frère *sorte.* *que* nous *sortions.* *que* vous *sortiez.* *qu'* ils *sortent.*
It would be necessary for *me* for *thee* for *him* for *my brother* for *us* for *you* for *them*	to go out, or that *I should* go out.	*Il* faudrait	*que* je *sortisse.* *que* tu *sortisses.* *qu'* il *sortît.* *que* mon frère *sortît.* *que* nous *sortissions.* *que* vous *sortissiez.* *qu'* ils *sortissent.*

Negatively.

I must *not* *Thou* must *not* *He* must *not* *My brother* must *not*	go out.	*Il ne* faut *pas*	*que* je *sorte.* *que* tu *sortes.* *qu'* il *sorte.* *que* mon frère *sorte.*

Interrogatively.

Must *I* Must *thou* Must *he* Must *my brother*	go out?	Faut-*il*	*que* je *sorte?* *que* tu *sortes?* *qu'* il *sorte?* *que* mon frère *sorte?*
Must *I not* Must *thou not* Must *he not* Must *not my brother*	go out?	*Ne* faut-*il pas*	*que* je *sorte?* *que* tu *sortes?* *qu'* il *sorte?* *que* mon frère *sorte?*

MUST HAVE, meaning *To be in need* of a thing, is expressed thus:

I must have	money, books; or, *I, thou, he, &c.* want money, books.	*Il* ME	faut *de l'argent, des livres.*
Thou must have		*Il* TE	
He must have		*Il* LUI	
We must have		*Il* NOUS	
You must have		*Il* VOUS	
They must have		*Il* LEUR	
My brother must have		*Il* faut *des livres* à mon frère.	

It was necessary for *me*	to have money, books; or, *I* wanted money, books.	*Il* ME	fallait, or fallut *de l'argent, des livres.*
for *thee*		*Il* TE	
for *him*		*Il* LUI	
for *us*		*Il* NOUS	
for *you*		*Il* VOUS	
for *them*		*Il* LEUR	
It will be necessary for *me*	to have money, books; or, *I* shall want money, &c.	*Il* ME	faudra *de l'argent, des livres.*
for *thee*		*Il* TE	
for *him*		*Il* LUI	
for *us*		*Il* NOUS	
for *you*		*Il* VOUS	
for *them*		*Il* LEUR	
It would be necessary for *me*	to have money, books; or, *I* should want money, &c.	*Il* ME	faudrait *de l'argent, des livres.*
for *thee*		*Il* TE	
for *him*		*Il* LUI	
for *us*		*Il* NOUS	
for *you*		*Il* VOUS	
for *them*		*Il* LEUR	

The impersonal verb TARDER, *To long*, is also conjugated in the same manner as the above;

I long	to see her, to go there.	*Il* ME	tarde *de la voir, d'y aller.*
Thou longest		*Il* TE	
He longs		*Il* LUI	
We long		*Il* NOUS	
You long		*Il* VOUS	
They long		*Il* LEUR	
My brother longs		*Il* tarde à mon frère *de la voir.*	

I did long	to see her, to go there.	*Il* ME	tardait *de la voir, d'y aller.*
Thou didst long		*Il* TE	
He did long		*Il* LUI	
We did long		*Il* NOUS	
You did long		*Il* VOUS	
They did long		*Il* LEUR	

I	longed, *did* long	to see her, to go there.	*Il* ME	tarda *de la voir, d'y aller.*
Thou			*Il* TE	
He			*Il* LUI	

I	*shall*	to see her, to go there.	*Il* ME	tardera *de la voir, d'y aller.*
Thou	*will long*		*Il* TE	
He			*Il* LUI	

I *should* long to see her, &c. *Il* ME tarderait *de la voir*

I.	1,	one.	**Un*, m. *Une*, f
II.	2,	two.	*Deux.*
III.	3,	three.	*Trois.*†
IV.	4,	four.	*Quatre.*
V.	5,	five.	*Cinq.*
VI.	6,	six.	*Six.*
VII.	7,	seven.	*Sept.*
VIII.	8,	eight.	*Huit.*
IX.	9,	nine.	*Neuf.*
X.	10,	ten.	*Dix.*
XI.	11,	eleven.	*Onze.*
XII.	12,	twelve.	*Douze.*
XIII.	13,	thirteen.	*Treize.*
XIV.	14,	fourteen.	*Quatorze.*
XV.	15,	fifteen.	*Quinze.*
XVI.	16,	sixteen.	*Seize.*
XVII.	17,	seventeen.	*Dix-sept.*
XVIII.	18,	eighteen.	*Dix-huit.*
XIX.	19,	nineteen.	*Dix-neuf.*
XX.	20,	twenty.	*Vingt.*
XXI.	21,	twenty-one.	*Vingt* et *un.*
XXII.	22,	twenty-two.	*Vingt-deux.*
XXIII.	23,	twenty-three.	*Vingt-trois.*
XXIV.	24,	twenty-four.	*Vingt-quatre.*
XXV.	25,	twenty-five.	*Vingt-cinq.*
XXVI.	26,	twenty-six.	*Vingt-six.*
XXVII.	27,	twenty-seven.	*Vingt-sept.*
XXVIII.	28,	twenty-eight.	*Vingt-huit.*
XXIX.	29,	twenty-nine.	*Vingt-neuf.*
XXX.	30,	thirty.	*Trente.*
XXXI.	31,	thirty-one.	*Trente* et *un.*
XXXII.	32,	thirty-two, &c.	*Trente-deux, &c.*
XXXIX.	39,	thirty-nine.	*Trente-neuf.*
XL.	40,	forty.	*Quarante.*
XLI.	41,	forty-one.	*Quarante* et *un.*
XLII.	42,	forty-two, &c.	*Quarante-deux, &c.*
XLIX.	49,	forty-nine.	*Quarante-neuf.*
L.	50,	fifty.	*Cinquante.*
LI.	51,	fifty-one.	*Cinquante* et *un.*
LII.	52,	fifty-two, &c.	*Cinquante-deux, &c.*
LIX.	59,	fifty-nine.	*Cinquante-neuf.*
LX.	60,	sixty.	*Soixante.*
LXI.	61,	sixty-one, &c.	*Soixante* et *un, &c.*
LXIX.	69,	sixty-nine.	*Soixante-neuf.*
LXX.	70,	seventy.	*Soixante-dix.*
LXXI.	71,	seventy-one.	*Soixante-onze.*

* These words are both *Articles* and *Substantives.*

Articles when prefixed to a noun; as, *Un* homme, *Une* femme; *Un* livre, *Deux* livres; *Trois* hommes; *Quatre* maisons; *Cinq* chevaux; *Dix* écus, &c.

Substantives when preceded by an article; as, *un* Deux; *un* Trois; *un* Quatre; *le* Deux *le* Trois, *le* Quatre, de janvier, de février, de cœur, de pique, &c. *des* Trois; *des* Quatro, &c.

† The chapter on pronunciation contains rules which shew how to pronounce all these words.

LXXII.	72,	seventy-two.	*Soixante-douze.*
LXXIII.	73,	seventy-three.	*Soixante-treize.*
LXXIV.	74,	seventy-four.	*Soixante-quatorze.*
LXXV.	75,	seventy-five.	*Soixante-quinze.*
LXXVI.	76,	seventy-six.	*Soixante-seize.*
LXXVII.	77,	seventy-seven.	*Soixante-dix-sept.*
LXXVIII.	78,	seventy-eight.	*Soixante-dix-huit.*
LXXIX.	79,	seventy-nine.	*Soixante-dix-neuf*
LXXX.	80,	eighty.	*Quatre-vingt.*
LXXXI.	81,	eighty-one.	*Quatre-vingt-un.*
LXXXII.	82,	eighty-two.	*Quatre-vingt-deux.*
LXXXIII.	83,	eighty-three.	*Quatre-vingt-trois*
LXXXIV.	84,	eighty-four.	*Quatre-vingt-quatre.*
LXXXV.	85,	eighty-five.	*Quatre-vingt-cinq.*
LXXXVI.	86,	eighty-six.	*Quatre-vingt-six.*
LXXXVII.	87,	eighty-seven.	*Quatre-vingt-sept.*
LXXXVIII.	88,	eighty-eight.	*Quatre-vingt-huit.*
LXXXIX.	89,	eighty-nine.	*Quatre-vingt-neuf.*
XC.	90,	ninety.	*Quatre-vingt-dix.*
XCI.	91,	ninety-one.	*Quatre-vingt-onze.*
XCII.	92,	ninety-two.	*Quatre-vingt-douze.*
XCIII.	93,	ninety-three.	*Quatre-vingt-treize.*
XCIV.	94,	ninety-four.	*Quatre-vingt-quatorze*
XCV.	95,	ninety-five.	*Quatre-vingt-quinze.*
XCVI.	96,	ninety-six.	*Quatre-vingt-seize.*
XCVII.	97,	ninety-seven.	*Quatre-vingt-dix-sept*
XCVIII.	98,	ninety-eight.	*Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.*
XCIX.	99,	ninety-nine.	*Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*
C.	100,	a hundred.	*Cent.*
CI.	101,	a hundred & one.*	*Cent un.*
CII.	102,	a hundred & two, &c	*Cent deux, &c.*
CX.	110,	a hundred & ten.	*Cent dix.*
CXX.	120,	a hundred & twenty.	*Cent vingt.*
CC.	200,	two hundred.	*Deux cents.*†
CCL.	250,	two hundred & fifty.	*Deux cent cinquante.*
CCC.	300,	three hundred.	*Trois cents.*
CM.	900,	nine hundred.	*Neuf cents.*
M.	1000,	a thousand.‡	*Mille.*
C.	100,	one hundred.	*Un cent.*
CC.	200,	two hundred.	*Deux cents.*
M.	1000,	one thousand.	*Un mille.*‡
MM.	2000,	two thousand.	*Deux mille.*

* The article *A*, and the conjunction *And*, are omitted with these numbers in french

† *Quatre-vingt* and *Cent*, followed by a noun *plural*, require *s*; as, *Quatre*-vingts *ans*, eighty years; *Deux* cents *hommes*, two hundred men; but not when they are followed by another number; as *Quatre*-vingt-dix *ans*; *Deux* cent cinquante *hommes*.

‡ In the date of the year, *One* is omitted, and *Thousand* is spelt *Mil*, not *Mille*; so we write 1819, *Mil* huit cent dix-neuf, not *Un mille* huit cent dix-neuf.

From the foregoing numbers are formed the *adjectives of number;*

1*st*,	the first.	le *Premier*, m. la *Première*, f.
2*nd*,	the second.	le *Second*, m. la *Seconde*, f. le *or* la *Deux*ième, *m.* and *f.**
3*rd*,	the third.	le *Trois*ième.
4*th*,	the fourth.	le *Quatr*ième.
5*th*,	the fifth.	le *Cinq*uième.
6*th*,	the sixth.	le *Six*ième.
7*th*,	the seventh.	le *Sept*ième.
8*th*,	the eighth.	le *Huit*ième.
9*th*,	the ninth.	le *Neuv*ième.
10*th*,	the tenth.	le *Dix*ième.
11*th*,	the eleventh.	le *Onz*ième, *or* l'*Onz*ième.
12*th*,	the twelfth.	le *Douz*ième.
13*th*,	the thirteenth.	le *Treiz*ième.
14*th*,	the fourteenth.	le *Quatorz*ième.
15*th*,	the fifteenth.	le *Quinz*ième.
16*th*,	the sixteenth.	le *Seiz*ième.
17*th*,	the seventeenth.	le *Dix-sept*ième.
18*th*,	the eighteenth.	le *Dix-huit*ième.
19*th*,	the nineteenth.	le *Dix-neuv*ième.
20*th*,	the twentieth.	le *Ving*tième.
21*st*,	the twenty-first.	le *Vingt-et-un*ième.
22*nd*,	the twenty-second.	le *Vingt-deux*ième.
23*rd*,	the twenty-third.	le *Vingt-trois*ième.
24*th*,	the twenty-fourth.	le *Vingt-quatr*ième.
25*th*,	the twenty-fifth.	le *Vingt-cinq*uième.
26*th*,	the twenty-sixth.	le *Vingt-six*ième.
27*th*,	the twenty-seventh.	le *Vingt-sept*ième.
28*th*	the twenty-eighth.	le *Vingt-huit*ième.
29*th*,	the twenty-ninth.	le *Vingt-neuv*ième.
30*th*,	the thirtieth.	le *Trent*ième.
31*st*,	the thirty-first.	le *Trente et un*ième.
32*nd*,	the thirty-second, &c.	le *Trente-deux*ième, and so on, by

adding *ième*, to the substantive numbers, *page* 176, 177.

Observe only, that in those ending in *e*, the *e* is left out; as, *Quatre*, *Quatr*ième; *Douze*, *Douz*ième; and in those ending in *f*, *the f* is changed into *v*, for softness of sound; as, *Neuf*, *Neuv*ième; *Dix-neuf*, *Dix-neuv*ième.

From the above adjectives are also formed the *numeral adverbs;*

1*stly*,	firstly.	*Premièr*ement.
2*ndly*,	secondly.	*Second*ement. *Deuxièm*ement.
3*rdly*,	thirdly.	*Troisièm*ement.
4*thly*,	fourthly.	*Quatrièm*ement.
5*thly*,	fifthly.	*Cinquièm*ement.
6*thly*,	sixthly.	*Sixièm*ement,

and so on, by adding *ment* to the above adjectives.

* *Second* and *Deuxième* are used indiscriminately, when they are followed by a noun; as, *Le second*, or *Le deuxième* jour; *La seconde*, or *La deuxième* semaine; but after another number, *Deuxième* alone can be used; so we could not say, Vingt *second;* Trente *second;* we must say, Vingt-*deuxième;* Trente-*deuxième*, *&c.*

THE SYNTAX,

CONTAINING

THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES

OF

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

WITH

PARTICULAR RULES

AND

EXCEPTIONS,

*NOT COMPRISED IN THE INTRODUCTION.**

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, like most of the living languages, is composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.†

* Some of the general rules contained in the introduction are repeated in the syntax, because they are necessary to connect the different rules together. But each part must be considered as a distinct work, designed for different persons. The introduction is intended for children, and for persons who, not being accustomed to the study of languages, could not at once comprehend such a multiplicity of rules. The syntax, which includes all the rules which are necessary to a perfect knowledge of the language, is intended for the same persons, after they are sufficiently grounded in the introductory rules, and for persons of a comprehensive mind, who have no need of an introduction.

† Ever since the art of speaking has been reduced into a system, grammarians, and the philosophers who have written on the subject, have differed upon the parts, or different species of words of which it is composed. Some argue that there are but two, the NOUN and the VERB, and assert that the rest are only corruptions or abbreviations of these; others add the ARTICLE and the CONJUNCTION; others the PRONOUN, and so on to the INTERJECTION. It does not belong to a production of this kind to inquire into these different opinions; and I have adopted the most prevalent, because it has appeared to me, that whether they be *words*, or only *abbreviations of words*, there are NINE sorts, which are subject to *different* rules.

Those who are desirous to see ingenious dissertations on this subject, may read HARRIS's *Hermes*, and TOOKE's *Diversions of Purley*.

CHAP. I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *substance* or *being*, either real, as *man, house, tree, &c.*; or ideal, as *god, heaven, glory, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is that which belongs only to *one being*; as, *John, the Thames, London, Paris, England, France, &c.**

A noun *common*, or *common* name, is that which belongs to *all beings* of the same kind; as, *man, woman, river, city, country, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honor*, and such like.

Two

* Though proper names should remain invariably the same in all languages, yet the French have given to the names of countries, and of some capital cities, names or terminations adapted to their own language; so, Asia is called *Asie;* Africa, *Afrique;* America, *Amérique;* England, *Angleterre;* Scotland, *Ecosse;* London, *Londres;* Spain, *Espagne;* Mexico, *Mexique;* Jamaica, *Jamaïque;* Italy, *Italie;* Tuscany, *Toscane;* Sardinia, *Sardaigne;* Sicily, *Sicile;* Leghorn, *Livourne;* Mantua, *Mantoue;* Geneva, *Genève;* Genoa, *Gênes;* Switzerland, *Suisse;* Germany, *Allemagne;* Hungary, *Hongrie;* Bohemia, *Bohême;* Vienna, *Vienne;* Poland, *Pologne;* Warsaw, *Varsovie;* Cracow, *Cracovie;* Russia, *Russie;* Prussia, *Prusse;* Sweden, *Suède, &c.* for which no rule can be given; but as they are single words, and are generally found in the dictionaries, when they have been seen once or twice, they are easily retained.

The names of persons, derived from the living languages, do not vary; so, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, are in french, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, as in english; but the names of persons, derived from the greek and latin languages, generally change their terminations, agreeably to the following rules.

Names ending in *al, ar, or, is, os, on*, do not vary; as, *Annibal, Adherbal, Cæsar, Hamilcar, Mentor, Nestor, Adonis, Sésostris, Minos, Atropos, Damon, Solon, &c.* nor the names of men ending in *a*, as, *Numa, Nerva, Sylla, Agrippa, Dolabella*; except *Seneca*, which is *Sénéque*.

The finals *as* and *es*, are changed into *e*: as, Pythagoras, *Pythagore;* Mecenas, *Mécène;* Eneas, *Enée;* Socrates, *Socrate;* Demosthenes, *Demosthène, &c.*; except *Agésilas, Léonidas, Pélopidas, Phidias, Pythias, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Eudamidas, Calchas, Olympias, Cérès, Xerxes, Périclès*, and a few others not often met with.

The finals *us* and *ius*, are also generally changed into *e*; as, Augustus, *Auguste;* Titus *Tite;* Tiberius, *Tibère;* Julius Cæsar, *Jules César;* Tacitus, *Tacite;* Virgilius, *Virgile;* Horatius, *Horace;* Eolus, *Eole;* Œdipus, *Oedipe;* except *Appius, Bacchus, Brutus, Cincinnatus, Claudius, Crœsus, Cyrus, Darius, Decius, Dentatus, Gallus, Germanicus, Janus, Junius, Manlius, Marius, Ménénius, Métellus, Mutius, Papirius, Plautius, Pompilius, Porus, Pyrrhus, Rémus, Romulus, Silvius, Valerius, Vénus, Tullus*, and a few others not frequently met with; and *Coriolanus, Tarquinius*, which lose the finals *us, ius;* thus, *Coriolan, Tarquin*.

Nouns in *chus*, change *chus* into *que;* as, Telemachus, *Télémaque;* Lysimachus, *Lysimaque;* Gracchus, *Gracque;* except *Antiochus*.

Nouns ending in *o* take the addition of *n*; as, Cato, *Caton;* Cicero, *Cicéron;* Scipio, *Scipion*, Plato, *Platon;* Apollo, *Apollon;* Pluto, *Pluton;* Juno, *Junon;* Dido, *Didon* except *Calypso, Clio, Clotho, Sapho. Echo.*

The final *der* is changed into *dre;* as, Alexander, *Alexandre;* Lysander, *Lysandre*.

Names of women ending in *a*, change *a* into *e mute*; as, Julia, *Julie;* Amelia, *Amélie;* Agrippina, *Agrippine;* Cleopatra, *Cléopâtre;* Minerva, *Minerve, &c.*

Those ending in *e, é*, retain their termination; as, *Cybèle, Melpomène, Circé, Cloé, Daphné, Hébé, Thisbé;* except the following, in which the French do not sound the final *e*; *Ariadne, Eurydice, Pénélope*.

Two things are to be considered in nouns; the *gender* and the *number*.

The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

The french language admits of *two genders* only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being;* by *feminine*, the *female*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, commonly called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine*, or *feminine*, in french, according to custom.*

There

* The *difference of* gender is generally known by the *termination* of the noun.

	Nouns of the following *Terminations* are MASCULINE.	Nouns of the following *Terminations* are FEMININE.
A.	un Opéra, *an opera;* un Sopha, *a sopha;* du Quinquina, *peruvian bark.*	
AT	*sounded* A; as, un Plat, *a dish;* un Combat, *a battle.*	
B.	du Plomb, *lead;* le Radoub, *refitting;* un Rumb, *a point of the compass.*	
C.	le Bec, *the beak;* du Suc, *gravy*, du Porc, *pork;* du Tabac, *tobacco.*	
D.	du Lard, *bacon;* du Fard, *paint;* un Regard, *a look;* le Hasard, *chance.*	
É	*preceded by any letter but* T; du Blé, *corn;* un Pré, *a meadow;* un Congé, *a holiday;* du Café, *coffee.* *Except* l'Amitié, *friendship;* la Moitié, *the half;* la Pitié, *pity.*	TÉ. la Liberté, *liberty;* la Santé, *health;* la Beauté, *beauty;* la Bonté, *goodness*, la Majesté, *majesty;* la Divinité, *divinity.* *Except* l'Eté, *summer;* un Comté, *a county*, le Côté, *the side;* un Pâté, *a pie;* un Comité, *a committee;* un Traité, *a treaty, a treatise;* du Thé, *some tea.*
ER	*sounded* E; as, un Baiser, *a kiss;* le Danger, *danger;* un Métier, *a trade;* un Panier, *a basket.*	
AI.	*sounded* É; as, un Geai, *a jay;* un Balai, *a broom*, un Essai, *an essay;* un Délai, *a delay.*	
AIT, ET	*sounded* É; as, un Fait, *a fact;* un Portrait, *a picture;* un Sujet, *a subject;* un Objet, *an object.*	
F.	un Nerf, *a sinew;* un Œuf, *an egg;* du Bœuf, *beef;* du Suif, *tallow.* *Except* une Clef, *a key;* la Soif, *thirst;* la Nef, *the body of a church.*	
G.	le Rang, *rank;* le Sang, *the blood;* un Etang, *a pond;* un hareng, *a herring.*	
I.	un Etui, *a case;* un Défi, *a challenge;* un Lit, *a bed:* un Habit, *a coat.* *Except* une Fourmi, *an ant;* la Nuit, *night.*	
OI.	un Envoi, *an invoice;* un Convoi, *a convoy;* un Emploi, *an employ;* le Doigt, *the finger.* *Except* la Foi, *faith;* la Loi, *law.*	
L.	un Mal, *an evil;* le Travail, *labour;* un Hôtel, *a hotel;* le Sommeil, *sleep.*	
M.	le Nom, *the name;* le Parfum, *perfume;* du Thym, *thyme.* *Except* la Faim, *hunger*	

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural.*

A noun is *singular*, when we speak of *one being only;* as, a book, *un livre;* a house, *une maison;* a tree, *un arbre;* a ship, *un navire, &c.*

A noun

MASCULINE *Terminations.*

N. *All the terminations in* N *which are not* ION, *or* SON *soft*, i. e. *sounded* ZON, *viz.*

AN. du Bran, *bran;* du Safran, *saffron.*

ANT, ENT *sounded* AN; as, un Diamant, *a diamond;* un Présent, *a present;* le Vent, *the wind. Except* une Dent, *a tooth.*

AIN. du Pain, *bread;* un Bain, *a bath. Exc.* la Main, *the hand.*

IN, EIN *sounded* AIN; as, du Vin, *some wine;* le Matin, *morning;* le Sein, *the bosom;* le Teint, *the complexion. Except* la Fin, *the end.*

OIN. le Soin, *care;* un Coin, *a corner.*

IEN. un Lien, *a tie;* du Bien, *wealth.*

CON. un Balcon, *a balcony;* un Flacon, *a decanter.*

LON. un Violon, *a violin;* un Papillon, *a butterfly.*

SSON. un Buisson, *a bush;* du Poisson, *fish. Except* la Moisson, *the harvest;* la Boisson, *drink;* une Chanson, *a song.*

ÇON. un Hameçon, *a fish-hook;* un Limaçon, *a snail. Except* une Leçon, *a lesson;* une Rançon, *a ransom;* la Façon, *the making.*

TON. un Bâton, *a stick;* un Bouton, *a button.*

O. un Echo, *an echo;* un Duo, *a duet.*

OT *sounded* O; as, un Mot, *a word;* un Complot, *a plot;* un Pot, *a pot;* un Gigot, *a leg of mutton.*

EAU *sounded* O; as, un Couteau, *a knife;* un Chapeau, *a hat. Except* l'Eau, *water;* la Peau, *the skin.*

P. un Cap, *a cape;* un Cep, *a stock of a vine;* un Champ, *a field;* le Galop, *the gallop.*

Q. un Cinq, *a five;* un Coq, *a cock.*

R. *All the terminations in* R, *which are not* EUR.

AIR. l'Air, *the air;* un Eclair, *a flash of lightning. Except* la Chair, *the flesh.*

ER. le Fer, *iron;* l'Enfer, *hell. Except* la Mer, *the sea;* une Cuiller, *a spoon.*

IR. le Désir, *desire;* le Plaisir, *pleasure.*

OIR. le Soir, *evening;* un Mouchoir, *a handkerchief.*

OR. l'Or, *gold;* un Trésor, *a treasure.*

ORD ORT, *sounded* OR; as, le Bord, *the border;* un Fort, *a fort;* le Sort, *fate. Except* la Mort, *death.*

OUR. le Jour, *the day;* un Tour, *a trick. Except* la Cour, *the court, the yard;* une Tour, *a tower.*

FEMININE *Terminations.*

ION. une Action, *an action;* une Caution, *a bail;* une Portion, *a portion.*

Except un Bastion, *a bastion;* un Crayon, *a pencil;* un Rayon, *a ray;* un Pion, *a man at drafts;* le Talion, *retaliation;* un Scorpion, *a scorpion;* le Septentrion, *the north;* le Croupion, *the rump of fowls and birds;* un Million, *a million.*

SON, ZON. une Maison, *a house;* la Raison, *reason;* la Saison, *the season.*

Except le Gazon, *turf;* du Poison, *poison;* un Tison, *a firebrand;* un Oison, *a gosling* l'Horizon, *the horizon;* le Blason, *heraldry*

EUR. la Peur, *fear;* la Chaleur, *heat;* une Fleur, *a flower;* la Couleur, *colour.*

Except le Bonheur, *luck, happiness;* le Malheur, *misfortune;* l'Honneur, *honour;* le Déshonneur, *dishonour;* le Cœur, *the heart;* l'Equateur, *the equator;* l'Intérieur, *the interior;* l'Extérieur, *the exterior.*

Except also the nouns in EUR, *which belong only to persons; as,* un Auteur, *an author;* un Docteur, *a doctor; &c.*

See also, page 189, *how some* nouns feminine *are formed from the* masculine, *in the same manner as* adjectives, *by changing the* termination.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one.*

N. B. The plural is generally formed in french, as in english, by adding *s* to the singular; as, *des livres*, books; *des maisons*, houses, *&c.*

Nouns

	MASCULINE *Terminations.*	FEMININE *Terminations.*
S.	le Bras, *the arm*; le Repos, *repose*; du Bois, *wood*; le Succès, *success*; *Except* une Brebis, *a sheep*; une Souris, *a mouse*; une Vis, *a screw*; Fois, *time.*	
T.	un Plat, *a dish*; un Lit, *a bed*; le Vent, *the wind*; un Accident, *an accident.* *Exc.* une Part, *a share*; une Forêt, *a forest*; la Nuit, *night*; une Dot, *a dowery*; une Dent, *a tooth*; la Mort, *death.*	
U.	un Ecu, *a crown*; un Fétu, *a straw.* *Except* la Vertu, *virtue*; une Tribu, *a tribe*; de la Glu, *bird-lime.*	
UT	*sounded* U; as, le But, *the aim*; le Scorbut, *the scurvy.*	
EU.	le Feu, *fire*; un Lieu, *a place.*	
OU.	un Trou, *a hole*; un Chou, *a cabbage.*	
X.	un Faix, *a burthen*; le Choix, *choice.* *Except* la Paix, *peace*; la Voix, *the voice*; une Noix, *a nut*; de la Poix, *pitch*; une Croix, *a cross*; la Toux, *cough*; une Perdrix, *a partridge*; une Faux, *a scythe.*	

From the above rules it appears that nouns *ending* with a *consonant*, or *any vowel* but *e mute*, are generally *masculine*; but there is a great number of nouns *ending* in *e mute*, part of which are *masculine*, and part *feminine*, which can not be reduced to such certain rules *

GENERAL RULES.

All NAMES of COUNTRIES *ending* with *e mute* are *feminine*; as, la France, *France*; la Hollande, *Holland*; l'Angleterre, *England*; la Suisse, *Switzerland*, *&c. except* le Mexique, *Mexico.* Those ending with any *other vowel*, as *Canada*, *Chili*, *Pérou*, *&c.*, or with a *consonant*, *as Danemark*, *Portugal*, *Japon*, *&c.* are masculine.

Ée
Ie.
Ue.

All COMMON NAMES *ending* in *e mute*, *preceded* by another *vowel*, are *feminine*; as, une Epée, *a sword*; une Armée, *an army*; une Guinée, *a guinea*; la Vie, *life*; la Rue, *the street*; la Vue, *the sight*; la Joie, *joy*; la Joue, *the cheek*; la Pluie, *rain*, *&c.*

Except le Foie, *the liver*; un Incendie, *a conflagration*; le Génie, *genius*; le Messie, *the messiah*; un Parapluie, *an umbrella*; un Trophée, *a trophy*; un Pygmée, *a pigmy*; le Caducée, *caduceus*; l'Hyménée, *hymen*; un Mausolée, *a mausoleum*; and nouns *ending* in GUE and QUE, which are subject to a particular rule. See GUE, QUE.

PARTICULAR RULES.

BE. There are *Thirty-four* nouns *ending* in BE, *Eleven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Adverbe, *an adverb*;	un Proverbe, *a proverb*;	*Twenty-three* other nouns ending in BE are *feminine.*
un Cube, *a cube*;	un Tube, *a tube*;	
un Globe, *a globe*;	un Téorbe, *a theorb*;	
un Orbe, *an orb*;	un Verbe, *a verb*;	

* *The discrimination between the genders of nouns is a difficulty which the learner finds hard to overcome. In order to attain it, he must consider the greatest number of words of each termination which are either masculine or feminine, as a general rule, and retain as many words of the exception as he can. Besides this, when he reads a french author, he must pay particular attention to the article which precedes each noun, and consider it as its necessary appendage. By these means the difficulty will insensibly lessen, and his mistakes will be but few. Not to overload his memory with a multiplicity of words, I have omitted in the list of nouns given as exceptions, those which are either obsolete or little used.*

Nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, are the same in the plural; as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts.

Nouns

	MASCULINE *Terminations.*	FEMININE *Terminations.*	
CE	There are *Three hundred* nouns ending in CE, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Appendice, *an appendix*;	un Indice, *an indication*;	*Two hundred and sixty-six* other nouns ending in CE are *feminine*.
	un Armistice, *an armistice*;	le Négoce, *traffic*;	
	un Artifice, *an artifice*;	un Office, *an office*;	
	un Auspice, *an auspice*;	un Orifice, *an orifice*;	
	un Bénéfice, *a benefit*;	le Pouce, *the thumb*;	
	un Calice, *a chalice*;	un Précipice, *a precipice*;	
	le Caprice, *caprice*;	le Préjudice, *injury*;	
	un Cilice, *a hair-cloth*;	un Sacrifice, *a sacrifice*;	
	le Commerce, *commerce*;	un Service, *a service*;	
	le Délice, *delight*;	le Silence, *silence*;	
	un Edifice, *an edifice*;	le Solstice, *the solstice*;	
	un Exercice, *an exercise*;	le Supplice, *punishment*,	
	le Frontispice, *frontispiece*;	le Vice, *vice*.	
DE.	There are *Two hundred* nouns ending in DE, *Twenty-seven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Camarade, *a companion*;	le Monde, *the world*;	*One hundred and seventy-three* other nouns ending in DE are *feminine*.
	un Code, *a code*;	un Période, *a period of time*;	
	le Coude, *the elbow*;	un Remède, *a remedy*;	
	un Fluide, *a fluid*;	un Sphéroide, *a spheroid*;	
	un Grade, *a degree*;	un Subside, *a subsidy*;	
	un Guide, *a guide*;	le Suicide, *suicide*;	
	un Mode, *a mode*;	le Vide, *Vacuum*.	
FE. PHE.	There are *Twenty* nouns ending in FE, PHE, *Eight* of which are *masculine*; they are,		
	un Golfe, *a gulph*;	un Parafe, *a paraph*;	*Twelve* other nouns ending in FE, PHE, are *feminine*.
	un Greffe, *a court register*;	un Paragraphe, *a paragraph*;	
	un Hiéroglyphe, *a hieroglyph*;	un Triomphe, *a triumph*;	
	un Logogriphe, *a riddle*;	un Télégraphe, *a telegraph*;	
GE.	There are *Eighty* nouns ending in GE, *Thirty-two* of which are *masculin*; the most commonly used are,		
	un ange, *an angel*;	un Mensonge, *a lie*;	*Forty-eight* other nouns ending in GE are *feminine*.
	un archange, *an archangel*;	un Prestige, *a prestige*;	
	le Change, *the 'change*;	un Privilège, *a privilege*;	
	un Cierge, *a taper*;	un Prodige, *a prodigy*;	
	un Collége, *a college*;	un Rechange, *a change*;	
	un Cortége, *a retinue*;	un Refuge, *a refuge*;	
	le Déluge, *the deluge*;	un Sacrilége, *a sacrilege*;	
	un Echange, *an exchange*;	un Siége, *a seat, a siege*;	
	un Eloge, *an encomium*;	un Singe, *an ape*;	
	du Liége, *cork*;	un Songe, *a dream*;	
	du Linge, *linen*;	un Subterfuge, *a subterfuge*;	
	le Manége, *riding school*;	un Vertige, *a giddiness*;	
	un Mélange, *a mixture*;	un Vestige, *a track*.	
AGE.	All nouns ending in AGE are *masculine*; as,		
	un Avantage, *an advantage*;	le Mariage, *marriage*;	*Except* une Cage, *a cage*; une Image, *an image*; la Nage, *swimming*; une Page, *a page*; la Plage, *a poetical word for sea*; la Rage, *rage*.
	un Badinage, *a joke*;	le Ménage, *housekeeping*;	
	un Bocage, *a grove*;	un Orage, *a storm*;	
	le Courage, *courage*;	un Ouvrage, *a work*;	
	du Fromage, *some cheese*;	le Rivage, *the shore*;	
	le Jardinage, *gardening*;	le Veuvage, *widowhood*;	
	un Hermitage, *an hermitage*;	le Visage, *the face, &c.*	

Nouns ending in *u* take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number; as, *chapeau*, hat; *chapeaux*, hats; *chou*, cabbage; *choux*, cabbages; *lieu*, place; *lieux*, places; *feu*, fire; *feux*, fires; *jeu*, game; *jeux*, games, *&c.*

Except

	MASCULINE *Terminations.*		FEMININE *Terminations.*
GUE.	There are *Thirty-five* nouns ending in GUE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Catalogue, *a catalogue*;	un Dogue, *a bull-dog*;	*Twenty-three* other nouns ending in GUE are *feminine.*
	le Décalogue, *the decalogue*;	un Orgue, *an organ*;	
	un Dialogue, *a dialogue*;	le Prologue, *the prologue*;	
CHE.	There are *One hundred* nouns ending in CHE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Acrostiche, *an acrostic*;	un Panache, *a plume*;	*Eighty-eight* other nouns ending in CHE are *feminine.*
	le Coche, *the stage coach*;	du Ponche, *punch*;	
	un Dimanche, *a sunday*;	un Prêche, *a dissenting sermon*;	
	un Hémistiche, *an hemistich*;	un Reproche, *a reproach*;	
	un Manche, *a handle*;	un Tournebroche, *a jack*;	une Manche, *a sleeve.*
LE.	There are *Four hundred* nouns ending in LE, *One hundred* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Aigle, *an eagle*;	un Obstacle, *an obstacle*;	*Three hundred* other nouns ending in LE are *feminine.*
	un Angle, *an angle*;	un Ongle, *a nail*;	
	un Article, *an article*;	un Oracle, *an oracle*;	
	un Asile, *an asylum*;	le Parallèle, *the parallel*;	
	un Buffle, *a buffalo*;	un Pécule, *spare money*;	
	un Câble, *a cable*;	un Pendule, *a pendulum*;	une Pendule, *a clock.*
	le Capitole, *the capitol*;	le Peuple, *the people*;	
	le Centuple, *the centuple*;	un Poële, *a stove*;	une Poële, *a fryingpan.*
	un Cercle, *a circle*;	le Pôle, *the pole*;	
	du Chèvre-feuille, *woodbine*;	un Portefeuille, *a portfolio*;	
	le Chyle, *the chyle*;	le Préambule, *the preamble*;	
	le Comble, *the top*;	un Quadrangle, *a quadrangle*;	
	un Concile, *a council*;	le Quadrille, *quadril*;	
	le Contrôle, *the control*;	le Quadruple, *quadruple*;	
	un Couvercle, *a lid*;	un Réceptacle, *a receptacle*;	
	le Crépuscule, *the twilight*;	un Rôle, *a roll, the part of an actor*;	
	un Crible, *a sieve*;	le Sable, *the sand*;	
	un Crocodile, *a crocodile*;	un Saule, *a willow*;	
	le Diable, *the devil*;	le Scandale, *scandal*;	
	un Disciple, *a disciple*;	le Scrupule, *the scruple*;	
	un Domicile, *a domicil*;	du Seigle, *rye*;	
	le Double, *the double*;	un Siècle, *an age*;	
	un Drôle, *a fellow*;	le Symbole, *the symbol*;	
	l' Evangile, *the gospel*;	le Souffle, *the breath*;	
	un Exemple, *an example*;	un Spectacle, *a spectacle*;	
	du Girofle, *clove-spice*;	le Style, *the style*;	
	le Hâle, *the burning sun*;	le Tabernacle, *the tabernacle*;	
	un Intervalle, *an interval*,	un Temple, *a temple*;	
	un Libelle, *a libel*;	le Trèfle, *trefoil*;	
	un Maroufle, *a scoundrel*;	le Tremble, *the asp tree*;	
	un Merle, *a blackbird*;	le Triple, *the treble*;	
	le Meuble, *the furniture*;	le Trouble, *disturbance*;	
	un Mille, *a mile*;	un Vaudeville, *a ballad*;	
	un Miracle, *a miracle*;	un Vestibule, *a vestibule*;	
	un Modèle, *a model*;	un Vignoble, *a vineyard*;	
	un Monopole, *a monopoly*,	un Violoncelle, *a violoncello*;	
	un Moule, *a mould*;	un Voile, *a veil*;	une Voile, *a sail.*
	le Mufle, *the muzzle*,	le Zèle, *the zeal.*	
	un Muscle, *a muscle*;		

Except *clou*, nail; écrou, screw; *verrou*, bolt; *fou*, mad; *filou*, sharper; *trou*, hole; *sou*, penny; *matou*, tom cat; and *individu*, individual; which require *s* for their plural, *clous*, nails; écrous, screws; *verrous*, bolts; *fous*, mad people; *filous*, *&c.*

Nouns

	MASCULINE *Terminations.*	FEMININE *Terminations.*
ME.	There are *One hundred* and *seventy-two* nouns ending in ME, *Forty-three* of which are *feminine*; the most commonly used are,	
One hundred and *twenty-nine* other nouns ending in ME are *masculine.*	l' Ame, *the soul*;	la Gourme, *the strangles*;
	une Arme, *an arm*;	un Idiotisme, *an idiom.*
	la Brume, *the fog*;	la Lame, *the blade*;
	la Cime, *the top*;	une Larme, *a tear*;
	la Coutume, *the custom*;	la Légitime, *a child's portion*,
	la Crème, *cream*;	une Lime, *a file*;
	la Dîme, *the tithe*;	une Maxime, *a maxim*:
	l' Ecume, *the foam*;	la Paume, *the palm, tennis*;
	une Enclume, *an anvil*;	une Plate-forme, *a platform*;
	une Enigme, *an enigma*;	une Plume, *a pen*;
	une Epigramme, *an epigram*;	une Pomme, *an apple*
	l' Escrime, *fencing*;	la Prime, *the prime*;
	l' Estime, *esteem*;	une Rame, *an oar, a ream*;
	une Ferme, *a farm*;	la Réforme, *the reform*;
	la Flamme, *the flame*;	la Rime, *the rhyme*;
	la Forme, *the form*;	une Somme, *a sum*;
	la Gamme, *the gamut*;	la Trame, *the thread*;
	la Gomme, *gum*;	une Victime, *a victim.*

NE.	There are *Two hundred* and *forty-six* nouns in NE, *Thirty* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	de l'Antimoine, *antimony*;	le Jeûne, *fasting*;	*Two hundred* and *sixteen* other nouns ending in NE are *feminine*
	un Aune, *an elder*;	un Organe, *an organ*;	
	l' Automne, *autumn*;	le Patrimoine, *patrimony*;	
	le Capricorne, *the capricorn*;	un Peigne, *a comb*;	
	un Cerne, *a magical ring*;	le Pêne, *the bolt of a lock*;	
	un Chêne, *an oak*;	un Pentagone, *a pentagon*;	
	un Cygne, *a swan*,	un Phénomène, *a phenomenon*;	
	un Cône, *a cone*;	un Polygone, *a polygon*;	
	le Crâne, *the scull*;	un Prône, *a sermon*;	
	un Décagone, *a decagon*;	le Règne, *the reign*;	
	un Domaine, *a domain*;	un Renne, *a rein deer*;	
	un Faune, *a faun*;	un Signe, *a sign*;	
	du Filigrane, *filigree*;	un Trône, *a throne.*	
	un Frêne, *an ash tree*;		

PE.	There are *Sixty-eight* nouns ending in PE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Groupe, *a group*;	un Participe, *a participle*;	*Fifty-six* other nouns ending in PE are *feminine.*
	un Horoscope, *a horoscope*;	un Polype, *a polypus*;	
	du Jaspe, *jasper*;	un Principe, *a principle*;	
	un Microscope, *a microscope*;	un Télescope, *a telescope.*	

QUE.	There are *One hundred* nouns ending in QUE, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,		
	un Astérisque, *an asterisk*;	le Panégyrique, *panegyric*;	*Sixty-six* other nouns ending in QUE are *feminine.*
	un Cantique, *a canticle*;	le Pentateuque, *the pentateuch*;	
	un Casque, *a cask*;	un Portique, *a portico*;	
	un Caustique, *a caustic*;	le Risque, *the risk*;	
	un Cirque, *a circus*;	un Soliloque, *a soliloquy*;	
	un Disque, *a disk*;	un Spécifique, *a specific*;	
	un Emétique, *an emetic*;	le Tropique, *the tropic*;	
	un Obélisque, *an obelisk*;	le Viatique, *viaticum*;	
	un Manque, *a want*;	le Zodiaque, *the zodiac.*	
	un Masque, *a mask*		

Nouns ending in *al*, *ail*, change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal*, evil; *maux*, evils; *cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *canal*, canal; *canaux*, canals; *travail*, labour; *travaux*, labours.

Except

MASCULINE *Terminations.* FEMININE *Terminations.*

RE. There are *Six hundred* and *thirty-two* nouns ending in RE, *Two hundred* and *twenty-three* of which are *masculine;* the most commonly used are,

un Adultère, *an adultery;*
l' Albâtre, *alabaster;*
l' Ambre, *amber;*
un Amphithéâtre, *an amphitheatre;*
un Anniversaire, *an anniversary;*
un Antre, *a den;*
un Arbre, *a tree;*
un Artère, *an artery;*
un Astre, *a star;*
l' Atmosphère, *the atmosphere;*
un Atre, *an hearth;*
un Auditoire, *an auditory;*
un Augure, *an omen;*
du Babeurre, *buttermilk:*
du Beurre, *butter;*
un Baromètre, *a barometer;*
le Bien-être, *happy state;*
un Cadavre, *a corpse;*
un Cadre, *a frame;*
le Calibre, *the bore;*
du Camphre, *camphire;*
un Cancre, *a crab;*
un Candélabre, *a chandelier;*
le Caractère, *the character;*
un Cédre, *a cedar;*
le Centre, *the centre;*
un Chancre, *a shanker;*
du Chanvre, *hemp;*
un Chapitre, *a chapter;*
un Chef-d'œuvre, *a masterpiece;*
un Chiffre, *a figure;*
du Cidre, *cider;*
un Cylindre, *a cylinder;*
un Cimeterre, *a cimeter;*
un Cimetière, *a church yard;*
un Cintre, *an arch;*
un Clystère, *a glister;*
un Coffre, *a chest;*
un Commentaire, *a commentary;*
un Concombre, *a cucumber;*
un Congre, *a conger;*
un Corollaire, *a corollary;*
le Contraire, *the contrary;*
un Corsaire, *a corsair;*
du Cuivre, *copper;*
le Décombre, *the rubbish;*
le Délire, *delirium;*
un Dépositaire, *a depositary;*
le Derrière, *the back part;*
un Désastre, *a disaster;*
le Désordre, *the disorder;*
le Diamètre, *the diameter;*
un Dictionnaire, *a dictionary;*

le Directoire, *the directory;*
un Douaire, *a dowery;*
un Empire, *an empire;*
un Emplâtre, *a plaster;*
l' Equilibre, *the equilibrium;*
un Etre, *a being;*
un Exemplaire, *a copy of a book;*
un Fiacre, *a hackney coach;*
un Fifre, *a fife;*
un Formulaire, *a formulary;*
du Genièvre, *juniper;*
le Genre, *the gender;*
du Gingembre, *ginger;*
un Gouffre, *a gulf;*
un Havre, *a harbour;*
l' Hémisphère, *the hemisphere;*
un Hêtre, *a beech tree;*
un Inventaire, *an inventory;*
un Interrogatoire, *an interrogatory*
de l'Ivoire, *ivory;*
un Laboratoire, *a laboratory,*
du Lierre, *ivy;*
un Lièvre, *a hare;*
un Livre, *a book;* ..... une Livre, *a pound.*
le Lustre, *the lustre;*
un Luminaire, *a luminary;*
le Maigre, *the lean;*
du Marbre, *marble;*
le Martyre, *martyrdom;*
un Massacre, *a massacre;*
un Membre, *a limb;*
un Mémoire, *a memorial;* ..... la Mémoire, *memory*
du Mercure, *mercury;*
un Météore, *a meteor;*
un Meurtre, *a murder,*
le Ministère, *the ministry;*
un Mystère, *a mystery;*
un Monastère, *a monastery;*
un Monstre, *a monster;*
un Murmure, *a murmur;*
un Missionnaire, *a missionary;*
un Navire, *a ship;*
le Nécessaire, *the necessaries:*
un Nègre, a *negro;*
un Nombre, *a number:*
un Observatoire, *an observatory;*
un Opprobre, *a reproach;*
un Orchestre, *an orchestre;*
un Ordinaire, *an ordinary;*
un Ordre, *an order;*
le Parterre, *the pit of a playhouse*
un Pâtre, *a herdsman;*
un Phare, *a lighthouse;*

Four hundred and *nine* other nouns ending in RE are *feminine.*

du Phosphore,

Except *bal*, ball; *détail*, detail; *épouvantail*, bugbear; *éventail*, fan; *gouvernail*, rudder; *portail*, portal; *sérail*, seraglio; the plural of which is formed by adding *s* to the singular; *bals*, balls; *détails*, details; *épouvantails*

	MASCULINE *Terminations.*		FEMININE *Terminations.*
RE.	du Phosphore, *phosphorus*;	le Sommaire, *the compendium*;	*Four hundred* and *nine* other nouns ending in RE are *feminine.*
	du Plâtre, *plaster*;	du Souffre, *brimstone*;	
	du Poivre, *pepper*;	du Sucre, *sugar*;	
	un Pore, *a pore*;	un Tertre, *a hillock*;	
	les Préliminaires, *preliminaries*;	un Territoire, *a territory*;	
	un Presbytère, *a parsonage house*;	un Théâtre, *a theatre*;	
	un Promontoire, *a promontory*;	un Thermomètre, *a thermometer*;	
	un Pupitre, *a desk*;	un Timbre, *a clock bell*;	
	le Purgatoire, *purgatory*;	un Tire-bourre, *screw of a ramrod*;	
	un Réfectoire, *an eatingroom*,	un Titre, *a title*;	
	un Registre, *a register*;	le Tonnerre, *thunder*;	
	un Repaire, *a den*;	un Ulcère, *an ulcer*;	
	un Réverbère, *a reflector*;	le Ventre, *the belly*;	
	un Sabre, *a sabre*;	un Vertèbre, *a vertebra*;	
	le Sacre, *the coronation*;	un Verre, *a glass*;	
	du Salpêtre, *saltpetre*;	un Vésicatoire, *a blister*;	
	un Sanctuaire, *a sanctuary*;	du Vinaigre, *vinegar*;	
	un Sceptre, *a sceptre*;	un Vocabulaire, *a vocabulary*;	
	un Secrétaire, *a secretary*;	un Vomitoire, *a vomit*;	
	un Séminaire, *a seminary*;	le Vulgaire, *the vulgar*;	
	un Sépulcre, *a sepulchre*;	un Vulnéraire, *a vulnerary*.	
	un Séquestre, *a sequestration*;		

SE. There are *Two hundred* and *fifty* nouns ending in SE, *Fourteen* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

l' Aise, *ease*;	un Narcisse, *a narcissus*;	*Two hundred* and *thirty-six* other nouns ending in SE are *feminine.*
un Carrosse, *a coach*;	le Parnasse, *parnassus*;	
un Colosse, *a colossus*;	un Thyrse, *a thyrsis*;	
un Diocèse, *a diocess*;	un Trapèze, *a trapezium*;	
le Malaise, *uneasiness*;	un Vase, *a vessel*.	

TE. There are *Three hundred* and *seventy-five* nouns in TE, *Thirty-nine* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,

un Acte, *an act*;	un Geste, *a gesture*;	*Three hundred* and *thirty-six* other nouns ending in TE are *feminine.*
un Antidote, *an antidote*,	un Gîte, *the seat of a hare*;	
un Arbuste, *a shrub*;	un Inceste, *an incest*;	
un Aromate, *an aromatic*;	un Insecte, *an insect*;	
un Automate, *an automaton*;	un Labyrinthe, *a labyrinth*;	
un Buste, *a bust*;	un Manifeste, *a manifesto*;	
un Cassetête, *a puzzlebrain*;	un Mécompte, *a misreckoning*;	
un Ceste, *a cestus*;	le Mérite, *merit*;	
un Compte, *an account*;	un Myrte, *a myrtle*;	
un Conte, *a tale*;	l' Omoplate, *the omoplate*;	
un Contraste, *a contrast*;	un Pacte, *a pact*;	
le Culte, *the worship*;	un Poste, *a station*;	la Poste, *post office.*
un Décompte, *a discount*;	un Précepte, *a precept*;	
le Démérite, *demerit*;	un Prétexte, *a pretext*;	
le Doute, *the doubt*;	le Reste, *the rest*;	
un Entr'acte, *an interlude*;	un Squelette, *a skeleton*;	
l' Escompte, *the discount*;	le Texte, *the text*;	
le Faîte, *the top*;	un Tirebotte, *a bootjack*;	
le Faste, *pomp*;	le Tumulte, *tumult*.	

NE. There are *Forty-two* nouns ending in VE, *Four* of which are *masculine*,

un Conclave, *a conclave*;	un Glaive, *a sword*;	*Thirty-eight* other nouns ending in VE are *feminine.*
un Fleuve, *a river*;	un Rêve, *a dream*.	

epouvantails, bugbears; *éventails*, fans; *gouvernails*, rudders; *portails*, portals; *sérails*, seraglios; and *bétail*, cattle, the plural of which is *bestiaux*.

MASCULINE *Terminations.* FEMININE *Terminations.*

XE. There are *Ten* nouns ending in XE, *Five* of which are *masculine*.

un Axe, *an axis*; un Paradoxe, *a paradox*; l' Equinoxe, *the equinox*; le Sexe, *the sex*; le Luxe, *luxury*; } The other *Five* nouns ending in XE are *feminine*.

ZE. There are *Two* nouns ending in ZE, *One* of which is *masculine*, viz. du Bronze, *bronze*. One *fem.* viz. de la Gaze, *gauze*.

Some nouns *feminine* are formed in the same manner as the *feminine* of *adjectives*, by adding *e mute* to the *masculine*, or by changing the *termination*; these are;

1st. The nouns denoting *trade, profession, business, &c.* as,

un Acteur,	*an actor*;	une Actrice,	*an actress.*
un Berger,	*a shepherd*,	une Bergère,	*a shepherdess.*
un Boucher,	*a butcher*;	une Bouchère,	*a female butcher.*
un Boulanger,	*a baker*;	une Boulangère,	*a female baker.*
un Comédien,	*a player*;	une Comédienne,	*a female player.*
un Cuisinier,	*a cook*;	une Cuisinière,	*a female cook.*
un Epicier,	*a grocer*;	une Epicière,	*a female grocer.*
un Fermier,	*a farmer*;	une Fermière,	*a female farmer.*
un Marchand,	*a dealer*;	une Marchande,	*a female dealer.*
un Ouvrier, &c.	*a workman*;	une Ouvrière,	*a workwoman.*

2d. The following, as being the most frequently used;

un Amant,	*a lover*;	une Amante,	*she who loves.*
un Ami,	*a male friend*;	une Amie,	*a female friend.*
un Chat,	*a male cat*;	une Chatte,	*a female cat.*
un Chien,	*a dog*;	une Chienne,	*a bitch.*
un Chanteur,	*a male singer*;	une Chanteuse,	*a female singer.*
un Citoyen,	*a citizen*;	une Citoyenne,	*a citizeness.*
un Compagnon,	*a male companion*;	une Compagne,	*a female companion*
un Cousin,	*a male cousin*;	une Cousine,	*a female cousin.*
un Danseur,	*a male dancer*;	une Danseuse,	*a female dancer.*
un Diable,	*a male devil*;	une Diablesse,	*a female devil.*
un Ecolier,	*a male scholar*;	une Ecolière,	*a female scholar.*
un Epoux,	*a husband*;	une Epouse,	*a wife.*
un Héritier,	*an heir*;	une Héritière,	*an heiress.*
un Héros,	*a hero*;	une Héroïne,	*a heroine.*
un Hôte,	*a landlord*;	une Hôtesse,	*a landlady.*
un Ivrogne,	*a drunken man*;	une Ivrognesse,	*a drunken woman.*
un Juif,	*a jew*;	une Juive,	*a jewess.*
un Lapin,	*a buck rabbit*;	une Lapine,	*a doe rabbit.*
un Lévrier,	*a greyhound*;	une Lévrette,	*a greyhound bitch.*
un Lion,	*a lion*;	une Lionne,	*a lioness.*
un Loup,	*a male wolf*;	une Louve,	*a female wolf.*
le Maître,	*the master*;	la Maîtresse,	*the mistress.*
le Marié,	*the bridegroom*;	la Mariée,	*the bride.*
un Menteur,	*a man who lies*;	une Menteuse,	*a woman who lies.*
un Orphelin,	*a male orphan*;	une Orpheline,	*a female orphan.*
un Parent,	*a male relation*;	une Parente,	*a female relation.*
un Paysan,	*a countryman*;	une Paysanne,	*a countrywoman.*
un Prisonnier,	*a male prisoner*;	une Prisonnière,	*a female prisoner.*
un Sultan,	*a sultan*;	une Sultane,	*a sultana.*
un Tigre,	*a tiger*;	une Tigresse,	*a tigress.*
un Tuteur,	*a male guardian*;	une Tutrice,	*a female guardian.*
un Veuf,	*a widower*;	une Veuve,	*a widow.*
un Voisin,	*a male neighbour*;	une Voisine,	*a female neighbour*

CHAP II.

ARTICLE.

AN ARTICLE is a *sign* prefixed to a *noun, to shew* the *sense* in which that noun is used.

These *signs* are *various*, and generally derive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise *DEFINITE, PARTITIVE, NUMERAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, POSSESSIVE.**

CHAP. III.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN

GENERAL RULES.

1 The *ARTICLE* must be of the same *GENDER* and *NUMBER* as the *NOUN* which follows it; this is called *agreement* of the *article* with the *noun;* ex.

SINGULAR. Masculine.				SINGULAR. Feminine.				PLURAL. Masculine *and* Feminine.			
The	LE	*Vin.*	WINE	*the*	LA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*the*	LES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
of *The*	DU	*Vin.*	WINE	of *the*	*de* LA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	of *the*	DES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
to *The*	AU	*Vin.*	WINE	to *the*	*à* LA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	to *the*	AUX	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Some	DU	*Vin.*	WINE	*some*	*de* LA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*some*	DES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
A	UN	*Verre.*	GLASS.	*a*	UNE	*Tasse.*	CUP.	*these* / *those*	CES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
This / *That*	CE	*Verre.*	GLASS.	*this* / *that*	CETTE	*Tasse.*	CUP.				
My†	MON	*Vin.*	WINE.	*my*	MA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*my*	MES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Thy	TON	*Vin.*	WINE.	*thy*	TA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*thy*	TES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
His	SON	*Vin.*	WINE.	*his*	SA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*his*	SES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Her	SON	*Vin.*	WINE.	*her*	SA	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*her*	SES	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Our†	NOTRE	*Vin.*	WINE.	*our*	NOTRE	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*our*	NOS	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Your	VOTRE	*Vin.*	WINE.	*your*	VOTRE	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*your*	VOS	*Plaisirs.*	PLEASURES.
Their	LEUR	*Vin.*	WINE.	*their*	LEUR	*Gloire.*	GLORY.	*their*	LEURS	*Plaisirs*	PLEASURES.

2 If the noun which follows the *ARTICLE* is *singular*, and begins with a *VOWEL* or H *mute*‡, whether it is *masculine* or *feminine*, MELODY requires

L'	instead of LE,	LA;	as, *The*	L'	*Honneur.* m.		L'	*Amitié* f.
de L'	DU,	*de* LA;	of *The*	*de* L'	*Honneur.*	HONOR. FRIENDSHIP.	*de* L'	*Amitié.*
à L'	AU,	*à* LA;	to *The*	*à* L'	*Honneur.*		*à* L'	*Amitié.*
CET	CE;		*This* or *That*	CET	*Honneur.*		CETTE	*Amitié.*
MON	MA;		*My*	MON	*Honneur.*		MON	*Amitié.*
TON	TA;		*Thy*	TON	*Honneur.*		TON	*Amitié*
SON	SA;		*His* or *Her*	SON	*Honneur.*		SON	*Amitié.*

3 The *ARTICLE* must be *repeated* before every noun in french, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,

The brother, sister and cousins. LE *frère,* LA *sœur et* LES *cousins.*
Some wine, glory and pleasures. DU *vin,* de LA *gloire et* DES *plaisirs.*

---

* See page 61, a table of the words called ARTICLE. † See note * page 31
‡ H *mute* is marked through these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark ' before it.

PARTICULAR RULES.

PROPER NAMES.

The NAMES of *PERSONS* and *PLACES*, i. e. of *cities, towns, villages, &c.* are used in french as in english, *without* any of the signs called *article;* as, 4

I have seen	Cæsar,	*J'ai vu*	*César,(a)*
	Rome.		*Rome.*
The statue	*of* Cæsar,	*La statue* DE	*César,*
	at Rome.	À	*Rome.(b)*

But the NAMES of *COUNTRIES* and *PROVINCES* which are used *without* an article in english, require, in french, the *definite* article LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, the same as common names; ex. 5

I have seen	France,	*J'ai vu* LA	*France,*
	Italy.	L'	*Italie.*
The beauties	*of* France,	*Les beautés* de LA	*France,*
	of Italy.	de L'	*Italie.*
It belongs	*to* France, &c.	*Il appartient* à LA	*France, &c. (c)*

Yet the NAMES of *COUNTRIES* and *PROVINCES* are used *without the article,* when they come after verbs denoting *dwelling* or *movement;* such as, *TO* BE *in, TO* LIVE *in, TO* GO *to, TO* COME *from.* 6

In these instances, *IN, TO,* are expressed by EN, and *FROM* by DE; as,

I am going	*to* France,	*Je vais* EN	*France,*
	to Italy.	EN	*Italie.*
I have been	*in* France	*J'ai été* EN	*France,*
	in Italy.	EN	*Italie.*
I come	*from* France,	*Je viens* DE	*France,*
	from Italy.	D'	*Italie.(d)*

(a) Some names of *persons,* derived from *common* names, such as, *Le Brun, Le Blanc, Le Noir, La Porte, La Grange, La Fontaine, &c.* are always preceded by an article, but that article is considered as a syllable of the name, and never varies.

(b) Except le *Caire,* Cairo; le *Catelet,* la *Chapelle,* la *Charité,* la *Ferté,* la *Flèche,* le *Havre,* la *Havanne,* Havannah; la *Haye,* the Hague; la *Hogue,* le *Mans,* la *Mecque,* Mecca; le *Plessis,* le *Puy,* le *Quesnoy,* la *Rochelle,* which require the definite article, for we say, *Je viens* du *Havre.* I come *from* Havre. *Je vais* à la *Rochelle.* I am going *to* Rochelle.

(c) Some names of *countries,* which take their name from their capital *city,* such as, *Alger,* Algiers; *Avignon, Gênes,* Genoa; *Genève,* Geneva; *Florence, Maroc,* Morocco; *Naples, Orange, Tunis, Tripoli, Venise;* or from the name of some *person;* as, *St. Domingue,* St. Domingo; *St. Vincent, &c.* do not require the article.

(d) From this rule must be excepted the *countries* discovered by the navigators, and some countries in *Asia* and *Africa,* which are never used without the article. The most essential to be known, on account of their being frequented by the Europeans, are

l' *Archipel,*	Archipelago.	la *Floride,*	Florida.	le *Mississipi,*	Mississipi.
les *Barbades,*	Barbadoes.	la *Grenade,*	Grenada	le *Mogol,*	Mogul Emp.
le *Bengal,*	Bengal.	la *Guadeloupe,*	Guadaloupe.	les *Moluques,*	Moluccaisles.
la *Bermude,*	Bermuda.	la *Guyane,*	Guiana.	la *Nigritie,*	Nigritia.
le *Brésil,*	Brasil.	l' *Inde,*	India.	la *Nouvelle Angleterre,*	NewEngland.
la *Californie,*	California.	l' *Indostan,*	Indostan.	le *Paraguay,*	Paraguay.
le *Canada,*	Canada.	la *Jamaïque,*	Jamaica.	le *Péloponèse,*	Peloponesus.
la *Caroline,*	Carolina.	le *Japon,*	Japan.	la *Pensylvanie,*	Pennsylvania.
le *Chili,*	Chili.	le *Levant,*	The Levant.	le *Pérou,*	Peru.
la *Chine,*	China.	la *Louisiane,*	Louisiana.	les *Philippines,*	ThePhil.Isles.
la *Cochinchine,*	Cochinchina.	la *Martinique,*	Martinique.	la *Sonde,*	Sunda.
le *Congo,*	Congo.	le *Mexique,*	Mexico.	la *Virginie,*	Virginia.

For we say; *J' ai été* au *Canada.* I have been *in* Canada. *Je vais* à la *Jamaïque,* au *Mexique,* au *Pérou, &c.* I am going *to* Jamaica, *to* Mexico, *to* Peru, &c. *Je viens* du *Japon,* de la *Chine,* des *Indes, &c.* I come *from* Japan, China, *the* Indies, &c.

COMMON NAMES.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

THE, LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX.

7 Every *COMMON* name used in a *GENERAL* sense, i. e. implying *the whole** of the substance spoken of, or in a *PARTICULAR* sense, i. e. implying some *particular sort** of the substance, requires before it one of the definite signs LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; ex.

GENERAL sense, *no article* in english before the noun.

I like wine,	*J'aime* LE *vin*,
glory,	LA *gloire*,
money,	L' *argent*,
pleasures.	LES *plaisirs*
The love *of* wine, *of* glory.	*L'amour* DU *vin*, de LA *gloire*, &c.
He owes it *to* wine, *to* glory.	*Il le doit* AU *vin*, à LA *gloire*, &c.

PARTICULAR sense, in english *THE* before the noun.

This is *the* wine *the* glory *the* money These are *the* pleasures } I like.	*Voici* LE *vin*, LA *gloire*, L' *argent*, LES *plaisirs* } *que j'aime.*
A glass *of the* wine I like.	*Un verre* DU *vin que j'aime.*

OF expressed by DE; *not by* du, *de* la, des.

8 In the above examples you see *OF* expressed by *du*, de *la*, *des*, but observe that this preposition coming after a noun used in a *partitive* sense,* can not be expressed by *du*, de *la*, *des*, which would then *particularize** the substance spoken of, and mean *of THE;* it must be expressed by DE only, *without any regard* to the gender or number of the noun; so we say,

We have a pipe *of* wine,	*Nous avons une pipe* DE *vin*,
plenty *of* money,	*quantité* D'*argent*,
a variety *of* pleasures.	*une variété* DE *plaisirs.*

Not, *une pipe* DU *vin*, *quantité* de L'*argent*, &c. which would mean a pipe *of the* wine, quantity *of the* money, &c.†

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words which, though

---

* When you speak of a substance, you either mean it *Whole*, or in *Parts*.

If you mean the *Whole* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun that names it, is said to be used in a *General sense*; as, *Wine cheers the heart of man*, i. e. that substance *in general* known by the name of *Wine*, cheers the heart of man.

If you mean some *Particular sort* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun is said to be used in a *Particular sense*; as, *The wine which we drank was good*; in speaking thus, I do not mean to say, that all the substance called wine is good, for there is bad wine, but that *particular* sort which we drank was good.

If you neither mean the whole, nor any particular sort of the substance spoken of, but a certain *Portion*, or *Quantity* of it; as when you say, *Give me* some *wine*, *A* glass *of wine*; i. e. a *portion* of the substance called wine, the noun is said to be used in a *Partitive sense*.

† It appears from the foregoing examples that, when two nouns come together in french, they must be connected by some sign, and this sign is determined by the sense in which the nouns are used.

If, as in the first instance (rule 7.), the nouns are used in an *unlimited* signification, they must be connected by the sign which denotes that idea, viz. *du*, *de la*, *des*.

But if, as in the second instance (rule 8), the *extent* of the *second* noun is *determined* by the *first*, then a simple preposition is sufficient to connect them.

they have no sign after them in english, require in french the connective particle DE to unite them to the noun which follows them;

ASSEZ, *enough;*	as,	*assez*	DE *vin.*
BEAUCOUP, *much, many; (e)*		*beaucoup*	D' *argent.*
COMBIEN, *how much, how many;*		*combien*	DE *gloire.*
TANT, *so much, so many;*		*tant*	DE *plaisirs.*
AUTANT, *as much, as many;*		*autant*	DE *vin.*
PLUS, *more;*		*plus*	D' *argent.*
MOINS, *less;*		*moins*	DE *gloire.*
TROP, *too much, too many;*		*trop*	DE *plaisirs.*
PEU, GUÈRE, *little, few;*		*peu*	DE *vin.*
		guère	D' *argent.*
PAS, POINT, *no, not;*		*pas*, or *point*	DE *gloire.*
JAMAIS, *never;*		*jamais*	DE *plaisirs.*

PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

SOME, ANY; DU, *de* LA, DES.

Every *COMMON* name used in a *PARTITIVE* sense* i. e. implying only a *portion* of the substance spoken of, requires one of the *partitive* signs DU, *de* LA, DES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as, 9

We have *some* wine, *Nous avons* DU *vin,*
some glory, de LA *gloire,*
some money, de L' *argent,*
some pleasures. DES *plaisirs.*

N. B. The sign *SOME* is often understood in english before *collective* substantives, such as, *men, bread, meat, money, clothes, wine, fruit, pleasure, &c.* but the corresponding sign can not be omitted in french, and it must be *repeated* before every noun; as,

We have wine, glory, money, pleasures; i. e. *some* wine, *some &c.*
Nous avons DU *vin,* de LA *gloire,* de L'*argent,* DES *plaisirs.*

Exception. *SOME, ANY expressed by* DE; *not by* du, *de* la, des.

The *partitive* signs *du,* de *la, des,* require the noun *immediately* after them, therefore, if a noun used in a *partitive* sense is *preceded* by an *adjective,* use DE before that *adjective* without *any regard* to gender or number, instead of *du,* de *la, des* before the noun; as, 10

We have *excellent* wine, *Nous avons* D' *excellent vin,*
fresh glory, DE *nouvelle gloire,*
very *good* money, DE *très-bon argent,*
true pleasures. DE *vrais plaisirs.*

But if, agreeably to the general rule, the adjective comes after the noun, then the noun resumes its proper sign, viz. DU, *de* LA, DES; as,

Nous avons DU *vin excellent,* We have *excellent* wine,
de LA *gloire bien acquise,* well *acquired* glory,
de L' *argent comptant,* *ready* money,
DES *plaisirs champêtres.* *rural* pleasures.

(e) *Much, Many,* are expressed by *Beaucoup* or by *Bien,* with this difference only, that *Beaucoup* requires DE after it, and *Bien* requires DU, *de* LA, DES; so we say, *Beaucoup* de *vin,* de *gloire,* d' *argent,* de *plaisirs.*
Or, *Bien* du *vin,* de la *gloire,* de l' *argent,* des *plaisirs.*

* See note * page 192.

NUMERAL ARTICLE.

A, AN; UN, UNE.

11 *A*, AN denoting *individuality*, i. e. *one* only of the substance spoken of, is expressed in french by the number UN, UNE, and no distinction is made between A and ONE; as,

A or *one* bottle.	UNE *bouteille.*
A or *one* pound.	UNE *livre.*
A or *one* dozen.	UNE *douzaine.*
A or *one* hundred.	UN *cent.* (f)

12 But A, AN before the names of *measure, weight, number* and *periods of time*, used in a *collective* sense, *i. e.* not denoting *individuality*, is *not* expressed by UN, UNE, it is expressed by LE, LA; as,

Wine sells at six shillings *a* bottle; i. e. six shillings *per* bottle.	*Le vin se vend six shelings* LA *bouteille;* not, UNE *bouteille.*
Butter twenty pence *a* pound; i. e. *per* pound.	*Le beurre vingt sous* LA *livre;* not, UNE *livre.*
Eggs a shilling *a* dozen; i. e. *one* shilling *per* dozen.	*Les œufs un sheling* LA *douzaine;* not, UNE *douzaine.*
Oranges a guinea *a* hundred; i. e. *one* guinea *per* hundred.	*Les Oranges une guinée* LE *cent;* not, *une guinée* UN *cent.*
I go to town once *a* day; i. e. *each* day, or *daily.*	*Je vais à la ville une fois* LE *jour,* or PAR *jour;* not, UN *jour.*
Three times *a* week, or *weekly.*	*Trois fois* LA *semaine,* or PAR *sem.*

By these words *a* bottle, *a* pound, *a* dozen, *a* hundred, I do not mean that *one single* or individual bottle, pound, dozen or hundred sells at that price; but *each* bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred; nor that I go to town one *single* day or week; but *each* day, *each* week.

DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE.

THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE; CE, CET, CETTE, CES.

13 The *demonstrative* words, CE, CET, CETTE, CES are used in the same instances as the corresponding signs are in english; they serve to point out the objects we name, and follow the same rule as LE, LA, LES; ex.

I like *this* or *that* wine,	*J'aime* CE *vin,*
this or *that* beer,	CETTE *bière,*
this or *that* money,	CET *argent,*
these or *those* fruits.	CES *fruits.*

N. B. CE, CET, CETTE, CES do not express that local distinction which is implied in the words *THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE;* so, if you wish to make the same distinction in french, you must add to the noun, CI to denote the *nearest* object, and LÀ to denote the *remotest;* as,

I prefer *this* wine to that,	*Je préfère* CE *vin* - CI *à celui*-LÀ.
this beer to that.*	CETTE *bière*-CI *à celle* -LÀ.
I prefer *that* wine to this,	*Je préfère* CE *vin* - LÀ *à celui* -CI.
that beer to this,*	CETTE *bière*-LÀ *à celle* - CI.
this money to that,	CET *argent*-CI *à celui* -LÀ.
those fruits to these.	CES *fruits*-LÀ *à ceux* - CI.

(f) Any number prefixed to a noun may be considered as an article, since, like the article, it serves to determine the acceptation of that noun; as, *Deux* hommes, *two* men; *Trois* femmes, *three* women; *Quatre* livres, *four* books; *Six* bouteilles, *six* bottles, &c

* THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are also pronouns; see note (p) page 89.

POSSESSIVE ARTICLE.

MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR.

MON, MA, MES; TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES; NOTRE, &c.

These words follow the same rule as the article LE, LA, LES; they agree in *gender* and *number* with the *noun* which *follows* them; so, 14

Her father, is, SON *père.* *His* or *her* son, SON *fils.*
His mother, SA *mère.* *His* or *her* daughter, SA *fille.*

The *possessive* article *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR* is expressed by the *definite* LE, LA, LES, when prefixed to the name of any *part of the body*, after a verb denoting a *natural action* of the body; as, 15

I open *my*	mouth.	*J' ouvre*	LA *bouche;*
Thou openest *thy*		*Tu ouvres*	not, MA *bouche.**
He opens *his*		*Il ouvre*	

Or when the verb denotes an action done upon the body; as,

I *have* cut *my*	finger.	*Je* ME *suis*	*coupé* LE *doigt.**
Thou *hast* cut *thy*		*Tu* T' *es*	
He *has* cut *his*		*Il* S' *est*†	

Never say; *J'ai coupé* MON *doigt*; *Tu as coupé* TON *doigt*; *Il a coupé* SON *doigt*, &c.

N. B. Observe that in speaking of an action *done upon the body*, the person on whom the action is done must be denoted by a *personal pronoun;* so, if the verb is not *reflective, i. e.* if the agent does not act upon *itself*, as it does above, one of the pronouns ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, LUI, LEUR, agreeably to *number* and *person*, must be added to the verb; as,

He has cut	*my*	finger.	*Il* M'	*a coupé* LE *doigt.*
	thy		*Il* T'	
	his or *her*		*Il* LUI	
He has cut	*our*	fingers.	*Il* NOUS	*a coupé* LES *doigts.*
	your		*Il* VOUS	
	their		*Il* LEUR	

Never say; *Il a coupé* MON *doigt*; *Il a coupé* TON *doigt*; *Il a coupé* SON *doigt*, &c.

If, in instances similar to the above, *i. e.* before the names of the parts of the body, the *possessive* words *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR* come with the verbs, To have a pain, *Avoir mal;* To hurt, *se Faire mal;* To be cold, *Avoir froid;* To be warm, *Avoir chaud;* they are expressed by AU, *à* LA, AUX; as, 16

I have a pain in *my*	finger.	*J' ai*	*mal* AU *doigt,*
Thou hast a pain in *thy*		*Tu as*	not, *à* MON *doigt.**
He has a pain in *his*		*Il a*	
I *have* hurt *my*	hand.	*Je* ME *suis*	*fait mal* À LA *main;*
Thou *hast* hurt *thy*		*Tu* T' *es*	not, *à* MA *main.*
He *has* hurt *his*		*Il* S' *est*†	
My feet *are*	cold.	*J' ai*	*froid* AUX *pieds;*
Thy feet *are*		*Tu as*‡	not, *à* MES *pieds.*
His or *her* feet *are*‡		*Il* or *elle a*	

* When I say, *J'ouvre* LA *bouche*, I open *the* mouth; the hearer understands that it is of my OWN mouth that I am speaking, for if it was the mouth of another being, I should name that being. Again, *Je* ME *suis coupé* LE *doigt*, corresponds with the english, I have cut *myself* in the finger; and *J'ai mal* AU *doigt*, with, I have a pain *in the* finger. Here also the possession being sufficiently determined by the pronoun ME, or by the verb J'AI, any other possessive expression would be superfluous; however, these are idioms which practice alone can render familiar. † *See* 237 *rule.* ‡ *See* 239 *rule.*

17 *Its* and *THEIR* neuter, are also expressed by LE, LA, LES, and the pronoun EN is added to the verb, when the noun to which they are prefixed is not governed by the *same* verb as the noun to which they refer; as,

That tree is fine, but *its* fruit is good for nothing.

Cet arbre est beau, mais LE *fruit n'*EN *vaut rien; i. e.* the fruit *of it.*

But they are expressed by SON, SA, SES, LEUR, if the nouns are governed by the *same* verb; as,

I like that tree, *its* shape and *its* leaves.

J'aime cet arbre, SA *forme et* SES *feuilles.*

18 The *possessive* MON, MA, MES must be *prefixed* to names of *kindred* and *friendship*, when we *call* or *answer* any one by those names; as,

Come here, brother.	*Venez ici,* MON *frère.*
I can not, sister.	*Je ne saurais,* MA *sœur.*

19 The *article* is *left out* in french, when expressed in english, at the *title page*, or before any of the *parts* of a book; as,

A french grammar.	*Grammaire française.*
The preface. *The* first part.	*Préface. Première partie.*

20 The article *A, AN* which comes after *WHAT*, is *omitted* in french; as,

What *a* man!	*Quel homme!* not *quel* UN *homme!*
What *a* woman!	*Quelle femme! – quelle* UNE *femme!*

21 The article *A, AN* coming before *HUNDRED* or *THOUSAND*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun, is *not expressed* in french, the words CENT and MILLE having the property of an article*; as,

I have won *a* thousand guineas; *J'ai gagné* MILLE *guinées;*

Will you have *a* hundred of them? *En voulez-vous* CENT? not, UN *cent.*

22 *No article* is used in french, before a noun added to *illustrate* or *explain* another noun; and the article which is prefixed to such nouns in english, must be *omitted* in french; as,

Zaira *a* tragedy of Voltaire.	*Zaïre, tragédie de Voltaire.*
Paris *the* capital of France.	*Paris, capitale de la France.*

Never, *Zaïre* UNE *tragédie;* nor *Paris* LA *capitale &c.*

But if we left out the first noun, we should say; *J'ai vu* UNE *tragédie*
23 *de Voltaire. J'ai vu* LA *capitale de la France.*

The article *A, AN* is also *omitted* in french after some neuter verbs, such as *Être*, to be; *Devenir*, to become; *se Faire*, to turn; *Passer pour*, to be reckoned, to pass for; the noun which follows these verbs being considered as an *adjective* which serves to *illustrate* their nominative; as,

Is he *a* Frenchman?	*Est-il Français?*
He passes for *a* German.	*Il passe pour Allemand.*
His father is *a* merchant.	*Son père est négociant;* not, UN *négoc.*

But the article must be *expressed*, if the noun is attended by an *adjective* or by a *relative* pronoun, for it then returns into the class of *substantives;*

His father is *a* wealthy merchant. *Son père est* UN *riche négociant.*

24 *No article* is used in french before a noun which, being joined to a verb, forms only one idea with that verb; as, *Avoir peur*, to fear, to be afraid; *Avoir mal*, to ache, to have a pain; *Avoir raison*, to be right, to be in the right, &c.; these expressions are found in the dictionaries.

---

* See note *(f)* page 194.

How to place TWO NOUNS *together.*

Sometimes *TWO NOUNS* come together, having a dependence on each other, and forming a kind of complex idea; as, 25

John's horse. The *prince's* sword. The *lady's gown.* A *silk* gown.

The English have *TWO* ways of using these *NOUNS;* they say,
1. The horse *of John.* The sword *of the prince.* The gown *of the lady.* A gown *of silk.*
2. *John's* horse. The *prince's* sword. The *lady's* gown. A *silk* gown.

The French, on the contrary, have only *ONE* of these modes of placing *TWO NOUNS* together; they, as in the 1*st* instance, always place *FIRST* the noun which is the *SUBJECT* of *discourse,* with DU, *de* LA, DES, DE, *or* À *BEFORE* the *second* noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

John's horse.	*Le cheval* DE *Jean; i. e.*	the horse *of* John. 4. *rul.*
The *prince's* sword.	*L'épée* DU *prince;*	the sword *of the* prince.[7]
The *lady's* gown.	*La robe* de LA *dame;*	the gown *of the* lady.[7]
A *silk* gown.	*Une robe* DE *soie;*	a gown *of* silk. 8 *rule.*

Sometimes however the order of the nouns could not be changed in the above manner in english, without changing also the meaning; for ex. these expressions, a *wine* glass, a *tea* spoon, could not be turned into a *glass* of wine, a *spoon* of tea; yet the nouns require this order in french: instead of changing the order of the words to alter the idea, as the English do, the French change the preposition, and instead of DE, they use À; so, 26

A glass *of* wine, is, *Un verre* DE *vin;* and
A *wine* glass, is, *Un verre* À *vin;* i. e. a glass *used for* wine.*

N. B. When the nouns are compounded of the words *FAIR,* FOIRE; *Market,* MARCHÉ, and in speaking of *Messes,* and the *ingredients* which they are made of, the *TWO NOUNS* are connected by AU, *à* LA, AUX; as,

The *hay* market. *Le marché* AU *foin; i. e.* the market *for* hay.
Some *cream* tarts. *Des tartes* à LA *crème;* tarts made *with* cream.

Sometimes the *name* of a *COUNTRY* is changed in english into an *adjective,* and prefixed to the name of its production; as *spanish* wine, *French* brandy, *English* beer, *Dutch* cheese, &c.; that *adjective* must be expressed by the *substantive* in french, and placed *AFTER* the name of the production, connected by the preposition DE; as, 27

Spanish wine. *Vin* D'*Espagne;* *i. e.* wine *of* Spain.
French brandy. *Eau-de-vie* DE *France; i. e.* brandy *of* France.

Before the *name* of a *COUNTRY,* after a noun denoting *dignity* or *authority,* such as *emperor, king, prince, &c.* OF is expressed by DE; as, 28

The emperor *of* Russia. *L'empereur* DE *Russie.*
The parliament *of* England. *Le parlement* D'*Angleterre.*

After any other noun, OF is expressed by DU, *de* LA, DES; as,

The south *of* France. *Le sud* de LA *France.*
The north *of* England. *Le nord* de L'*Angleterre.*

---

* This rule is not without some exceptions, for we say, *Un pot* de *chambre,* a chamber pot; *Une fille* de *chambre,* a chamber maid; *Un bonnet* de *nuit,* a night cap; *Un mouchoir* de *poche,* a pocket handkerchief; Un *cheval* de *carrosse,* a coach horse; Un *cochon* de *lait,* a sucking pig, &c. these few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.
N. B. Many of these *compound names* are expressed by a *single word* in french; as, Coachman, *Cocher;* Footman, *Laquais;* Countinghouse, *Comptoir;* Coachhouse, *Remise.* These expressions are found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

ADJECTIVE.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word *added* to a NOUN, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun; as, *good* wine, *fine* flowers.

29 The ADJECTIVE must be of the *same* GENDER and NUMBER as the noun to which it is added; as,

That is a *handsome* man. *Voilà un* BEL *homme.*
That is a *handsome* woman. *Voilà une* BELLE *femme.(g)*

N. B. A *past participle*, used to qualify a substantive, follows the same rules as an adjective; ex.

He is very well *made.* *Il est très-bien* FAIT.
She is very well *made.* *Elle est très-bien* FAITE.

30 When an adjective qualifies *several* nouns *singular* of the *same* GENDER, that adjective must be of the *same* GENDER as those nouns, and PLURAL; as,

My father and brother are *gone* out. *Mon père et mon frère sont* SORTIS.
My mother and sister are *gone* out. *Ma mère et ma sœur sont* SORTIES.

31 But if the nouns are of *different* GENDERS, the adjective must be of the MASCULINE gender, and in the PLURAL number; as,

My father and mother are *gone* out. *Mon père et ma mère sont* SORTIS.
He found his son and daughter *dead.* *Il trouva son fils et sa fille* MORTS.*(h)*

(g) The *feminine gender* of an *adjective*, or of a *participle* used adjectively, is formed by adding *e mute*, that is to say, *e not accented*, to the masculine; as,

	loved;	pretty;	lost;	great;	fine;	last;	precise;	little;	learned.
Masc.	*aimé,*	*joli,*	*perdu,*	*grand,*	*fin,*	*dernier.*	*précis,*	*petit,*	*savant.*
Fem.	*aimée.*	*jolie.*	*perdue.*	*grande.*	*fine.*	*dernière.*	*précise.*	*petite.*	*savante.*

EXCEPTIONS.

E. Adjectives ending in *e mute*, are *the same* for both genders; as, Un *honnête* homme, an *honest* man. Une *honnête* femme; an *honest* woman. Un *jeune* homme *aimable*; an *amiable young* man. Une *jeune* femme *aimable*; an *amiable young* woman.

I. The feminine of *béni*, blessed, is *bénite*; that of *favori*, favourite, is *favorite.*

U. The feminine of *beau*, fine; *nouveau*, new; *mou*, soft; *fou*, mad; is *belle, nouvelle, molle, folle*, from *bel, nouvel, mol, fol* used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

C. The feminine of *blanc*, white; *franc*, frank; *sec*, dry; *caduc*, decayed; *public*, public; *grec*, greek; *turc*, turkish; is *blanche, franche, sèche, caduque, publique, grecque, turque.*

D. The feminine of *nud*, naked; *crud*, raw; is *nue, crue*; and that of *verd*, green, is *verte.*

F. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve* for the feminine; as,

Masc.	*bref,*	brief;	*neuf,*	new;	*naïf,*	candid;	*actif,*	active; *plaintif,* sorrowful.
Fem.	*brève,*	brief;	*neuve,*	new;	*naïve,*	candid;	*active,*	active; *plaintive,* sorrowful.

G. The feminine of *long*, long, the only adjective ending in *g*, is *longue.*

L, N, S, T, } Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ul, un, ien, on, as, ais, es, et, os, ot*, double the final consonant, and take *e mute* for the feminine gender; as,

	cruel;	rosy;	null;	ancient;	good;	big;	fat;	thick;	clean;	foolish.
Masc.	*cruel,*	*vermeil,*	*nul,*	*ancien,*	*bon,*	*gros,*	*gras,*	*épais,*	*net,*	*sot.*
Fem.	*cruelle.*	*vermeille.*	*nulle.*	*ancienne.*	*bonne.*	*grosse.*	*grasse.*	*épaisse.*	*nette.*	*sotte.*

Except the adjectives of nations; as, *français*, french; *anglais*, english; &c. *mauvais*, bad; *niais*, silly; *ras*, shorn; *complet*, complete; *discret*, discreet; *inquiet*, uneasy; *replet*, replete; *secret*, secret; which follow the general rule, *française, anglaise, mauvaise*; *&c. frais*, fresh; *tiers*, third; which make *fraîche, tierce*; and *bénin*, benign; *malin*, mischievous; which make *bénigne, maligne*, in the feminine.

X. Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* for the feminine; as,

Masc.	*heureux,*	happy;	*paresseux,*	lazy;	*jaloux,*	jealous;	*faux,*	false;
Fem.	*heureuse,*	happy.	*paresseuse,*	lazy.	*jalouse,*	jealous.	*fausse,*	false.

Except *doux*, sweet, soft; which makes *douce*; and *vieux*, old, which makes *vieille.*

N. B. The *plural* of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the singular.

(h) When the adjective is not separated from the nouns by a verb, some authors make it agree with the last noun, thus, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille* MORTE; but they except the

Adjectives in english are generally placed BEFORE the noun, in french they are generally placed AFTER it; as, 32

A *black* coat.	*Un habit* NOIR.
A well *made* man.	*Un homme* bien FAIT.
The *french* language.	*La langue* FRANÇAISE.

Except these adjectives, which are generally placed BEFORE the noun; 33
PREMIER, 1*st*; SECOND, 2*nd*; and other adjectives of *number*.

BEAU, BEL, *m.* } *fine*,	MÉCHANT, *wicked*.
BELLE, *fem.* } *handsome*.	MEILLEUR, *better*.
BON, *m.* BONNE, f. *good*.	MÊME, *same*.
GRAND, *great*, *large*.	MOINDRE, *less*.
GROS, *m.* GROSSE, f. *big*.	PETIT, *little*, *small*.
JEUNE, *young*.	PLUSIEURS, *several*.
JOLI, *pretty*.	TOUT, *all*, *whole*.
MAUVAIS, *bad*.	VIEUX, *m.* VIEILLE, f. *old*; as,
She is a *handsome* woman.	*C'est une* BELLE *femme*.
She has a *good* husband.	*Elle a un* BON *mari*.

But if any one of the above adjectives comes with another adjective that can not be placed before the noun, they must *both* be placed AFTER, connected by a *conjunction*; as, 34

A *handsome*, *amiable* woman.	*Une femme* BELLE *et* AIMABLE.
A *good*, *complaisant* husband.	*Un mari* BON *et* COMPLAISANT. *(i)*

---

adjectives which express union; as, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille* RÉUNIS, RÉCONCILIÉS, &c. These exceptions and exceptions of exceptions are very difficult for learners to retain; therefore I would advise them to follow the general rule, which is perfectly agreeable to the fundamental principles of the french language.

(i) The rules for the placing of adjectives are not very strictly adhered to, especially in poetry. Even in prose many adjectives may be placed either *before* or *after* the noun, according as their position is more agreeable to the ear, of which a learner can be no judge; so his surest way is to follow the rules, and to notice in reading, those adjectives which he finds sometimes *before* and sometimes *after* the noun. Yet custom, for want of other expressions, has fixed a place for some adjectives which must be attended to, as the placing the adjective *before* or *after* the noun *changes* the *idea*; the most common are,

Un *brave* homme.	A well behaved man.	Un *vilain* homme.	A disagreeable man.
Un homme *brave*.	A courageous man.	Un homme *vilain*.	A niggardly fellow.
De *braves* gens.	Well behaved people.	Un *pauvre* homme.	A man without genius.
Des gens *braves*.	Courageous people.	Un homme *pauvre*.	A poor man.
Un *bon* homme.	A simple man.	Une *cruelle* femme.	An unfeeling woman.
Un homme *bon*.	A good natured man.	Une femme *cruelle*.	A cruel woman.
Un *honnête* homme.	An honest man.	Une *sage*-femme.	A midwife.
Un homme *honnête*.	A civil man.	Une femme *sage*.	A wise woman.
D' *honnêtes* gens.	Honest people.	Une *grosse* femme.	A big, fat woman.
Des gens *honnêtes*.	Civil people.	Une femme *grosse*.	A woman with child.
Un *gentil* homme.	A noble man.	Un *furieux* animal.	A huge creature.
Un homme *gentil*.	A genteel man.	Un animal *furieux*.	A fierce animal.
Un *galant* homme.	A liberal man.	Une *certaine* nouvelle.	A certain piece of news.
Un homme *galant*.	A galant.	Une nouvelle *certaine*.	True or sure news.
Un *grand* homme.	A great man.	De *nouveau* vin.	Fresh wine.
Un homme *grand*.	A tall man.	Du vin *nouveau*.	Wine newly made.
Un *plaisant* homme.	An odd sort of a fellow.	La *morte*-eau,	The neap tides.
Un homme *plaisant*.	A pleasant man.	De l'eau *morte*.	Standing water.

The adjective *Cher* placed before the noun signifies *dear*, *affectionate*; as, Mon *cher* père, my *dear* father; placed after it, it signifies *of high price*; as, Un livre *cher*, a *dear* book.

New is both *Neuf* and *Nouveau*; *Neuf* is said of things newly made; as, A *new* coat, Un habit *neuf*, i. e. made of *new* cloth; un livre *neuf*, a *new* book, i. e. a book that has not been used, &c. *Nouveau* is said of things newly invented, of new productions; as, Un habit *nouveau*, a coat of a *new* fashion; Un *nouveau* livre, or un livre *nouveau*, a *new* book, i. e. a *new* production. Un *nouvel* habit means a *new* dress.

35 The adjectives of number, PREMIER, *first;* SECOND, DEUXIÈME, *second*, TROISIÈME, *third;* QUATRIÈME, *fourth;* CINQUIÈME, *fifth, &c.* are placed in french as in english, *before* the noun; as,

The *first* day. *Le* PREMIER *jour.*
The *fourth* month. *Le* QUATRIÈME *mois.*

36 But when the adjectives *third, fourth, fifth, sixth, &c.* are used as a *distinction* to some *personage;* as, George *the third,* Henry *the eighth;* or to *date* the months; as, July 14*th,* November 5*th;* they are changed into the *substantive* numbers *deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, &c.*
If used as a *distinction,* they are put *after* the name of the personage, as;

George *the third.* *George* TROIS, *i. e.* george *three.*
Henry *the eighth.* *Henri* HUIT, *i. e.* henry *eight.*

If used as a *date,* they are put *before* the name of the month, joined to it by DE; as, July 14*th.* *Le* QUATORZE de *Juillet.*
November 5*th.* *Le* CINQ de *Novembre.(k)*

37 Adjectives of *measure* and *dimension,* such as, *high, tall, low, deep, thick, big, wide, broad, long, short, &c.* which are placed *after* the number in english, must be placed *before* it in french, joined to it by DE; as,

A room twelve feet *long,* and ten *broad.*
Une chambre LONGUE de *douze pieds, et* LARGE de *dix;*
Literal. A room *long of* twelve feet, and *broad of* ten.
A wall ten feet *high,* and two feet *thick.*
Un mur HAUT de *dix pieds, et* ÉPAIS de *deux;*
Literal. A wall *high of* ten feet, and *thick of* two.

N. B. The adjectives of *measure* and *dimension* are frequently expressed in french by their *substantives;*† then the words remain in the same order in french as they are in english, but both the number and the noun of measure must be preceded by DE; as,

A room twelve feet *long,* and ten broad.
Une chambre de *douze pieds* de LONGUEUR, *et* de *dix* de LARGEUR.
Literal. A room *of* twelve feet *of length,* and *of* ten *of breadth.*
A wall ten feet *high,* and two feet *thick.*
Un mur de *dix pieds* de HAUTEUR, *et* de *deux* d'ÉPAISSEUR;
Literal. A wall *of* ten feet *of height,* and *of* two *of thickness.*

But observe that when the *adjective* is changed into its *substantive,* the verb *ÊTRE* must be changed into *AVOIR,* and DE is omitted before the number; as, Our room *is* twelve feet long, and ten broad.
Adject. *Notre chambre* EST LONGUE de *douze pieds, et* LARGE de *dix.*
Subst. *Notre chambre* A *douze pieds* de LONGUEUR, *et dix* de LARGEUR;
i. e. Our room *has* twelve feet *of* length, and ten *of* breadth.
Adject. *Ce mur* EST HAUT de *dix pieds, et* ÉPAIS de *deux.*
Subst. *Ce mur* A *dix pieds* de HAUTEUR, *et deux* d'ÉPAISSEUR;
i. e. This wall *has* ten feet *of* height, and two *of* thickness.

(*k*) Except *Premier* in dating the days, and when used for a distinction, we do not say, Georges *un,* George *one;* but George *premier,* George *deux,* or *second,* and then George *trois,* George *three;* George *quatre, &c.*

† The substantive may be formed by adding *ur* to the adjective when it ends with a vowel; as, *Large, largeur;* and *eur* when it ends with a consonant; as, *Haut, hauteur, &c.*

REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

The ADJECTIVE can *not* be *separated* by an *article* from the NOUN which it qualifies, therefore those *articles* which come *between* the adjective and the noun in english, must be placed *BEFORE* them in french; as, 38

Such *a* man.	UN *tel homme;* not *tel* UN *homme.*
So great *a* thing.	UNE *si grande chose.*

Except TOUT, *all, whole,* which requires the article *after* it; as,

All *his* time.	*Tout* SON *tems.*
The whole day.	*Tout* LE *jour.*
A whole day.	*Tout* UN *jour.**

Except also, when the adjective is used to *distinguish* some particular person from another person of the same name; as,

Peter *the* cruel.	*Pierre* LE *cruel.*
Cato *the* elder.	*Caton* L'*ancien.*
Alexander *the* great.	*Alexandre* LE *grand.*

By *prefixing* to an *adjective,* an ARTICLE of the same gender and number as the noun to which it refers, that *adjective* has often the property of a *SUBSTANTIVE,* and the words *MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE* which are expressed in english, may be omitted in french; as, 39

The wise *man* is happy.	LE SAGE *est heureux.*
He is a troublesome *man.*	*C'est* un IMPORTUN.
She is a little brown *woman.*	*C'est* une PETITE BRUNE.
The great; the covetous *people.*	Les GRANDS; les AVARES.†

As an ARTICLE *prefixed* to an ADJECTIVE without a noun, gives to it the property of a *SUBSTANTIVE,* so when the ARTICLE is *taken from* a NOUN, that noun assumes the power of an *ADJECTIVE;* for example, 40

I know *a poet.*
I speak of *a philosopher.*

Here the words *poet* and *philosopher* are SUBSTANTIVES, because they name the *objects* spoken of, consequently they require an article; so,

Je connais un POËTE.
*Je parle d'*un PHILOSOPHE. but when I say,
The *man* I speak of is *a poet* and *a philosopher.*
He is *a poet,* but he is not *a philosopher.*

The substance I am speaking of is *man,* the words *poet* and *philosopher* are only *attributes* of that substance, and they no more require an article than if I said; the man I speak of is *witty,* is *wise;* so the French,

L'homme dont je parle est POËTE *et* PHILOSOPHE.
Il est POËTE, *mais il n'est pas* PHILOSOPHE.

A philosopher is seldom *a poet,* but *a poet* is seldomer *a philosopher.*
Philosopher in the 1st part of the sentence is a *substant.* in the 2nd *an adj.*
Poet in the 1st part of the sentence is an *adjective,* in the 2nd *a substantive;*
So the French,

Rarement UN *philosophe est* POËTE, *mais plus rarement* UN *poëte est* PHILOSOPHE. (See *the* 23*rd rule.*)

---

* And if TOUT is governed by a preposition, the preposition must be placed *before* TOUT, and the article *after;* as,

Of the whole regiment. De *tout* LE *régiment.* *To the* whole fleet. À *toute* LA *flotte.*

† This rule extends to many adjectives, but not to all; they should be taken notice of in reading.

COMPARISONS

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also, by the means of certain ADVERBS *prefixed* to them, to *COMPARE* their qualities.

The quality of a substance, when compared with another, is either SUPERIOR, INFERIOR, or EQUAL to the other; this is called *COMPARATIVE.*

Or the quality is *raised* ABOVE, or *lowered* BELOW several others, and this is called *SUPERLATIVE.*

OF COMPARATIVES.

41 The comparative of SUPERIORITY *MORE* before the adjective, or *R* or *ER* added to it, as *more* strong or stronger, is formed in french by PLUS before the adjective;* as,

My horse is *more* strong or stronger *than* yours.
Mon cheval est PLUS *fort* QUE *le vôtre.*

42 The comparative of INFERIORITY *LESS* before the adjective, is formed in french by MOINS before the adjective;† as,

My horse is *less* strong *than* yours.
Mon cheval est MOINS *fort* QUE *le vôtre.*

The same comparative formed by *so* before the adjective, and *AS* after it, is expressed, *so* before the adjective by SI, and *AS* after it by QUE; as,

My horse is not *so* strong *as* yours.
Mon cheval n'est pas SI *fort* QUE *le vôtre.*

43 The comparative of EQUALITY *AS* before, and *AS* after the adjective, is expressed, *AS* before the adjective by AUSSI, and *AS* after it by QUE; as,

My horse is *as* strong *as* yours.
Mon cheval est AUSSI *fort* QUE *le vôtre.*

OF SUPERLATIVES.

44 The superlative formed by *MOST* or *LEAST* before the adjective, or by *ST* or *EST* added to it; as, *most* strong or strong*est*, is formed in french by adding LE, LA, LES to the comparative words PLUS, MOINS; as,

Comp. stronger, PLUS *fort*, m. PLUS *forte*, f.
Sup. strong*est*, *LE* PLUS *fort*, *LA* PLUS *forte*, *LES* PLUS *forts*, *LES* PLUS *fortes*.
Comp. *LESS* strong, MOINS *fort*, m. MOINS *forte*, f.
Super. *LEAST* strong, *LE* MOINS *fort*, *LA* MOINS *forte*, *LES* MOINS *forts*, *LES* MOINS *fortes*, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

My pony is the *strongest* of my horses.
Mon bidet est *LE* PLUS *fort de mes chevaux.*
My mare is the *least* strong of the two.
Ma jument est *LA* MOINS *forte des deux.(l)*

N. B. The comparison of *adverbs* is formed like that of *adjectives;* as,

Strongly, *FORTEMENT.* *MORE* strongly, PLUS *fortement.*
Most strongly, *LE* PLUS *fortement.* *LESS* strongly, MOINS *fortement, &c.*

---

* Except MEILLEUR, *better;* PIRE, *worse,* adjectives, MIEUX, *better;* PIS, *worse,* adverbs, } which are *comparatives* of themselves.
† Except MOINDRE, *less,*

(l) Observe what is said, note * page 33, that *two* of the signs called ARTICLE, can *not* be prefixed to the same noun; so,

My strongest horse; is, Mon PLUS *fort cheval*; Not, Mon *le* PLUS *fort cheval.*

Observe also, that if the adjective is placed first, the article needs not to be repeated before the noun; but if the noun is first, the article must be repeated before the adjective; as, It is the *strongest* horse I have seen.

C'est le PLUS *fort cheval que j'aie vu;* or *C'est* le *cheval* le PLUS *fort que j'aie vu.*

REMARKS on the COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE.

When the *comparison* runs between *TWO* PARTS of a sentence, an ARTICLE is added to the *comparative* in english; as, 45

The more you study, *the* more you learn;

This ARTICLE is *omitted* in french;

PLUS *vous étudiez*, PLUS *vous apprenez.*

And the ADJECTIVE or NOUN which, in these instances, comes *before* the *verb* in english, must be placed *AFTER* it in french; as,

The *longer* the day *is*, the *shorter is* the night.

PLUS *le jour est* LONG, PLUS *la nuit est* COURTE;

Literal. *More* the day is *long*, *more* the night is *short.*

The *more populous* a country *is*, the *richer* it *is.*

PLUS *un pays est* PEUPLÉ, PLUS *il est* RICHE;

Literal. *More* a country is *populous*, *more* it is *rich.*

The comparative words PLUS, MOINS, SI, AUSSI must be *repeated* BEFORE *every adjective*, though they are in the same sentence; as, 46

She is *as* rich and handsome as her cousin.

Elle est AUSSI *riche et* AUSSI *belle que sa cousine.*

The comparative words PLUS, MOINS, MOINDRE, MEILLEUR, MIEUX, PIRE, PIS require *NE* before the verb which follows them; as, 47

This is *better* than I thought.

Ceci est MEILLEUR *que je* NE *pensais.*

However *NE* is not required if the following verb is in the *infinitive*, or if it is preceded by a *conjunction;* as,

It is greater *to* forgive than *to* revenge.

Il est plus grand de PARDONNER *que* de* *se* VENGER.

I am better now than *when* I was in town.

Je me porte mieux à présent que QUAND *j'étais à la ville.*

The particles *BY* and *THAN* coming after the COMPARATIVE, or after the adverbs MORE, LESS followed by a word denoting *quantity*, not *quality*, are expressed by *DE*, not by QUE or PAR; as, 48

It is stronger *by* much. *Il est plus fort* DE *beaucoup.*

It costs more *than* ten guineas. *Il coûte plus* DE *dix guinées.*

The preposition *IN*, after a *superlative* in english, is expressed in french in the same manner as *OF*, agreeably to the rules on the article; as, 49

He is the richest merchant *in* London.

C'est le plus riche négociant DE *Londres;* i. e. *of* London.

She is the most virtuous woman *in* the city.

C'est la femme la plus vertueuse de LA *ville;* i. e. *of the* city.

The *superlative* followed by the *relative* or definite *pronoun*, QUI, QUE, DONT requires the following verb in the *subjunctive mood;* as, 50

She is the prettiest woman *that* was at the ball.

C'est la plus jolie femme QUI FÛT *au bal.*

He is the handsomest man *that* I have ever seen.

C'est le plus bel homme QUE *j'*AIE *jamais vu.*

---

* The *same preposition* which follows the comparative must be *repeated after* QUE; as,
We are more inclined *to* revenge, than *to* forgive.
Nous sommes PLUS *portés à nous venger* QU'*à pardonner.*

PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to *represent* a NOUN, as when I say *I* instead of naming *my own name*; *THOU, YOU, HE, SHE, IT, THEY* instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are *various* sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of *PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.*

SECT. I.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

As there are THREE *persons* in grammar, so there are THREE *sorts of words* to represent them, but sometimes the same person is represented by SEVERAL *words*, as appears from the following table.

	Agents or NOMINATIVES *of Verbs.*			OBJECTS *of Verbs, or of Prepositions.**			
1st per.	*I,*	JE,	MOI.	*ME,*	ME,	MOI.	
	WE;	NOUS,		*US;*	NOUS.		
2nd per.	*THOU,*	TU,	TOI.	*THEE,*	TE,	TOI.	
	YOU;	VOUS.		*YOU;*	VOUS,		
3rd p. m.	*HE,*	IL,	LUI.	*HIM,*	LE,	LUI.	
	THEY;	ILS.	EUX.	*THEM;*	LES,	LEUR,	EUX.
3rd p. f.	*SHE,*	ELLE,		*HER,*	LA,	LUI,	ELLE.
	THEY;	ELLES.		*THEM;*	LES,	LEUR,	ELLES.
3rd p. n.	*IT,*	IL, *m.*	ELLE. *f.*	*IT,*	LE, *m.*	LA, *f.*	EN, Y.
	THEY;	ILS, *m.*	ELLES. *f.*	*THEM;*	LES, *m. & f.*		EN, Y.
3rd pers. common				*HIMself, HERself, ITself, THEMselves;*		SE,	SOI;

And as these words are not used indiscriminately, it is necessary to attend to the following observations.

---

* In every action there is an *Agent, doer,* or *performer*; as *I* write, *I* teach, *Thou* teachest, *He* teaches, *The master* teaches; and if the action is of a nature to be communicated, there is also generally a *Patient* or *receiver;* as, *I* write a *Letter, I* teach *You, Him, Her, Them, French, English, &c.* This *Agent* or *doer,* in grammar, is called the NOMINATIVE of the verb, and the *Patient* or *receiver,* is called the OBJECT; so, *I, Thou, He, The master* are NOMINATIVES; *Letter, You, Him, Her, &c.* are OBJECTS of the verb.

Until now I have avoided speaking of *Cases,* because if a *case* be what it seems to be, a *modification* or *variation* from the original word, it is evident that in french there are no *cases* in *nouns;* and it is astonishing that grammarians should still persist in giving six cases to our nouns, as is done in Latin. Whether a noun be the *giver* or *receiver* of an action, *i.e.* whether it be the *nominative* or the *object* of the verb, it remains invariably *the same;* for ex.

Mon frère *aime votre* sœur. — My *brother* loves your *sister.*
Votre sœur *aime mon* frère. — Your *sister* loves my *brother.*

In the first instance, *Frère,* brother, is the *nominative* of the verb; in the second, it is the *object. Sœur,* sister, in the first instance, is the *object* of the verb; in the second, it is the *nominative;* and in *both instances,* the words are *the same.*

But it is not so with the *Personal,* and *Relative pronouns.* The same substantive, when the *object* of the verb, is not always expressed by the *same word* as when it is the *agent* or *nominative;* so we do not say,

IL *aime* ELLE, ELLE *aime* IL; — *He* loves *she, she* loves *he;*
we say, IL L'*aime* ELLE L'*aime;* — *He* loves *her, she* loves *him.*

If it be asked why this variation in the *pronouns* and not in *nouns;* it may be answered, that the pronouns having been invented to prevent the tiresome repetition of the same noun, if there had been only one word to supply its place, the repetition of that word must have been too frequent, and only half the inconvenience would have been removed.

Agents, or NOMINATIVE *Pronouns.*

I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY.

These pronouns are sometimes *singly* the *nominative* of a *verb;* as *I* AM, *Thou* ART, *He* is; sometimes *jointly* with another *substantive*;* as, *You* and *I* ARE; *He* and *His brother* ARE; and sometimes they are used absolutely *without* a verb; as, Who is there? *I.*

When *I*, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY are attended by a *verb* that *agrees* with them in *number* and *person*, they are; 51

I,	JE.	*HE, IT*, m.	IL.
THOU,	TU.	*THEY*, mas.	ILS.
WE,	NOUS.	*SHE, IT*, f.	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	*THEY*, fem.	ELLES.

These words keep the *same place* in the sentence in french as in english;† ex.

I am, *Thou* art, *He* is, *she* is. JE *suis*, TU *es*, IL *est*, ELLE *est*.
Am *I*? ART *thou*? IS *he*? IS *she*? *Suis*-JE? *Es*-TU? *Est*-IL? *Est*-ELLE?

If *I*, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU, THEY are *joined* to another *substantive*,* for a *nominative* to the *same verb*, or if they are used *without a verb* to agree with them, they are; 52

I,	MOI.	*HE*,	LUI.
THOU,	TOI.	*THEY*, mas.	EUX.
WE,	NOUS	*SHE*,	ELLE.
YOU,	VOUS.	*THEY*, fem.	ELLES; ex.

In CONJUNCTION *with another substantive:*

You and *I* are ready.	VOUS *et* MOI *nous sommes prêts.*
He and his *sister* are ready.	LUI *et sa* SŒUR *sont prêts.*
You and *they* are ready.	VOUS *et* EUX *vous*[121] *êtes prêts.*
They and their *friends* are here.	EUX *et leurs* AMIS *sont ici. (m)*

WITHOUT *a verb to agree with:*

Who is ready to go? *I.*	*Qui est prêt à partir?* MOI.
It is *I* who will go first.	*C' est* MOI *qui irai le premier*
It is *he* who will go first.	*C' est* LUI *qui ira le premier.*
It is *they* who will go first.	*Ce sont* EUX *qui iront les premiers.*

When a personal pronoun is the agent or *nominative* of *several verbs*, it is generally *repeated* with *each* verb; as, 53

I say and maintain that, &c. JE *dis et* JE *soutiens que, &c.*
He is poor, and will always be so. IL *est pauvre, et* IL *le sera toujours.*‡

---

* Observe that by *substantive* I do not mean *nouns* only, I mean also the *personal pronouns;* for the word which *represents* a *substantive*, is as much a *substantive* as the word which *names* it. † See the *verbs*, page 106 and following.

(*m*) The pronouns MOI, TOI, NOUS, VOUS are sometimes added to *Je, Tu, Nous, Vous*, to point out more clearly a contradistinction; as,
You will write and *I* will read. *Vous écrivez, et* MOI je *lirai.*
You come from Paris, and *we* are going there. *Vous venez de Paris, et* NOUS nous *y allons.*

N. B. The words, *Myself, Thyself, &c.* which are often used by way of *emphasis* at the end of a sentence; as, I will do it *myself*; are expressed, Myself, MOI-*même*; Thyself, TOI-*même*; Himself, LUI-*même*; Herself, ELLE-*même*; Ourselves, NOUS-*mêmes*, Yourselves, VOUS-*mêmes*; Themselves, EUX-*mêmes*, m. ELLES-*mêmes*, f.

‡ If the verbs are in the *same tense*, and used in the *same sense*, as in the example, *I say and maintain*, the pronoun may be *omitted* before the second verb, JE *dis et soutiens;* but if the verbs are in different tenses, as in the other example, *He is poor, and will always be so;* or if the verbs are used in *different senses, i. e.* one *affirmatively* and the other *negatively*, the pronoun must be *repeated.*

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM.

Now let us see when *ME* is ME or MOI; *THEE*, TE or TOI; *HIM*, LE or LUI; *HER*, LA or LUI; *THEM*, LES, LEUR, EUX, ELLES.

The *OBJECTIVE* PRONOUNS are always *attended* by some *VERB* or *PREPOSITION* which *governs* them.

They are *placed* sometimes *BEFORE* the *verb*, and sometimes *AFTER* it; and it is the *place* which they keep in the sentence that *determines* which word is to be used.

The ORDER *which the* *OBJECTIVE* PRONOUNS *keep with the* VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

54 When the *OBJECTIVE* PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, &c.* are *governed* by *a verb*, place them *immediately* *BEFORE* that verb, and express

ME, to ME;	*by* ME.	*to HIM, to HER;*	*by*	LUI.
THEE, to THEE;	TE.	*to THEM;*		LEUR.
US, to US;	NOUS.	*to IT, to THEM,*	*neut.*	Y.
YOU, to YOU;	VOUS.	*of IT, of THEM,*	*neut.*	EN.
HIM, IT;	LE.	*HIM-HERself, ITself, THEMselves;*	SE; thus,	
HER, IT;	LA.			
THEM;	LES.			

He looks at	*me.*	*Il* ME *regarde.*
	thee.	*Il* TE *regarde.*
	us.	*Il* NOUS *regarde.*
	you.	*Il* VOUS *regarde.*
	him, or *it.*	*Il* LE *regarde.*
	her, or *it.*	*Il* LA *regarde.*
	them.	*Il* LES *regarde.*
Does he look at *me?*		ME *regarde*-t-*il?**
He does not look at *me.*		*Il ne* ME *regarde pas.*
Does he not look at *me?*		*Ne* ME *regarde*-t-*il pas?*

55 Observe that if the *OBJECTIVE* PRONOUNS are governed by a verb compounded of the *auxiliary* verbs AVOIR or ÊTRE, and of a *participle past*, they must be placed *BEFORE* the *auxiliary* verb, not *between* the auxiliary and the participle; thus,

He has spoken	to *me.*	*Il* M' A *parlé.*
	to *thee.*	*Il* T'† A *parlé.*
	to *us.*	*Il* NOUS A *parlé.*
	to *you.*	*Il* VOUS A *parlé.*
	to *him*, to *her.*	*Il* LUI A *parlé.*
	to *them.*	*Il* LEUR A *parlé.*
	of *it*, of *them.*	*Il* EN A *parlé.*
Has he spoken to *me?*		M' A-t-*il parlé?**
He has not spoken to *me.*		*Il ne* M' A *pas parlé.*
Has he not spoken to *me?*		*Ne* M'A-t-*il pas parlé? &c.*

* This *t* is added for the sake of *melody*; see note * page 92. † See note * page 28

The ORDER *which the* OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep with the* VERB.

1st Exception. When the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM* are governed by the IMPERATIVE of a verb used in a COMMANDING *sense, i. e. without a negation,* the pronouns which represent them are placed *immediately AFTER* the *verb;* 56

In these instances *ME* is expressed by MOI, and *THEE* by TOI.

But if the IMPERATIVE is used in a FORBIDDING *sense, i. e.* if it is attended by a *negation,* the pronouns must be placed *immediately BEFORE* the *verb,* agreeably to the general rule; 57

Then *ME* is expressed by ME, and *THEE* by TE; ex.

Imperative COMMANDING, 56 *rule.*		*Imperative* FORBIDDING, 57 *rule.*	
Look at *me.*	*Regarde*-MOI.	*Ne* ME	*regarde pas.*
thyself.	TOI.	*Ne* TE	
Look at *us.*	*Regardez*-NOUS.	*Ne* NOUS	*regardez pas.*
yourself.	VOUS.	*Ne* VOUS	
Let us look at *him* or *it.*	*Regardons*-LE.	*Ne* LE	*regardons pas.*
her or *it*	LA.	*Ne* LA	
them.	LES.*(n)*	*Ne* LES	

do *not* look at *me.*

2nd Exception. The OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are not always the *object* of *verbs,* they are sometimes governed by a *PREPOSITION* which some verbs require to unite them to the substantive which follows them; then the pronoun being the *object* of the *preposition,* not the object of the verb, it is placed *AFTER* the *preposition,* and *ME* is expressed by MOI; *THEE,* by TOI; *HIM,* by LUI; *HER,* by ELLE; *US,* by NOUS; *YOU,* by VOUS; *THEM,* masc. by EUX; *THEM,* fem. by ELLES; ex. 58

He came *to me.* *Il vint* à MOI.
He complained *of thee.* *Il se plaignit* de TOI.
He applied *to him, to her, to them.* *Il s'adressa* à LUI, à ELLE, à EUX, &c. *(o)*

(n) With two imperatives governing the same pronouns, to avoid monotony, we say
Donnez-LE-MOI, *ou* ME LE *vendez.* Give *it me* or sell *it me.*
Voyez-LE, *et* LE *consolez.* See *him,* and comfort *him.*

(o) Some difficulty arises here with respect to the preposition À, which, like the preposition *TO,* is generally implied in the pronoun; for we say
Il ME *donna un livre,* He gave *me* a book; *instead of*
Il donna un livre à MOI; He gave a book to *me.*
Je LUI *prêtai de l'argent,* I lent *him* money; *instead of*
Je prêtai de l'argent à LUI; I lent money *to him.*
But in some instances this *preposition* can *not* be *left out;* for though we say, *He gave* ME *a book; I lent* HIM *money;* we could not say, *He came* ME; *I went* HIM; we must say, *He came* to ME; *I went* to HIM.

The verbs which require the *preposition* À *to unite* them to the *pronoun,* are the following; 1st, all the *REFLECTIVE VERBS,* which, as they always have a pronoun attached to them for their object, can not govern another substantive, without a preposition; as,
Il s'est adressé à MOI, à TOI, &c. He has applied *to me,* to *thee, &c.*
Ne VOUS *fiez pas* à LUI, à ELLE, &c. Do not trust *him, her, &c.*

2dly, A few *NEUTER VERBS* which also *require a preposition* to unite them to the pronoun which attends them. The most frequently met with are:

	as,	
ALLER, to go;	*N'allez pas* à LUI.	Do not go *to him.*
BOIRE, to drink;	*Je bois* à VOUS.	I drink *to you.*
COURIR, ACCOURIR, to run;	*Il accourt* à NOUS.	He is running *to us.*
DESCENDRE, to go *or* come down;	*Elle descendit* à MOI.	She came down *to me.*
ETRE, to be, *viz.* to belong;	*Ceci est* à EUX.	This belongs *to them.*
MONTER, to go *or* come up;	*Je monterai* à ELLE.	I shall go up *to her.*
PENSER, to think;	*Pensez* à NOUS.	Think *of us.*
RECOURIR, to have recourse;	*Recourez* à EUX.	Have recourse *to them*
VENIR, to come;	*Ils vinrent* à MOI.	They came *to me.*

The ORDER *which* SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS *keep* TOGETHER.

59 When SEVERAL OBJECTIVE pronouns are *governed* by the *same* verb, a *precedency* must be given to some of them.

If, agreeably to the *general rule*, the pronouns are placed BEFORE the *verb*,

ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, SE } *have the precedency over* LE, LA, LES, Y, EN.

LE, LA, LES } *have the precedency over* LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.

LUI, LEUR } *have the precedency over* Y, EN.

Y *has the precedency over* EN;* as,

Will he give him or it *to me*,	ME LE	*donnera-t-il?*
her or it *to me*,	ME LA	
them *to me?*	ME LES*	
He promised him or it *to us*,	*Il* NOUS L'	135 *a promis.*
her or it *to us*,	*Il* NOUS L'	
them *to us*,	*Il* NOUS LES	
Will he not lend it *to you*,	*Ne* VOUS LE	*prêtera-t-il pas?*
her or it *to you*,	*Ne* VOUS LA	
them *to you?*	*Ne* VOUS LES	
He will send it *to me* there,	*Il* ME L'Y	*enverra.*
some *to me* there, (*p*)	*Il* M'Y EN	
some *to you* there.	*Il* VOUS Y EN	
He will not send *it* him or her,	*Il ne* LE LUI	*enverra pas.**
any *to him, to her*, (*p*)	*Il ne* LUI EN	
them to them.	*Il ne* LES LEUR	

60 But if, agreeably to the 56*th rule*, the pronouns are placed AFTER the *verb*, in which instances MOI, TOI are used instead of ME, TE, then

LE, LA, LES, Y } *have the precedency over* MOI, TOI; as,

Send *him*, or *it* to me.	*Envoyez*-LE-MOI.
her or *it* to me.	LA-MOI.
them to me.	LES-MOI.
them to me there.	LES-Y-MOI.*

61 Observe also that if ME, THEE after an imperative, are followed by SOME, *of* IT, *of* THEM, they are not expressed by MOI, TOI, as above; ME *some*, ME *of it*, *&c.* are expressed by M'EN; THEE *some*, *&c.* are expressed by T'EN, whether they come *before* or *after* the verb; ex.
He has sent *me some*. *Il* M'EN *a envoyé*. send *me some*. *envoyez*-M'EN.
Doest thou remember *it?* T'EN *souviens-tu?* remember *it*. *souviens*-T'EN.

---

* See, page 78, 79, a table which shews how to arrange *several* pronouns *together*.

(*p*) SOME, ANY, implying *of* IT, *of* THEM, are rendered by EN.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As there are only TWO *genders* in french, the *masculine* and the *feminine*, the *neuter* pronouns *IT*, *THEY*, *THEM* must be expressed by IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, LE, LA, LES, the same as *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, *HIM*, *HER*, *THEM*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the *gender* of the *noun* which they represent; so we say, 62

Of a *man* or a *coach*;

IL *vient; je* LE *vois*, *He* or *IT* is coming; I see *him* or *IT*.

Of a *woman* or a *watch*; (*See note* h, *page* 80.)

ELLE *est belle; regardez*-LA. *She* or *IT* is fine; look at *her* or *IT*.

N. B. *IT* is often used in an *impersonal* sense, *i. e. without reference* to any *substantive* mentioned before; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by IL, or by CE.

IT is expressed by IL, if the verb is followed by an *adjective*; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

IL *est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, à propos, &c.*

IT is expressed by CE, when the verb is followed by a *substantive*, either with or without an adjective; as,

Is *it* you? *It* is he. It is his son. *It* is a shameful thing.

Est-CE *vous? C'est lui. C'est son fils. C'est une chose honteuse.*

not, *Est*-IL *vous?* IL *est lui.* IL *est son fils*, means HE is his son.

Though LUI and LEUR may be said of beings that have life, such as *brutes* and *plants*; as, 63

That tree is withered, give *it* some water.

Cet arbre est flétri, donnez-LUI *de l'eau;*

They can not be said of *lifeless beings*, commonly called *things*; *(q)* in speaking of *things*, *to IT*, *to THEM* must be expressed by Y; as,

She loves reading, she gives all her time *to it*.

Elle aime la lecture, elle Y *donne tout son tems.*

LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES, after a *preposition*, are said only of *persons*; in speaking of *brutes* or *things*, the *preposition* must be changed into some *adverb* which implies the meaning of both the preposition and pronoun; as, 64

Take this horse, and get *upon it*.

Prenez ce cheval, et montez DESSUS, not *sur* LUI. *(q)*

If an *adverb* can not be found to supply the place of the *preposition*,* give another turn to the sentence, by which the *preposition* will disappear; as,

He is come *with it; Il* L' *a* apporté, *i. e.* he has *brought it*.

not, *Il est venu* avec LUI, which would imply a *person*, not a *thing*.

(q) Except those that are generally personified, such as *Heaven, Fortune, Providence, the Elements, some Virtues* and *Vices*; as,

Love is the tyrant of reason, yet there are people who sacrifice every thing *to it*.

L'amour est le tyran de la raison, cependant il y a des gens qui LUI *sacrifient tout.*

Or when in a *metaphorical sense*, we attribute to *things*, what in a *proper sense* can only be attributed to *persons*; so, speaking of a *Sword*, we say;

Je LUI *dois la vie*, I owe my life *to it*.

Of a *Book*: *Ces livres me coûtent cher, mais je* LEUR *dois mon instruction*

These books cost me dear, but I owe my instruction *to them*.

But in speaking of the same *things* without giving rational attributes to them, we could not use LUI, LEUR, we must use Y; as,

It is an old sword, but I have got a new hilt put *to it*.

*C'est une vieille épée, mais j'*Y *ai fait mettre une garde neuve.*

* You find in the dictionaries the words which are both *prepositions* and *adverbs*.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

65 *HE, SHE, IT, THEY* coming with the verb *BE*, followed by a *substantive*, are generally expressed by CE; as,

He is an officer.	c' *est un officier.*
She is a seamstress.	c' *est une couturière*
They are merchants.	CE *sont des négociants.*

If the substantive which follows the verb, denotes *rank, state, trade*, or *profession, HE, SHE, THEY* may be expressed by IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, but the *article* must be *left out;* as,

IL *est officier.* ELLE *est couturière.* ILS *sont négociants.*
not, IL *est* UN *officier.* ELLE *est* UNE *couturière.* ILS *sont* DES *négociants.* (see 23 rule.)

66 *HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM* are sometimes used without reference to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *man, woman, or people* understood; in this sense they are expressed,

HE, HIM, } *by* CELUI; *SHE, HER,* } *by* CELLE; *THEY, THEM,* } *by* CEUX; as,

He who can live dishonored, does not deserve to live, i. e. *the man who*
CELUI QUI *peut vivre déshonoré ne mérite pas de vivre.*
I have met *her whom* you wished so much to see, i. e. *the woman whom*
J'ai rencontré CELLE QUE *vous souhaitiez si fort de voir.*

N. B. The pronouns CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, and the relative QUI, QUE, DONT which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words are sometimes in english; they must be *placed together;*

They are mistaken *who* think that riches make men happy.
CEUX QUI *pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux se trompent.*
i. e. *They who* think that riches make men happy are mistaken.*

67 *HIS, HER, THEIR* are also sometimes used in the same sense as the above pronouns, *i. e.* implying the words *man, woman,* or *people* understood, and are then expressed,

HIS, by *de* CELUI; *HER,* by *de* CELLE; *THEIR,* by *de* CEUX; as,
We[90] always blame *their* conduct *who* do not succeed.
On[90] *blâme toujours la conduite* de CEUX qui *ne réussissent pas.*
i. e. We blame always the conduct *of those*, viz. *of the people* who do not succeed.

68 When an *objective* pronoun is governed by *several verbs,* that pronoun must be *repeated* with every verb by which it is governed; as,

She loves and esteems *you.*	*Elle* VOUS *aime et* VOUS *estime.*
Speak or write *to her*	*Parlez*-LUI *ou* LUI *écrivez.*

69 It sometimes happens that the verb by which the *objective* pronouns are governed, is preceded by *another verb;* as,

I *can* not do it; He *will* not give it me; You *may* lend it to him.

In these instances, it is better to place the pronouns *before* the *last* verb than before the *first;* so, instead of saying,

Je ne LE *puis pas faire;* say, *Je ne puis pas* LE *faire.*
Il ne ME LE *veut pas donner;* *Il ne veut pas* ME LE *donner.*†

---

* These sentences may also be expressed without changing the order of the words; thus.
CEUX-là *se trompent* QUI *pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux;*
or, C'EST *se tromper* QUE de *penser que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux.*
But these expressions are more adapted to poetry and oratory, than to conversation.

† This rule is not strictly adhered to by french writers, especially ancient authors; however it makes the sentence clearer, and it is the surest for a foreigner, as there are no exceptions to this rule, and there are several to the other, which he might be liable to mistake.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

LE, LA, LES, EN, Y are often used when the corresponding words are not requisite in english; for example, in answer to these questions; 70

Are you MR. B?	*Etes-vous Monsieur B?*
Is that your house?	*Est-ce là votre maison?*
Are these your gloves?	*Sont-ce ici vos gants?*

It would not be sufficient in french, as it is in english, to answer with the auxiliary verb only, and say, *Oui, je* SUIS; YES, I *am.*

*Non, ce n'*EST *pas;* NO, it *is* not. *Oui, ce* SONT; YES, they *are.*

We are obliged to *add* one of the above *pronouns*, and say;

Oui, je LE *suis. Non, ce ne* L'*est pas. Oui, ce* LES *sont.(r)*

You have got fine apples.	*Vous avez de belles pommes.*
Will you have *some? (of them).*	EN *voulez-vous quelques-unes?*
Yes, give me *a few.* i. e. *(of them).*	*Oui, donnez m'*EN *quelques-unes.*

N. B. And if the *auxiliary verb* with which the question is asked is attended by *another verb*, that *verb* must also be *repeated;* as,

Has he done it?	L'*a-t-il fait?*
No, he *has* not, *i. e. (done it).*	*Non, il ne* L'*a pas* FAIT.
Do you remember it?	*Vous* EN *souvenez-vous?*
Yes, I *do, i. e. (remember it).*	*Oui, je m'* EN SOUVIENS.
Are you going to the play?	*Allez-vous à la comédie?*
No, I *am* not, *i. e. (going there).*	*Non, je n'* Y VAIS *pas.*

If the *pronoun* is *added* to represent a *noun*, it must be one of the words LE, LA, LES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of that noun; as, 71

Are you *the son* of MR. A?	*Etes-vous* le FILS *de Monsieur A?*
Yes, I am, *i. e. (the son).*	*Oui, je* LE *suis.*
Are you *the daughter* of MRS. B?	*Etes-vous* la FILLE *de Madame B?*
No, I am not, *(the daughter).*	*Non, je ne* LA *suis pas.*
Are these *your gloves?*	*Sont-ce ici* VOS GANTS?
Yes, they are, *i. e. (my gloves).*	*Oui, ce* LES *sont.*

But if the word to be represented is an *adjective*, an *adverb*, or *a whole sentence*, LE is used *without regard* to gender or number; as, 72

Are you *married*, sir?	*Etes-vous* MARIÉ, *Monsieur?*
Yes, I am, *i. e. (married).*	*Oui, je* LE *suis.*
Are you *married*, MADAM?	*Etes-vous* MARIÉE, *Madame?*
No, I am not, *i. e.* (I am not *so*).	*Non, je ne* LE *suis pas.*
Are you *contented*, Ladies?	*Etes-vous* CONTENTES, *Mesdames?*
Yes, we are, *i. e.* (we are *so*).	*Oui, nous* LE *sommes.*

EN, Y, which are generally applied to *things*, may, in answer to a question or a command, be applied to *persons*, EN instead of *de* MOI, *de* TOI, *de* NOUS, *de* VOUS, *de* LUI, *d'*ELLE, *d'*EUX, *d'*ELLES; Y instead of *à* MOI, *à* TOI, *à* NOUS, *à* VOUS, *à* LUI, *à* ELLE, *à* EUX, *à* ELLES; as, 73

Remember *me.*	*Souvenez-vous* de MOI.
I *will*, i. e. *(remember you)*	*Je m'*EN souviendrai.
Have you thought of *us?*	*Avez-vous pensé* à NOUS?
Yes, we *have*, i. e. *(thought of you).*	*Oui, nous* Y *avons* pensé.

(r) If the answer is made with the pronouns *HE, SHE, THEY,* relating to persons, LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES added to the verb, render the other words unnecessary;

Is that your brother?	Yes, *he* is.	Is that your sister?	No, *she* is not.
Est-ce là votre frère?	*Oui, c'est* LUI.	*Est-ce là votre sœur?*	*Non, ce n'est pas* ELLE.

RELATIVE *or distinctive* PRONOUN

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.

QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

74 When *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH* come after one or several substantives which they *particularize*, they are expressed,

Nomin.	*WHO,*	QUI;	The man *who*	comes.	*L' homme* QUI
	THAT,		The horse *that*		*Le cheval* QUI
	WHICH,		The chaise *which*		*La chaise* QUI
					vient.
Object.	*WHOM,*	QUE;	The man *whom*	I see.(s)	*L' homme* QUE
	THAT,		The horse *which*		*Le cheval* QUE
	WHICH,		The coach *that*		*Le carrosse* QUE
					je vois.
Possess.	*WHOSE,*	DONT;	The man *of whom*	I speak.	*L' homme* DONT
	of WHOM,		The horse *of which*		*Le cheval* DONT
	of WHICH,		The chaise *of which*		*La chaise* DONT
					je parle.

(see note m, page 82.)

75 QUI, QUE, DONT, whatever be the order of the corresponding words in english, must be *placed immediately after* the noun to which they relate;

Is the *gentleman* come, *who is*[242] to dine with us?

Le MONSIEUR QUI *doit*[242] *dîner avec nous, est-il venu?*

i. e. the *gentleman who* is to dine with us, is *he*[134] come?

N. B. DONT, besides being placed immediately after the noun to which it relates, must be followed by a substantive in the *nominative;* as,

He is a man *whose* probity is known.

C'est un homme DONT *la probité est connue*, or, DONT *on connaît la &c.*

If *WHOSE* is followed by a noun governed by a *preposition*, it can *not* be expressed by DONT, it must be expressed by *du*QUEL, *de la*QUELLE, *des*QUELS, *des*QUELLES, agreeably to *gender* and *number;* as,

He is a man *on* whose probity one may rely; *i.e.* on the probity *of whom*

C'est un homme sur *la probité* DUQUEL *on peut compter;*

not, *C'est un homme* DONT *sur la probité*, nor *sur la probité* DONT.(t)

(s) The distinctive words WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often *left out;* as, *The man I saw*, for *the man* whom I *saw; The wine we drank*, for *the wine* which *we drank;* but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must never be omitted, and if they are the nominative, or the object of several verbs they must *be repeated* with each verb; as,

The man I saw,	i. e. *whom* I saw.	*L'homme* QUE *je vis.*
The wine we drank,	i. e. *which* we drank.	*Le vin* QUE *nous bûmes.*
The woman I speak of,	i. e. *of whom* I speak.	*La femme* DONT *je parle.*

(t) When a relative pronoun comes after two nouns, and relates only to one of them, if the noun to which it relates is not the last in french, WHO, WHOM, THAT, WHICH must be expressed by *le*QUEL, *la*QUELLE, *les*QUELS, *les*QUELLES; *of* WHOM, *of* WHICH, by *du*QUEL, *de la*QUELLE, *des*QUELS, *des*QUELLES; *to* WHOM, *to* WHICH, by *au*QUEL, *à la*QUELLE, *aux*QUELS, *aux*QUELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, to avoid the ambiguity that might arise from QUI, QUE, DONT, which are generally understood to *relate* to the *last noun;* as,

This is that young man's sister *of whom* we were speaking.

Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme DE LAQUELLE *nous parlions.*

But this being done for the sole purpose of removing the ambiguity which would arise from QUI, QUE, DONT; if a relative pronoun, coming after two nouns, was followed by a *verb*, or by an *adjective* that would sufficiently denote to which noun it refers, it would be better to use QUI, QUE, DONT, than LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, &c. which are rather formal expressions; the following sentence, for example, would not be ambiguous,

That young man's sister *who* is so *handsome.*

La sœur de ce jeune homme QUI *est si* belle; QUI being determined by *belle.*

But, if these words can not be used without obscurity, the principal object of a language being to express our thoughts with precision, elegance must yield to perspicuity.

After any *preposition* but OF, or a *preposition* synonymous to it, 76
WHOM is expressed by QUI, for *both genders* and *numbers;*

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH	*le* QUEL,	*la* QUELLE,	*les* QUELS,	*les* QUELLES;
From WHICH	*du*QUEL,	*de la*QUELLE,	*des* QUELS,	*des* QUELLES;
To, at WHICH	*au*QUEL,	*à la*QUELLE,	*aux*QUELS,	*aux*QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun to which it relates; as,

The man *with whom* } he is. *L'homme* avec QUI } *il est.*
The horse *on which* } *Le cheval* sur LEQUEL }
The chaise *in which* } *(u)* *La chaise* dans LAQUELLE }

The man *from whom* } he comes *L'homme* de QUI } *il vient*
The horse *from which* } *Le cheval* DUQUEL }
The chaise *from which* } *(v)* *La chaise* de LAQUELLE }

The man *to whom* } he goes. *L'homme* à QUI } *il va.*
The horse *to which* } *Le cheval* AUQUEL }
The chaise *to which* } *(x)* *La chaise* à LAQUELLE }

WHO, WHOM used *absolutely, i.e.* without reference to a noun mentioned 77
before, imply the word *person* understood, and are expressed by QUI; as,

Who has done that?
i. e. *what person* has done that? QUI *a fait cela?*
I know *whom* you mean;
i. e. *what person* you mean. *Je sais* QUI *vous voulez dire.*

WHOSE used *absolutely*, implies also the word *person* understood. 78
If it can be changed into *of WHOM*, it is expressed by *de* QUI; as,

Whose daughter is she?
i. e. *of whom* is she the daughter? De QUI *est-elle fille?*
I know *whose* relation she is.
i. e. *of whom*, or *of what person*. *Je sais* de QUI *elle est parente.*
If *WHOSE* can be changed into *to WHOM*, it is expressed by *à* QUI; as,

Whose house is that?
i. e. *to whom* does that house belong? À QUI *est cette maison?*
I do not know *whose* it is. *Je ne sais pas* à QUI *elle est.*

(u) After a preposition, WHICH, relating to the word *Thing*, is expressed by QUOI; as,
It is a thing *of which* I did not think. *C'est une chose* à QUOI *je ne pensais pas.*
I see nothing *to which* he can apply. *Je ne vois rien* à QUOI *il puisse s'appliquer.*

(v) With a verb denoting dwelling or movement, even in a figurative sense, WHICH, after a preposition, is generally expressed by OÙ; as,
The city in *which* I live. *La ville dans* laquelle, *or* où *je demeure.*
The happiness to *which* I aspire. *Le bonheur* auquel, *or* où *j'aspire.*
But we could not say, *Le bonheur* où *je pense*, the happiness *on which* I think; because *penser* does not denote movement; we must say, *Le bonheur* AUQUEL *je pense.*

In the same sense, *from* WHICH is expressed by *d'où*, and *through* WHICH, by *par* où; as,
The country from *which* I come. *Le pays* duquel, *or* d'où *je viens.*
The town *through which* I have passed. *La ville par* laquelle, *or* par où *j'ai passé.*

(x) The distinctive word WHICH coming after an *Indefinite expression*, or after a *Noun without an article* in french, can not be rendered by any of the relative words which correspond with it in english; so these sentences,
I have obtained leave, *which* was the only thing that I asked; } can not be
The earth is ravaged *through ambition which* is the scourge of mankind, } translated,
J'ai obtenu permission QUI *or* LAQUELLE *était la seule chose que je demandais;*
On ravage la terre par ambition QUI *or* LAQUELLE *est le fléau du genre humain:* say,
J'ai obtenu permission, *c'était la seule chose que je demandais.*
On ravage la terre par ambition, *et* l'AMBITION *est le fléau du genre humain.*

WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an INTERROGATIVE sentence, *WHICH* requires THREE *distinctions*

1 *WHICH* INTERROGATIVE is either joined to the noun like an adjective. i. e. *without* the help of a *preposition;* as,

WHICH *man?* WHICH *carriage?* WHICH *horses?*

2 Or like a *substantive*, it is joined to it by the *preposition* OF; as,

WHICH OF *the men?* WHICH OF *the carriages?* WHICH OF *my horses?*

3 Or like a *pronoun*, it is used *absolutely* after the noun; as,

It is one of these men; WHICH *is it?*

I came in one of these carriages. *In* WHICH *did you come?*

1 **79** *WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined like an *adjective*, i. e. *without a preposition*, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	*Fem.*	*Masc.* PLUR.	*Fem.*
WHICH;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	*de* QUEL,	*de* QUELLE,	*de* QUELS,	*de* QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	*à* QUEL,	*à* QUELLE,	*à* QUELS,	*à* QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which man, *Which* carriage, *Which* horses } do you prefer? — QUEL *homme*, QUELLE *voiture*, QUELS *chevaux* } *préférez-vous?*

2 & 3 **80** *WHICH* INTERROGATIVE joined by a *preposition* to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it *absolutely*, i. e. *without a noun*, is,

	Masc. SING.	*Fem.*	*Masc.* PLUR.	*Fem*
WHICH;	*le* QUEL,	*la* QUELLE,	*les* QUELS,	*les* QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	*du*QUEL,	*de la* QUELLE,	*des* QUELS,	*des*QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	*au*QUEL,	*à la* QUELLE,	*aux*QUELS,	*aux*QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which of these men, *Which* of the coaches, *Which* of my horses } do you prefer? — LEQUEL *de ces hommes*, LAQUELLE *des voitures* *, LESQUELS *de mes chevaux* } *préférez-vous?*

Which is the tallest? — LEQUEL *est le plus haut?*

Which is the finest? — LAQUELLE *est la plus belle?*

Which are the best? — LESQUELS *sont les meilleurs?*

4 **81** *WHICH* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *THAT* or *THOSE* understood; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride?

You may ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which* you will.

This DEMONSTRATIVE word can *not* be *omitted* in french, and *WHICH* as including the two words, is expressed by

CELUI QUE, *m.*, CELLE QUE, *f.* } THAT *which;* — CEUX QUE, *m.*, CELLES QUE, *f.* } THOSE *which.*

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun to which it relates; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride? *Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?*

Ride *which*, i. e. *that which* you will. *Montez* CELUI QUE *vous voudrez.*

In which carriage will you go? *Dans quelle voiture voulez-vous aller?*

I will go in *which* you please. *J'irai dans* CELLE QU'*il vous plaira.*

---

* The pronoun may be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant; for ex. *Which* of these horses will you ride? may be translated

LEQUEL *or* LESQUELS *de ces chevaux voulez-vous monter?*

LEQUEL meaning *one* horse; LESQUELS meaning that the person is to ride *more* than *one*.

WHAT requires the *same distinctions* as WHICH.

WHAT followed by a noun, or *relating* to a noun mentioned before, is 82
expressed,

	Masc. SING.	*Fem.*	*Masc.* PLUR.	*Fem.*
WHAT;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHAT;	*de* QUEL,	*de* QUELLE,	*de* QUELS,	*de* QUELLES;
To, at WHAT;	*à* QUEL,	*à* QUELLE,	*à* QUELS,	*à* QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

What man / *What* carriage / *What* horses will you have? — QUEL *homme* / QUELLE *voiture* / QUELS *chevaux* *voulez-vous?*

What are your reasons? — QUELLES *sont vos raisons?*

WHAT used ABSOLUTELY, *i. e. without reference* to a noun mentioned, 83
implies the word *THING* understood, and is expressed by QUE or by QUOI.

WHAT is expressed by QUE, when it is the *object* of a verb; as,

What are you doing there? — QUE *faites-vous là?*

I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais* QUE *lui dire.(y)*

WHAT is expressed by QUOI, when it is governed by a *preposition*, or used as an *interjection;* ex.

What do you meddle *with?* — De QUOI *vous mêlez-vous?*

What! you have not done yet. — QUOI! *vous n'avez pas encore fini.*

WHAT sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT*, and the 84
DISTINCTIVE *WHICH;* it is then expressed,

Nom. *WHAT*, CE QUI; Always do *what* is right; i. e. *that which* is right.
Faites toujours CE QUI *est juste.*

Objec. *WHAT*, CE QUE; *What* I say is true; i. e. *that which* I say is true.
CE QUE *je dis est vrai.(z)*

But with the *prepositions* OF, TO, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the *preposition* comes *before* or *after* WHAT; for,

OF *WHAT is* de CE QUI, de CE QUE; I speak *of what* is true; *i. e.* OF *that which, &c.*
Je parle de CE QUI *est vrai.*

WHAT OF *is* CE DONT; as, *What* he speaks *of* is not true; i. e. *that* OF *which*
CE DONT *il parle n'est pas vrai.*

TO *WHAT is* à CE QUI, à CE QUE; Apply to *what* is useful; *i. e.* TO *that which* is, *&c.*
Appliquez-vous à CE QUI *est utile.*

WHAT TO *is* CE à QUOI; as, *What* you apply *to* is not useful; i. e. *that* TO *which*
CE à QUOI *vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.*

(y) *WHAT*, in this sense, used interrogatively, is generally expressed in conversation by QU'EST-CE QUE, an idiomatical expression; as,

What do you say? — QUE *dites-vous*, or QU'EST-CE QUE *vous dites?*

What are you doing? — QUE *faites-vous*, or QU'EST-CE QUE *vous faites?*

And with the verb BE, it is always expressed by QU'EST-CE QUE; as,

What is it? — QU'EST-CE QUE *c'est?*

What is that to you? — QU'EST-CE QUE *cela vous fait?*

(z) Though the words CE QUI, CE QUE, being compounded of the pronoun substantive CE, and of the distinctive QUI, QUE, should have two verbs either to govern or to be governed; yet, when these words come before the verb ÊTRE followed by another verb, or by a noun in the plural number, another CE must be put before ÊTRE; as,

What vexes me *is*, that he will not study. CE QUI *me fâche, c'est qu'il ne veut pas étudier.*

What I detest most, *are* idle people — CE QUE *je déteste le plus,* CE *sont les oisifs.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
MINE;	*le* MIEN,	*la* MIENNE,	*les* MIENS,	*les* MIENNES.
Of, from MINE;	*du* MIEN,	*de la* MIENNE,	*des* MIENS,	*des* MIENNES.
To, at MINE;	*au* MIEN,	*à la* MIENNE,	*aux* MIENS,	*aux* MIENNES.
THINE;	*le* TIEN,	*la* TIENNE,	*les* TIENS,	*les* TIENNES.
HIS, HERS;	*le* SIEN,	*la* SIENNE,	*les* SIENS,	*les* SIENNES.
OURS;	*le* NÔTRE,	*la* NÔTRE,	*les* NÔTRES,	*les* NÔTRES.
YOURS;	*le* VÔTRE,	*la* VÔTRE,	*les* VÔTRES,	*les* VÔTRES.
THEIRS;	*le* LEUR,	*la* LEUR,	*les* LEURS,	*les* LEURS.

85 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c.* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which they *represent;* ex.

Your hat is better than *hers*, i. e. *her hat.*
Votre chapeau *est meilleur que* LE SIEN.
My watch is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his watch.*
Ma montre *n'est pas si belle que* LA SIENNE.

86 The POSSESSIVE words *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* do *not* always *represent* a noun mentioned before them; they are often used instead of the *personal* pronouns *ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM*, with the verb *BE*, meaning to *BELONG;* as for example, *This book is* MINE, *i. e. belongs to* ME; in this sense *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* are expressed by à MOI, à TOI, à LUI, à ELLE, à NOUS, à VOUS, à EUX, *m.* à ELLES, *f.;* as,

This book is *mine.*	*Ce livre est* à MOI;	*i. e.* belongs	*to me.*
is *thine.*	*est* à TOI;		*to thee.*
is *his.*	*est* à LUI;		*to him.*
is *hers.*	*est* à ELLE;		*to her.*
is *ours.*	*est* à NOUS;		*to us.*
is *yours.*	*est* à VOUS;		*to you.*
is *theirs.*	*est* à EUX, *m.* à ELLES, *f.*		*to them. (aa)*

87 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *OF;* as, A FRIEND *OF* MINE; A BOOK *OF* YOURS; this POSSESSIVE *pronoun* can *not* be expressed by the POSSESSIVE *pronoun* in french; it must be expressed by the *possessive* ARTICLE MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS placed *BEFORE* the noun, which must always be *PLURAL* in french; as,

A friend of *mine.*	*un* de MES *amis;*	*i. e.* one *of my*	friends
of *thine.*	*un* de TES *amis;*	one *of thy*	
of *his.*	*un* de SES *amis;*	one *of his*	
of *hers.*	*un* de SES *amis;*	one *of her*	
of *ours.*	*un* de NOS *amis;*	one *of our*	
of *yours.*	*un* de VOS *amis;*	one *of your*	
of *theirs.*	*un* de LEURS *amis;*	one *of their*	

Never say; *Un ami de* MES, nor *Un ami des* MIENS; *Un ami de* TES; *Un ami de* SES, &c.

(aa) Yet when a question is asked with EST-CE; as, EST-CE là *votre livre?* Is that your book? we may answer, *Oui, c'est* le MIEN, or *il est* à MOI, Yes, it is mine. EST-CE là *sa maison?* Is that his house? No, it is not *his*, it is his sister's; *Non, ce n'est pas* la SIENNE, *c'est* CELLE *de sa sœur*, or *Elle n'est pas* à LUI, *elle est* à *sa sœur.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.		Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
THIS, THAT;	CELUI,	CELLE.	*THESE, THOSE;*	CEUX,	CELLES.

The DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which they *represent;* ex. 88

Bring my hat and *that* of my sister; i. e. the *hat* of &c.
Apportez mon chapeau *et* CELUI *de ma sœur.*
He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother; i. e. the *watch* of &c.
Il a perdu sa montre *et* CELLE *de son frère.*
Have you seen these *(bb)* gloves and *those* which I had on yesterday?
Avez-vous vu ces gants *et* CEUX *que j'avais hier?*

N. B. The DEMONSTRATIVE words *THIS, THESE, THAT, THOSE* imply a local distinction which CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES do not express; therefore, when a distinction is to be made between two objects, the adverbial particle CI, *here,* to denote the *nearest* object, and LÀ, *there,* to denote the *remotest,* must be *added* to these pronouns; as,

This hat is better than *that.*
Ce chapeau-CI *est meilleur que* CELUI-LÀ; *i.e.* this hat *here*—that *there.*
That watch is not so fine as *this.*
Cette montre-LÀ *n'est pas si belle que* CELLE-CI; *i. e.* as this *here.*

But the particles CI, LÀ, being added merely to discriminate the objects, if the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun is followed by a *relative* pronoun, or by a *noun* in the *possessive state,* which makes the distinction sufficiently clear, these particles would be *useless,* and they must be *left out;* as,

This hat is better than *that* of your brother.
Ce chapeau-CI *est meilleur que* CELUI de *votre frère.*
This watch is not so fine as *that* which you have lost.
Cette montre-CI *n'est pas si belle que* CELLE que *vous avez perdue.*

If *THIS, THAT* are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned before, they imply the word *THING* understood, and are expressed, 89

THIS, by	CECI;	*THAT, by*	CELA; as,
This is good;	i. e. *this thing* is good.		CECI *est bon.*
That is better;	i. e. *that thing* is better.		CELA *est meilleur.*

(bb) It is not unnecessary perhaps to recall here to the attention of the learner, that the words THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE have already been seen in the chapter of articles, and he must take care not to confound them.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are *followed by a noun,* they have the property of a demonstrative *article,* and are expressed by CE, CETTE, CES, as has been seen, *rule* 1.
CE *vin,* CETTE *gloire,* CES *plaisirs.* *This* wine, *That glory, Those* pleasures.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE do not point out a noun after them, but *represent* one mentioned before, they are *pronouns,* and are expressed by CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun which they represent; as,
Il a perdu sa montre et CELLE *de son frère.* He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother.

If THIS, THAT do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as *substantives* implying the word THING, and are expressed, THIS, by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,
CECI *est bon, mais* CELA *est meilleur.* i.e. *This thing* is good, but *that thing* is better.

N. B. THAT, joining two sentences, is a conjunction, and is always expressed by QUE; as,
I know *that* he is come. *Je sais* QU'*il est venu.*
This conjunction is often understood in english, but it must always be expressed in french;
Do you think he is come? *Pensez-vous* QU'*il soit venu?* [see conjunctions.]

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

90 *ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE* } used in an INDEFINITE *sense, i. e.* not relating to any particular person, are expressed by ON.

N. B. ON is always the *nominative* of a verb, and though it represents WE, THEY, PEOPLE, which are *plural*, it requires the verb in the 3*rd person sing.*; as,

One says, *They* say, *people* say. } ON *dit;* i. e. *one* says, (See note * p. 38.)

91 The *following* and other like INDEFINITE *expressions*, are also expressed in french by ON, with the verb in its *active* sense; as,

It was said. ON *disait;* i. e. *one* said.
It has been reported. ON *a rapporté;* *one* has reported.

92 The english PASSIVE *verbs* used *indefinitely*, require the *active* signification in french, with ON for nominative; but by adding ON to the sentence, the *nominative* of the verb in english, becomes its *object* in french;

I have *been* told that *news* has *been* received. } i. e. *one* has told *me* that *one* has received *news*.
ON m'*a dit qu'*ON *a reçu des* nouvelles;

93 *ONESELF, HIMSELF* used *indefinitely*, *ITSELF* after a *preposition* } are expressed by SOI; as,

Every one thinks well of *himself*. *Chacun a bonne opinion de* SOI.
Virtue is amiable of *itself*. *La vertu est aimable de* SOI.

94 *SOME*, repeated in a sentence of two parts, is in the first part LES UNS, in the second part LES AUTRES; as,

Some laugh, *some* cry. LES UNS *rient*, LES AUTRES *pleurent*.

95 *SOMEBODY, SOME ONE* is QUELQU'UN for *both genders;* as,

Somebody has taken my book. QUELQU'UN *a pris mon livre*.

96 *SOME, ANY, FEW* followed by a *noun* or a *pronoun* in the *possessive* state, are expressed by QUELQU'UN, QUELQUES UNS, *m.* QUELQU'UNE, QUELQUES UNES, *f.* agreeably to *gender* and *number;* as,

Take *some* of these oranges. *Prenez* QUELQUES UNES *de ces oranges*.
Give me *a few* of them. *Donnez-m'en* QUELQUES UNES.

97 *NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY*, PERSONNE; *NOBODY WHATEVER*, QUI QUE CE SOIT } require *NE* before the verb;

Nobody loves that man. PERSONNE *N'aime cet homme*.
He trusts *nobody whatever*. *Il* NE *se fie à* QUI QUE CE SOIT.

98 *SOMETHING* is QUELQUE CHOSE; as,

He gave me *something* good. *Il me donna* QUELQUE CHOSE de *bon*(*cc*)

99 *NOTHING, NOT ANY THING*, RIEN; *NOTHING WHATEVER*, QUOI QUE CE SOIT } require *NE* before the verb; as,

Nothing is more agreeable. RIEN *N'est plus agréable*.
He applies to *nothing whatever*. *Il* NE *s'applique à* QUOI QUE CE SOIT.

100 *NONE, NOT ANY*, followed by a *substantive* in the possessive state, are expressed by AUCUN, *m.* AUCUNE, *f.* with *NE* before the verb; as,

None of your sisters is come. AUCUNE *de vos sœurs* N'*est venue*.

(*cc*) QUELQU'UN, PERSONNE, QUELQUE CHOSE, RIEN followed by an adjective or a past participle, require DE after them; as Somebody wounded. *Quelqu'un* DE *blessé*. Something good. *Quelque chose* DE *bon*. Nobody come. *Personne* DE *venu*. Nothing new. *Rien* DE *nouveau*.

None, NUL; } used *absolutely*, are synonymous to PERSONNE and 101
not one, PAS UN } require *ne* before the verb; as,

None are free from faults. NUL *n'est exempt de défauts.*
Not one believes it. PAS UN, *or* PERSONNE *ne le croit(dd)*

Each, *joined* to a *noun*, is expressed by CHAQUE for *both genders*; as, 102

Each boy had a shilling. CHAQUE *garçon eut un sheling.*
Each girl earned six pence. CHAQUE *fille gagna six sous.*

Each, *followed* by a *noun* in the *possessive* state, or *relating* to a noun 103
already mentioned, is CHACUN, *m.* CHACUNE, *f.* as,

Each of these books has its price. CHACUN *de ces livres a son prix.*
Put them *each* in *their* places. *Mettez-les* CHACUN *à* sa *place.*

Every, followed by a noun, requires a distinction.

If *every* denotes *individuality*, it is expressed by CHAQUE; as, 104

Every language has its properties. CHAQUE *langue a ses propriétés;*
i. e. *each* language has &c.

If *every* denotes a *totality*, it is expressed by TOUT, *m.* TOUTE, *f.*

Every man is fallible, i. e. *all men;* TOUT *homme est faillible.*

Every one requires the same distinction as EVERY. 105

Every one, implying every one taken *individually*, is CHACUN;

Every one lives after his own way. CHACUN *vit à sa manière.*
i. e. *each person* lives &c.

Every one, implying every one *collectively*, is TOUTS, *m.* TOUTES, *f.*

Every one of them were taken; } *Ils furent* TOUTS *pris*, m.
i. e. they were *all* taken. } *Elles furent* TOUTES *prises*, f.

Every body is TOUT *le* MONDE; as, 106

Every body speaks ill of her. TOUT *le* MONDE *parle mal d'elle.*
She speaks ill of *every body*. *Elle parle mal de* TOUT *le* MONDE.

Every thing is expressed by TOUT; as, 107

Every thing is right. TOUT *est bien.*
She complains of *every thing*. *Elle se plaint de* TOUT.

Any body, *any one*, used in the sense of *some body*, *some one*, are 108
expressed by QUELQU'UN; as,

Has *any body* asked for me? QUELQU'UN *m'a-t-il demandé?*

Any body, *any one*, used in the sense of *every body*, are expressed by 109
TOUT *le* MONDE, or IL *N'* Y A PERSONNE QUI *ne;* as,

Any body will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.
TOUT *le* MONDE *vous dira la même chose;*
or, IL *N'*Y A PERSONNE QUI *ne vous dise la même chose.*

With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, or after a *comparative*, *any* 110
body is expressed by PERSONNE, but without *ne*, because *personne*
attended by *ne*, signifies NOBODY; as,

Did ever *any body* see that! PERSONNE *a-t-il jamais vu cela!*
He will do it better than *any body*. *Il le fera mieux que* PERSONNE.

(dd) RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE followed by QUI, QUE, DONT require the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

Have you found *nothing that* suits you? *N'avez-vous trouvé* RIEN QUI *vous* convienne?
I do not know *any body who* can do it. *Je ne connais* PERSONNE QUI puisse *le faire.*

111 *Any thing*, in the sense of *something*, is Quelque chose; as,
Has *any thing* happened? *Est-il arrivé* quelque chose?

112 *Any thing*, used in the sense of *every thing*, is expressed by tout;
Do *any thing* you please. *Faites* tout *ce qu'il vous plaira.*

113 With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, *any thing* is expressed by Rien, but without *ne*; for *rien* attended by *ne*, expresses nothing; as,
Is there *any thing* finer! *Y a-t-il* rien de *plus beau!*

114 *Whoever*, *whosoever* *joined* to a substantive, or *relating* to a substantive before mentioned, is expressed by Quel *que*, quels *que*, m. quelle *que*, quelles *que*, f. with the verb in the *subjunctive;* and if the nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb; as,
Whoever that man is, I shall have him punished.
quel que *soit* cet homme, *je le ferai punir.*

115 *Whoever*, *whosoever*, *whomsoever*, meaning *any person soever*, is expressed by Qui que ce soit, with a *relative* pronoun after it, and the verb in the *subjunctive;* as,
Whoever has done it, he shall repent of it; i. e. *whoever that person be;*
qui que ce soit qui *l'ait fait, il s'en repentira.*
Whomsoever you meet, do not stop; i. e. *whosoever that person be;*
qui que ce soit que *vous rencontriez, ne vous arrêtez pas.*

116 *Whoever*, *whomsoever*, meaning *every body*, is Touts ceux;
He stops *whomsoever* he meets. *Il arrête* touts ceux *qu'il rencontre.*

N. B. In proverbial sentences, *whoever* is Quiconque; as,
Whoever is rich is every thing. quiconque *est riche est tout.*

117 *Whatever*, *whatsoever*, with a substantive, requires a distinction.
If the substantive to which *whatever*, *whatsoever* is joined, is the *nominative* of a verb, it is expressed by quel *que*, quels *que*, m quelle *que*, quelles *que*, f. with the verb in the *subjunctive*, and if the nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb; as,
Whatever his reasons are, they will not be heard.
quelles que *soient ses* raisons, *elles ne seront pas écoutées.*

If the substantive to which *whatever*, *whatsoever* is joined, is the *object* of a verb, whatever, whatsoever is expressed by Quelque, *sing.* quelques, *plur.* for *both genders*, with que *after* the substantive, and the verb in the *subjunctive;* as,
Whatever reasons he gives, he will not be excused.
quelques *raisons* qu'*il donne, il ne sera pas excusé.*

118 *Whatever*, *whatsoever*, implying *whatever a thing may be*, is expressed by Quoi que ce soit, with a *relative* pronoun *after* it, and the verb in the *subjunctive;* as,
Whatever happens let me know it; i. e. *whatever the thing be &c.*
quoi que ce soit qui *arrive, faites-le-moi savoir.*

119 *Whatever*, *whatsoever*, implying *Any thing*, or *every thing*, is expressed by Tout ce qui, *nomin.* tout ce que, *object.* as,
Whatever is right, is not always approved; i. e. *every thing* that &c.
tout ce qui *est bien n'est pas toujours approuvé.*
Do *whatever* you will; i. e. *any thing*, or *every thing* you will.
Faites tout ce que *vous voudrez.*

120

OTHER is AUTRE, *substantive* and *adjective*, of *both genders*; as,

Give me an *other* pen. *Donnez-moi une* AUTRE *plume.*

Others think differently. *D'*AUTRES *pensent différemment.**

121

EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER;

	masc. SING.	fem.	masc. PLURAL.	fem.
	l'*Un* l'*Autre*,	l'*Une* l'*Autre*,	les *Uns* les *Autres*,	les *Unes* les *Autres*;
of, from ONE ANOTHER;	l'*Un* de l'*Autre*,	l'*Une* de l'*Autre*,	les *Uns* des *Autres*,	les *Unes* des *Autres*;
to, at ONE ANOTHER;	l'*Un* à l'*Autre*,	l'*Une* à l'*Autre*,	les *Uns* aux *Autres*,	les *Unes* aux *Autres*;

agreeably to *gender* and *number*; but observe that the *preposition* which comes *before ONE ANOTHER* in english, must be placed *between* the two words *l'*UN, *l'*AUTRE in french; as,

They can not live *without* one another; *i. e.* the one *without* the other.

Ils ne sauraient vivre l'UN *sans* l'AUTRE, *m.* l'UNE *sans* l'AUTRE, *f.*

122

BOTH;

	mas. SING.	fem.	masc. PLUR.	fem.	
	l'*Un* et l'*Autre*,	l'*Une* et l'*Autre*,	*Touts deux*,	*Toutes deux*;	Speaking of two individual objects only as,
of, from BOTH;	de l'*Un* et de l'*Autre*,	de l'*Une* et de l'*Autre*,	de *Touts deux*,	de *Toutes deux*;	
to, at BOTH;	à l'*Un* et à l'*Autre*.	à l'*Une* et à l'*Autre*,	à *Touts deux*	à *Toutes deux*;	

Your sisters are *both* right.

Vos sœurs ont raison l'UNE *et* l'AUTRE, or *ont* TOUTES DEUX *raison.*

	BOTH; *les Uns* et *les Autres*,	*les Unes* et *les Autres*;	Speaking of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties; as,
of, from BOTH;	*des Uns* et *des Autres*,	*des Unes* et *des Autres*;	
to, at BOTH;	*aux Uns* et *aux Autres*,	*aux Unes* et *aux Autres*;	

The French and the Dutch are united, let us beat *both*.

Les Français et les Hollandais sont unis, battons les UNS *et* les AUTRES.

123

EITHER;

	m. SING.	fem.	masc. PLURAL.	fem.
	l'*Un* ou l'*Autre*,	l'*Une* ou l'*Autre*,	les *Uns* ou les *Autres*,	les *Unes* ou les *Autres*;
of, from EITHER;	de l'*Un* ou de l'*Autre*,	de l'*Une* ou de l'*Autre*,	des *Uns* ou des *Autres*,	des *Unes* ou des *Autres*;
to, at EITHER;	à l'*Un* ou à l'*Autre*,	à l'*Une* ou à l'*Autre*,	aux *Uns* ou aux *Autres*,	aux *Unes* ou aux *Autres*;

Either of them will come.

L'UN *ou* l'AUTRE *viendra*, m. l'UNE *ou* l'AUTRE *viendra*, f.

You may use *either* of them.

Vous pouvez vous servir de l'UN *ou* de l'AUTRE, *m.* de l'UNE *ou* de l'AUTRE, *f.*

124

NEITHER, NOT EITHER;

	masc. SING.	fem.	masc. PLURAL.	fem.
	Ni l'*Un* ni l'*Autre*,	Ni l'*Une* ni l'*Autre*;	Ni *les Uns* ni *les Autres*,	Ni *les Unes* [ni *les Autres*,
of, from NEITHER;	Ni de l'*Un* ni de l'*Autre*,	Ni de l'*Une* ni de l'*Autre*;	Ni *des Uns* ni *des Autres*,	Ni *des Unes* [ni *des Autres*,
to, at NEITHER;	Ni à l'*Un* ni à l'*Autre*,	Ni à l'*Une* ni à l'*Autre*;	Ni *aux Uns* ni *aux Autres*,	Ni *aux Unes* [ni *aux Autres*.

These words require *NE before* the *verb* which attends them; as,

I care for *neither* of them.

Je NE *me soucie ni* de l'UN *ni* de l'AUTRE, *m. ni* de l'UNE *ni* de l'AUTRE, *f.*

N. B. When these words are the *nominative* of a verb, they are generally placed *after* the verb, and ILS or ELLES is *added* to the verb; as,

Neither of them will come.

Ni l'UN *ni* l'AUTRE *ne viendra*; or ILS *ne viendront ni* l'UN *ni* l'AUTRE, *m.*

Ni l'UNE *ni* l'AUTRE *ne viendra*; or ELLES *ne viendront ni* l'UNE *ni* l'AUTRE, *f.*

---

* In proverbial sentences, OTHERS after OF, TO is generally rendered by AUTRUI; as,
Do not do *to others* what you would not like to be done to.
Ne faites pas à AUTRUI *ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.*

VERB.

AGREEMENT of the VERB *with its* NOMINATIVE.

A VERB expressing either *being* or *acting*, necessarily implies a *subject* or *agent*, generally known in grammar by the name of *NOMINATIVE*.

125 The VERB must be of the *same* NUMBER and PERSON as the *agent*, or *nominative*; this is called *agreement* of the verb with its *NOMINATIVE*; as,

		Singular.		*Plural.*		
I speak.		*Je*	PARL*e*.	*Nous*	PARL*ons*.	we speak, &c.
Thou speakest.		*Tu*	PARL*es*.	*Vous*	PARL*ez*.	
He	speaks.	*Il*	PARL*e*.	*Ils*	PARL*ent*.	
She		*Elle*		*Elles*		
My brother		*Mon frère*	PARL*e*.	*Mes frères*	PARL*ent*.	
My sister		*Ma sœur*		*Mes sœurs*		

126 When *TWO* or *more* substantives in the *singular* are the *NOMINATIVE* of the *same* VERB, that verb must be in the *PLURAL* number; as,

My *sister* and *he speak* french. *Ma sœur et lui* PARLENT *français.*

127 If the substantives which are the nominative of the verb, are of *DIFFERENT persons*,* the verb *does not agree* with either of them; we add *NOUS* or *VOUS* to the sentence with which we make the verb *agree*.

We add *NOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the *first person*; as,

He and *I speak* french. *Lui et moi NOUS* parlons *français*; i. e. he and I *we speak* french.

We add *VOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the *second person*, and none of the first; as,

You and *they speak* french. *Vous et eux VOUS* parlez *français*; i. e. you and they *you speak* french.

128 If the *nominative* of the verb is the relative pronoun QUI, the verb must be of the *same* NUMBER and PERSON as the *substantive** to which that pronoun *relates*; as,

It is *I* who *speak* best.	*C' est*	MOI	*qui* parle *le mieux*
It is *thou* who *speakest* best.	*C' est*	TOI	*qui* parles *le mieux*.
It is *he* who *speaks* best.	*C' est*	LUI	*qui* parle *le mieux*.
It is *we* who *speak* best.	*C' est*	NOUS	*qui* parlons *le mieux*.
It is *you* who *speak* best.	*C' est*	VOUS	*qui* parlez *le mieux*
It is *they* who *speak* best.	*Ce sont*	EUX	*qui* parlent *le mieux*.

129 If QUI refers to *several* substantives of *DIFFERENT* persons,* it *agrees* with the *FIRST* person in preference to the *second*, and with the *SECOND* in preference to the *third*; as,

It is *you* and *I* who *speak* best. *C' est* VOUS et MOI *qui* parlons *le mieux*.

It is *you* and *he* who *speak* best. *C' est* VOUS et LUI *qui* parlez *le mieux*.

130 The collective substantives *La* PLUPART, INFINITÉ, NOMBRE, QUANTITÉ, TROUPE, MULTITUDE followed by another substantive, require the verb of the *same number* as that *second substantive*; ex.

Most people are of that opinion.

La plupart du MONDE pense *ainsi*, or *La plupart des* GENS pensent *ainsi*.

131 *Le* QUART, *le* TIERS, *la* MOITIÉ require the verb in the *singular*; as,

One *fourth* of my books *are lost*. *Le* QUART *de mes livres* EST perdu.

See note * page 205

PLACING of the NOMINATIVE *with the* VERB.

In a DECLARATIVE *sentence, i. e.* when a question is not asked, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is placed in french as in english, *BEFORE* the VERB; ex. 132

I speak french well.	JE parle *bien français.*
He speaks french well.	IL parle *bien français.*
My *brother speaks* french well.	*Mon* FRÈRE parle *bien français.*
My *sister speaks* french well.	*Ma* SŒUR parle *bien français. (ee)*

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, it is necessary to consider whether the NOMINATIVE of the verb is a *NOUN* or a *PRONOUN.*

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is one of the *PRONOUNS* JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON, or CE, this pronoun is *placed* in french, as the corresponding words are in english, IMMEDIATELY *AFTER* the VERB; ex. 133

Do *I* speak french well?	*Parlé*-JE *bien français?**
Does *he* speak french well?	*Parle*-t-IL *bien français?*
Does *she* speak french well?	*Parle*-t-ELLE *bien français?*
Do *people* speak french well?	*Parle*-t-ON *bien français?*

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is a *NOUN*, that *noun* is placed *BEFORE* the *VERB*, the same as in *declarative* sentences; but to *shew* that a QUESTION is *asked*, one of the pronouns IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, must be placed IMMEDIATELY *AFTER* the VERB; as, 134

Does my *brother* speak french well? *Mon* frère *parle*-t-IL *bien français? (ff)*
Does my *sister* speak french well? *Ma* sœur *parle*-t-ELLE *bien français?*
Do my *brothers* speak french well? *Mes* frères *parlent*-ILS *bien français?*
Do my *sisters* speak french well? *Mes* sœurs *parlent*-ELLES *bien français?*

(ee) The *nominative* is generally *placed after* the verb in a *declarative* sentence.

1. When the *verb* is used as a PARENTHESIS; ex.
You are wrong, *said* her *mother* to her. *Vous avez tort, lui* dit sa MÈRE.

2. When the sentence begins with TEL, or AINSI; as,
Such was his *advice.* TEL *était son* AVIS.
Thus ended the *business.* AINSI *se termina l'*AFFAIRE.

3. When the *nominative* is *attended* by *several words* which can not be *separated* from it, or can not be placed before the verb, without suspending the sense of the sentence;
D' un côté on voyait une rivière où se FORMAIENT *des* ILES *bordées de tilleuls fleuris.*
On one side was seen a river from which *sprung islands* lined with lime trees in bloom.
Là COULENT *mille* RUISSEAUX *qui distribuent partout une eau claire.*
There a thousand *rivulets run* which carry every where a clear water. *FENELON.*
These sentences would not be so clear, if they were expressed thus:
D' un côté on voyait une rivière où des ILES *bordées de tilleuls fleuris se* FORMAIENT.
Là, mille RUISSEAUX, *qui distribuent partout une eau claire* COULENT.

4. When the verb is preceded by QUE, SE, or OÙ; as,
The money *which* my father sent me. *L'argent* QUE *m'envoya mon* PÈRE.
The field *where* the battle was fought. *Le champ* où *se donna la* BATAILLE.

5. JE, NOUS, TU, VOUS, IL, ILS, ELLE, ELLES, ON, CE are generally *placed after* the verb, when the sentence *begins* with one of these words, AINSI, *so, therefore;* AU MOINS, *at least;* EN VAIN, *in vain;* À PEINE, *hardly;* PEUT-ÊTRE, *perhaps;* as,
You were *hardly* gone, when she came in. À PEINE *étiez*-VOUS *sorti qu'elle entra.*

* Except the pronoun *Je*, when the verb to which it is joined ends with several consonants, so instead of saying; COURS-*je?* do *I run?* MENTS-*je?* do *I lie?* DORS-*je?* do *I sleep?* which are hard to pronounce, we say, EST-CE QUE je *cours?* EST-CE QUE je *ments?*

(ff) When an interrogative sentence begins with QUE, *(what);* OÙ, *(where);* we generally *place the noun after the verb*, without adding a pronoun to it; as,
Où *est votre* frère? *Where* is your brother? Où *est votre* sœur? *Where* is your sister?
QUE *fait votre* frère? *What* is your brother doing? QUE *fait votre* sœur? *What* is your &c.?

MOODS *and* TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD *or* MANNER.

When we *declare* that a thing *is*, or *is not*, or that it *is*, *was*, *will be*, or *would be* in our power to have it so, this manner of expressing ourselves is called *INDICATIVE* or *declarative*.

PRESENT TENSE OF TIME.

J' AI,	I *have*,	now, to-day, this week, this month, this year, this age, in any period of time not entirely elapsed.†
Je SUIS,	I *am*,	
Je PARLE,*	I *speak*, or *am speaking*;	

135 The *PRESENT tense* in french does not differ from the same tense in english; it expresses the being or acting at the *time* in which *we are;* as,

I *now* have. I *now* am. I *now* speak, or *am* speaking.
À présent *j'*AI. À présent *je* SUIS. À présent *je* PARLE.

PAST TENSES.

COMPOUND of the PRESENT.

J' AI EU,	I *had*, or *have* had,	lately, to-day, this week, &c. in any period of time, not entirely elapsed; *this is the nearest time to the present.*
J' AI ÉTÉ,	I *was*, *have* been,	
J' AI PARLÉ,	I *spoke*, *did* speak, *have* spoken;	

136 If we speak of an ACTION *recently* PAST, without *mentioning* the TIME in which it passed, or if we *mention* a PERIOD† which is still *lasting*, such as, *to*-DAY, *this* WEEK, *this* MONTH, *this* YEAR, &c. the *action* being *past*, and the *period* of time mentioned being *still present*, we make the verb partake of both the *present* and *past* tenses, by adding the PAST *PARTICIPLE* to the *PRESENT* tense of the auxiliary verbs AVOIR or ÊTRE; ex.

NO TIME MENTIONED.

Were you ever at PARIS?
turn, *Have* you ever *been* at PARIS? AVEZ-*vous jamais* ÉTÉ *à paris?*
No, I never *was* there; ‡
turn, No, I *have* never *been* there. *Non, je n'y* AI *jamais* ÉTÉ.
I *had* no opportunity to go;
turn, I *have had* no opportunity &c. *Je n'*AI *pas* EU *occasion d'y aller.*
Did you ever *see* BUONAPARTE?
turn, *Have* you ever *seen* B.? AVEZ-*vous jamais* VU *Buonaparte?*

PERIOD MENTIONED, BUT NOT ELAPSED.

I *was* at your house this morning;
turn, I *have been* at your house &c. *J'*AI ÉTÉ *chez vous ce matin.*
Did you *find* any body there? ‡
turn, *Have* you *found* any body &c. *Y* AVEZ-*vous* TROUVÉ *quelqu'un?*
I *saw* your sister, and *spoke* to her;
turn, I *have seen* your sister, and &c. *J'*AI VU *votre sœur, et je lui* AI PARLÉ.
Did you not *see* my mother?
turn, *Have* you not *seen* &c.? *N'*AVEZ-*vous pas* VU *ma mère?*

---

* In order to render the elucidation of this interesting part of the language more obvious, I have laid down the two auxiliary verbs AVOIR, *to Have;* and ÊTRE, *to Be*, which are generally found the most embarrassing, and the familiar verb PARLER, *to Speak*, which may serve as a model for all the rest.

† A *period of time* is a certain *quantity* of time, the duration of which is *fixed* and *agreed* upon, and which being *elapsed*, that period ceases; such as *a Day, a Week, a Fortnight, a Month, a Year, an Age*, the four seasons of the year, *Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter;* or any other portion of time, the beginning and end of which can be ascertained.

‡ The french generally use the participle ÉTÉ, instead of the participle ALLÉ, to express that a person has *gone* to a place whence he is *returned*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUS,	I *had*,	yesterday, last week, last month, last year, a fortnight ago, in any period of time entirely past; *this is the remotest time from the present.*
Je FUS,	I *was*,	
Je PARLAI,	I *spoke*, *did* speak;	

If we speak of an action PAST, in a PERIOD of time which is also entirely PAST; such as *Yesterday*, *last* WEEK, *a fortnight* AGO, *last* MONTH, *last* YEAR, any year previous to that in which we live, then both the *time* and *action* being *past* or *accomplished*, we use the *PERFECT tense* of the verb; viz. EUS, FUS, PARLAI; as, 137

I *called* at your house yesterday.	*Je* PASSAI *hier chez vous.*
Did you *find* any body there?	*Y* TROUVÂTES-*vous quelqu'un?* *
I *saw* your sister and *spoke* to her.	*Je* VIS *votre sœur et je lui* PARLAI.
Did you *go* to the ball with her?	ALLÂTES-*vous au bal avec elle?* *
No, I *did* not; i.e. *go* there.(70 Rule N.B.)	*Non, je n'y* ALLAI *pas.* (70 Rule N.B.)
Did you not *speak* to my mother?	*Ne* PARLÂTES-*vous pas à ma mère?*
Yes, I *did*; i.e. *speak* to her.(70 Rule N.B.)	*Oui, je lui* PARLAI. (70 Rule N.B.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' AVAIS,	I *had*,	then, at that time, when that happened, in a time *imperfect* or uncertain.
J' ÉTAIS,	I *was*,	
Je PARLAIS,	I *spoke*, *did* speak;	

The *IMPERFECT* is used in *THREE different* instances.

1*st*. When we speak of an action that *was passing*, and consequently *imperfect* or *incomplete* at a time we allude to, though at the time in which we relate it, it is perfect or accomplished, we use the *IMPERFECT tense* of the verb: viz. AVAIS, ÉTAIS, PARLAIS, &c. 138

These instances are generally expressed in english by the *gerund* or present *participle* in *ing* added to *was* or *were;* as,

What *were* you *doing* there?	*Que* FAISIEZ-*vous là*
I *was writing* to a friend.	*J'*ÉCRIVAIS *à un ami.*
I *was getting* ready to go out.	*Je m'*APPRÊTAIS *à sortir.*
I *was going* to call upon you.	*J'*ALLAIS *passer chez vous.*
I *was talking* of you just now.	*Je* PARLAIS *de vous tout à l'heure.*
I *was going out*, as you *came* in.	*Je* SORTAIS, *comme vous* ENTRIEZ.

2*nd*. When we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was *habitual*, or has been *reiterated*, we must use the *IMPERFECT*. 139

In these instances, the english verb may be changed into the *infinitive*, with *did use*, or *used*, before it; as,

Where *did* you *walk* in London	
viz. Where *did* you *use* to walk &c.	*Où vous* PROMENIEZ-*vous à Londres?*
I *generally walked* in the park.	[*le parc.*
or, I *used* to walk &c.	*Je me* PROMENAIS *ordinairement dans*
I *often* met frenchmen there.	
or, I *used* to meet &c.	*J'y* RENCONTRAIS *souvent des français.*
I always *spoke* french with them.	
or, I *used* to speak &c.	*Je* PARLAIS *toujours français avec eux.*

* It is not necessary in order to use the past tenses, that every verb should be attended by an expression denoting a time past; it is sufficient that the time be mentioned or alluded to at the beginning of the discourse, because the mind naturally goes back to the period which has either been mentioned or alluded to.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

140 3rd. Another very extensive use of the IMPERFECT is in *descriptions* for whenever we describe the *qualities* of persons, or things, the *state*, *place*, *situation*, *order*, *disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, we use the IMPERFECT; as,

Where *were* you yesterday?	*Où* ÉTIEZ-*vous hier?*
I *was* in the country.	*J'*ÉTAIS *à la campagne.*
I *was*[241] not well.*	*Je ne me* PORTAIS[241] *pas bien.*
I *had* a bad head-ache.	*J'*AVAIS *grand mal à la tête.**
Was the country pleasant?	*La campagne* ÉTAIT-*elle agréable?*
Yes; but it *was*[240] rather hot.	*Oui; mais il* FAISAIT[240] *un peu chaud.*

N B. Observe however, that if the *duration* of the state, &c. which we wish to describe was *limited* to a *period* of which the *end was known*, we

* The greatest difficulty attending the past tenses is how to discriminate this last instance of the *imperfect* from the *perfect*, i. e. how to distinguish an *action* from a *state of being*, and indeed the distinction is sometimes so nice, that it is not surprising foreigners should err in the use of them; for example,

FIRST *instance.*	SECOND *instance.*
I WAS *very wet in going into the country.*	*I* WAS *so wet that I could not stay*
He WAS *killed in falling from his horse.*	*He* WAS *dead when we found him.*
He HAD *his leg carried off by a cannon ball.*	*He* HAD *also a wound in his breast.*

WAS and HAD in these various instances can not be expressed by the same tense in french.

When, in the first instance, I say; *I* WAS *very wet in going into the country; He* WAS *killed in falling; He* HAD *his leg carried off &c.* I am relating *facts, events* which happened, of the *end* of which a perfect idea may be formed, and these must be expressed by the *perfect*.

But when, in the second instance, I say; *I* WAS *so wet that I could not stay; He* WAS *dead when we found him; He* HAD *also a wound in his breast;* I no longer express the *facts* themselves, of *being wet*, of *being killed &c.* but describe a *state* of *being*, i. e. I WAS in a *wet state;* He WAS in a *dead state;* He WAS in a *wounded state*, the duration of which is not limited to any time, and can not be ascertained, and these are expressed by the *imperfect;* thus,

FIRST *instance.*	SECOND *instance.*
Je FUS *très-mouillé en allant à la campagne.*	*J'* ÉTAIS *si mouillé que je ne pus pas rester.*
Il FUT *tué en tombant de cheval.*	*Il* ÉTAIT *mort quand nous le trouvâmes.*
Il EUT *la jambe emportée d'un coup de canon.*	*Il* AVAIT *aussi une blessure à la poitrine.*

In order to elucidate this still more, and try the rules that have just been laid down, let us peruse a piece of history where the difference between a *narration* and a *description*, a *fact* and an *incident*, will appear obvious.

Calypso *could* not console herself for the departure of Ulysses. In her grief, she *considered* her immortality as a misfortune. Her grotto no longer *resounded* with the sweet harmony of her voice. The nymphs who *attended* her, *dared* not to speak to her. She often *walked* alone upon the flowery turf which an eternal spring *diffused* round her island; but these charming abodes, far from assuaging her grief, *served* only to recall the sad remembrance of Ulysses, whom she *had* so many times seen by her side. Frequently she *stood* motionless on the beach of the sea, which she *watered* with her tears, and she was incessantly *turned* towards that quarter where the ship of Ulysses, plowing the waves, had disappeared from her eyes. All on a sudden, she PERCEIVED pieces of a ship which *had* just been wrecked; then she DESCRIED two men at a distance, one of	*Calypso ne* POUVAIT[140] *se consoler du départ d'Ulysse. Dans sa douleur, elle se* TROUVAIT[140] *malheureuse d' être immortelle. Sa grotte ne* RÉSONNAIT[140] *plus du doux chant de sa voix. Les nymphes qui la* SERVAIENT[140] *n'* OSAIENT[140] *lui parler. Elle se* PROMENAIT[139] *souvent seule sur les gazons fleuris dont un printems éternel* BORDAIT[140] *son île; mais ces beaux lieux, loin de modérer sa douleur ne* FAISAIENT[139] *que lui rappeler la triste souvenir d'Ulysse qu' elle y* AVAIT[140] *vu tant de fois auprès d'elle. Souvent elle* DEMEURAIT[139] *immobile sur le rivage de la mer qu' elle* ARROSAIT[139] *de ses larmes, et elle* ÉTAIT[140] *sans cesse tournée vers le côté où le vaisseau d' Ulysse, fendant les ondes,* AVAIT[140] *disparu à ses yeux. Tout à coup, elle* APERÇUT[137] *les débris d'un navire qui* VENAIT[140] *de faire naufrage; puis elle* DÉCOUVRIT[137] *de loin*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

should not use the imperfect; we should use either the *compound* of the *present* or the *perfect*, according to the period mentioned, or alluded to; for though I should say,

*J'*ÉTAIS *malade ce matin.* I *was* ill this morning.

*J'*AVAIS *hier grand mal à la tête.* I *had* a bad head-ache yesterday

I would not say:

*J'*ÉTAIS *malade,* but *j'*AI ÉTÉ *malade toute la matinée.*

*J'*AVAIS *mal à la tête,* but *j'*EUS *mal à la tête toute la journée;*

Because the state which I describe is known to have *ended* with the period mentioned, viz. *la matinée, la journée.*

---

whom *was* seemingly in years; the other, though a youth, *resembled* Ulysses. He *had* his sweet and lofty look, with his size and majestic deportment. The goddess UNDERSTOOD that it *was* Telemachus the son of that hero, but she COULD not find out who that venerable man *was* by whom Telemachus *was* accompanied.

deux hommes dont l' un PARAISSAIT[140] *âgé; l' autre, quoique jeune,* RESSEMBLAIT[140] *à Ulysse. Il* AVAIT[140] *sa douceur et sa fierté, avec sa taille et sa démarche majestueuse. La déesse* COMPRIT[137] *que c'*ÉTAIT[140] *Télémaque fils de ce héros, mais elle ne* PUT[137] *découvrir qui* ÉTAIT[140] *cet homme vénérable dont Télémaque* ÉTAIT[140] *accompagné.*

Now, if we select from the above passage the *facts* that constitute the ground of the *narration*, we shall find them to be these:

Calypso, standing on her island, *perceived* the wreck of a ship; then she *descried* two men, the one young and the other old. She *understood* the young one to be Telemachus, but she *could* not recognise the other. And the verbs expressing these *facts* are in the *perfect*. The verbs which form only *incidents*, such as the *description* of Calypso and her island, of Telemachus and his shipwreck, and which might be left out of the narration, without impairing it, but not without stripping it of its beauties, are in the *imperfect*.

Let us examine another piece of the same author, in which there will be more *narration*, and less *description*, or more *facts* and fewer *incidents*.

Telemachus, relating the manner in which he escaped the danger of being taken by the Trojan fleet, says:

The affability and the courage of the sage Mentor *charmed* me; but I *was* still more surprised, when I *saw* with what address he *delivered* us from the Trojans. At the moment when the skies *began* to clear, and the Trojans, having a nearer view of us, would infallibly have known us; he *observed* one of their ships that was almost similar to ours, which the storm *had* separated from the rest. Her poop *was* adorned with particular flowers. He *hastened* to put upon our poop garlands of flowers similar to theirs. He *fastened* them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He *ordered* all our rowers to stoop as much as they could along their benches, that they might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we *passed* through the middle of their fleet, and whilst they *were* driven by the impetuosity of the winds towards Africa, we *made* all our endeavours to reach the neighbouring coast of Sicily. There indeed we *arrived;* but &c.

La douceur et le courage du sage Mentor me CHARMÈRENT[137]; *mais je* FUS[137] *encore bien plus surpris, quand je* VIS[137] *avec quelle adresse il nous* DÉLIVRA[137] *des Troyens. Dans le moment où le ciel* COMMENÇAIT[138] *à s'éclaircir et que les Troyens, nous voyant de plus près, n' auraient pas manqué de nous reconnaître; il* REMARQUA[137] *un de leurs vaisseaux qui* ÉTAIT[140] *presque semblable au nôtre, et que la tempête* AVAIT[140] *écarté. La poupe en* ÉTAIT[140] *couronnée de certaines fleurs. Il se* HÂTA[137] *de mettre sur notre poupe des couronnes de fleurs semblables. Il les* ATTACHA[137] *lui-même avec des bandelettes de la même couleur que celles des Troyens. Il* ORDONNA[137] *à touts nos rameurs de se baisser le plus qu'ils pourraient le long de leurs bancs, pour n'être point reconnus des ennemis. En cet état nous* PASSÂMES[137] *au milieu de leur flotte, et pendant que les vents impétueux les* POUSSAIENT[138] *vers l'Afrique, nous* FÎMES[137] *les derniers efforts pour arriver sur la côte voisine de Sicile. Nous y* ARRIVÂMES[137] *en effet; mais &c.* FENELON.

The *narrative* part of this history is; the affability &c. of the sage Mentor *charmed* me, but I *was* still more surprised when I *saw* with what address he *delivered* us from the Trojans. He *observed* one of their ships with flowers on her poop. He *hastened* to put similar nowers upon ours. He *fastened* them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He *ordered* all our rowers to stoop along their benches, that we might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we *passed* through the middle of their fleet, and *made* all our efforts to reach the coast of Sicily, where we *arrived* &c. by which you see that *all the verbs* which are necessary to the *train* of the narration, because they declare *facts*, are in the *perfect tense*, those which denote only *incidents*, are in the *imperfect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE POSITIVE.

J' AURAI,	I *shall, will* have,	soon, by and by, tomorrow, next week, next month next year, &c. in any time to come.
Je SERAI,	I *shall, will* be,	
Je PARLERAI,	I *shall, will* speak ;	

141 The *FUTURE tense* is used in french as in english, to express what is to happen in a *time to come;* as,

I *will call* upon you by and by. *Je* PASSERAI *tantôt chez vous.*

142 The *PRESENT tense* is sometimes used in both languages, instead of the *future;* so we say,

Où ALLEZ-*vous ce soir?* Where *do* you *go* this evening?
for, *Où* IREZ-*vous ce soir?* Where *shall* you *go* this evening?

N. B. But if *TWO* verbs denoting *futurity* come in the same sentence, the *second* verb can *not* be put in the *present* tense in french, as it is sometimes in english, it must be put in the *FUTURE;* as,

Call upon me, when you *are* ready; the *time* for calling and for being ready, *having* yet *to come,* I would not say in french,

PASSEZ *chez moi, quand vous* ÊTES *prêt,* which would denote that the person *is* ready at the time I am speaking; I must say,

PASSEZ *chez moi, quand vous* SEREZ *prêt,* i. e. when you *will be* ready.

I *will call* as soon as I *have* dined.

Je PASSERAI *aussitôt que j'*AURAI *dîné;* not, *aussitôt que j'*AI *dîné,* which would denote that the person *had dined* at the time he is speaking.

This generally happens after the words *when, as soon as, as long, as after.*

FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

*J'*AURAIS,	I *should, would* have,	if I could, if I would, if I had time, if such a thing happened.
Je SERAIS,	I *should, would* be,	
Je PARLERAIS,	I *should, would* speak;	

143 The *CONDITIONAL* has also the same properties in french as in english; it denotes that a thing would be done, if some condition was granted; as,

I *would call* there, if I could. *J'y* PASSERAIS, *si je pouvais.*

144 After the conjunction *IF,* SI; *SHALL, WILL* must not be considered as *signs* of the *future,* nor *SHOULD, WOULD* as *signs* of the *conditional* of the verb which follows them; *WILL* is then the *present* tense, and *WOULD* the *imperfect* of the verb *TO* WILL, *to* BE WILLING, and they must be expressed, *WILL* by the *present,* and *WOULD* by the *imperfect* of the verb VOULOIR, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,

I *will go* with you, if you *will* come with me; *i. e.* if you *are willing* to come
*J'*IRAI *avec vous, si vous* VOULEZ *venir avec moi.** [(gg)
I *would go* with you, if you *would* come with me; *i. e.* if you *were willing*
*J'*IRAIS *avec vous, si vous* VOULIEZ *venir avec moi.** [to come.

N. B. If *SHOULD* is the sign that follows *IF,* it must be *left out,* and the following verb put in the *IMPERFECT;* as,

If he *should come,* what should I say to him? *S'il* VENAIT, *que lui dirais-je?*

* In these examples, you see *will* used first as a *sign* of the *future* of the following verb, then as the *present* of the verb *to will; would* first used as a *sign* of the *conditional,* then as the *imperfect* of the verb *to will.* If the learner finds himself embarrassed how to distinguish the *verb* from the *sign,* let him try to substitute in the place of *will, would* some verb of the same meaning, *i. e.* denoting *will, wish, inclination, desire,* such as *please, like, choose, be willing;* and he will know by the sense it will make, which is the *verb* and which is the *sign.* See also note * page 143.

(gg) If SI is used for WHETHER; SHALL, WILL must be expressed by the *future,* and SHOULD, WOULD by the *conditional; as,*

Do you know *whether* he *will come?* *Savez-vous* s' *il* VIENDRA ?
I want to know *whether* he *would come.* *Je veux savoir* s' *il* VIENDRAIT.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It has been said, (p. 224,) that when we *declare* that a thing *is* or *is not*, or that it *is in our power* to have it so, that mode of expression is called INDICATIVE, or *declarative;* but if the thing spoken of *is not asserted* to be or not to be; if it is mentioned only as a thing which *may* or *may not be*, and *is not to be depended* upon, this mode of expression is called *potential, conjunctive*, or *SUBJUNCTIVE*.*

If we speak of an action the event of which is *uncertain*, which is 145
generally the case when, in a sentence of *TWO* PARTS connected by the conjunction QUE, the *first* PART is either *INTERROGATIVE* or *NEGATIVE*, or is attended by some expression denoting *DOUBT;* as for ex. when I say;

Do you think your sister *will come?*

I do *not* think she *will come* to-day.

If I hear that she *comes*, I will let you know;

In which instances it remains *uncertain* whether the person will come or not; this *uncertainty* is imparted in french, by putting the verb in the *second* part of the sentence in the *SUBJUNCTIVE;* thus,

Pensez-vous *que votre sœur* VIENNE? not, VIENDRA.

Je NE *pense* PAS *qu'elle* VIENNE *aujourd'hui;* not, VIENDRA.

Si *j'apprends qu'elle* VIENNE, *je vous le ferai savoir.*

VIENDRA and VIENT would assert as a *fact*, what the first part of the sentence shews to be *doubtful.*

N.B. With respect to *INTERROGATIVE* sentences, it must be observed, that it is only when we wish to impart *ignorance* or *doubt* of the thing inquired after, that the *subjunctive* is required after them; for if we knew that a thing *is* or *will be*, and only enquired whether the person to whom we speak knows it likewise, we should use the *INDICATIVE;* as,

Do you not believe that she *will come? Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elle* VIENDRA?

Do not you know that she is married? *Ne savez-vous pas qu'elle* EST *mariée?* which sentences express the same idea as these;

She *will come*, do you not believe it? She *is* married, do not you know it?

---

* A few examples will make the difference between the INDICATIVE and SUBJUNCTIVE moods more obvious:

They say that peace *is* made. I believe that peace *is* made.

By these expressions I declare, in a *positive manner*, that, in the opinion of some person, the thing of which I am speaking *(peace) does* or *does not exist*, and this positive assertion must be made with the *indicative;* thus,

On dit que la paix EST *faite.* *Je crois que la paix* EST *faite.*

But by these expressions:

Do they say that peace is made? I do not believe that peace *is* made.

I do not assert that peace *does* or *does not exist;* I either declare that I am *ignorant* of it, or that I *doubt* its existence; but a thing may exist, though I am ignorant of it; it may exist, though I am not convinced of its existence, and this *uncertainty*, whether the thing is or is not, is imparted to the hearer by means of the *subjunctive* mood;

Dit-on que la paix SOIT *faite?* *Je ne crois pas que la paix* SOIT *faite.*

Again, I know somebody who *will lend* me money. He promised that he *would lend* me some

These are *positive* assertions, and they must be made with the *indicative;*

Je connais quelqu'un qui me PRÊTERA *de l'argent.*

Il a promis qu'il m'en PRÊTERAIT. But in these other instances;

I seek for somebody who *will lend* me money.

Do you know any body who *would lend* me money?

It *is not asserted* whether the thing I am speaking of, *will*, or *will not be*, i. e. whether the money *will be lent* or *not;* the event remains *uncertain*, and this uncertainty must be expressed by the *subjunctive;*

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me PRÊTE, or *qui* VEUILLE *me prêter de l'argent.*

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui VOULÛT *me prêter de l'argent?*

The *indicative* mood (says Harris) which, in all grammars, is the first in order, is also the first, both in dignity and use; it is this which publishes our sublimest perceptions, which exhibits the soul in her purest energies, superior to the imperfections of desires and wants, which includes the whole of time and its minutest distinctions.

As to the potential (*subjunctive*) mood, it is only of a subordinate nature, and it implies but a *dubious* and *conjectural* assertion; whereas that of the indicative is *absolute*, and without *reserve.* (HERMES, page 158, 159.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

146 The *SUBJUNCTIVE mood* is required after all *verbs* and *adjectives*, denoting *will, wish, desire, command, fear, wonder, surprise, astonishment, joy, gladness, grief, sorrow*, in short, after all expressions which denote any *passion* or *emotion* of the mind;* as,

I *will* have you *do* that.	*Je* veux *que vous* FASSIEZ *cela.*
I *wish* you *may succeed.*	*Je* souhaite *que vous* RÉUSSISSIEZ
I *desired* it *to be got ready.*	*J'ai* ordonné *qu'on le* PRÉPARE.
I am *afraid* he *will spoil* it.	*Je* crains *qu'il ne le* GÂTE.
I am *surprised* he *is* not here.	*Je suis* surpris *qu'il ne* SOIT *pas ici.*
I am *glad* you *are* come.	*Je suis* bien aise *que vous* SOYEZ *venu.*
I am *sorry* he *has* not seen it.	*Je suis* fâché *qu'il ne l'*AIT *pas vu.*

147 The *SUBJUNCTIVE mood* is also required in french after the following *verbs* and *adjectives*, though they neither denote *doubt* nor *passion;*

Il FAUT *Il est* TEMS	*que je le* VOIE.	I *must* see him. It is *time* that I *should see* him.	
C'est le SEUL *ami que j'*AIE.		He is the *only* friend *I have.*	
Il CONVIENT *Il* IMPORTE, *Il* VAUT MIEUX	*que j'y* AILLE.	It is *becoming* It is *material* It is *better*	that I *should* go.
Il SUFFIT *Il est* À PROPOS *Il est* NÉCESSAIRE	*que je lui* PARLE.	It is *sufficient* It is *fit* It is *necessary*	that I *speak* to him.
Il est INDIFFÉRENT *Il est* CRUEL *Il est* HONTEUX	*que cela* SOIT.	It is *indifferent* It is *cruel* It is *shameful*	that it *should* be so.
Il est JUSTE *Il est* INJUSTE *Il est* POSSIBLE *Il est* IMPOSSIBLE	*qu'il le* FASSE.	It is *just* It is *unjust* It is *possible* It is *impossible*	that he *should* do it.

After an ADJECTIVE in the *superlative* degree, (see 50 rule.)

After RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE, (note *dd*, p. 219.)

After QUELQUE, QUI QUE CE SOIT, QUOI QUE CE SOIT, (114, 115, 117, 118 rules.)

After the conjunctions AFINQUE, QUOIQUE, &c. (see 218 rule.)

---

* The ingenious Mr. HARRIS, (HERMES, p. 15, 16.) gives the following definition of the powers of the soul, which may throw some light upon this intricate subject.

The *powers of the soul* may be included in those of PERCEPTION, and those of VOLITION

By the *powers* of PERCEPTION, I mean the *senses* and the *intellect*. By the *powers* of VOLITION, I mean not only the *will*, but the several *passions* and *appetites;* in short, *all that moves to action*, whether *rational* or *irrational*.

If the leading powers of the soul be these two, it is plain that every speech or sentence, as far as it exhibits the soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we *assert*, then it is a sentence which respects the powers of PERCEPTION; for what, indeed, is it to assert, but to publish some *perception*, either of the *senses*, or of the *intellect*.

If we *interrogate*, if we *command*, if we *pray*, if we *wish*, what do we but publish so many different VOLITIONS? for, Who is it that *questions?* He who has a *desire* to be informed. Who is it that *commands?* He who has a *will*, which he would have obeyed. What are those beings who either *wish* or *pray?* Those who feel certain *wants*, either for themselves or for others.

If then the *soul's leading powers be* the *two* above mentioned, and if it be true that *all speech is a publication of these powers*, it will follow, that every sentence will be either a *sentence* of ASSERTION, or a *sentence* of VOLITION.

To this may be added that sentences of *assertion* require the INDICATIVE, and sentences of *volition* require the SUBJUNCTIVE mood after them.

TENSES *of the* SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *SUBJUNCTIVE mood* being always *subordinate* to a verb that *precedes* it,* its tenses are *regulated* by this *foregoing verb.*

PRESENT TENSE.

J' AIE,	I have,	*may* have,	used after the *present* and *future* of the indicative.
Je SOIS,	I be,	*may* be,	
Je PARLE,	I speak,	*may* speak;	

The *PRESENT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the SUBJUNCTIVE after it, is in the *present* or *future* of the INDICATIVE; as, 148

Present.	*Do* you think	I *shall have* time?	PENSEZ-*vous*	*que j'*AIE *le tems?*
		I *shall be* ready?		*que je* SOIS *prêt?*
		I *shall speak* to her?		*que je lui* PARLE?
Future.	He *will* wait	till I *have* time;	*Il* ATTENDRA	*que j'*AIE *le tems;*
		till I *am* ready;		*que je* SOIS *prêt;*
		till I *speak* to her.		*que je lui* PARLE.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUSSE,	I had,	*might* have,	used after the *perfect, imperfect,* and *conditional* tenses.
Je FUSSE,	I were,	*might* be,	
Je PARLASSE,	I spoke,	*might* speak;	

The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the SUBJUNCTIVE after it, is in the *perfect, imperfect,* or *conditional;* as, 149

Perfect.	He *waited*	till I *had* time;	*Il* ATTENDIT	*que j'*EUSSE *le tems;*
		till I *was* ready;		*que je* FUSSE *prêt;*
		till I *spoke* to her.		*que je lui* PARLASSE.
Imperf.	He *was* waiting	till I *had* time;	*Il* ATTENDAIT	*que j'*EUSSE *le tems;*
		till I *should be* ready;		*que je* FUSSE *prêt;*
		till I *should speak* to her		*que je lui* PARLASSE.
Condit.	*Would* he wait	till I *had* time?	ATTENDRAIT *il*	*que j'*EUSSE *le tems?*
		till I *should be* ready?		*que je* FUSSE *prêt?*
		till I *should speak* to her?		*que je lui* PARLASSE?

N.B. The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is also used, though the foregoing verb is in the *present* of the indicative, if after the subjunctive there is another verb in the *imperfect,* or some *conditional* expression; as, 150

Do you think I *might speak* to her, if I *went* now?
Pensez-vous que je FUSSE *lui parler, si j'y* ALLAIS *à présent?*
I *do* not think I *should have* succeeded *without* your assistance.
*Je ne pense pas que j'*EUSSE *réussi* SANS *votre secours;* i. e. if you *had not* assisted me.

And also when the action expressed by the verb is *past;* as,
It *is* no wonder that he *was* wicked.
*Il n'*EST *pas étonnant qu'il* FÛT *méchant.*

If, after a verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE,* there is another verb, preceded by the *conjunction* QUE, that verb must also be in the SUBJUNCTIVE; as, 151

Do you think she *expects* that I *shall come?*
*Pensez-vous qu'elle s'*ATTENDE *que je* VIENNE?

---

* Except in some sentences of WISH, where the verb *wish* is understood; as,

God *be* blessed!	*Dieu* SOIT *béni!*
May you be happy!	PUISSIEZ-*vous être heureux!*
Would to God I *had* never seen him!	PLÛT *à dieu que je ne l'* EUSSE *jamais vu.*

GERUND or present PARTICIPLE.

AYANT,	*having,*	N. B. AYANT, ÉTANT, never change their termination.
ÉTANT,	*being,*	
PARLANT,	*speaking;*	

152 The *GERUND* or *present PARTICIPLE*, joined to a noun, generally denotes *quality*, and, like an adjective, agrees with it in *gender* and *number;*

She is a *charming* woman. C'*est une femme* CHARMANTE.
She has *engaging* manners. *Elle a des manières* ENGAGEANTES.

153 But the *GERUND* expressing the *action*, and not the quality of the substantive to which it refers, does not require any agreement with it; as,

I saw her *in coming* home. *Je la vis* en VENANT *au logis.* *(hh)*
I found them *in walking* here. *Je les trouvai* en *me* PROMENANT *ici.*

N. B. If the substantive to which the *GERUND* refers is the *object* of the verb, it is better to express it with the *indicative;* thus,

I found her *coming* here. *Je la trouvai* qui VENAIT *ici.*
I saw them *walking.* *Je les vis* qui *se* PROMENAIENT.

154 The english *GERUND* governed by a *verb*, or the *prepositions OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT*, is expressed by the *infinitive* in french;

I see him *coming.* *Je le vois* VENIR *or* qui VIENT.
Without bringing his book. Sans APPORTER *son livre.*
I was prevented *from doing* it. *On m'a empêché* de *le* FAIRE.
I was tired *with waiting.* *J'étais las* d'ATTENDRE.
After having stayed so long. Après AVOIR *resté si long tems.*
I was afraid *of being* too late. *Je craignais* d'*y* ÊTRE *trop tard.*

155 The *GERUND*, so often used in english with the auxiliary verb *BE*, to render an action more definite, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; the *auxiliary* verb must be *left out* and the *gerund* be made into *a VERB*, in the *same tense* and *person* as the auxiliary verb is; as,

I am *speaking.*	*Je* PARLE;	never, *Je suis*	PARLANT. See the conjugations, p. 112.
Thou art *speaking.*	*Tu* PARLES;	*Tu es*	
He is *speaking.*	*Il* PARLE;	*Il est*	
I was *speaking.*	*Je* PARLAIS;	*J'étais*	
I shall be *speaking.*	*Je* PARLERAI;	*Je serai*	

156 The *GERUND*, when used as a *substantive* in english, *i. e.* preceded by an *article*, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; it must be expressed by a *NOUN*, if a noun *synonymous* to the verb can be found; as,

Let us go *a walking.* *Allons à* la PROMENADE.
Her singing was much admired. Son CHANT *fut fort admiré.*
He gives all his time *to gaming.* *Il donne tout son tems* au JEU.
That is the cause of *his being* poor. *C'est là la cause de* sa PAUVRETÉ.

If a *NOUN synonymous* to the verb can not readily be found, give another *turn* to the sentence; as,

What is the reason of *your coming* so late?
Quelle est la raison que vous VENEZ *si tard?* i. e. that *you come &c.*
The empoverishing of some is *the enriching* of others.
CE QUI APPAUVRIT *les uns* ENRICHIT *les autres;* i. e. *what impoverishes.*

(hh) EN is the only preposition which the gerund admits before it in french, therefore the preposition BY, which is often prefixed to it in english, must be expressed by EN; as,
They saved the city *by* surrendering. *Ils sauvèrent la ville* EN *se rendant.*
You gained his esteem *by* forgiving him. *Vous avez gagné son estime* EN *lui pardonnant.*

EU, *had*, *PAST PARTICIPLE.*
ÉTÉ, *been*, N.B. ÉTÉ never varies its termination.
PARLÉ, *spoken;*

The *past* PARTICIPLE joined to a *noun*, has the property of an ADJECTIVE, and agrees in *gender* and *number* with that noun; 157

A well *made* man. *Un homme bien* FAIT.
A well *made* woman. *Une femme bien* FAITE.

After the auxiliary verbs AVOIR and ÊTRE, a *distinction* must be made.

After ÊTRE, *to* BE, the *past* PARTICIPLE must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the NOMINATIVE of the verb; ex. 158

IL *est bien* FAIT. ILS *sont bien* FAITS.
ELLE *est bien* FAITE. ELLES *sont bien* FAITES.

After AVOIR, *to HAVE*, the *past* PARTICIPLE does *not* agree with the NOMINATIVE of the verb; so we say, 159

IL *a bien* FAIT. ILS *ont bien* FAIT.
ELLE *a bien* FAIT. ELLES *ont bien* FAIT.

In these instances you must consider whether the PARTICIPLE has an OBJECT, and whether this OBJECT comes *before* or *after* the PARTICIPLE.

If the PARTICIPLE comes BEFORE its OBJECT, it *does not* require any agreement with it; but if it comes AFTER the OBJECT, it must *agree* like an ADJECTIVE in *gender* and *number* with that OBJECT; ex.

PARTICIPLE BEFORE *ITS OBJECT.*

My brother has *made* a *mistake*. *Mon frère a* FAIT *une* faute.
My sister has *made* a *mistake*. *Ma sœur a* FAIT *une* faute.
My brothers have *made* a *mistake*. *Mes frères ont* FAIT *une* faute.

PARTICIPLE AFTER *ITS OBJECT.*

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. *Voici la* faute *qu'il a* FAITE.
Here is the *mistake* she has *made*. *Voici la* faute *qu'elle a* FAITE.
Here is the *mistake* they have *made*. *Voici la* faute *qu'ils ont* FAITE.

N. B. Observe that the participle *agrees* only with its *direct object* (see 162 rule); for if the *object* is governed by a *preposition* expressed or understood, the participle *does not* agree with that object; so, though we say, *Il nous a* VUS, he has *seen* us; we could not say, *Il nous a* dits *des nouvelles*, he has *told* us news; we must say, il nous a *dit;* because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, to us.

Sometimes after the PARTICIPLE preceded by an OBJECT, there is *a verb* in the INFINITIVE, then it is necessary to consider whether the OBJECT *is governed* by the PARTICIPLE, or by the INFINITIVE which follows it. 160

If the OBJECT is *governed* by the PARTICIPLE, the *participle* must be of the *same gender* and *number* as that OBJECT; ex.

The *letter* I have *given* him to copy. *La* LETTRE *que je lui ai* donnée à *copier.*

If the OBJECT is *governed* by the INFINITIVE *which follows* the participle, the participle has *no agreement* with the object; as,

The *letter* I have *told* him to copy. *La* LETTRE *que je lui ai* DIT *de copier.**

The participles PLU, *pleased;* DÛ, *owed, ought;* PU, *been able;* and VOULU, *been willing; do not agree* with the *object* that precedes them, because the *infinitive* of the foregoing verb is *understood* after them; ex. 161

Je lui ai rendu touts les SERVICES *que j'ai* PU, *lui* RENDRE *understood.*
I have done him all the *services* that I have *been able*, to DO *understood.*

* If you are uncertain whether the *object* is governed by the *participle*, or by the *infinitive* which follows it, *transpose* the words, and see after which the *object* may more *properly* be placed.

If the object can be placed *after* the *participle*, as in the first instance, *The* letter *I have* given *him to copy*, which may be turned, *I have* given *him the* letter *to copy;* the participle *given* governs the object *letter*, and it must agree with it.

If the object comes more properly after the *infinitive*, as in the second instance, *The* letter *I have* told *him to copy*, which might be turned, *I have* told *him to copy the* letter, (not, *the* letter *to copy*) the object *letter* is governed by the infinitive *to copy*, and the participle has no agreement with it.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

162 When a verb governs *TWO SUBSTANTIVES* (see note * page 205) one of them is the *direct* OBJECT of the verb, and does not require *any preposition;* the other is an *indirect* OBJECT, and requires *a preposition, expressed* before a noun, and generally *implied* in the pronouns *; as,

I gave *her* a *nosegay.* — *Je* LUI *ai donné un* BOUQUET.

Q. I gave *what?* A. a *nosegay.* — To *whom?* to *her.*

Nosegay is the *direct object* of the verb; to *her* is the *indirect.*

Do not tell your *mother* of *it.* — *Ne* LE *dites pas à votre* MÈRE.

Do not tell *what?* do not tell *it.* — To *whom?* to your *mother;*

For it is the *thing* you tell, not the *person* you tell it to, which is the *object* of the verb.

163 When a verb governs *TWO OBJECTS,* the *direct* OBJECT is generally placed *BEFORE* the *indirect;* as,

I gave your *sister* a *nosegay.* — *J'ai donné un* BOUQUET *à votre* SŒUR.

Yet the *indirect* OBJECT must be placed *first,* if by placing it *last,* it made the meaning *equivocal;* for example, we say,

Elle a jeté son BOUQUET *dans la* RUE.

She has thrown her *nosegay* into the *street;* but we do not say:

Elle a jeté le BOUQUET *que vous lui aviez donné* dans *la* RUE.

She has thrown *the nosegay* which you had given her *into the street;* because, *dans la* RUE, after *donné,* might be understood that the nosegay was *given* in the street, not that it was *thrown* into the street; we say:

Elle a jeté dans *la* RUE, *le* BOUQUET *que vous lui aviez donné.*

She has thrown *into the* STREET, *the* NOSEGAY which you had given her.†

164 The *same NOUN* may be *governed* by *TWO VERBS* which are both used *without* a *PREPOSITION,* or which require both the *same PREPOSITION;* as,

They *attacked* and *took* the place. *Ils* ATTAQUÈRENT *et* PRIRENT *la place.*

But if one of the verbs *requires a PREPOSITION* after it, and the other *does not,* or if the two verbs require *different PREPOSITIONS,* the *noun* must be made the *object* of the *FIRST verb,* and an *objective* pronoun must be *added* for an *object* to the *SECOND verb;* so we could not say:

Ils ATTAQUÈRENT *et se* RENDIRENT *maîtres* de *la place.*

They *attacked* and *made* themselves *masters* of the place; because *Rendre maître* requires a preposition after it, and *Attaquer* does not; we say:

Ils ATTAQUÈRENT *la place, et s'EN* RENDIRENT *maîtres.*

They *attacked* the place, and *made* themselves masters *of* IT.

165 The *same VERB* may likewise govern *several PARTS* of a sentence, provided they are used in the *same SENSE;* as,

I *expect much* from him, but *still more* from you.

J'ATTENDS BEAUCOUP *de lui, mais* ENCORE PLUS *de vous.*

But if one of the parts is *affirmative,* and the other *negative,* the verb must be *repeated* in the *second* part; as,

I *expect every thing* from you, and *nothing* from him.

J'ATTENDS TOUT *de vous, et je* N'*ATTENDS* RIEN *de lui.*

166 Some verbs govern indifferently the *infinitive* or the *subjunctive* mood; but if they govern *two VERBS,* they must be both in the *same MOOD;* as,

I will prevent him from *going out;* and from *doing* you any harm.

Je l'empêcherai de SORTIR, *et* de *vous* FAIRE *du mal;* or

J'empêcherai qu'il *ne* SORTE, *et* qu'il *ne vous* FASSE *du mal.*

* See a table of the pronouns, page 74. † The English should pay particular attention to this rule; they are very apt to act contrary to it, both in speaking and writing.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167 *PASSIVE* VERBS require DE or PAR before the noun which they govern. They require DE, when the verb expresses an action *wholly of the mind;* as,

Your brother *is loved* and *esteemed by* all who know him.

Votre frère est AIMÉ *et* ESTIMÉ DE *touts ceux qui le connaissent.*

They require PAR, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action; as,

He *was beaten by* a sailor, and *robbed by* a soldier.

Il a ÉTÉ BATTU PAR *un matelot*, et VOLÉ PAR *un soldat.*

But instead of these *passive* expressions, it is better in french to use the *active sense* of the verb, and say:

*Touts ceux qui connaissent votre frère l'*AIMENT *et l'*ESTIMENT.

All those who know your brother *love* and *esteem* him. *(ii)*

When *TWO VERBS* come together, without being joined by a *CONJUNCTION*, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the *INFINITIVE*, sometimes *with*, and sometimes *without* a PREPOSITION.

The *preposition TO*, the sign of the *infinitive* mood in english, is expressed by DE, À, POUR, in french, but not indiscriminately. *(kk)*

(ii) Grammarians distinguish *three* SORTS of verbs, which they call ACTIVE, PASSIVE, and NEUTER.

ACTIVE, when the *action* of the verb *passes* from the *agent* to some *object*; as,

I TEACH *your sister.*

PASSIVE, when the *receiver* of the *action* is made the *leading power* of the verb; this is done by adding the *past participle* to the *auxiliary* verb BE; as,

Your sister IS TAUGHT *by me.*

NEUTER, *i. e.* neither *active* nor *passive*, when the whole energy of the verb *remains* in the *agent*, and is not *communicated* to any *object*; as,

I THINK, *I* WALK, *I* STAND, *I* SIT, *I* SLEEP, *&c.*

These distinctions are common to all languages.

But the English have a facility of changing ACTIVE *verbs* into NEUTER *verbs*, which the French have not; for example, when I say;

We MET *your brothers quarrelling*; *we* PARTED *them.*

Here *met* and *parted* are *active*, because the energy of the verbs *met*, *parted* passes from the agent *we*, to an object *brothers*; if I take away the object, and say: *we met*, *we parted*; then *met* and *parted* are *neuter*, because the whole energy of the verb remains in the agent *we*.

Again; *I* OPENED *the door*; here *opened* is ACTIVE, because it has an object, *door*.

The door OPENED; here *opened* is NEUTER, because the action remains in the door itself.

To leave out this object would not render the verb neuter in french, it would only make the sentence incomplete.

To answer the same end, and give to the verb a *neuter* signification, the French add to it an *objective* PRONOUN of the *same* PERSON as the *agent* or *nominative*, by which means the whole *energy* of the verb *remains* in the same being; hence the number of *reflective verbs* with which the french language abounds: so in the first instance,

We MET *your brothers*, *we* PARTED *them*; the French say:

Nous RENCONTRÂMES *vos frères*, *nous les* SEPARÂMES.

In the second,

We MET; *we* PARTED. *Nous* NOUS RENCONTRÂMES; *Nous* NOUS SEPARÂMES; *i. e.* we ourselves *met*; we ourselves *parted*.

They STOPPED *me*; *Ils* M'ARRÊTÈRENT. *They* STOPPED; *Ils* S'ARRÊTÈRENT; *i. e.* they *stopped* themselves.

He OPENED *the door*; *Il* OUVRIT *la porte*. *The door* OPENED; *La porte* S'OUVRIT; *i. e.* the door *opened* itself.

N. B. The genius of the french language requires also that some verbs which have a kind of *passive* or *neuter* signification in english, should be made *reflective*, when we wish to shew that the action expressed by the verb *is not limited to the instance* of which we speak, but *is applicable to all instances* of the same kind; for example:

*Ce mot n'*EST *pas bien* PLACÉ; *This word* is *not rightly* PLACED; *i. e.* in this instance;

Il se PLACE *ordinairement avant le verbe*; *It* is *generally* PLACED *before the verb*; *i. e.* its *usual* place is before the verb. These instances may also be expressed by ON; on *le* place *ordinairement avant le verbe.* See 92 rule.

(kk) When TWO *verbs* come *together*, without a *conjunction* between them, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the INFINITIVE, whether the sign TO be expressed or not.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

168 *To*, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by DE, when it can be changed into OF or FROM, and the *infinitive* into the GERUND or *present participle*; *N.B.* This commonly happens after nouns used in a *definite* sense; as,

He has the pleasure *of seeing* her. *Il a le plaisir* DE *la* VOIR.

She has the vanity *to* think so. *Elle a la vanité* DE *le* PENSER.*

---

* As this rule does not apply to all instances in which TO is expressed by DE, here is a list of the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require DE before the *infinitive* which follows them:

s' Abstenir *de*,	*Abstain* from.	se Garder *de*,	*Take care* to.
Accuser *de*,	*Accuse* of.	Gronder *de*,	*Scold* for.
Achever *de*,	*Finish to.*	se Hâter *de*,	*Haste* to.
Affecter *de*,	*Affect* to.	Heureux *de*,	*Happy* to.
Affligé *de*,	*Afflicted* to.	Impossible *de*,	*Impossible* to.
Aise *de*,	*Glad* to.	Incapable *de*,	*Incapable* of.
Appréhender *de*,	*Fear* to.	Inspirer *de*,	*Inspire* to.
s' Attendre *de*, *à*, †	*Expect* to.	Juger à propos *de*,	*Think proper* to.
Avertir *de*,	*Warn* to.	Jurer *de*,	*Swear* to.
s' Aviser *de*,	*Bethink* to.	Juste *de*,	*Just* to.
Blâmer *de*,	*Blame* to.	Lassé *de*,	*Tired* of, with.
Capable *de*,	*Capable* of, to.	Libre *de*,	*At liberty* to.
Cesser *de*,	*Cease* to.	Mander *de*,	*Send word* to.
Charger *de*,	*Charge* to.	Manquer *de*,	*Fail* to.
Charmé *de*, Ravi *de*,	*Delighted* with.	Menacer *de*,	*Threaten* to.
Commander *de*,	*Command* to.	Mériter *de*,	*Deserve* to.
Commencer *de*, *à*, †	*Begin* to.	Nécessaire *de*,	*Necessary* to.
Conjurer *de*,	*Entreat* to.	Négliger *de*,	*Neglect* to.
Conseiller *de*,	*Advise* to.	Offrir *de*,	*Offer* to.
Consoler *de*,	*Console* for.	Omettre *de*,	*Omit* to.
Content *de*,	*Content* to.	Ordonner *de*,	*Order* to.
Continuer *de*, *à*, †	*Continue* to.	Oublier *de*,	*Forget* to.
Convaincre *de*,	*Convince* to.	Pardonner *de*,	*Forgive* for.
Convenir *de*,	*Agree* to.	Permettre *de*,	*Permit* to.
Craindre *de*,	*Fear* to.	Persuader *de*,	*Persuade* to.
Curieux *de*,	*Curious* to.	se Piquer *de*,	*Pretend* to.
Décourager *de*	*Discourage* with.	Plaindre *de*,	*Pity* to, for.
Défendre *de*,	*Forbid* to.	Possible *de*,	*Possible* to.
se Dépêcher *de*,	*Make haste* to.	Prescrire *de*,	*Prescribe* to.
Désespérer *de*,	*Despair* to.	Presser *de*,	*Press* to.
Désirer *de*,	*Wish* to.	Prier *de*,	*Request* to.
Déterminer *de*,	*Determine* to.	Promettre *de*,	*Promise* to.
Détourner *de*,	*Divert* from.	Proposer *de*,	*Propose* to.
Différer *de*,	*Defer* to, *Delay* to.	Recommander *de*,	*Recommend* to
Dire *de*,	*Tell* to.	Refuser *de*,	*Refuse* to.
Discontinuer *de*,	*Discontinue* to.	Regretter *de*,	*Regret* to.
Disconvenir *de*,	*Disown* to.	se Réjouir *de*,	*Rejoice* to.
Dispenser *de*,	*Dispense* with.	Remercier *de*,	*Thank* for.
Dissuader *de*,	*Dissuade* from.	se Repentir *de*,	*Repent* of, to.
Doux *de*,	*Pleasant* to.	Reprocher *de*,	*Reproach* for.
Ecrire *de*,	*Write* to.	Résoudre *de*,	*Resolve* to.
s' Efforcer *de*,	*Endeavour* to.	Risquer *de*,	*Risk* to.
Enjoindre *de*,	*Enjoin* to.	Rougir *de*,	*Blush* to.
Empêcher *de*,	*Prevent* to.	Satisfait *de*,	*Satisfied* to, with.
s' Empresser *de*,	*Eager* to.	Solliciter *de*,	*Solicit* to.
Ennuyé *de*,	*Tired* of.	Sommer *de*,	*Summon* to.
Enragé *de*,	*Enraged* at.	se Soucier *de*,	*Care* to.
Entreprendre *de*,	*Undertake* to.	Souhaiter *de*,	*Wish* to.
Essayer *de*, *à*, †	*Try* to.	Soupçonner *de*,	*Suspect* to.
Etonné *de*,	*Astonished* at.	se Souvenir *de*,	*Remember* to
Eviter *de*,	*Avoid* to.	Suffire *de*,	*Sufficient* to.
Excuser *de*,	*Excuse* to.	Suggérer *de*,	*Suggest* to.
Exempter *de*,	*Exempt* from.	Supplier *de*,	*Entreat* to.
Exhorter *de*, *à*, †	*Exhort* to.	Sûr *de*,	*Sure* to.
Fâché *de*,	*Sorry* to.	Surpris *de*,	*Surprised* to.
Feindre *de*,	*Feign* to.	Tâcher *de*,	*Endeavour* to.
Finir *de*,	*Finish* to.	Tarder *de*,	*Long* to.
se Flatter *de*,	*Flatter* to.	se Vanter *de*,	*Boast* of.

† As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid the sound of several *a*, and *a* to avoid the sound of several *de*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by À, when it can be changed into IN, and the english *infinitive* into the GERUND or *present participle*; 169

N.B. This is generally the case after nouns used in a *partitive* sense; as,

He has pleasure *in seeing* her.	*Il a du plaisir* À *la* VOIR.
Is there vanity *to* think so?	*Y a-t-il de la vanité* À *le* PENSER?†

† As this rule is not applicable to all instances in which TO is expressed by À, here is a list of the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require À before the *infinitive* which follows them:

s'	Abaisser *à*,	*Stoop* to.		Exercer *à*,	*Exercise* to.
	Accoutumer *à*,	*Accustom* to.		Exciter *à*,	*Excite* to.
	Admettre *à*,	*Admit* to.		Exposer *à*,	*Expose* to.
	Admirable *à, de*,*	*Wonderful* to.		Facile *à, de*,*	*Easy* to.
	Affreux *à, de*,*	*Dreadful* to.	se	Fatiguer *à*,	*Get tired* with.
	Agréable *à, de*,*	*Agreeable* to.		Forcer *à, de*,‡	*Force* to.
	Aider *à*,	*Help* to.		Gagner *à*,	*Gain* to.
	Aimer *à*,	*Like* to.		Habile *à*,	*Clever* to.
	Aisé *à*,	*Easy* to.		Habituer *à*,	*Accustom* to.
	Amuser *à*,	*Amuse* to, with.		Hésiter *à*,	*Hesitate* to.
	Animer *à*,	*Animate* to.		Horrible *à, de*,*	*Horrid* to.
s'	Appliquer *à*,	*Apply* to.		Inciter *à*,	*Incite* to.
	Apprendre *à*,	*Learn* to.		Ingénieux *à*,	*Ingenious* to.
s'	Apprêter *à*,	*Get ready* to.		Inviter *à*,	*Invite* to.
	Aspirer *à*,	*Aspire* to.		Laid *à*,	*Ugly* to.
	Assidu *à*,	*Assiduous* to.		Lent *à*,	*Slow* to.
s'	Attacher *à*,	*Stick* to.		Manquer *à*,	*Omit* to.
	Autoriser *à*,	*Authorise* to.	se	Mettre *à*,	*Set about* to.
	Avoir *à*,	*Have* to.		Montrer *à*,	*Shew* to.
	Beau *à, de*,*	*Fine* to.		Obliger *à, de*,‡	*Oblige* to.
	Bon *à, de*,*	*Good* to.	s'	Obstiner *à*,	*Obstinate* to.
	Charmant *à*,	*Charming* to.		Occupé *à*,	*Busy* to.
	Chercher *à*,	*Seek* to.	s'	Opiniâtrer *à*,	*Obstinate* to.
	Condamner *à*,	*Condemn* to.		Parvenir *à*,	*Arrive* to.
	Condescendre *à*,	*Condescend* to.		Passer *à*,	*Spend* in.
	Consister *à*,	*Consist* to, in.		Penser *à*,	*Think* of.
	Contraindre *à, de*,‡	*Compel* to.		Perdre *à*,	*Lose* in.
	Contribuer *à*,	*Contribute* to.		Persister *à*,	*Persist* in.
	Demander *à*,	*Ask* to.	se	Plaire *à*,	*Delight* in.
	Dépenser *à*,	*Spend* to, in.		Porter *à*,	*Induce* to.
	Dernier *à*,	*Last* to.		Premier *à*,	*First* to.
	Désagréable *à, de*,*	*Disagreeable* to.		Préparer *à*,	*Prepare* to.
	Destiner *à*,	*Destine* to.		Prêt *à*,	*Ready* to.
	Déterminer *à*,	*Resolve* upon.		Prompt *à*,	*Quick* to.
	Difficile *à, de*,*	*Difficult* to.		Propre *à*,	*Fit* to.
	Diligent *à*,	*Diligent* to.		Recommencer *à*,	*Begin again* to.
	Disposer *à*,	*Dispose* to.		Renoncer *à*,	*Renounce* to.
	Donner *à*,	*Give* to.		Résoudre *à*,	*Resolve* to.
s'	Echauffer *à*,	*Heat* to.		Rester *à*,	*Stay* to.
s'	Efforcer *à*,	*Spend oneself* to, in.		Réussir *à*,	*Succeed* to, in.
	Effroyable *à, de*,*	*Frightful* to.		Servir *à*,	*Serve* to.
	Employer *à*,	*Employ* to, *Use* to.		Soigneux *à*,	*Careful* to.
	Encourager *à*,	*Encourage* to.		Songer *à*,	*Think* of.
	Enclin *à*,	*Inclined* to.		Sujet *à*,	*Subject* to, *apt* to
	Engager *à*,	*Induce* to.		Tâcher *à*,	*Aim* at.
	Enhardir *à*,	*Embolden* to.		Tarder *à*,	*Delay* to.
	Enseigner *à*,	*Teach* to.		Tendre *à*,	*Tend* to.
s'	Etudier *à*,	*Study* to.		Terrible *à, de*,*	*Terrible* to.
	Etre *à*,	*Be* to.		Travailler *à*,	*Work* to.
	Exact *à*,	*Exact* to.		Venir *à*,	*Come* to.

* These adjectives require *à*, when the verb which precedes them has a *personal* nominative; they require *de*, when the nominative is *impersonal*; ex.

Cela est *agréable, bon, beau* à *voir*, à *dire*, à *faire*,	That is agreeable, fine *to* see, &c.
Il est *agréable, bon, beau* de *voir*, de *dire*, de *faire*,	It is agreeable, fine *to* see, &c.

‡ *De* or *à*, as it sounds best in the *active* sense; always *de* in the *passive*; as,

On m'a obligé de *or* à *le faire*;	They have obliged me *to* do it.
J' ai été obligé de *le faire*;	I have been obliged *to* do it.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

170 *To*, before an INFINITIVE, is expressed by POUR, when the words *in order*, or *with an intention*, may be prefixed to it; as,

I did it *to (in order to)* oblige you.	*Je l'ai fait* POUR *vous* OBLIGER.
We went there *to* see you.	*Nous y allâmes* POUR *vous* VOIR.

N. B. The *english* GERUND preceded by the preposition FOR, explaining why a thing is done, is also expressed by the INFINITIVE with POUR;

He was hanged *for having* robbed.	*Il a été pendu* POUR AVOIR *volé.*
He was flogged *for telling* lies.	*Il a été fouetté* POUR AVOIR *menti.*

171 The INFINITIVE is used *without* a PREPOSITION *in french*, when it is the *nominative* of another verb; as,

To be rich is nothing;	ÊTRE *riche n'* EST *rien;*
To be happy is every thing.	*Le tout est d'être heureux.*

172 The INFINITIVE is also used *without* a PREPOSITION *in french*, after the following verbs: viz.

AIMER mieux;	*J'aime mieux le* FAIRE. *(ll)*	I would rather *do* it.
ALLER;	*Allons nous* PROMENER.	Let us go *to take* a walk.
APERCEVOIR;	*Je l'aperçois* MOUVOIR.	I perceive it *move.*
ASSURER;	*Il assure l'*AVOIR *fait.*	He asserts *to have* done it.
CROIRE;	*Il croit me* TROMPER.	He thinks *to deceive* me.
COMPTER;	*Il compte* PARTIR *sous peu.*	He purposes *to go* soon.
DAIGNER;	*Daignez me* DIRE *quand.*	Deign *to tell* me when.
DÉCLARER;	*Il déclare le* SAVOIR.	He declares *to know* it.
DEVOIR;	*Il doit me l'*ENVOYER.	He is *to send* it me.
ENTENDRE;	*Je l'entends* PARLER.	I hear him *speak.*
ENVOYER;	*Envoyez le* CHERCHER.	Send *for* it, or *to fetch* it.
ESPÉRER;	*J'espère le* RENCONTRER.	I expect *to meet* him.
FALLOIR;	*Il faut lui* AIDER.	It is necessary *to help* him.
S' IMAGINER;	*Je m'imagine y* ÊTRE.	I fancy myself *to be* there.
LAISSER;	*Laissez-le* DIRE *et* FAIRE.	Let him *say* and *do.*
OSER;	*Il n'ose l'*AVOUER.	He dares not *confess* it.
PARAÎTRE;	*Il paraît l'*ENTENDRE.	He seems *to understand* it.
PENSER;	*Il a pensé* TOMBER.	He had like *to have* fallen.
PRETENDRE;	*Prétend-il le* FAIRE?	Does he pretend *to do* it?
POUVOIR;	*Il n'a pas* PU *me le* DIRE	He could not *tell* it me.
RECONNAÎTRE;	*Je reconnais l'*AVOIR *dit.*	I acknowledge *to have* said it.
REGARDER;	*Je vous regarde* FAIRE.	I am looking at you *doing* it.
RETOURNER;	*Elle retourna la* VOIR.	She returned *to see* him.
SAVOIR;	*Il sait où la* TROUVER.	He knows where *to find* her.
SEMBLER;	*Elle semble* AVOIR *peur.*	She seems *to be* afraid.
SOUHAITER;	*Je souhaite la* VOIR.*	I wish *to see* her.
SOUTENIR;	*Il soutient l'*AVOIR *vu.*	He maintains *to have* seen it.
VALOIR mieux;	*Il vaut mieux lui* ÉCRIRE. *(ll)*	It is better *to write* to her.
VENIR;	*Viendrez-vous me* VOIR? *(mm)*	Will you come *to see* me?
VOIR;	*Je vois* VENIR *votre sœur.*	I see your sister *coming.*
VOULOIR;	*Elle ne veut pas* RESTER.	She will not *stay.*

(ll) AIMER MIEUX, VALOIR MIEUX, followed by another verb in the infinitive, require DE before the *second* infinitive; as,

I would rather stay than go;	*J' aimerais mieux rester* que D'*y aller.*
It is better to go than stay alone;	*Il vaut mieux y aller* que DE *rester seul.*

* Souhaiter may also be used with de; as, *Je souhaite le* VOIR, or de *le* VOIR; I wish *to* see him.

(mm) VENIR used for *to be just, to have just*, requires DE before the following infinitive; and in the sense of *to happen*, it requires À; as,

I have just seen her;	*Je viens* DE *la voir.*
If she should happen to know it;	*Si elle venait À le savoir.*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

WILL, WOULD.

173 If, by *WILL, WOULD*, you wish to denote *will, wish, desire*, you must express them by the corresponding tenses of the verb VOULOIR, with the following verb in the *infinitive;* if you wish to express a *determination*, to make a *positive assertion*, *WILL* must be considered as the sign of the *future*, and *WOULD* as the sign of the *conditional* of the following verb; ex.

My brother *will* not stay; viz. *Is* not *willing* to stay. } *Mon frère ne* VEUT *pas rester.*

He *positively will* not stay. *Mon frère ne* RESTERA *pas.* [see note * page 143.

My brother *would* not stay; viz. *Had* no *desire* to stay. } *Mon frère ne* VOULAIT *pas rester.*

Would he not stay, if I asked him? *Ne* RESTERAIT-*il pas, si je l'en priais?*

WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.

174 If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE* are used to denote the *wish*, the *desire* to possess an object, they are expressed by the corresponding tenses of VOULOIR as above, and *HAVE* is left out; if they are used to denote not the *wish* to possess, but an *assurance* of the *possession* itself, they are expressed by the *future* or by the *conditional* of AVOIR; ex.

My brother *will have* this book; viz. My brother *wishes* to have &c. } *Mon frère* VEUT *ce livre.*

He *will have* it, if he behaves well. *Il l'*AURA, *s'il se comporte bien.*

My brother *would have* this book; viz. My brother *wished* to have &c. } *Mon frère* VOULAIT *ce livre.*

He *would have* it, if he behaved well. *Il l'*AURAIT, *s'il se comportait bien.*

N. B. If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE*, in the sense of *wish, choose*, are followed by *another* VERB, the *object* of *HAVE* becomes the *nominative* of the *following* VERB, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french; as,

He *will have* his sister *go* with him; i.e. He *wishes* that his sister *should go.* } *Il* VEUT *que sa* SŒUR AILLE *avec lui.*

He *will* not *have* her *stay* alone. *Il ne* VEUT *pas qu'* elle RESTE *seule.**

175 *WOULD HAVE* in the sense of *chosen, wished, been willing*, followed by a *past* PARTICIPLE, is expressed by the *imperfect* or by the *conditional* of AVOIR with the participle VOULU, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

If you *would have told* him of it. *Si vous* AVIEZ VOULU *le lui* dire.

He *would* not *have believed* me. *Il n'*AURAIT *pas* VOULU *me* croire.

SHOULD.

176 *SHOULD*, which is generally a *sign* of the *conditional* tense, is sometimes used in the sense of *OUGHT*, i. e. denoting *duty* or *necessity*, and is then expressed by the *conditional* tense of the verb DEVOIR; as,

You *should* go and see him *(ought). Vous* DEVRIEZ *aller le voir.*

He *should* let me know it. *Il* DEVRAIT *me le faire savoir.*

SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE.

177 *SHOULD HAVE*, and *OUGHT to HAVE*, followed by a *past* PARTICIPLE, are expressed by the *conditional* of AVOIR, with the *participle* DÛ, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

You *ought to have seen* him. *Vous* AURIEZ DÛ *le* voir.

He *should have let* me know of it. *Il* AURAIT DÛ *me le* faire savoir.

---

* When you say *I* will have *you*, or *I* would have *you do such a thing*, it is not the *person* that you wish to have, but you wish that the person *would do* the *thing* you mention; so we could not say, *je* vous *veux*, nor *je* veux vous *avoir*, nor *je* vous *aurai*, which would mean that you want the *person*, not that you want the *thing* to be done; we must say, *je* veux *que* vous fassiez *telle chose*.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

MAY, MIGHT.

178 If *MAY, MIGHT* are used to denote *power*, *MAY* is expressed by the *present* of the verb POUVOIR, viz. *puis;* and *MIGHT* by the conditional *pourrais*, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE;* as,

I *may* or *can* see it, if I choose; i. e. It is in my *power* to see it, if &c. } *Je* PUIS *le voir, si je veux.* [See note page 138.]

I *might* or *could* see it, if I chose; i. e. It *would be* in my *power* to &c. } *Je* POURRAIS *le voir, si je voulais.*

If *MAY, MIGHT* denote a mere *possibility*, they may be expressed by the *subjunctive* of POUVOIR, or the *subjunctive* of the *following* VERB; as,

Bring it, that I *may* see it; i. e. That it *may* be in my *power* to see } *Apportez-le, afin que je le* VOIE; or, *afin que je* PUISSE *le voir.*

He brought it, that I *might* see it; i. e. That it *might be* in my *power &c.* } *Il l'apporta, afin que je le* VISSE; or, *afin que je* PUSSE *le voir.*

COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE.

179 *COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE* followed by a *past* PARTICIPLE are expressed by the *imperfect* or the *conditional* of AVOIR, with the *participle* PU, and the english *participle* is made by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,

If he *could have come* sooner. *S'il* AVAIT PU *venir plus tôt.*

He *might have seen* it too. *Il* AURAIT PU *le voir aussi.*

WISH.

180 The *present* tense of the verb *WISH*, followed by another verb in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional*, is expressed by the *conditional* of SOUHAITER, and the verb which is in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional* in english, must be in the *perfect* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I *wish* she *had* seen it. *Je* SOUHAITERAIS *qu'elle l'*eût *vu.*

I *wish* he *would* come. *Je* SOUHAITERAIS *qu'il* voulût *venir*

I *wish* I *had* done it. *Je* SOUHAITERAIS *l'*AVOIR *fait.* (nn)

MUST, NECESSARY.

181 *MUST* is conjugated through its *different persons*, but its representative FALLOIR has only the *third* PERSON *singular* of each tense, with IL for *nominative;* then the *nominative* of *MUST* becomes the *nominative* of the *following* VERB, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I *must* do it. Il FAUT *que je le* FASSE.

You *must* do it. Il FAUT *que vous le* FASSIEZ.

My brother *must* do it. Il FAUT *que mon frère le* FASSE.

It *was necessary* for me to do it. Il FALLAIT *que je le* FISSE, &c.*

N. B. When the nominative of *MUST* is *indefinite*, the French *leave it out*, and put the following verb in the *INFINITIVE;* as,

One *must* be mad to think so. Il FAUT ÊTRE *fou pour le penser.*

MUST HAVE.

182 *MUST HAVE*, meaning *need to have*, is also expressed by FALLOIR, and the *nominative* of *MUST HAVE* is made the *object* of FALLOIR; as,

I *must have* money. Il ME FAUT *de l'argent.*

He *must have* books. Il LUI FAUT *des livres.*

My brother *must have* a horse. Il FAUT *un cheval* à *mon* FRÈRE.†

(nn) When *two* VERBS in the *same* SENTENCE have the *same* PERSON for their *nominative*, the French generally put the *second* VERB in the INFINITIVE; as,

I am afraid I *shall spoil* it; *Je crains* de *le* GÂTER.

I wish I *could* do it; *Je souhaiterais* POUVOIR *le faire.*

* See the different modifications of FALLOIR, p. 174. † See FALLOIR, p. 175

ADVERB.

An ADVERB is to a verb what an *adjective* is to a noun; it is a word added to the *verb*, to denote some *circumstance* belonging to it, or the *manner* in which an action is done; as,

I walk FAST. *You walk* SLOWLY. *He* OFTEN *reads. She* SELDOM *writes.*

There are adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *order*, of *quality*, *affirmative*, and *negative*, but their properties being the same in both languages, it is needless to enumerate them here.*

183 *ADVERBS* in general keep the same place with the verb in french as in english; they are placed *AFTER* the *verb*, when the tense is *simple*, and *BETWEEN* the *auxiliary* and the *participle* when the tense is *compound*; as,

I *always* esteem him *much.*	*Je l'estime* TOUJOURS FORT.
I have *always* esteemed him *much.*	*Je l'ai* TOUJOURS FORT *estimé.*†

N. B. The *ADVERB* expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be *placed* as *near* to the verb which it modifies, as can be done without infringing upon other rules; ex.

I saw your sister *yesterday.*	*Je vis* HIER *votre sœur.*
She speaks french *very well.*	*Elle parle* TRÈS-BIEN *français.*
She likes reading *very much.*	*Elle aime* FORT *la lecture.*‡

184 Some *ADVERBS* may be placed in english, either *before* or *after* the verb which they modify; as, *I* OFTEN *see him*, or *I see him* OFTEN; but the corresponding adverbs must always be placed *AFTER* the verb in french; as,

I *often* walk alone.	*Je me promène* SOUVENT *seul.*
I *seldom* go to town.	*Je vais* RAREMENT *à la ville.*
I *always* go into the country.	*Je vais* TOUJOURS *à la campagne.*

---

* Most of the ADVERBS are formed from the ADJECTIVES; in english by adding *LY*; in french by adding *MENT*; as,

ADJECTIVE.		*ADVERB.*	
Wise,	Sage.	Wise*ly*,	Sage*ment.*
Assured,	Assuré.	Assured*ly*	Assuré*ment.*
Polite,	Poli.	Polite*ly*,	Poli*ment.*
Assiduous,	Assidu.	Assiduous*ly*,	Assidû*ment.*

But observe that *ment* requires a vowel before it; so that, if the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb must be formed by adding *ment* to the feminine; as,

	Masc.	*Fem.*		
Frank,	*Franc*,	Franche.	Frank*ly*,	Franche*ment.*
Public,	*Public*,	Publique.	Public*ly*,	Publique*ment.*
Real,	*Réel*,	Réelle.	Real*ly*,	Réelle*ment.*
Good,	*Bon*,	Bonne.	Good*ly*,	Bonne*ment.*
Soft,	*Doux*,	Douce.	Soft*ly*,	Douce*ment.*
Generous,	*Généreux*,	Généreuse.	Generous*ly*,	Généreuse*ment.*
Exc. *Gentil*,	*Pretty*, which makes		Gentim*ent*,	Pretti*ly.*

Except also the adjectives ending in *nt*, which require *nt* to be changed into *mment*, as,

Constant,	Constan*t.*	Constant*ly*,	Constam*ment.*
Decent,	Décen*t.*	Decent*ly*,	Décem*ment.*
Diligent,	Diligen*t.*	Diligent*ly*,	Diligem*ment.*

Exc. Présento*ment*, Present*ly*; Lento*ment*, Slow*ly*, which follow the general rule.

† Observe only that the adverbs compounded of *several words* generally come *after* the *participle*, so we say, *Je l'ai vu* très-souvent. *Je lui ai parlé* depuis peu. *Vous êtes venu* à propos. Not, *Je l'ai* très-souvent *vu. Je lui ai* depuis peu *parlé. Vous êtes* à propos *venu.* Yet, in some instances, the ear alone is consulted; for we say, *je l'avais* tout à fait *oublié;* I had *quite* forgotten it. *Je ne me suis* jamais si bien *diverti; I never* diverted myself *so well.* These variations must be noticed in reading.

‡ The perspicuity of a sentence depends often upon the right placing of the adverbs; for example, *J'aime* BEAUCOUP *à marcher. J'aime à marcher* BEAUCOUP.

These two sentences, though they are formed with the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime* beaucoup *à marcher*, means, I am *fond of* walking; *J'aime à marcher* beaucoup, means, I like to walk *a great deal.*

Again; *Je* NE *l'ai* PAS *fait pour vous déplaire*; and, *Je l'ai fait pour* NE PAS *vous déplaire* express also different ideas; the first implies *no* design; the second implies *one*, that of *not displeasing.* The English, in general, do not pay sufficient attention to the *placing* of the *adverbs.*

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

HOW; QUE, COMBIEN, COMMENT.

185 *HOW*, denoting *admiration*, is expressed by QUE, and the *adjective* or *adverb* which follows *HOW*, must be placed *AFTER* the *verb* in french; as,

How pretty this is! QUE *ceci est* JOLI!
How well it is done! QU'*il est* BIEN *fait!*

In asking a *question HOW* is expressed by COMMENT, to denote the *manner*, and by COMBIEN, to denote *number* or *quantity;* as,

How will you do that? COMMENT *ferez-vous cela?*
How often have you done it? COMBIEN *de fois l'avez-vous fait?*

HOW LONG.

COMBIEN, COMBIEN DE TEMS, JUSQU'À QUAND.

186 *HOW LONG*, referring to the *beginning* of time, is expressed by COMBIEN; referring to the *duration*, it is expressed by COMBIEN de TEMS; and referring to the *end*, it is expressed by JUSQU'À QUAND; as,

How long have you been in France? COMBIEN *y a-t-il que vous* ÊTES *en France?* or COMBIEN *de* TEMS AVEZ-*vous* ÉTÉ *en France?*

N. B. Few learners make a distinction between these two ways of expression; yet the ideas which they express are quite different. By the first, *vous* êtes *en France*, it is understood that the person *is* in France *still;* by the second, *vous* avez été *en France*, it is understood that the person is *no longer* there.

How long will you stay? { COMBIEN *de* TEMS *resterez-vous?* i. e. *what length* of time? JUSQU' À QUAND *resterez-vous?* i. e. *until* what time?

---

* A list of adverbial expressions, which can not be expressed literally, as learners are apt to do, some of which are not to be found in the dictionaries;

ABOUT,	*Environ.*	That EXCEPTED,	*A cela près.*
There ABOUTS,	*A peu près.*	FAIRLY,	*De bonne foi.*
Here ABOUTS,	*Ici autour.*	How FAR,	*Jusqu' où.*
Round ABOUT,	*A l'entour.*	As FAR as here,	*Jusqu'ici.*
ALOUD,	*A haute voix.*	As FAR as there,	*Jusque là.*
AMICABLY,	*A l'amiable.*	AFAR off,	*De loin.*
ASIDE,	*A côté, à part.*	After the FASHION,	*A la mode.*
On an AVERAGE,	*L'un dans l'autre.*	After the FRENCH,	*A la française.*
BACKWARDS,	*En arrière.* (falling)	The ENGLISH fashion,	*A l'Anglaise.*
BACKWARDS,	*A reculons.* (walking)	At FIRST,	*D'abord.*
Into the BARGAIN,	*Par-dessus le marché.*	On the same FLOOR,	*De plein pied.*
BETIMES,	*De bonne heure.*	Within a FORTNIGHT,	*Dans quinze jours.*
BETTER and better,	*De mieux en mieux.*	For FUN,	*En badinant.*
So much the BETTER,	*Tant mieux.*	For the FUTURE,	*A l'avenir*
ABREAST,	*De front.*	GROPING,	*A tâtons.*
BY and BY,	*Tantôt.*	On the GROUND,	*Par terre.*
By CHANCE,	*Par cas fortuit.*	HAND over HEAD,	*A corps perdu*
CHEAP,	*A bon marché.*	HARD by,	*Ici près.*
Most COMMONLY,	*Presque toujours.*	HARDLY ever,	*Presque jamais.*
In DAY time,	*De jour.*	In HASTE,	*A la hâte.*
In open DAY,	*En plein jour.*	HEARTILY,	*De bon cœur.*
Every DAY,	*Touts les jours.*	HERE and THERE,	*Par-ci par-là.*
From DAY to DAY,	*De jour en jour.*	HELTER skelter,	*Pêle-mêle.*
Every other DAY,	*De deux jours l'un.*	HITHERTO,	*Jusqu'ici.*
This DAY week,	*Il y a aujour d'hui 8 jours.*	HOURLY,	*D'heure en heure.*
This DAY se'night,	*D' aujour d'hui en huit.*	Every HOUR,	*A toute heure.*
This DAY fortnight,	*Il y a aujour d'hui 15 jours.*	INADVERTENTLY,	*Par mégarde.*
	D'aujour d'hui en quinze.	INCONSIDERATELY,	*Sans y faire atten*
This DAY month,	*Il y a aujour d'hui un mois.*	TO all INTENTS and	[*tion.*
	D'aujour d'hui en un mois.	[purposes,	*De fond en comble.*
DESERVEDLY,	*A bon droit.*	LARGELY,	*A pleines mains.*
DIRECTLY,	*Tout à l'heure.*	LATELY,	*Depuis peu.*
In DISORDER,	*A l'abandon.*	At LAST,	*Enfin.*
By DROPS,	*Goutte à goutte.*	At LEAST,	*Au moins.*
EARLY,	*De bon matin.*	For LESS,	*A moins.*
In good EARNEST,	*Tout de bon.*	So much the LESS,	*D'autant moins.*
EMPTY,	*A vide.*	By LITTLE and LITTLE,	*Peu à peu.*
In EMULATION,	*A l'envi.*	Ever so LITTLE,	*Tant soit peu.*

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

HOW FAR; COMBIEN, JUSQU'OÙ.

187 *How* FAR, meaning *what distance*, is expressed by COMBIEN; and when used for *to what distance*, it is expressed by JUSQU'OÙ; as,

How far is it from here? COMBIEN y a-t-il *d'ici?*
How far shall we go? JUSQU'OÙ *irons-nous?*

HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, LET; QUELQUE.

188 *HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER*, before an *adjective*; a *participle*, or an *adverb*, is expressed by QUELQUE with QUE, *after the adjective, participle* or *adverb*, and the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE;*

However rich she is;
or *Let* her be ever so rich. } QUELQUE *riche* QU'*elle soit.*

N. B. If the nominative is a *noun*, it is generally placed *after* the verb; as,

However rich her sister is;
or *Let* her sister be ever so rich. } QUELQUE *riche* QUE *soit* sa sœur.

QUITE, ENTIRELY; TOUT.

189 *QUITE, ENTIRELY*, before an *adjective*, or a *participle*, are generally expressed by TOUT; as,

Those men are *quite* astonished. *Ces hommes sont* TOUT *étonnés.*
Those women are *quite* astonished. *Ces femmes sont* TOUT *étonnées.**

How long?	*Jusqu' à quand?*
As LONG as,	*Tant que.*
In the same MANNER,	*De même.*
Through MISTAKE,	*Par mégarde.*
MORE than is necessary,	*Plus qu'il n'en faut.*
Neither MORE nor LESS,	*Ni plus ni moins.*
MORE and MORE,	*De plus en plus.*
Much MORE SO,	*A plus forte raison.*
So much the MORE,	*D'autant plus.*
At MOST,	*Tout au plus.*
How MUCH?	*Combien?*
As MUCH,	*Autant.*
So MUCH,	*Tant.*
Through ill NATURE,	*Par malice.*
Nothing NEAR,	*A beaucoup près.*
Just NOW,	*Tout de suite.*
NOW and then,	*De tems en tems.*
All at ONCE,	*Tout d'un coup.*
OPPOSITE,	*Vis-à-vis.*
PURPOSELY,	*A dessein, Exprès.*
On PURPOSE,	*De propos délibéré.*
To what PURPOSE?	*A quoi bon?*
At RANDOM,	*A tort et à travers.*
In every RESPECT,	*A touts égards.*
SEASONABLY,	*A propos.*
On both SIDES,	*De part et d'autre.*
The wrong SIDE out,	*A l'envers.*
The wrong SIDE up,	*A rebours.*
SOONER or LATER,	*Tôt ou tard.*
SOUNDLY,	*Comme il faut.*
With all SPEED,	*Au plus vite.*
At full SPEED,	*A bride abattue.* / *Ventre à terre.*
On a SUDDEN,	*Tout à coup.*
STEP by STEP,	*Pas à pas.*
STRAIGHT on,	*Tout droit.*
THOROUGHLY,	*A fond.*
This long TIME,	*De long tems.*
For a long TIME,	*Depuis long-tems.*
From TIME to TIME,	*De tems en tems.*
One TIME or other,	*Tôt ou tard.*
TO and FRO,	*Çà et là.*
From TOP to BOTTOM,	*De fond en comble.*
TOPSY TURVY,	*Sens dessus dessous.*
In a TRICE,	*En moins de rien.*
By TURNS,	*Tour à tour.*
At every TURN,	*A tout bout de champ.*
In the TWINKLING of an eye,	*En un clin d'œil.*
UNAWARES,	*Sans y penser.*
UP and DOWN,	*De côté et d'autre.*
UPWARDS,	*En haut.*
UNSEASONABLY,	*A contre tems.*
VISIBLY,	*A vue d'œil.*
With a low VOICE,	*Tout bas.*
The wrong WAY,	*A contre sens.*
In a WEEK,	*Dans huit jours.*
It was a WEEK yesterday,	*Il y eut hier 8 jours.*
It will be a WEEK tomorrow,	*Il y aura demain 8 jours.*
WHEREVER	*Partout où.*
In no WISE,	*En nulle manière.*
WORSE and WORSE,	*De pis en pis.*
So much the WORSE,	*Tant pis.*
A YEAR hence,	*Il y a un an.*
This day 12 MONTHS,	*Il y a aujour d'hui un an.*
Against one's WILL,	*A contre cœur.*
Whether one WILL or not,	*Bon gré mal gré.*
YONDER,	*Là bas.*

* When the adjective which follows TOUT is *feminine*, and begins with a *consonant*, we make it agree in *gender* and *number* with the noun; as,

This house is *quite* new, *Cette maison est* TOUTE *neuve.*
These women are *quite* ugly. *Ces femmes sont* TOUTES *laides.*

But, as this is done solely for the sake of melody, it would be better, especially when the noun is plural, to make use of *Tout à fait*, since the hearer is sometimes at a loss, whether TOUTES means *quite* or *all.*

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

NO, NOT;	NE—PAS, NE—POINT *
NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE;	NE—PLUS.
NEVER;	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE, VERY LITTLE;	NE—GUÈRE.
BY NO MEANS;	NE—NULLEMENT.†

190 The *NEGATIVE* expressions NE—PAS, NE—POINT, &c. form only one *negation*; *NE* is always placed *BEFORE* the *verb*, and PAS, POINT, &c. like the other adverbs, are placed *AFTER* the *verb*, when the tense is simple and *BETWEEN* the *auxiliary* and the *participle*, when it is compound; as,

I do *not* like her.	*Je* NE *l'aime* PAS, or POINT.
I will *not* see her *any more*.	*Je* NE *veux* PLUS *la voir*.
I will *never* speak to her again.	*Je* NE *lui reparlerai* JAMAIS.
You have thought of it *but little*.	*Vous* N'*y avez* GUÈRE *pensé*.

N. B. If the verb which follows *NOT* is in the *infinitive*, the two negative words NE—PAS, or POINT, NE—PLUS, NE—JAMAIS, may be, and are generally placed *TOGETHER before* the verb; as,

I am determined *not* to see her.	*J'ai résolu de* NE PAS *la voir*.
Not to speak to her *any more*.	*De* NE PLUS *lui parler*.
Never to write to her again.	*De* NE JAMAIS *lui récrire*.

191 Without a verb, *NO* is expressed by NON, and *NOT* by NON PAS; as,

Will you go to town to-morrow?	*Irez-vous demain à la ville?*
No; I will go, but *not* to-morrow.	NON; *j'y irai, mais* NON PAS *demain*.

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE *ADVERBS.*

192 With the verb *CAN*, rendered by the *conditional* tense of SAVOIR, instead of the *present* of POUVOIR, and with *WHY*, rendered by QUE, instead of POUR QUOI, *NOT* is expressed by *NE* only before the verb; as,

I can *not* do it.	*Je* NE *puis* PAS, or *je* NE saurais *le faire*.
Why does he *not* do it himself?	Que NE *le fait-il lui-même?*

N. B. We also generally *suppress* PAS, POINT, with the verbs OSER, to *DARE;* CESSER, to *cease;* and with SAVOIR, to *KNOW;* when it is followed by SI, OÙ, QUE, QUAND, QUEL, COMBIEN, COMMENT; as,

I *dare not* do it.	*Je* N'OSE *le faire*.
I do *not know* what to say to her.	*Je* NE *sais* QUE *lui dire*.
She is *incessantly* plaguing me.	*Elle* NE cesse *de me tourmenter*.

* PAS, POINT, are used indiscriminately, except in sentences of interrogation, when, according to the french academy, POINT intimates a *doubt*, and PAS a kind of *affirmation;* so,
N'*avez-vous* POINT *pris mon livre?* means, Have *not* you taken my book?
and N'*avez-vous* PAS *pris mon livre?* means, You have taken my book, have *not* you?
Perhaps it would be better to give another turn to the sentence than to give these different properties to two monosyllables which may be so easily mistaken one for the other.
Some grammarians, and even the french academy, make several other distinctions between PAS, POINT; viz. that POINT means *not at all, never*, and denies more strongly than PAS; that PAS is said of something momentary, and POINT of things that are permanent; so *Il* NE *lit* PAS, means, He does *not* read *now;* and *Il* NE *lit* POINT, means, He *never* reads; these distinctions seem to me merely ideal; I have endeavoured to ascertain them, and I have not found any author who has observed them; the *ear* alone is consulted. There are in our language, as well as in our manners, trifles which reason does not scruple to overlook.

† MOT and GOUTTE are also *negative* expressions, but used only with the verbs DIRE and VOIR; as,
Il NE *dit* MOT; He did *not* say a word. *Il* NE *voit* GOUTTE; He does *not* see at all.

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE *ADVERBS.*

Not, after the verb *take care*, PRENDRE GARDE, is not expressed in 193
french, when the verb which follows it is in the *INFINITIVE*, and it is expressed by *NE*, if the following verb is in any *other* MOOD; as,

Take care of falling, or *not* to fall. *Prenez garde de tomber.*
Take care that he does *not* fall. *Prenez garde qu'il* NE *tombe.*

The verb EMPÊCHER, to *hinder*, *prevent*, *keep from*, requires *NE* be- 194
fore the following verb, if that verb is *not* in the *infinitive;* so we say;

Je l'empêcherai de jouer; or *J'empêcherai qu'il* NE *joue.* } I will hinder him from playing.

The verbs CRAINDRE, AVOIR PEUR, APPRÉHENDER; to *fear*, to be 195
Afraid; the conjunctions DE PEUR QUE, DE CRAINTE QUE, *Lest*, *for fear that*, require *NE* before the following verb, if we fear that the action *will happen;* then the verb has *no negation* in english; as,

I am afraid that he will come. *Je crains qu'il* NE *vienne.*
Come in, lest he should see you. *Entrez, de peur qu'il* NE *vous voie.*

But *NE* is *left out*, if the following verb is in the *INFINITIVE;* as,

I am afraid of spoiling it. *Je crains*, or *j'ai peur de le gâter.*

If we fear that the action *will not happen*, there is *a negation* in english, and it must be expressed by the *corresponding negation* in french; as,

I fear he will come *no more.* *Je crains qu'il* NE *vienne* PLUS.
I am afraid he *has not* seen me. *J'ai peur quil* NE *m'ait* PAS *vu.*

N.B. The verbs NIER, to *deny*, and DOUTER, to *doubt*, used negatively, the conjunction À MOINS QUE, *unless*, and SI in the sense of *à moins que*, require also *NE* before the following verb; as,

He does not deny having seen her. *Il ne* nie *pas qu'il* NE *l'ait vue.*
I do not doubt but she will come. *Je ne* doute *pas qu'elle* NE *vienne.*

IL Y A—QUE, *It is—since;* DE PUIS QUE, *since*, require *NE* before the 196
verb which follows them, when we wish to denote that *no action* has taken place since the period we mention; then the verb may also have a *negation* in english;

It is long *since* I have seen him; or I have *not* seen him this long while. } *Il y a long tems que je* NE *l'ai vu.*

But *NE* is not required, if there has been an *action*, and *no* negation could be used in english: as,

It is not long since I *have seen* him; or I *have seen* him not long since. } *Il n'y a pas long tems que je l'ai vu.*

The *NEGATIVE* particle *NE* is required before the verb which follows 197
AUTRE, *other;* AUTREMENT, *otherwise;* as,

He is quite *another* than I thought. *Il est tout* autre *que je* NE *pensais.*
He speaks *otherwise* than he thinks. *Il parle* autrement *qu'il* NE *pense.*

After the *comparative* words PLUS, MIEUX, MEILLEUR, MOINS, see 47 rule; as also with PERSONNE, QUI QUE CE SOIT, see 97 rule; RIEN, QUOI QUE CE SOIT, 99; AUCUN, 100; NUL, PAS UN, 101; NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, 124.

But, used in the sense of the adverb *ONLY*, is expressed by *NE* before 198
the verb, and QUE after it; as,

She is *but* fifteen (i. e. *only* 15). *Elle* N'*a* QUE *quinze ans.*
I have seen her *but* once. *Je* NE *l'ai vue* QU'*une fois.*

But is sometimes used in the sense of a *relative pronoun*, and is then 199
expressed by QUI *NE*, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE;* as,

There are few people *but* can do it, i. e. *who* can *not* do it.
Il y a peu de gens QUI NE *puissent le faire.*

PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are certain monosyllables added to *nouns*, *verbs*, and *Adjectives* in order to extend their meaning to the word which follows them; as,

I came FROM *Paris*, THROUGH *Canterbury*, TO *London*.

The words FROM, THROUGH, TO, which express a relation between the verb *came* and the *substantives* which follow it, are called PREPOSITIONS.

The PREPOSITIONS *are in french;*

À	*At, To.*	EXCEPTÉ,	*Save, But, Except.*
APRÈS,	*After.*	HORMIS,	
AVEC,	*With.*	MOYENNANT,	*For, By the Means of.*
AVANT,	*Before.*	MALGRÉ,	*Against, In Spite of.*
CHEZ,	*At the House of.*	NONOBSTANT,	*Notwithstanding.*
CONTRE,	*Against.*	OUTRE,	*Besides.*
DANS,	*In, Into.*	PAR,	*By, Through.*
DE,	*Of, From, By.*	PARMI,	*Among, Amongst.*
DÈS,	*From.*	PENDANT,	*During, For.*
DEPUIS,	*Since, From, For.*	POUR,	*For, In Order to.*
DEVANT,	*Before.*	SANS,	*Without.*
DERRIÈRE,	*Behind.*	SELON,	*According to.*
DURANT,	*During, For.*	SUIVANT,	
EN,	*In, Into.*	SOUS,	*Under, Beneath.*
ENTRE,	*Between, Betwixt.*	SUR,	*On, Upon, Over.*
ENVERS,	*To, Towards.*	TOUCHANT,	*Concerning, About.*
ENVIRON,	*About.*	VERS,	*Towards, About.*

---

* The following expressions are found in several french grammars, and even in the dictionary of the french academy, in the class of prepositions:

AUPRÈS de,	*Near, By, Close to.*	à FORCE de,	*By dint of.*
AUTOUR de,	*Round.*	JUSQU'À,	*To, Till, Until.*
à CAUSE de,	*On account of.*	HORS de,	*Out of.*
à CÔTÉ de,	*By, By the side of.*	au LIEU de,	*Instead of, in the place of.*
en DEÇA de,	*On this side of.*	LOIN de,	*Far from.*
au DELÀ de,	*On that side of.*	le LONG de,	*Along.*
au-DESSOUS de,	*Under, Below.*	à MOINS de,	*Under, For less.*
par-DESSOUS,		au MOYEN de,	*By the means of.*
au-DESSUS de,	*Above, Over, Upon.*	PRÈS de,	*Near to, Nigh, By.*
par-DESSUS,		PROCHE de,	
au DEVANT de,	*Before, In the fore part of.*	par RAPPORT à,	*With respect to.*
par DEVANT,		à TRAVERS,	*Across, Through.*
au DERRIÈRE de,	*Behind, In the back of.*	au TRAVERS de,	
à l'ÉGARD de,	*As to, With respect to.*	VIS-à-VIS de,	*Over against, Facing.*

And a few others which I have not thought proper to notice, because they certainly do not belong to this class. But these words are so far from being prepositions, that it is only by the means of the preposition DE or *à*, that they can be connected with the word which follows them. It is evident that they are *Nouns*, preceded and followed as you see, by an *Article*, or by a *Preposition*, and coming under the rules that have been given on nouns. According to the french academy, some of these words are both *Prepositions* and *Adverbs*. They are *Prepositions* when they *govern* a substantive after them, and they are *Adverbs* when they are used *absolutely* without a substantive. This distinction is right, but its application is not always so; for example, *J'étais* à côté *de la porte*, I was *by the side* of the door; here *à côté* is a *preposition*. *Il était sur la porte, et j'étais* à côté; He was on the door, and I was *by the side* of it; here *à côté*, is an *adverb*. With due respect to the french academy, I must say that *à côté*, in these instances, seems to me of the same nature as the substantive *side*, which represents it in english. Certain it is, that these words called *prepositions* are all derived from *nouns* or *verbs*. If then our poverty of expression obliged us to have recourse to this benevolent family, I think their generosity should not be abused, and their nature changed without a necessity which, in these instances, does not seem to exist.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH *and* ENGLISH *PREPOSITIONS.*

Having found it impossible to make rules sufficiently explicit for the use of the prepositions, I have subjoined a list of all the *VERBS* and *ADJECTIVES* which require a preposition *different* from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in english, by means of which the learner may always remove any doubt he may have respecting the prepositions.* 200

Agree	ABOUT,	*Convenir*	DE;	*as* Nous sommes *convenus* DE ceci.
Carry	ABOUT,	*Porter*	SUR;	Je ne *porte* pas d'argent SUR moi.
Concerned / Uneasy	ABOUT, / ABOUT,	*Inquiet*	DE;	Je suis *inquiet* DE sa santé.
Discourse	ABOUT,	*Discourir*	DE;	Nous *discourons* DE nos affaires.
Easy	ABOUT,	*Tranquille*	SUR;	Je suis *tranquille* SUR cela.
Inquire	ABOUT,	s' *Informer*	DE;	*Informez*-vous DE son retour.
Talk	ABOUT,	*Parler*	DE;	*Parlons* D'autres choses.
Greedy	AFTER,	*Avide*	DE;	Il est trop *avide* DE richesses.
Inquire	AFTER,	s' *Informer*	DE;	Il *s'informe* souvent DE vous.
Thirst	AFTER,	*Altéré*	DE;	Il est *altéré* DE sang.
Angry / Offended / Vexed (a person)	AT / AT / AT	*Fâché*	CONTRE;	Etre *fâché* CONTRE quelqu'un
Angry / Offended / Vexed (a thing)	AT / AT / AT	*Fâché*	DE;	Etre *fâché* DE quelque chose.
Astonished	AT,	*Etonné*	DE;	Je ne suis pas *étonné* DE cela.
Blush	AT,	*Rougir*	DE;	Elle *rougit* DE sa folie.
Exasperated	AT,	*Outré*	DE;	Il fut *outré* DE ce discours.
Grieve	AT,	s' *Affliger*	DE;	Il s'*afflige* DE sa perte.
Laugh	AT,	*Rire*	DE;	Il *rit* or se *moque* DE tout.
Laugh	AT,	se *Moquer*	DE;	Il se *moque* DE tout le monde.
Rejoice	AT,	se *Réjouir*	DE;	Je me *réjouis* DE votre succès.
Scandalised	AT,	*Scandaliser*	DE;	Je fus *scandalisé* DE son action.
Smile	AT,	*Sourire*	DE;	Elle *sourit* DE ma confusion.
Surprised	AT,	*Surpris*	DE;	Je ne suis pas *surpris* DE cela.
Wonder	AT,	*Etonné*	DE;	Je n' EN suis pas *étonné*.
Followed	BY,	*Suivi*	DE;	Il était *suivi* DE ses gens.
Gain / Get	BY, / BY,	*Gagner*	À;	Il n' a rien *gagné* À cela.
Preceded	BY,	*Précédé*	DE;	Le souper fut *précédé* D'un bal.
Profit	BY,	*Profiter*	DE;	Il n'a pas *profité* DE vos leçons.
Answer	FOR,	*Répondre*	DE;	*Répondez*-vous DE lui? DE cela?
Blame	FOR,	*Blâmer*	DE;	Je le *blâme* DE ses défauts.
Bless	FOR,	*Bénir*	DE;	*Bénissons*-le DE sa bonté.
Care	FOR,	se *Soucier*	DE;	Je ne me *soucie* pas DE lui.
Chastise	FOR,	*Châtier*	DE;	Il sera *châtié* DE sa malice.
Console	FOR,	*Consoler*	DE;	*Consolez*-le DE sa perte.
Design	FOR,	*Destiner*	À;	À quoi le *destinez*-vous?

* Some grammarians have endeavoured to analyze the different *relations* which the prepositions have with the words which they connect; so, according to them, all verbs and adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetfulness, care, fear, guilt, innocence, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, measure, dimension*, require DE; the verbs and adjectives which express *submission, relation, pleasure, displeasure, duty, resistance, opposition, facility, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit*, require À; but these terms are so indefinite, and notwithstanding their latitude, they leave so great a chasm in the field of prepositions, that I have not met with any person who has derived the least advantage from them.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH *and* ENGLISH *PREPOSITIONS.*

Fit	FOR,	*Propre*	À ;	as À quoi cela est-il *propre?*
Good	FOR,	*Bon*	À ;	Cela n'est *bon* À rien.
Grieve	FOR,	s' *Affliger*	DE ;	Il est *affligé* DE ses fautes.
Obliged	FOR,	*Obligé*	DE ;	Je lui suis *obligé* DE sa lettre.
Pity	FOR,	*Plaindre*	DE ,	Je le *plains* DE sa faiblesse.
Praise	FOR,	*Louer*	DE ;	On le *loua* DE sa candeur.
Provide	FOR,	*Pourvoir*	À ;	Qui *pourvoit* À ses besoins?
Punish	FOR,	*Punir*	DE ;	Il sera *puni* DE sa témérité.
Sorry	FOR,	*Fâché*	DE ;	Je suis *fâché* DE son malheur
Sufficient	FOR,	*Suffire*	À ;	Cela ne LUI* *suffit* pas.
Thank	FOR,	*Remercier*	DE ;	*Remerciez*-le DE ses bontés.
Borrow	FROM,	*Emprunter*	À ;	Il l'a *emprunté* À votre père.
Conceal	FROM,	*Cacher*	À ;	Ne le *cachez* pas À votre ami.
Escape	FROM,	*Echapper*	DE ;	*Echapper* D'un endroit.
Escape	FROM,	*Echapper*	À ;	*Echapper* À une personne.
Hear	FROM,	*Ouïr dire*	À ;	Je l'ai *ouï dire* À mon père.
Take	FROM,	*Oter*	À ;	Ne l'*ôtez* pas À cet enfant.
Take	FROM,	*Prendre*	À ;	Il le LUI* a *pris* or *ôté.*
Acquiesce	IN,	*Acquiescer*	À ;	J'*acquiesce* À votre demande.
Interested	IN,	s' *Intéresser*	À ;	Je m'*intéresse* À son bien-être.
Delight	IN,	se *Plaire*	À ;	Il se *plait* AU jardinage.
Dexterous	IN,	*Adroit*	À ;	Il est *adroit* AUX exercices.
Glory	IN,	se *Glorifier*	DE ;	Il se *glorifie* DE ses richesses.
Pride	IN,	s' *Enorgueillir*	DE ;	Il s'*enorgueillit* DE sa naissance.
Ask	OF,	*Demander*	À ;	*Demandez*-le À cet homme.
Sensible	OF,	*Sensible*	À ;	Il est très-*sensible* AU froid.
Think	OF,†	*Penser*	À ;	Avez-vous *pensé* À moi?
Think	OF,	*Songer*	À ;	Vous ne *songez* À rien.
Think	ON,	*Penser*	À ;	Avez-vous *pensé* À mon affaire?
Have pity	ON,	*Avoir pitié*	DE ;	Vous n'*avez pitié* DE personne.
Play	ON,	*Jouer*	DE ;	*Joue*-t-il DE quelqu'instrument?
Triumph	OVER,	*Triompher*	DE ;	Il a *triomphé* DE ses ennemis.
Pretend	TO,	se *Piquer*	DE ;	Il se *pique* DE générosité.
Agree	UPON,	*Convenir*	DE ;	*Convenons* DE quelque chose.
Call	UPON,	*Passer*	CHEZ ;	Quand *passerez*-vous CHEZ moi?
Congratulate	UPON,	*Féliciter*	DE ;	Je vous *félicite* DE votre retour.
Depend	UPON,	*Dépendre*	DE ;	Vous ne *dépendez* pas DE lui.
Feed	UPON,	se *Nourrir*	DE ;	Il se *nourrit* DE pain et DE lait.
Impose	UPON,	en *Imposer*	À ;	Il en *impose* AUX gens.
Live	UPON,	*Vivre*	DE ;	Il *vit* DE fruit et DE légumes.
Prevail	UPON,	*Persuader*	À ;	Je LUI* *persuadai* de s'en aller.
Seize	UPON,	se *Saisir*	DE ;	On se *saisit* aussitôt DE lui.
Smile	UPON,	*Sourire*	À ;	Il *souriait* À ses amis.
Take	UPON,	se *Charger*	DE ;	Il s'est *chargé* DE cette affaire.
Abound	WITH,	*Abonder*	EN ;	La France *abonde* EN fruit.
Acquainted	WITH,	*Connu*	DE ;	Je ne suis pas *connu* DE lui.
Adorn	WITH,	*Orner*	DE ;	Une chambre *ornée* DE tableaux
Angry	WITH,	*Fâché*	CONTRE ;	Il est très-*fâché* CONTRE vous.

* Observe that the *preposition* à is *implied* in LUI, which means *to him.* See table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† When *think* is used in the sense of *to have an opinion, of* is expressed by *de*, not by à ; as, What do you think *of* that? *Que pensez-vous* de *cela?* not, à *cela?*

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH *and* ENGLISH *PREPOSITIONS.*

Amuse	WITH,	*Amuser*	DE;	Il l'*amusait* DE promesses.
Animated	WITH,	*Animé*	DE;	Il est *animé* DE zêle.
Armed	WITH,	*Armé*	DE;	Il était *armé* D'un pistolet.
Bathe	WITH,	*Baigner*	DE;	Elle le *baigna* DE ses larmes.
Charge	WITH,	*Accuser*	DE;	On l'*accuse* DE trahison.
Charmed	WITH,	*Charmé*	DE;	Il est *charmé* DE ses manières.
Compare	WITH,	*Comparer*	À;	*Comparez*-vous ceci À cela?
Comply	WITH,	*Condescendre*	À;	Il *condescend* À ses caprices.
Contented	WITH,	*Content*	DE;	Je ne suis pas *content* DE cela.
Cover	WITH,	*Couvrir*	DE;	Il est *couvert* DE poussière.
Delighted	WITH,	*Charmé*	DE;	Il fut *charmé* DE son esprit.
Die	WITH,	*Mourir*	DE;	Je *meurs* DE faim, DE soif.
Disgusted	WITH,	*Dégoûté*	DE;	Je suis *dégoûté* DU monde.
Dispense	WITH,	*Dispenser*	DE;	*Dispensez*-moi DE cela.
Displeased	WITH,	*Mécontent*	DE;	Je suis *mécontent* DE lui.
Do	WITH,	*Faire*	DE;	Que *fera*-t-on DE cet homme?
Embellish	WITH,	*Embellir*	DE;	Un jardin *embelli* DE fleurs.
Endue	WITH,	*Douer*	DE;	Il n'est *doué* D'aucun esprit.
Enflame	WITH,	*Enflammer*	DE;	Il était *enflammé* DE colère.
Feed	WITH,	*Nourrir*	DE;	On le *nourrit* DE pain et D'eau.
Fill	WITH,	*Emplir*	DE;	*Emplissez* votre verre DE vin.
Glut	WITH,	*Assouvir*	DE;	Il est *assouvi* DE carnage.
In love	WITH,	*Amoureux*	DE;	Il est *amoureux* DE cette fille.
Load	WITH,	*Charger*	DE;	Il est *chargé* DE butin.
Meddle	WITH,	se *Mêler*	DE;	*Mêlez*-vous DE vos affaires.
Moved	WITH,	*Touché*	DE;	Il fut *touché* DE compassion.
Overjoyed	WITH,	*Ravi*	DE;	Il fut *ravi* DE cette nouvelle.
Overwhelm	WITH,	*Accabler*	DE;	Il est *accablé* DE chagrin.
Part	WITH,	se *Défaire*	DE;	Il s'est *défait* DE son cheval.
Perish	WITH,	*Périr*	DE;	Il *périt* DE faim et DE misère.
Pleased	WITH,	*Content*	DE;	Elle n'est pas *contente* DE lui.
Prevail	WITH,	*Persuader*	À;	*Persuadez*-LUI de le faire.
Provide	WITH,	*Fournir*	DE;	Ils *fournissent* l'armée DE blé.
Provided	WITH,	*Pourvu*	DE;	Il est bien *pourvu* D'habits.
Puffed up	WITH,	*Enflé*	DE;	Il est tout *enflé* D'orgueil.
Refresh	WITH,	se *Rafraîchir*	DE;	Se *rafraîchir* D'un verre de vin.
Satiated	WITH,	*Rassasié*	DE;	Il est *rassasié* DE plaisirs.
Satisfied	WITH,	*Satisfait*	DE;	Il n' est pas *satisfait* DE cela.
Set	WITH,	*Garnir*	DE;	Une boîte *garnie* DE diamants.
Sport	WITH,	se *Jouer*	DE;	Elle se *joue* DE sa crédulité.
Store	WITH,	*Munir*	DE;	La place est *munie* DE provisions
Struck	WITH,	*Frappé*	DE;	Il fut *frappé* D'étonnement.
Surrounded	WITH,	*Entouré*	DE;	Il était *entouré* DE flatteurs.
Swarm	WITH,	*Fourmiller*	DE;	Le pays *fourmille* DE voleurs.
Taken up	WITH,	*Occupé*	DE;	Il est *trop occupé* DE lui-même.
Tax	WITH,	*Taxer*	DE;	On le *taxe* DE sédition.
Threaten	WITH,	*Menacer*	DE;	On le *menaça* DE la mort.
Tire	WITH,	*Ennuyer*	DE;	Il est *ennuyé* DE ces choses.
Tormented	WITH,	*Tourmenté*	DE;	Il est *tourmenté* DE remords.
Transported	WITH,	*Transporté*	DE;	Elle est *transportée* DE joie.
Do	WITHOUT,	se *Passer*	DE;	Il ne peut pas se *passer* D'elle.

DIFFERENCE *between the* FRENCH *and* ENGLISH *PREPOSITIONS.*

201 Sometimes a verb *requires* a PREPOSITION after it *in english*, and will *not admit* of it *in french*; such are,

Look	AT;	*Look at* that man;	Regardez *cet homme.*
Ask	FOR;	He *asks for* you;	*Il vous* demande.
Buy	FOR;	I *bought* this *for* a penny;	*J'ai* acheté *ceci un sou.*
Go	FOR;	*Go for* your book;	Allez chercher *votre livre.*
Look	FOR;	*Look for* it;	Cherchez-*le*, not, *pour* lui
Sell	FOR;	I have *sold* it *for* two pence;	*Je l'ai* vendu *deux sous.*
Stay	FOR;	*Stay for* me;	Attendez-*moi*, not, *pour* moi.
Wait	FOR;	Do not *wait for* me;	*Ne m'*attendez *pas.*
Wish	FOR;	I *wish for* your company;	*Je* souhaite *votre compagnie.*
Accept	OF;	Please to *accept of* this;	*Daignez* accepter *ceci.*
Admit	OF;	He will not *admit of* that;	*Il n'*admettra *pas cela.*
Approve	OF;	Do you *approve of* it?	*L'*approuvez-*vous?*
Beg	OF;	I *beg of* you to see her;	*Je vous* prie *de la voir.*
Ignorant	OF;	She was quite *ignorant of* it;	*Elle l'*ignorait *tout à fait.*
Tyrannise	OVER;	She *tyrannises over* me;	*Elle me* tyrannise.
Listen	TO;	*Listen to* me;	Ecoutez-*moi*, not *à* moi.
Look	UPON;	*Look upon* me as a friend;	Regardez-*moi comme ami.*
Prevail	UPON;	*Prevail upon* her to stay;	Engagez-*la à rester.*
Prevail	WITH;	*Prevail with* him to come;	Engagez-*le à venir.*
Resolve	UPON;	Has he *resolved upon* any thing?	*A-t-il* résolu *quelque chose?*
Bear	WITH;	I *bear with* his importunities;	*J'*endure *ses importunités.*
Meet	WITH;	I *met with* a robber;	*Je* rencontrai *un voleur.*
Put up	WITH;	I *put up with* his impertinence;	*Je* souffris *son impertinence.*

202 In other instances it is the reverse, and the verb which has *no* PREPOSITION *in english*, must *have* a PREPOSITION after it *in french*; such are,

Abuser	DE;	*Il* abuse DE *ma patience;*	He *abuses* my patience.
s'Apercevoir	DE;	*Je m'*aperçois DE *cela;*	I *perceive* that.
Avoir besoin	DE;	*J'ai* besoin D'*argent;*	I *want* money.
Avoir pitié	DE;	*Il n'*a *pas* pitié DE *moi;*	He does not *pity* me.
Changer	DE;	*Il a* changé DE *dessein;*	He has *changed* his design.
se Défier	DE;	*Vous* défiez-*vous* DE *lui?*	Do you *mistrust* him?
se Démettre	DE;	*Il s'est* démis DE *sa place;*	He has *given up* his place.
Disconvenir	DE;	*Il n'*EN* disconvient *pas;*	He does not *disown it.*
Douter	DE;	*Il* doute DE *tout;*	He *doubts* every thing.
s'Embarrasser	DE;	*Il ne s'*embarrasse DE *rien;*	He *minds* nothing.
Gémir	DE;	*Il* gémit DE *ses fautes;*	He *laments* his errors.
Hériter	DE;	*Il a* hérité D'*un gros bien;*	He *inherited* a large estate.
Jouir	DE;	*Il* jouit D'*une bonne santé;*	He *enjoys* good health.
Manquer	DE;	*Il ne* manque DE *rien;*	He *wants* nothing.
Médire	DE;	*Il* médit DES *gens;*	He *slanders* people.
se Méfier	DE;	*Il se* méfie DE *ses amis;*	He *mistrusts* his friends.
se Méprendre	DE;	*Il s'est* mépris DE *chemin;*	He has *mistaken* his way.
se Moquer	DE;	*Il se* moque DES *sages;*	He *mocks* wise people.
se Passer	DE;	*Il ne peut pas s'*EN* passer;	He can not *spare it.*
se Servir	DE;	*Il se* sert DE *mon nom;*	He *uses* my name.
se Souvenir	DE;	*Je me* souviens DE *cela;*	I *remember* that.
User	DE;	*Il a* usé DE *violence;*	He has *used* violence.
se Venger	DE;	*Je m'*EN* vengerai;	I will *revenge it.*
Attenter	À;	*Il a* attenté À *ma vie;*	He has *attempted* my life.
Commander	À;	Commandez-LUI† *d'y aller;*	*Bid him* to go there.
Compatir	À;	*Je* compatis À *sa peine;*	I *compassionate* his pain.
Convenir	À;	*Cela* LUI† convient, or	That *suits* or *becomes him*
Seoir	À;	*Cela* LUI† sied *à merveille;*	wonderfully.

* The preposition *de* is implied in the pronoun EN, which means *of it*; see a table of the pronouns page 74.

† See note * page 251.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH *and* ENGLISH *PREPOSITIONS.*

Défendre	À;	Défendez-LUI* *de le dire;*	*Forbid him* to tell it.
Déplaire	À;	*Il* déplait À *son père;*	He *displeases* his father.
Désobéir	À;	*Il* désobéit À *sa mère;*	He *disobeys* his mother.
se Fier	À;	*Il ne se* fie À *personne;*	He *trusts* nobody.
Manquer	À;	*Il* manque À *sa parole;*	He *breaks* his word.
Importer	À;	*Il* LUI* importe *de le voir;*	It *concerns her* to see it.
Nuire	À;	*Ne* nuisez À *personne;*	Do not *injure* any body.
Obéir	À;	Obéissez À *vos parents;*	*Obey* your parents.
Obvier	À;	*Il n'a pu* obvier À *cela;*	He could not *prevent* that.
s' Opposer	À;	Opposez-*vous* À *l'injustice;*	*Oppose* injustice.
Ordonner	À;	Ordonnez-LUI* *de le faire;*	*Order him* to do it.
Pardonner	À;	Pardonnez À *vos ennemis;*	*Forgive* your enemies.
Permettre	À;	Permettez-LUI* *de s'en aller;*	*Permit her* to go.
Persuader	À;	Persuadez-LUI* *de la voir;*	*Persuade him* to see her.
Plaire	À;	*Elle* plait À *tout le monde;*	She *pleases* every body.
Prendre garde	À;	*Il* prend garde À *tout;*	He *minds* every thing.
Promettre	À;	*Il* LUI* *a* promis *de venir;*	He *promised her* to come.
Renoncer	À;	*Il a* renoncé AU *jeu;*	He has *given up* gaming.
Répondre	À;	Répondez À *ma question;*	*Answer* my question.
Résister	À;	Résistez À *la tentation;*	*Resist* temptation.
Ressembler	À;	*Elle* ressemble À *sa mère;*	She *resembles* her mother.
Subvenir	À;	*Il* subvient À *ses besoins;*	He *supplies* her wants.
Succéder	À;	*Il* succédera À *son oncle;*	He will *succeed* his uncle.
Survivre	À;	*Elle ne* LUI* survivra *pas;*	She will not *outlive* him.
Toucher	À;	*Ne* touchez *pas* À *ce livre;*	Do not *touch* that book.

In some instances the *PREPOSITION* may be placed in english, either *before* or *after* the substantive which it governs; but in french, the *PREPOSITION* must always be placed *immediately* BEFORE its object; as, 203

With whom were you? or *Whom* were you *with?* } AVEC qui *étiez-vous?*

To whom shall I give this? or *Whom* shall I give this *to?* } À qui *donnerai-je ceci?*

The *PREPOSITIONS* must be *repeated* in french *before EVERY word* which they govern, though these words are in the same sentence, and the preposition is not repeated in english; as, 204

I come *from* France and Italy; *Je viens* DE *France et* D'*Italie.*

I have been *to* Paris and Rome; *J'ai été À Paris et À Rome.*†

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

FOR; DEPUIS, PENDANT, DURANT, POUR.

FOR, before a period of time, is expressed by DEPUIS, to denote the two *extremes* of the period; by PENDANT, or DURANT, to denote its *duration;* and by POUR, to denote the *end;* as, 205

I have not seen him *for* a month;
i. e. a month *since.* *Je ne l'ai pas vu* DEPUIS *un mois.*

They fought *for* two days;
i. e. *during* two days. *Ils se battirent* PENDANT *deux jours.*

They have provisions *for* a year;
i. e. *to last* a year. *Ils ont des provisions* POUR *un an.*

* The *preposition* À is *implied* in the pronoun LUI, which expresses *to him, to her.* See a table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† This repetition is not always necessary, but the surest way for a foreigner is to make it a general rule, until he has learned by reading when the preposition may be left out.

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

BEFORE; AVANT, DEVANT.

206 Speaking of *time*, or *order*, BEFORE is expressed by AVANT, the opposite of which is APRÈS, *after;* speaking of *place* or *in presence*, it is expressed by DEVANT, the opposite of which is DERRIÈRE, *behind;* as,

Do not walk *before* me. — *Ne marchez pas* DEVANT *moi.*
I want to arrive *before* you. — *Je veux arriver* AVANT *vous.*

N. B. Without an object after it, BEFORE is AUPARAVANT; as,

I had seen it *before.* — *Je l'avais vu* AUPARAVANT.

BY; PRÈS DE, À CÔTÉ DE.

207 *By*, used in the sense of *NEAR*, is PRÈS DE, *or* À CÔTÉ DE; as,

He was sitting *by* or *near* me. — *Il était assis* à CÔTÉ de *moi.*
He passed *by* or *near* us. — *Il passa* PRÈS de *nous*, à CÔTÉ de *nous*

N. B. With the words *MYSELF, THYSELF, HIMSELF, &c., BY* is often used in the sense of *alone*, and is expressed by the adjective SEUL; as,

I like to be *by myself*, i. e. *alone.* *J'aime à être* SEUL; *not*, PAR moi-même.
She was *by herself* all the day. *Elle a été* SEULE *toute la journée.*

AT, TO; CHEZ.

208 *At, to*, denoting *being AT*, or *going TO* a person's *house*, are expressed by CHEZ, and the word *house* is *left out* in french; as,

I must go *TO* my *sister's*; or *to* my sister's *house.* — *Il faut que j'aille* CHEZ *ma* sœur.
She is *AT* your *mother's.* — *Elle est* CHEZ *votre* mère.

N. B. If the word *house*, instead of being preceded by a noun, is preceded by one of the *possessive* PRONOMINAL *articles MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR*, the word *house* is also omitted, and the *possessive* ARTICLE is changed into a *personal* PRONOUN, thus;

At *my* house;	*Chez* MOI.	At *our* house;	*Chez* NOUS.
At *thy* house;	*Chez* TOI.	At *your* house;	*Chez* VOUS.
At *his* house;	*Chez* LUI.	At *their* house;	*Chez* EUX. *m.*
At *her* house;	*Chez* ELLE.	At *their* house;	*Chez* ELLES. *f.*

FROM; De CHEZ.

209 *From*, with verbs denoting *coming* or *going FROM* a person's *house*, is expressed by *de* CHEZ, and the word *house* is *left out;* as,

I come *from* my *sister's*; or *from* my sister's *house.* — *Je viens* de CHEZ *ma* sœur.
Is she returned *from* my *mother's*? *Est-elle revenue* de CHEZ *ma* mère?

N.B. If the word *house* is preceded by the *possessive* PRONOMINAL *article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR*, that article is changed into a *personal* PRONOUN, as follows;

From *my* house;	*De chez* MOI.	From *our* house;	*De chez* NOUS.
From *thy* house;	*De chez* TOI.	From *your* house;	*De chez* VOUS.
From *his* house;	*De chez* LUI.	From *their* house;	*De chez* EUX. *m.*
From *her* house;	*De chez* ELLE.	From *their* house;	*De chez* ELLES. *f.*

FROM; De la PART.

210 *From*, with the verbs to *go*, to *come*, not *from the HOUSE* of a person, but *from the PERSON himself*, is expressed by *DE LA* PART; as,

Go *from me* to my daughter's. — *Allez* de *MA* PART *chez ma fille.*
Whom do you come *from*? — De la PART de *QUI venez-vous?*

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

IN, INTO; DANS, EN.

Before the names of *persons* and *places*, IN, INTO are expressed by DANS; as, 211

I have read that *in* Voltaire. *J'ai lu cela* DANS *Voltaire.*
Are there fine streets *in* Paris? *Y a-t-il de belles rues* DANS *Paris?*

N. B. Observe only with respect to *places*, that after verbs denoting residence, IN is expressed by À; as,

My brother lives *in* Paris. *Mon frère demeure* À *Paris.*

Before the names of *countries*, with verbs denoting *going* or *residing*, IN, INTO are expressed by EN; as, 212

My brother lives *in* France. *Mon frère demeure* EN *France.*
Has he ever been *into* Italy? *A-t-il jamais été* EN *Italie?*

N. B. In other instances, IN, INTO before the names of *countries*, may be expressed by EN or by DANS; observing only that after DANS, the noun must have an article, and after EN, it must be without; as,

There is some *in* France. *Il y en a* EN *France*, DANS la *France.*
Is there any *in* Italy? *Y en a-t-il* EN *Italie*, or DANS l'*Italie?*

Before *common* names used in a *limited* sense, i.e. preceded by any of the signs which have been called *article*, IN, INTO are expressed by DANS; 213

In the last peace. DANS *la dernière paix.*
In this unfortunate war. DANS *cette guerre malheureuse.*
There are charms *in* society. *Il y a des charmes* DANS *la société.*

But when the same *common* names are used in an *unlimited* sense, in which sense they generally have no article, IN, INTO are expressed by EN; 214

I like to live *in* peace. *J'aime à vivre* EN *paix.**
We are always *in* broils. *Nous sommes toujours* EN *querelle.*
It is better to live *in* society. *Il vaut mieux vivre* EN *société.*†

Speaking of *time*, IN is expressed by DANS, to denote the time *after which* an action *will be performed*, and by EN, to denote the time that will be employed *in performing* it; as, 215

I shall go to Paris *in* three days.
J'irai à Paris DANS *trois jours*; viz. *after* three days.
J'irai à Paris EN *trois jours*; i. e. I shall be three days *in going.*

Before nouns denoting any part of the day, IN is *not expressed* in french; 216

In the morning—*In* the evening. *Le matin—Le soir.*
In the afternoon. *Après-midi*, or *Après-dîné.*

N. B. Observe the same rule with ON, before the days of the week; as,

On Sunday—*On* Monday. *Dimanche—Lundi*; not, *sur* Lundi.
On the day he came. *Le jour qu'il est venu.*

---

* If in some instances *IN, INTO* are expressed by EN, without an article in french, before nouns which in english have the article *A, AN*; as,

I came *in* a coach; *Je vins* EN *carrosse.* She fell *into* a passion; *Elle se mit* EN *colère*;

It is because in these instances the noun serves less to name the thing itself, than the manner of being or acting of the agent of the verb, and these words *En carrosse, En colère*, may be considered as adverbial expressions; but if we add to the same nouns some word which will render their meaning definite, *IN, INTO* must be expressed by DANS; as,

I came *in* a fine coach; *Je vins* DANS *un beau carrosse.*
She fell *into* a great passion; *Elle se mit* DANS *une grande colère.*

† *Société*, in these two instances, is used in a different sense; in the first instance, it means that particular state of being called *society*; in the second, it is rather an adverbial expression, and means *sociably.*

CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS are certain words, and sometimes short phrases that serve to express the relation which several sentences have together; as,

Will you come, IF *I go?* *I will not go,* UNLESS *you come.*

The words IF, UNLESS, which denote a relation between the verbs *come* and *go*, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

The CONJUNCTIONS *are in french;*

AFIN QUE,	*That, To the end that.*	ET,	*And, Both.*
POUR QUE,		MAIS,	*But.*
À MOINS QUE,	*Unless.*	NI,	*Neither, Nor.*
AVANT QUE,	*Before.*	OU,	*Either, Or.*
AUSSI,	*So, Therefore.*	PARCE QUE,	*Because.*
BIEN QUE,	*Though, Although.*	POURTANT,	*Yet, However*
QUOIQUE,		POURVU QUE,	*Provided.*
CAR,	*For, Because.*	PUISQUE,	*Since.*
ENCAS QUE,	*If, In case that.*	QUE,	*That.*
CEPENDANT,	*Yet, However.*	QUAND,	*When.*
COMME,	*As, Since.*	LORSQUE,	
DECRAINTE QUE,	*Lest, For fear that.*	QUAND,	*Though, If even.*
DEPEUR QUE,		SANS QUE,	*Without.*
JUSQU'à ce QUE,	*Till, Until.*	SI,	*If, Whether.*
NÉANMOINS,	*Nevertheless.*	SOIT QUE,	*Whether.**

* Several grammarians reckon above one hundred conjunctions, which they call

DECLARATIVE, viz.	*SUSPENSIVE*, viz.	*DISJUNCTIVE*, viz.	*COPULATIVE*, viz.
SAVOIR.	SI.	OU.	ET.
COMME.	SAVOIR si.	OU bien.	AUSSI.
C'est-à-DIRE.	C'est à SAVOIR si.	SOIT.	NI.
Par EXEMPLE.	QUOI qu'il en SOIT.	SOIT que.	NON plus.
AUGMENTATIVE, viz.	*DIMINUTIVE*, viz.	*TRANSITIVE*, viz.	*CONCESSIVE*, viz.
D'AILLEURS.	ENCORE.	En EFFET.	QUOI que.
OUTRE.	Au MOINS	Au RESTE.	A la VÉRITÉ.
DE PLUS.	Du MOINS.	A PROPOS.	QUAND, QUAND même.
Au SURPLUS.	Pour le MOINS.	APRÈS tout.	NON que, NON PAS que.
RESTRICTIVE, viz.	*ADVERSATIVE*, viz.	*CONCLUSIVE*, viz.	
SINON.	MAIS.	OR, DONC.	
SI ce n'est QUE.	CEPENDANT.	AINSI.	
QUOIque.	NÉANMOINS.	Par CONSÉQUENT.	
POUR, *viz.* QUOIque.	POURTANT.	*C'est pourquoi.*	
ENCORE que.	TOUTEFOIS.	TELLEMENT que.	
À MOINS que.	BIEN que.	De SORTE que. De MANIÈRE que.	
CAUSATIVE, viz.	*COMPARATIVE*, viz.	*CONDITIONAL*, viz.	*TIME* and *ORDER*, viz.
CAR.	COMME.	SI.	QUAND, LORSque.
COMME.	AINSI.	SINON.	PENDANT que.
PARCE que.	De MÊME.	QUAND, QUAND même.	TANDIS que.
À CAUSE que.	AINSI que.	QUAND bien même.	TANT que.
VU que.	AUSSI BIEN que.	À MOINS que.	AVANT que.
ATTENDU que.	AUSSI PEU que.	POURVU que.	DEPUIS que.
PUISque.	AUTANT que.	SUPPOSÉ que.	DÈS que.
POURquoi.	NON PLUS que.	Au CAS que.	AUSSITÔT que.
AFIN que.	NI PLUS NI MOINS que.	En CAS que.	APRÈS que.
De PEUR que.	SI que.	À CONDITION que.	CEPENDANT.
De CRAINTE que.	EN, *viz.* COMME.	Bien ENTENDU que.	à PEINE, ENFIN.

Which, except those mentioned in the table above, are either *nouns* or *adverbs*, with puzzling and useless denominations, since their properties are the same in both languages.

Some grammarians add to these AFIN *de*; À MOINS QUE *de*; AVANT *de*; AVANT QUE *de*; AU LIEU *de*; DE CRAINTE *de*; DE PEUR *de*; FAUTE *de*; LOIN *de*; PLUTÔT QUE *de*; JUSQU' *à*; but the only connective part of these words being DE, or À, which are *prepositions*, they can hardly be said to belong to the conjunctions.

The CONJUNCTIONS in french *affect* the verbs which follow them, so as to require some *particular* MOOD.

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *INDICATIVE mood* after them; 217

AUSSI,	*so, therefore.*	OU,	*Either, or.*
CAR,	*For, because.*	PARCE QUE,	*Because.*
CEPENDANT,	*Yet, however.*	PUISQUE,	*since.*
POURTANT,		QUAND,	*when.*
COMME,	*As, since.*	LORSQUE,	
MAIS,	*But.*	QUAND,	*Tho', if even.*
NÉANMOINS,	*Nevertheless.*	QUE,	*That.*
NI,	*Neither, Nor.*	SI,	*If, whether.*

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *SUBJUNCTIVE mood* after them; 218

AFIN QUE,	*That.*	DECRAINTE QUE,*	*Lest, For*
POUR QUE,	*To the end that.*	DEPEUR QUE,*	*fear that.*
À MOINS QUE,*	*Unless.*	JUSQU'À CE QUE,	*Till, until.*
AVANT QUE,	*Before.*	POURVU QUE,	*Provided.*
BIEN QUE,	*Though, Although.*	QUE,†	*That.*
QUOIQUE,		SANS QUE,	*Without.*
ENCAS QUE,	*If, In case that.*	SOIT QUE,	*whether.*

When a CONJUNCTION governs *SEVERAL* VERBS, it is expressed before the first verb only, and QUE is added to the other verbs, with the *SAME* MOOD after it, as if the conjunction itself was repeated; ex. 219

As he is diligent, and takes pains.
COMME *il* EST *diligent, et* QU'*il* PREND *de la peine.*
He learns well, *because* he is diligent, and takes pains.
Il apprend bien, PARCE QU'*il* EST *diligent, et* QU'*il* PREND *de la peine.*
Unless he is diligent, and takes pains.
À MOINS QU'*il ne* SOIT *diligent, et* QU'*il ne* PRENNE *de la peine.*

When SI, *IF*, governs *two* verbs, instead of repeating *SI* before the *second* verb, we use *QUE;* and the verb which follows this QUE, must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*, though the verb which follows SI is in the *indicative;* 220

You will learn, *if* you are diligent, and take pains.
Vous apprendrez, SI *vous* ÊTES *diligent, et* QUE *vous* PRENIEZ *de la peine.*
If you come, and I am not at home, you will wait for me.
SI *vous* VENEZ, *et* QUE *je ne* SOIS *pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.* (oo)

The idiom of the english language often admits an *ellipsis*, i. e. an omission of the conjunction *THAT;* as, 221

I think my sister will come; for, *I think* THAT *my sister will come.*
But the corresponding conjunction must always *be expressed* in french; as,

I think my sister will come.	*Je pense* QUE *ma sœur viendra.*
I know she intends to come.	*Je sais* QU'*elle a dessein de venir.*
I hope she will soon be here.	*J'espère* QU'*elle sera bientôt ici.*

---

* The conjunctions A MOINS *que*, DE CRAINTE *que*, DE PEUR *que* require NE before the verb which follows them; see 195 rule.

† Learners are often mistaken, by considering QUE as requiring always the *subjunctive mood* after it; but QUE does not govern any particular mood; its power depends on the *verb* or *conjunction* that *precedes* it.

(oo) The conjunction *IF* is often *suppressed*, and the nominative *transposed* after the verb; as, If *you should come, or should* you *come*, or *were* you *to come, and I was not at home, you will wait for me*, which turn of expression must be rendered in french by SI before the verb; thus, SI *vous veniez, et* QUE *je ne fusse pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BOTH; ET, TANT.

222 *Both*, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by ET before an *adjective*, by ET or TANT before a *substantive;* but observe, that when we use TANT before the *first* substantive, we put QUE instead of ET before the *second;*

She is *both* rich and handsome.	*Elle est* ET *riche* ET *belle*
Both summer and winter.	TANT *en été* QU'*en hiver.*

N. B. This conjunction in *familiar* writing and in *conversation* is generally *left out* in french; thus,

Elle est riche et belle.	*En été et en hiver.*

EITHER, OR; OU, SOIT.

223 *Either, or*, are generally expressed by OU; as,

That is either good *or* bad.	*Cela est* OU *bon* OU *mauvais.*
Either he is rich, *or* he is poor.	OU *il est riche,* OU *il est pauvre.*

N. B. *Either, or,* followed by a *noun*, may be expressed by SOIT; as,

Either through love *or* caprice, she has married him.
SOIT *par amour* OU *par caprice*, or SOIT *par caprice, elle l'a épousé.*

NEITHER, NOR; NE NI, NI NE.

224 *Neither, nor*, followed by a verb in the *indicative* or *subjunctive* mood, are expressed, *neither* by NE, and *nor* by NI NE; as,

I *neither* love *nor* hate her.	*Je* NE *l'aime* NI NE *la hais.*
I *neither* see her *nor* speak to her.	*Je* NE *la vois* NI NE *lui parle.*

If, after *neither, nor*, there is a verb in the *infinitive*, an *adjective*, a *noun*, or a *pronoun*, *neither* is expressed by NE before the verb, and NI after it, and *nor* is expressed by NI; as,

I care *neither* for him *nor* for her.	*Je* NE *me soucie* NI *de lui* NI *d'elle.*
She is *neither* rich *nor* handsome.	*Elle* N'*est* NI *riche* NI *belle.*
She has *neither* beauty *nor* riches.	*Elle* N'*a* NI *beauté* NI *richesses.*
I can *neither* see her, *nor* speak to her.	*Je* NE *puis* NI *la voir,* NI *lui parler.*

WHETHER; SI, QUE, SOIT QUE.

225 *Whether*, used in the sense of *if*, is expressed by SI, with the following verb in the *INDICATIVE;* as,

Do you know *whether* she will come?	*Savez-vous* SI *elle* VIENDRA?
I want to know *whether* she will come.	*J'ai envie de savoir* SI *elle* VIENDRA.

Whether, used in the sense of *let*, is expressed by QUE, or SOIT QUE, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE;* as,

Come yourself, *whether* she comes or not; or *let* her come or not.	*Venez vous-même,* QU'*elle vienne ou* non; or QU'*elle vienne ou* QU'*elle ne vienne pas.*
Whether she comes or not; or *let* her come or not, we will go.	SOIT QU'*elle vienne ou* non; or QU'*elle vienne ou* QU'*elle ne vienne pas, nous y irons.*

THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN; QUAND.

226 *Though, although, if even*, followed by a *conditional* tense, are generally expressed by QUAND; as,

Though she should come, or *Even if* she should come, She would not go with us.	QUAND *elle viendrait, elle n'irait pas avec nous.* (pp)

(pp) These conjunctions are often *left out* in english, and the *nominative* is *put after* the verb, which mode of expression is also rendered in french by QUAND; as,
Were *she* to come, or, should *she* come now, she would not go with us;
Quand *elle viendrait à présent, elle n'irait pas avec nous*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, &c. SANS.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by SANS; as, 227

But for you, I should have starved. SANS *vous, je serais mort de faim.*

But for his friends,
or *If it were not for* his friends,
or *Had it not been for* his friends,
he would have been punished. } SANS *ses amis, il aurait été puni.*

CHAP. X.

INTERJECTION.

INTERJECTIONS are *natural sounds* caused by some sudden emotion of *joy, grief, pain, aversion, disgust, fright, surprise, astonishment, &c.*

The sounds most commonly used in french as *interjections* are;*

FOR JOY;

O!	*O!*	Ô! *si je pouvais le voir.*
AH!	*Ah!*	AH! *que je serais aise!*
HA HA!	Sounds caused by bursts of *laughter.*	
HI HI!		
HO HO!		

FOR PAIN AND GRIEF;

O!	*O!*	Ô! *que je suis à plaindre!*
AH!	*Ah!*	AH! *que je suis malheureux!*
HE!	*Ho!*	HE! *vous me faites mal.*
AIE!	*Ay!*	AIE! *vous me blessez.*
OUF!	*Oh!*	OUF! *que je souffre!*
HELAS!	*Alas!*	HELAS! *j'ai tout perdu.*
MON DIEU!	*O dear!*	MON DIEU! *que ferai-je?*

FOR AVERSION, DISGUST;

FIE!	*Fie upon!*	FI! *n' avez-vous pas de honte?*

FOR FRIGHT, SURPRISE, ASTONISHMENT;

HA!	*Ay!*	HA! *vous voilà.*
EH!	*Hah!*	EH! *que vous êtes alerte!*
OH OH!	*Oh!*	OH OH! *je vous y prends.*
O CIEL!	*Heavens!*	O CIEL! *qu'allons-nous devenir?*
BON DIEU!	*Mercy on us!*	BON DIEU! *que vous êtes impatient!*

FOR CALLING;

HO!
HOLA!
HEM! } Sounds used when *we call out* to people.

FOR SILENCE;

ST!
CHUT!
PAIX! } Sounds used when we *call for* a *sudden silence.*

* The number of interjections cannot be ascertained, because any sound which expresses a sudden emotion of the soul may be called an interjection. Some of these sounds called interjections express even different sensations, according to the inflexion which the voice takes, either of joy or grief, of pleasure or pain. The soul is then the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the learner, since they do not require any rules.

IDIOMS.

REMARKS on some *IDIOMATICAL* expressions, and words having *different meanings*, in which learners are apt to be mistaken.

PEOPLE; PEUPLE, GENS, PERSONNES, MONDE.

228 *PEOPLE*, meaning that *aggregate body* of human beings that compose a *nation*, a *government*, is expressed by PEUPLE; as,

The french *people*. *Le* PEUPLE *français*.
The will of the *people*. *La volonté du* PEUPLE.

N. B. PEUPLE is also said of that number of persons without dignity, who compose the *multitude*; as,

An insurrection of the *people*. *Un soulèvement du* PEUPLE.

229 *PEOPLE*, used to denote a certain number of *individuals*, is expressed by GENS, PERSONNE, MONDE; as,

Were there many *people*, i. e. *persons*, at the play?
Y avait-il beaucoup de GENS, *beaucoup de* MONDE *à la comédie?*
There is a great number of *people* in the street.
Il y a un grand nombre de MONDE, *de* GENS, *de* PERSONNES *dans la rue*.

But observe that GENS is not used after a *definite number*; so we do not say, *Deux ou trois* GENS; two or three *people*; we say, *Deux ou trois* PERSONNES.

Except when GENS is attended by an *adjective*; as

Deux ou trois honnêtes GENS. Two or three *honest people*.
Cinq ou six jeunes GENS. Five or six *young people*.

Observe also that when GENS is attended by an *adjective*, this adjective must be *feminine* if it comes *BEFORE* GENS, and it must be *masculine* if it comes *AFTER*; as,

Good people, *civil* people. *De* bonnes GENS, *des* GENS civils.
Old people are *suspicious*. *Les* vieilles GENS *sont* soupçonneux.

COUNTRY; PAYS, CAMPAGNE.

230 PAYS is said of a *large extent* of country, such as the *dominions* of a government, a *county*, a *province*; CAMPAGNE is said of a certain extent of *fields*, and is the opposite of VILLE, *town*; as,

France is a fine *country*. *La France est un beau* PAYS.
I prefer the *country* to the town. *Je préfère la* CAMPAGNE *à la ville*.

MOUTH; BOUCHE, GUEULE.

231 Speaking of *men*, *horses*, *mules*, *asses*, we express *MOUTH* by BOUCHE;

The *mouth* of a horse, of an ass. *La* BOUCHE *d'un cheval, d'un âne*.

Speaking of other *animals*, we express *MOUTH* by GUEULE;

The *mouth* of an ox, of a dog, &c. *La* GUEULE *d'un bœuf, d'un chien*.
The *mouth* of a pike, of a trout. *La* GUEULE *d'un brochet, d'une truite*.

TIME; TEMS, FOIS.

232 The word *TIME*, denoting any *period*, or *space*, is expressed by TEMS;

It is *time* to set out. *Il est* TEMS *de partir*.
We shall not be there in *time*. *Nous n'y serons pas* à TEMS.

But the word *TIME* is sometimes used to *limit* the action of the verb, or to denote a *repetition* of the action; as, the *first time*; *this time*; *another time*; *several times*, and is then expressed by FOIS; as,

Pardon me for *this* time. *Pardonnez-moi pour cette* FOIS.
I will do it better *next time*. *Je le ferai mieux la prochaine* FOIS.
How *many times* have you done it? *Combien de* FOIS *l'avez-vous fait?*

YEAR; AN, ANNÉE.
DAY; JOUR, JOURNÉE.

233 AN and JOUR are *indefinite* expressions which serve more to denote the *periods* of time than its duration; they are chiefly used after the cardinal or primitive numbers *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.*; as,

Un AN, *deux* ANS, *trois* ANS; &c. A *year*, two *years*, three *years*, *&c.*
Un JOUR, *deux* JOURS, *trois* JOURS. One *day*, two *days*, three *days*, *&c*

ANNÉE, on the contrary, implies *duration*, and will admit of different modifications; so when *YEAR* is attended by an *article*, or by an *adjective*, or by another *noun*, you must express it by ANNÉE; as,

This *year*, last *year*.	*Cette* ANNÉE, *l'*ANNÉE *dernière*.
A good, a happy *year*.	*Une bonne, une heureuse* ANNÉE.
A great number of *years*.	*Un grand nombre d'*ANNÉES.

JOURNÉE is generally understood of the time which people employ in their occupations from their *rising* to their *going to bed*; as,

I spent the *day* very well.	*J'ai bien employé la* JOURNÉE.
I have studied the whole *day*.	*J'ai étudié toute la* JOURNÉE.

MORNING; MATIN, MATINÉE.
EVENING; SOIR, SOIRÉE.

234 It is the same with MATIN, MATINÉE; SOIR, SOIRÉE, as it is with JOUR, JOURNÉE. MATIN is said of the *first*, and SOIR of the *last part* of the day, but they do not imply any idea of duration. MATINÉE, on the contrary, implies the *whole time* from *day light* till *noon*; but is generally understood to be from the time that *people get up* till *twelve o'clock* at noon; and SOIRÉE implies the whole time of *darkness* till *twelve o'clock* at night, or till *people retire*; as,

It was fine this *morning*.	*Il faisait beau ce* MATIN.
I have studied all the *morning*.	*J'ai étudié toute la* MATINÉE.
Shall we see you this *evening*?	*Vous verrons-nous ce* SOIR?
I shall spend the *evening* with you.	*Je passerai la* SOIRÉE *avec vous.*

N. B. Saluting people, for *GOOD MORNING*, we say BON JOUR, not *BON matin*; and for *GOOD NIGHT*, we say BON SOIR, in the *early part* of the night, and BONNE NUIT, when the night is *far advanced.*

NIGHT; NUIT, SOIR.

235 If, by *NIGHT*, you mean the *whole time of darkness* on that part of the earth which we inhabit, you express it in french by NUIT; as,

Where did he sleep last *night*?	*Où coucha-t-il la* NUIT *dernière?*
He spent the whole *night* at the ball.	*Il passa toute la* NUIT *au bal.*

If, by *NIGHT*, you mean only the *first part of darkness* which is otherwise called *evening*, you express it by SOIR; as,

Will you go to the play to-*night*?	*Irez-vous à la comédie* ce SOIR
Were you at the ball last *night*?	*Etiez-vous au bal* hier au SOIR

TWELVE O'CLOCK; MIDI, MINUIT.

236

It is *twelve* o'clock.	*Il est* MIDI *(in the day.)*	*Il est* MINUIT *(at night.)*
It is a *quarter* past 12.	*Il est* MIDI *et* un quart.	*Il est* MINUIT *et* un quart.
It is *half* past *twelve*.	*Il est* MIDI *et* demi.	*Il est* MINUIT *et* demi.
It is *three quarters* past twelve. / It wants a *quarter* to one.	*Il est* une heure *moins* un quart.	
It is *one* o'clock.	*Il est* une heure.	
It is a *quarter past one.*	*Il est* une heure *et* un quart, &c.	

To HAVE, expressed by ÊTRE.

237 The auxiliary verb *HAVE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary ÊTRE, to form the *compound* tenses of *reflective* VERBS; as,

I *have* hurt myself.	*Je* ME SUIS *blessé.*
He *has* gone away.	*Il* s'*en* EST *allé.*
We *have* sat down.	*Nous* NOUS SOMMES *assis.*
You *have* walked.	*Vous* VOUS ÊTES *promenés.*
They *have* diverted themselves.	*Ils* SE SONT *divertis.* [see page 115.]

238 The auxiliary *HAVE* is also expressed by the same tense and person of ÊTRE, when it comes before any of the following participles;

Agreed,	CONVENU.	*come,*	VENU.	*fallen,*	TOMBÉ.
Arrived,	ARRIVÉ.	*come in,*	ENTRÉ.	*gone,*	ALLÉ.
become,	DEVENU.	*Dead,*	MORT.	*returned,*	REVENU.
befallen,	SURVENU.	*Deceased,*	DÉCÉDÉ.	*set out,*	PARTI.
Born,	NÉ.	*Disagreed,*	DISCONVENU.	*succeeded,*	PARVENU.

I *have set out* early.	*Je* SUIS PARTI *de bonne heure.*
He *has agreed* to do it.	*Il* EST CONVENU *de le faire.**
We *have arrived* in time.	*Nous* SOMMES ARRIVÉS *à tems.*
You *have returned* too soon.	*Vous* ÊTES REVENUS *trop tôt.*
They *have gone* too far.	*Ils* SONT ALLÉS *trop loin.*

To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

239 The auxiliary verb *BE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary AVOIR, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, cold, warm, hot* denoting the natural feelings; *Right, wrong, ashamed;* because these *adjectives* are expressed by a *substantive* in french; as,

I *am* hungry.	*J'*AI *faim.*
He *is* thirsty.	*Il* A *soif.*
His feet *are* cold.	*Il* A *froid aux pieds.*
She *is* warm or hot.	*Elle* A *chaud;* not, *Elle* EST *chaude.*
Her hands *are* warm.	*Elle* A *chaud aux mains.*
We *are* right.	*Nous* AVONS *raison.*
They *are* wrong, ashamed.	*Ils* ONT *tort; ils* ONT *honte.*

N.B. The verb *BE* is also expressed by AVOIR, in speaking of the *age* of beings, because in these instances, as in the above, the French use a *substantive* instead of an adjective; as,

How old *are* you?	*Quel âge* AVEZ-*vous?* i. e. What age [*have* you?
I *am* sixteen.	*J'*AI *seize ans;* not, *Je* SUIS *seize.*
How old *is* your horse?	*Quel âge* A *votre cheval?*

---

* When the participle CONVENU means *suited,* it requires AVOIR; as,
*Cela m'*AURAIT *fort bien* CONVENU; That *would have suited* me very well.

N. B. The participles SORTI, *gone out, been out;* PASSÉ, *gone by;* MONTÉ, *gone up, ascended;* DESCENDU, *come down,* require AVOIR or ÊTRE, agreeably to the sense in which they are used; but the same distinction, I think, is observed in english;

Mon père A *sorti;*	My father *has* been out.	*Il* ÉTAIT *sorti;*	He *was* gone out.
Il A *passé près d'ici;*	He *has* passed just by.	*Il* EST *passé;*	He *is* gone by.
Il A *monté la colline;*	He *has* ascended the hill.	*Il* EST *monté;*	He *is* gone up.
Il A *descendu l'escalier;*	He *has* come down the stairs.	*Il* EST *descendu;*	He *is* come down.

DEMEURÉ, used for *lived, dwelt,* requires AVOIR; and for *remained, staid,* it requires ÊTRE; as,

Il A *demeuré à Paris;* He *has* lived in Paris. *Il* EST *demeuré à P.;* He *has* staid in P.

ACCOURU, *run to;* PÉRI, *perished;* APPARU, COMPARU, *appeared;* DISPARU, *disappeared;* CRÛ, *grown;* DÉCRÛ, *grown less;* RECRÛ, *grown again,* take indifferently AVOIR or ÊTRE.

To BE, expressed by FAIRE.

240 The verb BE, attended by an *adjective* or a *substantive* denoting the *state* of the *weather*, or of the *atmosphere*, is expressed in french by the same tense of the verb FAIRE, with IL for its *nominative;* as,

How *is* the weather?	*Quel tems* FAIT-*il?*
Is the weather fine?	FAIT-*il beau tems?*
Yes, the weather *is* very fine.	*Oui, il* FAIT *très-beau tems.*
It *is* rather warm.	*Il* FAIT *un peu chaud.*
It *is* very cold.	*Il* FAIT *très-froid*, or *grand froid.*
The weather *has been* bad lately.	*Il* A FAIT *mauvais tems depuis peu.*

To BE, To DO, expressed by Se PORTER.

241 The verbs BE and DO, used to denote the *state* of the *body*, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflective verb *Se* PORTER; as,

How *are* you? how *do* you *do?*	*Comment vous* PORTEZ-*vous?*
I *am* pretty well, I thank you.	*Je me* PORTE *assez bien, dieu merci.**
I have not *been* well.	*Je ne me suis pas bien* PORTÉ.
How *is* your mother? / How *does* your mother *do?*	*Comment se* PORTE *madame*† *votre mère?*

To BE, expressed by DEVOIR.

242 The present tense of the verb BE, *am, art, is, are*, and the imperfect *was, were*, followed by another verb in the INFINITIVE, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb DEVOIR; as,

I *am* to go there to-night.	*Je* DOIS *y aller ce soir.*
He *is* to come to-morrow.	*Il* DOIT *venir demain;* not, IL EST &c.
He *was* to bring it to-day.	*Il* DEVAIT *l'apporter aujourd'hui.*

To BE, not expressed in french.

243 The *infinitive* word TO BE, followed by a PAST *participle*, is *not expressed*, but the english PARTICIPLE takes the place of the *infinitive* BE, and is expressed by the INFINITIVE in french; as,

There is nothing *to be* SEEN.	*Il n'y a rien* à VOIR.
He caused his head *to be* CUT *off.*	*Il lui fit* COUPER *la tête.*
This house is *to be* LET, *to be* SOLD.	*Cette maison est* à LOUER, à VENDRE.

To BE Just, To HAVE Just; VENIR DE, *Ne* FAIRE *Que* DE.

244 The verbs HAVE and BE followed by the adverb *Just*, to denote an action past at the moment we are speaking, are expressed by VENIR *de*, or *Ne* FAIRE *que* DE, in the same tense and person as HAVE or BE are, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; thus,

I *am just* come.	*Je* VIENS d'*arriver;* or, *Je* ne FAIS que d'*arriver.*
My brother *had just* done.	*Mon frère* VENAIT de *finir;* or, *Mon frère* ne FAISAIT que de *finir.*‡

* The French do not, as the English do, *thank* those who inquire after their health. Instead of *Je vous remercie;* they say, *Dieu merci; A votre service; Vous êtes bien bon*, or *bien civil; Vous avez bien de la bonté*, or they return the compliment after the answer by saying, *Et vous?* and *you?*

† It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the people to whom they are speaking, to add the words *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle;* as,
Comment se porte MONSIEUR *votre père,* MONSIEUR *votre frère?*
J'ai rencontré MADAME *votre mère,* MADEMOISELLE *votre sœur;* these words can not be expressed in english.

‡ Do not confound *Ne* FAIRE *que* DE, *To be just, To have just*, with *Ne* FAIRE *que*, which expresses another idea, viz. *To do nothing but;* DE added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.

WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE; PENSER.

245 *WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR* followed by a present *participle*, and *HAD LIKE* followed by an *infinitive*, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the *perfect* tense, or the *present compound** of the verb PENSER; as,

I *was near* dying; or I *had like* to have died.	*J'*ai PENSÉ, or *je* PENSAI* *mourir.*
You *were near* falling; or You *had like* to have fallen.	*Vous avez* PENSÉ *tomber.*
He *was near* being killed; or He *had like* to have been killed.	*Il* a PENSÉ, or *il* PENSA* *être tué.*

THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, AGO, IT IS SINCE, THIS, THESE; IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.

246 *THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, IT IS SINCE, AGO,* and the demonstrative words *THIS, THESE*, pointing out a period of time, are expressed by the impersonal verb IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.;† as,

Is there any news to-day?	Y A-*t*-IL *des nouvelles aujourd'hui?*
Are there flowers in his garden?	Y A-*t-il des fleurs dans son jardin?*
How *far is it* from calais to PARIS? or How *far is* calais from PARIS?	*Combien* Y A-*t*-IL *de calais à PARIS?*
It is a hundred and fifty miles.	IL Y A *cent cinquante milles.*
Calais *is* 150 miles *from* PARIS.	IL Y A *cent cinquante milles de c. à P.*
How *long has* he lived here?	*Combien* Y A-*t*-IL *qu'il demeure ici?*
He has been here *these* six months.	IL Y A *six mois qu'il est ici.*
It is 10 years *since* he was in France or He was in France ten years *ago.*	IL Y A *dix ans qu'il était en FRANCE;* or, *Il était en FRANCE* IL Y A *dix ans.*
It is long *since* I have seen him. or I have not seen him *this* long while	IL Y A *long-tems que je* NE‡ *l'ai vu.*
It was 12 months *since* I saw him or I had not seen him *these* 12 months.	IL Y AVAIT *un an* § *que je* NE *l'avais vu.*

HERE IS, HERE ARE; THIS IS, THESE ARE; VOICI.
THERE IS, THERE ARE; THAT IS, THOSE ARE; VOILÀ.

247 *HERE IS, HERE ARE, THIS IS, THESE ARE,* pointing out any object, are expressed by VOICI; *THERE IS, THERE ARE, THAT IS, THOSE ARE,* also pointing out an object, are expressed by VOILÀ; as,

Here is, or *this is* your horse.	VOICI *votre cheval.*
Here are, or *these are* your boots.	VOICI *vos bottes.*
There is, that is a man who says.	VOILÀ *un homme qui dit.*

N. B. It is to be observed that, when the *nominative* of the verb which attends *HERE, THERE,* in the above sense, *i. e.* pointing out an object, is a *personal pronoun*, this *nominative* pronoun is changed into an *OBJECTIVE pronoun* in freneh, and placed *BEFORE* VOICI, VOILÀ; thus,

Here *I* am.	ME *voici.*	Here *we* are.	NOUS *voici.*
Here *he* is.	LE *voici.*	There *she* is.	LA *voilà.*
Here *they* are.	LES *voici.*	There *they* are.	LES *voilà.*

* Agreeably to 136, 137 rules.

† See the conjugation of the impersonal verb Y AVOIR, page 173. ‡ See the 196 rule

§ The French do not give to the different periods of time names which correspond with the English. For a week, they say, *huit jours;* for two weeks, or a fortnight, they say, *quinze jours;* three weeks, *trois semaines;* four weeks, *un mois;* for a quarter of a year, they say, *trois mois;* half a year, *six mois;* three quarters of a year, *neuf mois;* twelve months, *un an.*

LET; QUE, LAISSEZ.

248 *LET*, implying command or permission to a *THIRD person*, is expressed by QUE, and the *object* of *LET* is made the *nominative* of the following verb, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

Let him do it himself.	QU'*il le fasse lui-même.*
Let her go, if she likes.	QU'*elle y aille, si elle veut.*
Let them go too.	QU'*ils*, or QU'*elles y aillent aussi.*
Let my brother go alone.	QUE *mon frère y aille seul.*

LET, commanding or entreating a *SECOND person*, is expressed by the second person of the *IMPERATIVE* of the verb LAISSER, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

Let him go; *permit* him to go.	LAISSEZ-*le aller.*
Let her go; *permit* her to go.	LAISSEZ-*la aller.*
Let them go; *permit* them to go.	LAISSEZ-*les aller.*
Let my brother go; *suffer* him to go.	LAISSEZ *aller mon frère.*

N. B. *LET KNOW*, meaning to *inform*, is expressed by FAIRE SAVOIR, agreeably to tense and person; as,

Let him *know* that I will come.	FAITES *lui* SAVOIR *que je viendrai.*
I will *let* him *know* it to-night.	*Je le lui* FERAI SAVOIR *ce soir.*

To MAKE; FAIRE, RENDRE.

249 *To MAKE*, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by FAIRE; as,

To *make* a book; to *make* a noise.	FAIRE *un livre;* FAIRE *du bruit.*
To *make* great progress.	FAIRE *de grands progrès.*

But to *MAKE*, expressing not the performance of an action, but the *moral* or *natural effects* of one being on another, is expressed by RENDRE; as,

Exercise *makes* the body healthy.	*L'exercice* REND *le corps sain.*
Vice *makes* men unhappy.	*Le vice* REND *les hommes malheureux.*
Misfortune has *made* him wise.	*Le malheur l'a* RENDU *sage.*

To CAUSE, To HAVE, To GET; FAIRE.

250 The verbs *CAUSE*, and *HAVE*; and *GET*, in the sense of *cause*, meaning *to order*, or *procure* a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb FAIRE; and the english *participle* which follows *HAVE*, or *GET*, is expressed by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,

I *had* him arrested; or I *have caused* him to be arrested.	*Je l'*AI FAIT *arrêter.*
I *shall have* him punished; or I *shall cause* him to be punished.	*Je le* FERAI *punir.*
Get your watch mended.	FAITES *raccommoder votre montre.*

To CAUSE To BE DONE or *MADE, To HAVE* or *GET DONE* or *MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK;* } FAIRE FAIRE.

251 *To CAUSE TO BE DONE* or *MADE, To HAVE* or *GET DONE* or *MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK*, are expressed by the verb FAIRE repeated; *i. e.* the *first* verb in the *same* tense and person as *cause, have, get, order*, or *bespeak* is, and the *second* verb in the *INFINITIVE;* as,

I am going to *get* a watch *made.*	*Je vais* FAIRE FAIRE *une montre.*
Where will you *have* it *made?* or Where will you *get* it *done?*	*Où la* FEREZ-*vous* FAIRE?
I shall *have* it *made* in Paris; or I shall *get* it *done* in Paris.	*Je la* FERAI FAIRE *à Paris.*

To ASK, To DESIRE; DIRE, PRIER, CHARGER.

252 We say in french as in english, DEMANDER *une chose*, to *ask* for a thing; DÉSIRER *une chose*, to WISH *for a thing;* but we do not say; DEMANDER *de faire une chose*, to ASK *to do a thing;* nor DÉSIRER *une personne de faire une chose*, to DESIRE *a* person *to do a thing;* therefore, when *ASK* or *DESIRE* are followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, *ASK* must be expressed by DIRE or PRIER; and *DESIRE* by PRIER or CHARGER; as,

He *asked* me to do it. *Il me* DIT, or *il me* PRIA *de le faire.*
He *desired* me to tell you so. *Il m'a* PRIÉ, or CHARGÉ *de vous le dire.*

To LOOK; REGARDER, PARAÎTRE, AVOIR LA MINE.

253 *To LOOK*, meaning to *view*, to *consider*, is expressed by REGARDER;
Look at this man, at that horse. REGARDEZ *cet homme, ce cheval.*

To LOOK, meaning to *seem*, to *appear*, *is* PARAÎTRE, AVOIR L'AIR, AVOIR LA MINE, AVOIR APPARENCE; as,

That man *looks* very proud. *Cet homme* A *l'*AIR *bien fier.*
You *look* very well to-day. *Vous* AVEZ *bonne* MINE *aujourd'hui.*
This bread *looks* well. *Ce pain* PARAÎT *bon*, or A *bonne* MINE.*
How does the country *look?* *Quelle* APPARENCE A *la campagne?*

To SUPPOSE; SUPPOSER, PENSER, S'IMAGINER.

254 The French say as well as the English, SUPPOSER *une chose*, TO *suppose a thing*, i. e. *to take it as granted* for the sake of argument; as,

You *suppose* (i. e. *you take for granted)* a thing which is not probable.
Vous SUPPOSEZ *une chose qui n'est pas probable.*

But the verb *SUPPOSE*, so often used in english in the sense of to *think*, to *fancy*, to *imagine*, can not be expressed by the verb *supposer* in french; it must be expressed by PENSER or S'IMAGINER; as,

I *suppose* you know the news, *i. e.* I *think*, I *imagine*, *&c.*
*Je m'*IMAGINE *que vous savez les nouvelles;* not, *Je suppose, &c.*
It is *supposed* that there has been a battle; *i. e.* it is *thought, &c.*
On PENSE, *on s'*IMAGINE *qu'il y a eu bataille;* never, *On suppose.*

To HOPE; ESPÉRER.

255 *To HOPE; Se* FLATTER, AIMER *à* CROIRE, *Se* PLAIRE *à* CROIRE.

The verb *HOPE* followed by a *future* tense, is expressed by ESPÉRER;
I *hope* you *will be* well by and by, to-morrow, &c.
J' ESPÈRE *que vous vous* porterez *bien tantôt, demain, &c.*

N.B. *HOPE*, being the *expectation* of something to *come*, can never be said in french of what is *past* or *present;* so when the verb *HOPE* is followed by the *present* or *perfect* tense of another verb, it can not be expressed by *Espérer;* it must be expressed by *Se* FLATTER, AIMER *à* CROIRE, *Se* PLAIRE *à* CROIRE; as,

I *hope* you *are* well. *Je me* FLATTE, or *J'*AIME *à* CROIRE, or *Je me* PLAIS *à* CROIRE *que vous vous portez bien;* never, *J'*ESPÈRE.
I *hope* that I have not kept you waiting.
Je me FLATTE† *que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre;* never, *J'*ESPÈRE.

Yet, in these instances, we may also use the verb ESPÉRER, if we transpose it in *parenthesis* at the end of the sentence; thus,

*Vous vous portez bien, j'*ESPÈRE. You are well, *I hope.*
*Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, j'*ESPÈRE. I have not kept you, *I hope.*

* MINE is said of the *look* of *persons*, and of *things* that are *eatable*, such as *bread, meat, fruit, &c* but it cannot be said of other things.

† *Je me* FLATTE, in this sense, does not mean *I flatter myself;* it means, I *like to think* to *persuade* myself.

To TAKE; MENER, PORTER.
To BRING; AMENER, APPORTER.

MENER, *to TAKE*, is said of beings that have the *natural faculty* of *walking;* PORTER is said of the same beings when they have *lost*, or are *not able* to use that faculty; and of *things;* as, 256

Take my horse to the stable. MENEZ *mon cheval à l'écurie.*
Take the saddle to the saddler. PORTEZ *la selle au sellier.*

AMENER and APPORTER are used in the same sense as *mener* and *porter*, but they imply a relation to the *place* in which we are; as,

Bring me my horse. AMENEZ-*moi mon cheval.*
Bring me my whip. APPORTEZ-*moi mon fouet.*

To USE; { *Se* SERVIR *de*, USER *de*, *En* USER, TRAITER, AGIR, AVOIR COUTUME.

To USE, meaning to *make use* of *things*, is expressed by the reflective verb *se* SERVIR *de;* as, 257

I am *using* my knife, my pen, my book, my horse, &c.

Je me SERS de *mon couteau*, de *ma plume*, de *mon livre*, de *mon cheval;* not *J'*USE *mon couteau, ma plume, &c.* because USER *une chose*, means, to *wear out* a thing, not to *make use* of a thing.

Yet speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we express *USE* by USER *de;*

To *use* patience, violence, reprisals, precaution.

USER de *patience*, de *violence*, de *représailles*, de *précaution.*

To USE, speaking of the *manner* of *acting* towards *persons*, is expressed by TRAITER, *EN* USER *avec*, AGIR *avec;* as,

He *uses* me well.

Il me TRAITE *bien; Il* en USE *bien* avec *moi; Il* AGIT *bien* avec *moi.*

He has not *used* me well. *Il ne m'a pas bien* TRAITÉ.

To USE, meaning to be *accustomed to*, is expressed by AVOIR COUTUME, or ÊTRE ACCOUTUMÉ; as,

You are *used* to it. *Vous y* êtes ACCOUTUMÉ.
He was not *used* to do so. *Il n'*avait *pas* COUTUME *d'agir ainsi.*

To HELP; AIDER, SERVIR.

To HELP, viz. *to assist* a person to do a thing, is expressed by AIDER; 258

Shall I *help* you to do it? *Vous* AIDÉRAI-*je à le faire?*
My brother will not *help* me. *Mon frère ne veut pas m'*AIDER.

But *to HELP* is often used in the sense of to *take*, to *offer*, to *present* a thing to a person; *HELP* is then expressed by SERVIR, not the *person* to the *thing*, but the *thing* to the *person;* as,

Shall I *help* you to a glass of wine? *Vous* SERVIRAI-*je un verre de vin?* i.e. shall I *help* a glass of wine *to* you?

Help that gentleman to a glass; SERVEZ *un verre* À *ce monsieur;* not, SERVEZ *ce monsieur* À *un verre;* for it is the glass that you *help* or *present* to the gentleman, not the *gentleman* to the glass.

To ATTEND, explained in the following examples; 259

To *attend* a meeting. ALLER *or* ASSISTER *à une assemblée.*
To *attend* to one's duty. FAIRE *or* REMPLIR *son devoir.*
To *attend* to what is said. FAIRE *attention à ce qu'on dit.*
To *attend* to business. S'APPLIQUER *aux affaires.*

To *attend* a sick

To *attend* a sick person. GARDER *or* SOIGNER *un malade.*
To *attend* a patient, viz. to *visit.* VOIR *or* VISITER *un malade.*
To *attend* a master, to *wait* upon. SERVIR *un maître.*
To *attend* a master, to be *taught.* PRENDRE *leçon d'un maître.*
To *attend* a pupil, to *give lessons.* DONNER *leçon à un écolier.*

To WANT; {AVOIR BESOIN, AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER, SOUHAITER, VOULOIR, DEMANDER.

260 *To* WANT, meaning to be in *need* of a thing, or under the *necessity* of doing a thing, is expressed by AVOIR BESOIN; as,

I *want* money, clothes; *am in need.* *J'*ai BESOIN *d'argent, d'habits.*
I do not *want* him; *have no need.* *Je n'*ai *pas* BESOIN *de lui.*
I *want* to go to town; *i. e. must go.* *J'*ai BESOIN *d'aller à la ville.*

But WANT is often used to denote merely *wish* or *desire;* it is then expressed by AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER, SOUHAITER, VOULOIR; as,

I *want* to see him; *i. e.* I *wish.* *Je* DÉSIRE *or* SOUHAITE *de le voir.*
I *want* to speak to him; *(wish)* *J'*ai ENVIE *de lui parler.*
I *want* him to learn french. *Je* VEUX *qu'il apprenne le français.*

To WANT a *person* or a *thing*, in the sense of *wish*, is DEMANDER;

Whom *or* what do you *want?* *Qui* or *que* DEMANDEZ-*vous?*
You are *wanted;* He *wants* you. *On vous* DEMANDE; *Il vous* DEMANDE.

To MARRY; MARIER, *Se* MARIER, ÉPOUSER.

261 If, by MARRY, you mean to *give* a person *in marriage*, or to *perform* what is called the *ceremony*, you must make use of the verb MARIER. If, by MARRY, you mean to *take* a person *in marriage*, you use ÉPOUSER;

My father has *married* his niece.
Mon père a MARIÉ *sa nièce; i. e.* has *given* her *in marriage.*
Mon père a ÉPOUSÉ *sa nièce; i. e.* has *taken* her for his *wife.*
That parson has *married* my sister.
Ce prêtre a MARIÉ *ma sœur; i. e.* has *performed* the *ceremony.*
Ce prêtre a ÉPOUSÉ *ma sœur; i. e.* has *taken* her for his *wife.*

N. B. MARRIED, in the sense of *taking a wife*, is expressed by ÉPOUSÉ after the auxiliary HAVE, and by MARIÉ after the auxiliary BE; as,

I *have married* his sister. *J'*ai ÉPOUSÉ *sa sœur;* not MARIÉ.
I *am married* to his sister. *Je* suis MARIÉ *à sa sœur;* not ÉPOUSÉ.

To MARRY, in a *neuter sense*, i. e. *without* an *object* added to it, is expressed by the reflective verb *se* MARIER; as,

When do you *marry?* *Quand* VOUS MARIEZ-*vous?*
I will never be *married.* *Je ne* ME MARIERAI *jamais.*

To RIDE, explained in the following examples;

262 To *ride* well. *se* TENIR *bien à cheval.*
To *ride* in a coach, on horseback. ALLER *en carrosse,* ALLER *à cheval.*
To *take a ride* in a coach. {FAIRE un TOUR *en carrosse;* or, *se* PROMENER *en carrosse.*
To *take a ride* on horseback. {FAIRE un TOUR *à cheval;* or *se* PROMENER *à cheval.*

N. B. *To* RIDE, attended by any particular *object*, i. e. an *object* determined by any of the signs called *article*, is expressed by ALLER; as,

I will *ride* your horse, and you will *ride* in my coach.
*J'*IRAI *sur votre cheval, et vous* IREZ *dans mon carrosse.*

To WALK; MARCHER, *Se* PROMENER.

If, by *WALK*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either 263
for *Business* or *Exercise*, you must use MARCHER; as,

Walk a little faster.	MARCHEZ *un peu plus vite.*
I can not *walk* any more.	*Je ne puis plus* MARCHER.
I have *walked* too much to-day.	*J'ai trop* MARCHÉ *aujourd'hui.*

If, by *WALK*, you mean that exercise which is taken for *Diversion*, you must use the reflective verb *se* PROMENER; as,

Let us *walk* a little.	PROMENONS-*nous un peu.*
I have not *walked* to-day.	*Je ne me suis pas* PROMENÉ *aujourd'hui.*

N. B. *To TAKE A WALK* is expressed by FAIRE *un* TOUR, or by FAIRE *une* PROMENADE, FAIRE *un* TOUR *de* PROMENADE; as,*

Let us go and *take a walk.*	*Allons* FAIRE *un* TOUR *de* PROMENADE.
Go and *take a walk* in the garden.	*Allez* FAIRE *un* TOUR *dans le jardin.**

To COME; ALLER, VENIR.

The English often use the verb *COME*, with reference to the *Person* to 264
whom they speak; so speaking to a person in the street, they will say:

I will COME *and see you to-morrow*, meaning, at the *person's house;*

The French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the *Place*, and not to the person; so this sentence:

I will COME *and see you to-morrow*, may be expressed two ways;

Je VIENDRAI *vous voir demain*, being then at the place in which you are *to come* to see the person.

*J'*IRAI *vous voir demain*, meaning the place where you are *to go* to see the person; for, VENIR means to *move* from a *place* in which we *are* not at the time we are speaking, to a *place* in which *we are;* ALLER means to move from a *place* in which we *are*, to a *place* in which we *are not.*

In asking a question, *COME* is expressed by VENIR; but in the answer, the verb must be determined by the *Place, not* by the *Person* you are to go to.

To RETURN; RETOURNER, REVENIR.

The English use the verb *RETURN* both for to *go back*, and to *come* 265
back; but in french you must make a distinction.

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *go back*, you must use RETOURNER; as,

I come from *Paris*, and I will *return* to-morrow; *i. e.* will *go back.*

Je viens de Paris, et j'y RETOURNERAI *demain.*

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *come back*, you must use REVENIR; as,

I am going to *Paris*, and I will *return* next week; *i. e.* will *come back.*

Je vais à Paris, et je REVIENDRAI *la semaine prochaine.*

N. B. *To RETURN*, meaning to *give back*, to *Restore*, to *Repay*, is expressed by RENDRE; as,

Return me my money.	RENDEZ-*moi mon argent.*
Have I not *returned* it to you?	*Ne vous l'ai-je pas* RENDU?

To CALL; PASSER CHEZ.

To CALL a person, is APPELER *quelqu'un;* but *TO CALL AT* a person's, 266
or *UPON* a person is PASSER CHEZ *quelqu'un;* as,

When will you *call upon* me?	*Quand* PASSEREZ-*vous* CHEZ *moi?*
I will *call upon* you to-morrow.	*Je* PASSERAI *demain* CHEZ *vous.*

Never say, APPELEZ SUR *moi, call upon* me; J'APPELLERAI SUR *vous, &c.*

* *Faire un tour* is generally understood of a *short walk;* and *Faire une promenade, Faire un tour de promenade* means to take a walk, without any limitation as to time, but *rather long* than *short.*

To BREAK; ROMPRE, CASSER.

267 ROMPRE is said of things which require some *effort* to break them, such as *wood* and *metals;* as,

You have *broken* my stick. *Vous avez* ROMPU *mon bâton.*

CASSER is said of things that are *frail*, such as *glass* and *earthenware.*

He has *broken* the plates. *Il a* CASSÉ *les assiettes.*

The glass and bottle are *broken.* *Le verre et la bouteille sont* CASSÉS.

N. B. In speaking of *bones*, we use indifferently ROMPRE or CASSER;

He has *broken* his leg. *Il s'est* CASSÉ *or* ROMPU *la jambe.*

Without specifying any particular object, we use CASSER; as,

They *break* every thing in this house. *On* CASSE *tout dans cette maison.*

And for *BREAK to pieces*, we say BRISER; as,

The ship was *broken* to pieces. *Le navire fut tout* BRISÉ.

To LIKE; AIMER, TROUVER.

268 *To LIKE*, meaning to be *fond* of, to have a *liking* for a person or a thing, is expressed by AIMER; as,

I *like* wine, money, pleasure, France, the country, &c.

*J'*AIME *le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, la France, la campagne, &c.*

But *LIKE* is often used, especially in asking questions, for to *think*, to *have* an *opinion*, and is then expressed by PENSER or TROUVER;

How do you *like* this country? { *i. e.* What *think* you, what is your *opinion* of this country?

Que PENSEZ-*vous de ce pays?* or *comment* TROUVEZ-*vous ce pays?*

Yet in the answer we use AIMER; as,

*Je l'*AIME *beaucoup.* *Je l'*AIME *assez bien.* *Je ne l'*AIME *pas du tout.*

I *like* it much. I *like* it well enough. I do not *like* it at all.

To KEEP; GARDER, TENIR, AVOIR.

269 *To KEEP*, meaning to *preserve*, to *watch*, to *guard*, to *look after*, is expressed by GARDER; as,

Keep it for my sake; *i. e. preserve.* GARDEZ-*le pour l'amour de moi.*

This dog *keeps* the house; *watches.* *Ce chien* GARDE *la maison.*

This boy *keeps* the flocks; *looks after.* *Ce garçon* GARDE *les troupeaux.*

These instances excepted, *to KEEP* is generally expressed by TENIR

She *keeps* a house, a school. *Elle* TIENT *maison, école.*

He *keeps* an inn, boarders. *Il* TIENT *auberge, des pensionnaires.*

To *keep* in prison, in the house. TENIR *en prison, dans la maison.*

To *keep* clean, to *keep* ready. TENIR *propre,* TENIR *prêt.*

To *keep* cows, horses, a coach. AVOIR *des vaches, des chevaux, un carrosse.* Familiarly we say; ROULER *carrosse;* to *keep* a coach.

To GET; GAGNER; *GOT not expressed in french.*

270 The verb *GET*, meaning to *gain*, to *win*, to *earn*, to *acquire*, is expressed by GAGNER; as,

He *gets* or *earns* five shillings a day. *Il* GAGNE *cinq shelings par jour.*

He has *got* or *won* a deal of money. *Il a* GAGNÉ *beaucoup d'argent.*

But the participle *GOT*, so often added to the verb HAVE, to denote *possession*, is *not expressed* in french, and is perhaps *useless* in english; as,

He has *got* a deal of money. *Il* A *beaucoup d'argent.*

Have you *got* any money about you? AVEZ-*vous de l'argent sur vous?*

You have *got* a new hat. *Vous* AVEZ *un chapeau neuf;* not, *vous avez* GAGNÉ, which means, you have *won, gained, earned, &c.*

To SPEND; DÉPENSER, PASSER.

Speaking of *money, property, to* SPEND is expressed by DÉPENSER; speaking of *time,* SPEND is expressed by PASSER; as, 271

He *spends* all his money in gaming. *Il* DÉPENSE *tout son argent à jouer.*

He *spends* all his time in hunting. *Il* PASSE *tout son tems à la chasse.*

To CHARGE; PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, PRIX.

The verb *CHARGE,* so often used in speaking of the *price* of things, can not be expressed in french by *charger,* which means to *LOAD,* or to GIVE IN *CHARGE;* it must be expressed by PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, or by PRIX, with some other verb; as, 272

How much do you *charge* a day for a horse? *i. e.* do you *require?*

Combien PRENEZ-*vous par jour pour un cheval?*

How much do you *charge* for a saddle? what is the *price* of a saddle?

Combien PRENEZ-*vous pour une selle?* or *quel est le* PRIX *d'une selle?*

You *charge* too much; *i. e.* the *price* is too high.

C'est TROP, *c'est* TROP *cher, vous* PRENEZ *trop, vous* FAITES PAYER *trop;* never, *vous* CHARGEZ *trop; vous avez* CHARGÉ *trop.*

To GO to MEET; { ALLER *au*-DEVANT *de,* / ALLER *à la* RENCONTRE *de;* ex.

Let us *go* and *meet* your sister. ALLONS *au*-DEVANT de *votre sœur.* 273

We were *going to meet* you. { *Nous* ALLIONS à *votre* RENCONTRE; / *Nous* ALLIONS *au*-DEVANT *de vous.*

To BRING NEAR, / *To GO NEAR, To COME NEAR;* } APPROCHER, *S'*APPROCHER *de.*

APPROCHER means to BRING an object NEAR, and *s'*APPROCHER *de* means *TO GO,* or *COME NEAR* an object; for ex. I shall say: 274

APPROCHEZ *la table.* *Bring* the table *near.*

But if I said to a person *come near* or *go near* the table; I should not say, APPROCHEZ *la table;* I must say, APPROCHEZ-*vous* DE *la table;* for it is the *person* who is to *approach* the table, not the table to *approach* the person.

I *brought* my sister *near* me. *J'*APPROCHAI *ma* SŒUR *de moi.*

I *went near* my sister. *Je m'*APPROCHAI DE *ma sœur.*

To HEAR; ENTENDRE, ENTENDRE *des* NOUVELLES, &c. 275

To HEAR a person is ENTENDRE *quelqu'un;* as,

I *hear* your sister coming. *J'*ENTENDS *venir votre sœur.*

But *TO HEAR FROM* a person, is not ENTENDRE DE *quelqu'un;* HEAR is then expressed by ENTENDRE *des* NOUVELLES, APPRENDRE *des* NOUVELLES, RECEVOIR *des* NOUVELLES; as,

Do you *hear from* your sister often?

ENTENDEZ-*vous,* or APPRENEZ-*vous,* or RECEVEZ-*vous souvent des* NOUVELLES *de votre sœur?* not, ENTENDEZ-*vous souvent* DE *votre sœur?*

I *hear from* her almost every day.

*J'*ENTENDS, or *J'*APPRENDS, or *Je* REÇOIS *presque touts les jours de ses* NOUVELLES, or *des* NOUVELLES *d'elle;* not, *J'*ENTENDS D'*elle &c.*

IT IS WITH; IL EN EST DE.

IT IS WITH, denoting a *similarity* between *two objects,* is expressed by IL EN EST DE; as, 276

It is with you as with me. Il EN EST de *vous comme de moi.*

It is with a state as with a family. Il EN EST d'*un état comme d'une fa-*[*mille.*

277 *WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE;* AVOIR BEAU.

AVOIR BEAU is an expression very prevalent in conversation, instead of EN VAIN, INUTILEMENT; so, instead of saying;

C'est en vain *que je lui dis d'étudier, il n'en fait rien;*
It is *in vain* that I tell him to study, he does not do it; we say;
*J'*AI BEAU *lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.*

278 *To FIND FAULT WITH;* TROUVER *à* REDIRE *à;* ex.

He *finds fault with* every thing. *Il* TROUVE *à* REDIRE *à tout.*
What *fault* can be *found with* it? *Que peut-on* y TROUVER *à* REDIRE?

279

To TAKE IT KINDLY;	SAVOIR BON GRÉ.
To TAKE IT UNKINDLY;	SAVOIR MAUVAIS GRÉ; ex.

If he comes, I will *take* it *kindly.* *S'il vient, je lui en* SAURAI bon GRÉ.
He would *take* it *unkindly* of me. *Il m'en* SAURAIT mauvais GRÉ.
Take it *kindly* or *unkindly.* SACHEZ-*m'en* bon GRÉ *ou* mauvais GRÉ.

280 *To DO WITHOUT, To BE EASY WITHOUT; Se* PASSER *de;* ex.

Can you *do without* a horse? *Pouvez-vous vous* PASSER de *cheval?*
I can not *do without* one.
I am not *easy without* it. } *Je ne puis pas m'*en PASSER.

281

WHAT IS THE MATTER,	QU'YA-T-IL, QU'EST-CE QU'IL Y A,
WHAT IS IT ABOUT,	QU'EST-CE QUE,
WHAT IS IT?	QU'EST-CE QUE C'EST? ex.

What is the matter there? QU'Y A-t-il *là;* QU'EST-ce qu'il y A *là?*
What is the matter with you? QU'EST-CE que *vous avez?*
What is the matter with your hand? QU'EST-CE que *vous avez à la main?*

N.B. QU'EST-CE QUE is very prevalent in conversation, instead of QUE; so instead of saying:

QUE *dites-vous?* *What* do you say?
QUE *faites-vous?* *What* are you doing? we say:
QU'EST-CE que *vous dites?* QU'EST-CE que *vous faites?*

282

IS IT, IS IT NOT,	EST-CE QUE,
DOES IT, DOES IT NOT,	N'EST-CE PAS QUE,
HAVE I, HAVE I NOT?	N'EST-CE PAS?

These expressions are often used to ask questions; but they serve less to require information, than to shew a kind of *fear* or *surprise,* that the thing about which we inquire should be different from what we thought or wished it to be; the difference will be made obvious in the following examples;

Vous en allez-vous? Are you going?
EST-CE QUE *vous vous en allez?* You are not going, *are you?*
Ne sortirons-nous pas? Shall we not go out?
N'EST-CE pas QUE *nous sortirons,* or *Nous sortirons,* n'EST-CE pas? } We shall go out, *shall we not?*

It seems to me, however it may seem to other people, that these two ways of asking a question, imply different ideas.*

* These are the words which, I have remarked, generally embarrass the learner; but he will find in the course of his studies, several other idiomatical expressions of less importance and too numerous to be explained in a grammar; they are found in the dictionaries, and will be learned by taking notice of them in reading.

EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES CONTAINED IN THE SYNTAX.*

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

1 The article must be of the same gender and of the same number
article doit être même genre m. *et nombre* m.
as the noun; The horse, the cow, the sheep. The bread, the meat, the
que nom; m. *cheval, vache, brebis.*† *pain*, m. *viande*, f.
clothes. My garden, his house, his trees. Her finger, her ring, her
habit.† *jardin*, m. *maison*, f. *arbre. doigt*, m. *bague*, f.
gloves. A dish, a plate. Some butter, some sauce, some pepper,
gant. plat, m. *assiette.* f. *beurre*, m. *sauce*, f. *poivre*, m
some mustard, some capers. This wine, that beer, those glasses.
moutarde, f. *câpre. vin*, m. *bière*, f. *verre.*

2. The article must be pronounced easily with the noun; Do you[133]
doit se prononcer aisément avec —‡ ‖
go[125] to the assembly to-night? I will go[125] to the opera. Shall you go[125] to
aller§ *assemblée ce soir?* — *aller* ‖ *opéra.* — [133] *aller*
school this summer? I shall go[125] towards the beginning of autumn.
'école été m.? — *aller vers commencement* m. *'automne.*
(Let us go) (as far as) that tree near the church. Do you hear[125]
— — *allons jusqu'à arbre* m. *près de église.* — [133] *entendre*§
that bird? Have[125] you heard the history of that man? He has[125]
oiseau? m. *Avoir entendu 'histoire 'homme? avoir*
sacrificed his honour to the interest of the state. My ingenuity and
sacrifié 'honneur intérêt état. ingénuité et
my exactness have[125] (at last) won her affection and her esteem.
exactitude avoir enfin gagné affection estime.

* These exercises being intended for persons who have written the introductory exercises, and for persons of a riper understanding who are able to comprehend many rules at once, such rules only will be pointed out in each exercise, as the learner is supposed not to have seen, when he writes that exercise, that he may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† See rules for the formation of the plural number of nouns, p. 183 and following.

‡ A dash under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french.

‖ The figures at the top of the words indicate the paragraph where the rule which that word requires is to be found.

§ The *Infinitive* only of the verb is given here; the learner must himself find the right tense and person, agreeably to the conjugation to which the verb belongs; therefore it is necessary that he should peruse the conjugations, before he writes these exercises

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

3. The article must (be repeated) before every noun; Bring me
article doit se répéter avant chaque nom; Apportez [56]
some pens, [9]ink, and [9]paper. I have a letter to write to my uncle
[9] *plume,* [9]*encre et papier.* m. *lettre* f *à écrire oncle*
and [204]aunt. This paper and ink are[125] not good. Lend me your wax
tante. [1] *être* [190] *bon* [31] *Prêtez* [56] *cire* m
and seal. My father and mother have[125] invited your brother and sister
cachet. m. *et avoir invité*
to dine with us. After dinner we shall walk[125] into the park and
à diner avec [58] *Après dîné nous nous promener dans parc* m
[204]gardens. We shall drink[125] some tea or [9]coffee before we go.[218]
jardin. — *prendre* [9] *thé* m. *ou café* m. *avant que y allions.*

4. The names of persons, [204]towns and [204]places do not take[125] any[8] article;
nom personne, ville et lieux – [190] *prendre* N.B.
Molière and Racine are[125] the two best[29] french[32] dramatic[32] authors.
et être deux meilleur français dramatique[29] *auteur.*
Buonaparte and Blucher decided the fate of Paris in the plain of Waterloo.
décider[125] *du sort de dans plaine* f.
Is Paris[134] as large as London? The city of London is[125] much larger[41]
Paris est-il [43] *grand* [43] *Londres? ville* f. *être beaucoup grand*[29]
than that of Paris. Have[125] you never been at Paris? No; I have been
que celle Avoir [138] [190] *été à ? Non;* [125]
at Nantes, [204]Bordeaux, and [204]Marseilles, but I have not been at Paris.
à mais [125] [190]
Next[32] summer I will go[125] to Paris, [204]Geneva, [204]Florence and [204]Rome.
Prochain [7]*été aller à Genève,*

5. The names of countries require[125] the definite article, LE, LA, LES; France
nom pays demander [2] *défini*[32] *f.*
is[125] the most pleasant [7]country in[49] Europe. It[62] is as fertile as Italy, and
être plus agréable[32] *pays* m. *de l'* [2] *Elle* [125] [43] [43] [2]*Italie*
the air of France is more healthful than that of Italy. France is rich
[2] [125] [41] *sain que celui* [2] [125] *riche*
and very powerful. She has conquered Holland, Switzerland, Italy,
très - puissant.[29] *Elle* [125] *conquis Hollande* f. *Suisse,* f. [2]
Spain, Portugal, Saxony, Bavaria, Prussia, Austria, part of Poland,
[2]*Espagne,* m. *Saxe* f. *Bavière* f. *Prusse* f. [2]*Autriche, une partie Pologne* f.
and [204]Russia, and compelled her enemies to make peace with her.
* *Russie,* f. *forcé* [1] *ennemi à faire* [7]*paix avec elle.*

6. After verbs expressing DWELLING, GOING, COMING, instead of
Après [7]*verbe qui expriment DEMEURER, ALLER, VENIR,*† *au lieu de*
the article before the names of countries, we[90] use[125] the prepositions
[2] *avant pays on* N.B. *employer prépositions*
EN and DE; Have[125] you ever been to France? I have lived in France
et Avoir jamais été ? demeuré

* The preposition *Of* must be expressed in french, together with the article, viz. *of the.*
† These verbs being used here as substantives, must be in the *infinitive* in french.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

several years. I went[127] to France as soon as the war was over.
plusieurs année. aller[125] aussitôt que guerre f. fut finie.

I went[127] afterwards to Germany and [204]Italy. I have lived near
aller[125] ensuite Allemagne et Italie. J' ai demeuré près d'

(twelve months) in Italy. Were you ever in Switzerland? No; I
un an * † *jamais Suisse?* [191] ,

never was.[70] From France I went[127] to Holland and [204]Sweden. I am
[190] *y ai été.*N.B. *aller Hollande Suède.*

going[155] to Spain and [204]Portugal; from thence I will go[125] to Greece,
aller[125] ; de là aller Grèce,

[204]Egypt, [204]Bengal, [204]China, and [204]Japan. I have a brother in Ja-
Egypte, (d) m. (d) Chine, f. (d) Japon. m. à (d) Ja-

maica, and another in Martinique. He is going to Mexico, and [3]Peru.
maïque, f. un autre à (d) f. - va[155] (d) Mexique, m. (d) Pérou, m.

7. Common[22] names[7] used[29] in a general or in a particular[32] sense
commun[29] nom m. employé dans sens général particulier sens m.

require[125] the article LE, LA, LES; Man[2] is born for society, but love
demander[2] article 'Homme né pour société, f. mais [2]amour

and ambition often[184] disturb the happiness of the social[32] state. Men
[2]ambition souvent troubler[125] bonheur m. social [2]état.

thirst[125] after honours and riches; yet honours and riches seldom[184]
soupirer après honneur richesse; cependant rarement

make[125] men happy. True happiness consists[125] in virtue; for what are
rendre heureux. Vrai ‡ consister dans vertu f.; car que

birth, honours, beauty and riches without virtue? Virtue (of which)
naissance, f. beauté f. ? dont

men speak[125] (so much) is (nothing but) a sincere desire of doing good,
parler tant n'est qu' [32] désir m. faire[154] bien, m.

and of shunning evil. My sister is learning[125] French and Italian
éviter[154] mal. m. [155] apprendre Français m. [2]Italien;

and I am going to[172] learn English, geography and mathematicks.
-[155] aller[125] - Anglais, géographie f. mathématique.

8. When the preposition OF comes before a noun used in a general
Quand préposition f. OF venir[125] avant employé [32]

sense, but (of which) the quantity is[125] limited by another noun, this
sens, m. mais dont quantité f. être limité[29] par un autre , [1]

preposition can[125] not (be expressed) by *du, de la, des,* which would
f. pouvoir [190] (kk) s'exprimer par qui

render the expression particular, and mean *of* THE; it must (be expressed)
rendre[125] [2] particulier[29], signifierait of THE; *il faut (kk) l'exprimer*

by DE only, without any regard to the gender or [3]number of the
seulement, sans avoir égard genre m. ou nombre m.

---

* Twelve months, used to denote the period of a year, is never expressed by *douze mois* in french; it is expressed by *un an*. See note § page 262.

† *Were* being used here to express an *action*, must be expressed in the same manner as *have been*, thus, *have you ever been*, rule 136. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

noun; Have you got any money about you? I have not above[8] three
270 9 *argent sur ?* 190 *plus* N.B. *trois*

or four shillings. I want to buy a basket of fruit. Have you much
ou quatre sheling. veux -172 *acheter panier* m. *fruit.* *(e)*

fruit in your garden this year? (There is) a great[28] quantity of pears
dans jardin année f.? *Il y a* 246 *grand* 29 *quantité* f. *poire*

and [204]apples, but (there is) no[8] stone[26] fruit. Buy me a bottle of ink,
pomme, il n'y a pas N.B. *fruit à noyau. Achetez* 56 *bouteille* f. *encre,*

a quire of paper, and a dozen of pens. (Were there) many people
cahier m. *papier, douzaine* f. *plume. Y avait-il (e) monde* m.

at the play last night? (There were) a great number of gentlemen,
† *comédie* f. *hier au soir ? Il y avait grand nombre* m. *messieurs,*

but there were very few[8] ladies. My brother has a pretty[28] collection
il y avait très - peu N.B. *dame.* 1 *joli* 29 f.

of shells, [204]plants, [204]birds, and [204]other curious[28] things. He has got
coquille, plante, oiseau, autres curieuse 29 *chose.* 270

a parcel of letters for you. He has had a (great deal) of trouble.
paquet m. *lettre pour eu - beaucoup (e) peine.* f.

9. Common[28] names used[29] in a partitive sense require[125] the article
29 *nom* m. *employé partitif* 28 *sens* m. *demander*

DU, *de* LA, DES; I should like[125] to have some fruit. (Is there) any
— *aimer à avoir fruit.* m. *Y a-t-il* 246

ripe fruit in the garden? Yes; (there are) strawberries, gooseberries,
mûr 32 *dans jardin* m.? *Oui; il y a* 246 *fraise, groseille,*

cherries and apples. We will eat[125] some strawberries and cherries.
cerise pomme. — *manger*

Have[125] you got any (pine apples) in your houses? No; but we have
Avoir 133 270 *ananat serre ?* * 191 *; mais*

grapes, figs, and melons in abundance. What shall we drink[125]?
raisin, figue, melon en abondance. Que 83 — 133 *boire ?*

Will[125] you have beer or wine? We shall drink wine, if you have
Vouloir 136 -174 *bière* f. *ou vin ?* m. — 125 *, si*

any,[54] and if you have no[8] wine, we will drink cider or water.
en, (p) n'avez pas N.B. *,* — 125 *cidre,* m. *ou* 2*eau.*

10. A noun used in a partitive sense, preceded by an adjective,
employé dans partitif 28 *, précédé d' adjectif,* m.

requires DE before the adjective, instead of *du, de la, des,* before the
demander 125 *avant* 2 *, au lieu de*

noun; (Were there) any pretty[28] women at the ball? (There were)
; Y avait-il 246 *joli* 29 *femme* † *bal* m.? *Il n'y avait*

few but old[28] women. (There are) fine[29] country[25] houses in England.
guère que vieille 29 *Il y a* 246 *belle* 28 *de campagne maison* f. *en*

Some have large[28] parks and beautiful[28] gardens. (Are there) any
Quelques-unes 125 *grand* 29 *parc très-beaux jardin. Y a-t-il* 10

---

* *Serre* is the name the French have for all glazed places, where plants are either preserved or forced. † AT is expressed by the same preposition as TO.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

large[88] trees in your garden? No; (They are) only small[88] trees.
grand[29] *arbre* m. *dans* *jardin?* [191] *; Il n'y a*[246] *que* *petit*[29]

Some of the trees have fine[88] fruit on this year. Have you got
Quelques-uns *arbres* [125] *beau* *fruit* m. – [1] *année.* f. [133] [270]

any nice[88] flowers? Yes; we have some beautiful[88] pinks.
[10] *belle*[29] *fleur?* *Oui;* [125] *très-beaux* *œillet.*

11. The numeral article A, AN, (is expressed) by *un, une,* the same
numeral[82] *A, AN,* *s'exprime* *par* *de* *même*

as the number ONE; A glass, a bottle, a pound, a day, a year.
que *nombre* m. ONE; *verre,* m. *bouteille,* f. *livre,* f. *jour,* m. *an.* m.

12. Before names of measure, [204]weight and [204]number used in a
Avant [7]*nom* [8] *mesure,* *poids* *nombre* *pris*

collective sense, A, AN, (are expressed) by *le, la;* I must[182] buy
collectif[82] *A, AN,* *s'expriment* *par* *; Il faut que j' achète*

a pound of plums. (How much) do they sell them a pound? They[20]
[11] [8] *prune.* *Combien* – *on*[136] *vend les*[54] *?* *On* N.B

sell[125] them two pence a dozen. Beer[7] sells[125] at four pence a pint,
vendre les[54] *deux sou* *douzaine.* f. *Bière* f. *se vendre* – *quatre sou* *pinte,* f.

wine[7] five shillings a bottle, [7]brandy six pence a glass, and [7]rum
vin m. *cinq sheling* , [2]*eau-de-vie* , *rum* m.

five shillings a quart. I go[125] to [7]school once a day. I take[125] lessons
litre m. *aller* [2]*école* *une fois* *prendre* *leçon*

three times a week. We have (holydays) only once a year.
fois *semaine.* f. *n'avons* *vacances* *qu'** *une fois* [2]*année.*

13. The demonstrative article THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, has
démonstratif[82] *CE, CET, CETTE, CES,*

the same properties in french as in english; it[62] serves to (point out)
mêmes *propriété* *en français qu'* *anglais;* *il* *servir*[125] *à* *désigner*

the objects; This man, this woman, these children. That horse, that
objet; [2]*homme,* *femme,* *enfant.* *cheval,*

house, those trees This field, that grass, these people, those flocks.
maison, f. *arbre.* *champ,* m. *herbe,* f. *gens,* *troupeau*

N.B. If you wish[125] to shew a distinction between two objects,
Si *vouloir* [72] *marquer* *distinction* f. *entre* *deux* *objet,*

(you must) add *ci* after the noun to denote the nearer[82] objet, and *là*
il faut (kk) ajouter *après* [170] *désigner* *plus près* [7]*objet,* m.

to denote the remoter; This man is taller than that. [88] That woman
[170] *plus éloigné;* *grand*[41] *celui-là.* N.B.

is handsomer than this.[88] These children play better than those.[88]
belle[41] N.B. *jouer*[125] † N.B.

Those trees are larger than these.[88] This field is better than that.[88]
[125] *gros*[41] N.B. † N.B.

---

* The adverb *Only* may be expressed two ways, either by *Seulement* after the verb, or by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Que* after it; so, *Nous avons vacances* SEULEMENT *une fois,* or *Nous* N'*avons vacances* QU'*une fois &c.* † See note (b) page 72

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

14. The possessive[32] signs *MON, MA, MES; SON, SA, SES, &c.* follow
possessif[29] *signe* m. ; *suivre*[125]
the same rule as the definite article *LE, LA, LES;* they agree[125] in gender
même règle f. *que* *défini*[32] ; *ils s'accorder en genre*
and [204]number with the noun which follows[125] them; My book, my
nombre avec [74] *suivre* *les*[54]; *livre*, m.
pen, my papers. His coach, his chaise, his horses; Her coach,
plume, f. *papier*. *carrosse*, m. *chaise*, f. *chevaux*;
her chaise, her horses. Our friends, your children, their relations.
ami, *enfant*, *parent*.

15. The possessive[32] signs MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,
possessif[29] *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,*
(are expressed) by the definite article *LE, LA, LES,* before the name of the
s'expriment *défini*[32] *avant* *nom.* m.
parts of the body, when we[90] speak of a natural action of the body;
partie *corps*, m. *quand on*[N.B.] *parler*[125] *naturelle*[32] f. ;
Raise your arm. Move your leg. Advance your foot. She shuts[125]
*Lever** *bras.* m. *Remuer** *jambe.* f. *Avancer** *pied.* m. *fermer*
her eyes, and opens her mouth; or when we[90] speak of an action done
yeux, *ouvrir*[125] *bouche*; f. *on*[N.B.] [125] *qui se fait*
upon the body; but, in these instances, we[90] add[125] to the verb one
sur ; *mais*, *dans* [1] *cas*, [N.B.] *ajouter* *verbe* m.
of the pronouns *ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, SE, LUI, LEUR,* (agreeably to) num-
pronom m. *suivant* – [7]*nom-*
ber and person; I have[237] hurt my arm. You have[237] cut your hand.
bre m. [7]*personne*; f. † *blessé* † *coupé* *main.* f.
He has[237] broken his leg. She has[237] put her foot (out of joint.)
† *rompu* † — *démis*
You have hurt my arm. He has cut my hand. You have put her foot
† *blessé* † *coupé* † —
(out of joint.) The carriage ran[136] over his body, and broke[36] his leg.
démis *voiture* f. *a passé par-dessus* † *a rompu* †

16. After the words to have a pain, to hurt, to be cold, to be
mot – *avoir* – *mal*, – *se faire mal*, – *avoir froid*, – *avoir*
warm, the possessive[32] signs MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c. (are expressed)
chaud, *possessif*[29] *MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.* *s'expriment*
by *AU, À LA, AUX;* I have a pain in my head. My mother has a pain
[24] *mal* * *tête.* f. [24] *mal*

---

* Second person of the *imperative*.

† These sentences must be expressed as if the words were construed in this manner I to myself have[237] hurt the arm. You to yourself have[237] cut the hand. He to himself
– *me* *suis* *blessé* – *vous* *êtes* *coupé* – *s'*
has[237] broken the leg. She to herself has[237] disjointed the foot. You to me have hurt
est *rompu* – *s'* *est* *démis* – *m'* *avez* *blessé*
the arm. He to me has cut the hand. You to her have disjointed the foot. The
– *m'* *a* *coupé* – *lui* *avez* *démis*
carriage to him has run[136] over the body, and to him has broken[136] the leg.
voiture f. – *lui* *a* *passé* *par-dessus* – *lui* *a* *rompu*

ARTICLE *and* NOUN

in her side. My father has got the gout in his feet. Have[297] you
côté. m. [270] *goutte* f. * *Ne vous êtes - vous*

not hurt your leg? No; but I have[297] hurt my knee. In the
pas fait mal * *jambe* f.? [191]; *me suis fait mal* * *genou.* m. *Dans*

last[29] battle, my brother was wounded in his arm, and I was wounded
dernier bataille, f. *fut blessé* * , *fus blessé*

in the shoulder. My hands are[239] warm, but my feet are[239] very cold.
* *épaule.* *avoir chaud,*† *avoir grand froid.*

17. The possessive[32] signs ITS and THEIR (are also[184] expressed) by
possessif[29] *signe* m. *ITS* *THEIR* – *aussi* *s'expriment*

LE, LA, LES, and the pronoun *EN* (is added) to the verb, when the noun
pronom m. *s'ajoute* *verbe,* m. *quand* *nom* m.

before which[76] they come[125] is not in the same part of the sentence as
avant *lequel* *ils*[62] *se trouver*[190] *même* *partie* f. *phrase* f. *que*

the noun to which they refer;[125] That water is good,[29] I know[125] *its*
auquel[76] [62] *se rapporter;* *eau* f. *bon, (g)* *connaître*

qualities (turn, the qualities *of it,*) and I have experienced *its* effects, (*i. e.*
qualités, *en,*[54] *j' ai* *éprouvé* *effet,*

the effects *of it.*) To[170] paint the human heart (it is necessary) to
en[55]. *Pour* *peindre* *humain*[32] *cœur* m. *il faut* [173] –

know all *its* springs, (*i. e.* the springs *of it.*) London astonishes
connaître *touts* *ressort,* *en.*[54] *Londres* *étonner*[125]

strangers; They admire *its* extent, and *its* riches, *i. e.* (*of it.*)
[7]*étranger;* *admirer*[125] [2]*étendue,* *richesse,* f. *en.*[54].

18. The possessive[32] signs *MON, MA, MES,* (are added) to names of
possessif[29] *s'ajoutent* [7]*nom* [8]

kindred and [204]friendship, when we[90] call[125] any body by those names;
parenté *amitié,* *quand on* N.B. *appeler* [108] *de* [1] ;

Mother, you are[98] wanted. I am coming, child. Daughter, are you
, *on* *vous* *demande.* *J' – y vais,*[155] [2]*enfant.* *fille,*

ready? Yes, father. Come, friends, (let us be) merry.
prêt[29]? *Oui,* *Allons, ami,* – – *soyons* *gai.*[29]

19. Do not put any[6] article in french before nouns used as
— [190] *mettre* ‡ N.B. *avant* [7]*nom* *employés en forme*

a title; A treatise upon the immortality of the soul. An introduction
de titre; *traité* *sur* [2]*immortalité* [2]*âme.* *introduction*

to the french[39] language. The preface. The first[29] part. The end.
français[39] *langue.* f. *préface.* *premier* *partie.* f. *fin.*

20. Do not express the article A, AN, which comes after the word
— *exprimer* ‡ *A, AN,* [74] *venir*[125] *après* *mot* m.

WHAT; What[98] a pretty dog! What a funny head he has! What
WHAT; *Quel* *joli*[33] *chien!* [98] *drôle de* *tête* f. *!* [98]

---

* Say; *At the* head; *at the* side; *at the* feet; *at the* leg; *at the* knee; *at the* arm; *at the* shoulder. N. B. *at the* is expressed in the same manner as *to the.*

† Turn, I have warmth *at the* hands, but I have great cold *at the* feet. ‡ 2nd pers. imp.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

a large[32] house! What a cold[28] day! What a beautiful woman.
grand[29] *maison!* f. [32] *froid* *jour!* m. [28] *belle* [28] *femme!*

21. Do not express the article A, AN, before the numbers HUNDRED
— [190] *exprimer** *A, AN, avant* *nombre* *HUNDRED*

and THOUSAND, because the numbers have the property of articles;
et *THOUSAND, parce que* [125] *propriété* f. [7] ;

Can[125] you lend me a thousand pounds? I can[125] lend you[54] a
Pouvoir *(kk) prêter* [54] *mille* *livres sterling?* *pouvoir* *prêter* *vous en*[70]

hundred, but I can not[190] lend you[54] a thousand. We have an army
cent, *pouvoir*[125] *vous en*[70] *mille.* [125] *armée* f

of a hundred thousand men. They have a hundred field[25] pieces.
homme. [135] *pièces de campagne.*

22. Do not put any[8] article in french before a noun which serves
[190] *mettre** N.B. *en* *nom* m. [74] † *servir*[125]

to qualify or [204]distinguish another noun; Neptune the god of the
à *qualifier* *ou* *à distinguer* *un autre* ; *dieu*

sea. Telemachus an epic poem. Madrid the capital[22] city of Spain.
mer. *Télémaque* *épique*[22] *poëme.* *capitale* *ville* [5]*Espagne.*

My brother is a citizen of Geneva, a small republic between France
citoyen *Genève,* *république* *entre* [5] f.

and Switzerland. He is a counsel and a member of the great council.
[5]*Suisse.* f. *avocat* *membre* *grand conseil.* m.

23. Do not put any[8] article before the noun which follows *Être,*
— [190] *mettre** N.B. *nom* m. [74] † *suivre*[125]

Devenir, se Faire, Passer pour, when such noun serves only
quand *ce* *servir*[125] *seulement*

to qualify the nominative of these verbs; Are you a Frenchman?
à *qualifier* *nominatif* m. [1] *verbe;* [133] *Français?*

No; I am a Spaniard. He passes[125] for a Portuguese. His father was
[191] ; [125] *Espagnol.* *passer* *pour* *Portugais.* *était*

a physician. He was a jew, and he is turned a christian.
médecin. *juif,* *s'est* *fait* *chrétien.*

24. Do not put any[8] article before the noun which follows the
— *mettre** N.B. *nom* m. [74] † *suivre*[125]

verbs *Avoir* and *Faire,* when this noun forms[125] only one idea with
verbe m. [1] *ne former* *qu'* *idée* f.

those verbs; I am[239] in the right. She is[239] in the wrong. I have a pain
[1] ‡ ; *avoir* – *raison.* *avoir* – *tort.* *avoir* *mal*

in my head. He made[125] me a sign. He has done me an injury.
[16] *faire* [54] *signe.* *faire* [56] *tort.*

---

* Second person of the imperative. † See note (m) page 62.

‡ In these instances, the noun may generally be changed into a verb; as, *Avoir mal,* to have a pain, or to ache; *Faire offre,* to make *an* offer, or to offer; *Faire tort,* to do *an* injury, or to injure; *Faire signe,* to make *a* sign, or to beckon, &c.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

25. When two nouns come[123] together to express one idea,
Quand deux nom venir ensemble [170] *exprimer idée*, f.

place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with DE,
placer le premier* [74] † *sujet* [7]*discours*, m.

DU, *de* LA, DES, before the second noun, agreeably to the rules on
avant second[83] *conformément règles sur*

the article; Which[80] do you admire[185] most, Cato's[4] perseverance, or
; *Laquelle* – [133] *admirer le plus, Caton* [7]*persévérance*, f.

Cæsar's[4] intrepidity? Will you have any London[8] porter? No;
César [9]*intrépidité?* – [174] [9] *Londres porter?* m. [191] ;

I will drink a glass of Lisbon wine. I have lost my gold watch.
boire[125] *verre* m. *Lisbonne vin.* - *perdu or montre*. f.

I had it[54] at the park gate. I am afraid[125] I have left it[58]
avais l' *parc* m. *porte*. f. — *craindre (un) de* [155] *avoir laissée*

(in the) (coffee room.) Put this gentleman's horse into my brother's
au café. m. *Mettre** *monsieur cheval dans*

stable. Have you seen my mother's silk gown, and my sister's new‡
écurie. *vu* *soie robe*, f. *nouveau*

bonnet? It[65] is a present from the brother of her children's guardian.
m.? *C'* *présent* m. *de* *tuteur* m.

After her husband's death, all his father's friends forsook[137] her.
mari *mort*, f. *tous* [7]*ami* *abandonner*[125] *l'*[54]

26. If one of the two nouns denotes[125] the use of the other,
Si *nom* m. *désigner* [8]*usage* [2]*autre*,

instead of changing the order of the words, as the English do,
au lieu *changer* [154] *ordre* *mot* , *comme* *Anglais font*,

the French change the preposition, and instead of *de, du, de la, des,*
Français [125] *préposition*, f.

before the second noun, they use[125] *à*; Bring me a wine glass,
avant second[83] , *employer* ; *Apporter* moi*[56] *vin* ‖ *verre*, m.

and a tea spoon. Take the coffee cups into the dining room. He
thé cuiller. f. *Porter** *café tasse dans dîner chambre*. f.

has broken the water pot. Where is my sister's work bag? It[62] is
cassé eau pot. m. *Où* *ouvrage sac?* m. *Il*

in my mother's bed room. Have you ever seen a steam mill?
dans *coucher chambre*. f. *jamais vu* *vapeur moulin* m.?

No; but I have seen several water mills and many[8] wind mills.
[191] ; *mais* *plusieurs eau moulin* N.B. *vent moulin*.

N. B. After the words FOIRE, MARCHÉ, we[99] use[125] AU, *à* LA, AUX,
mot *on* N.B. *employer*

before the second noun; Will[125] you come to the horse fair? I want
avant [83] *nom* ; *Vouloir venir chevaux foire* f.? *J'ai besoin*

to go to the poultry market. Let us go through the hay market.
d' aller volaille f. *marché*. m. – – *aller* § *par* ' *foin*

* Second person imperative. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

‖ When I say to a person, bring me a *wine glass*, it is evident that it is the *glass* I want, not the *wine* so I ought to mention the *glass* first. § First person imperative.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

27. In speaking of the produce of a country, the English denote[125]
En parlant *produit* m. *pays*, m. *Anglais* *désigner*

the name of the country by an adjective; the French denote it by a
nom m. *par* *adjectif*; m. *Français* [125] *le*[54]

substantive, and place[125] it after the name of the produce; Have you
substantif, m. *placer* *le*[54] ; [132]

got any french brandy? No; but I have good spanish wine. Do you
[270] [9] *France* *eau-de-vie?* [191] ; [40] *bon* *Espagne* *vin*, m. – [132]

like[125] english beer[7]? No; I do[70] N.B. not; I prefer[125] dutch beer or
aimer *Angleterre* *bière* f.? [191]; *Je ne l'aime pas*; *J'aimer mieux* *Hollande* [7]

french cider.[7] Will[125] you have english [9]cheese, or swiss cheese?
France *cidre*. m. *Vouloir* – [174] *Angleterre* *fromage*, m. *Suisse* [9] ?

28. Before the names of countries, OF (is expressed) by DE, after
Avant *nom* m. *pays* , OF *s'exprime* *par* ,

nouns denoting dignity or authority; by DU, *de* LA, DES, after
[7] *qui désignent* *dignité* f. *autorité* ,

other nouns; The king of Congo. The queen of Angola. The stadtholder
les autres ; *roi* *reine* *stathoude*-

of Holland. The cortes of Spain. The petty states of Italy. The
Hollande. *Cortès* plur. *Espagne.* *petits* *état* *Italie.*

air of France is more healthful than that[88] of Italy. The soil of
air m. f. *plus* *salubre* *celui* *sol* m.

Spain and Portugal would be[125] very fertile, if it was well cultivated.
m. – *être* *très* - *fertile*, *s'il* *était* *bien* *cultivé.*

The south of England is warmer than the north of France.
sud m. *chaud* [41] *nord* m.

---

* The gender of nouns will no longer be marked in these exercises with the initial letters *m. f.*; the learner must now find out the gender by the rules given page 181 and following, according to the termination of the noun. But observe that it is by the *sound* of the last syllable of the word, not by the spelling that we know the gender of the noun. Now suppose you want to find out the gender of these twelve nouns, *France*, *Pays*, *Nation*, *Besoin*, *Agrément*, *délice*, *Vie*, *Secours*, *Pêche*, *Abricot*, *Fruit*, *Gibier*, which you will find in the beginning of the following exercise. 1st. *France*; this noun ends in *e mute*; see page 183 a general rule for the mute termination, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Pays*; see either the termination I page 181, or S page 183, and you will find that these terminations are both *masc.* *Nation*; look for ION, page 182; you will find that nouns of this termination, a few excepted, are all *fem.* *Besoin*; look for the termination OIN, page 182, and you will find it to be *masc.* *Agrément*; look for ENT, page 182, you will find that nouns of this termination are all, but one, *masc.* *Délice*; look for the termination CE, page 184; you will find *délice*, *masc.*, being an exception to the general rule, which is *fem.* *Vie*; see page 183, the general rule for common names ending in *e mute*, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Secours*; look for OUR, page 182, and you will find it to be a *masc.* termination. *Pêche*; look for CHE, page 185; you will not find that word in the exceptions, which are *masc.* then you conclude that it is included in the general rule, which is of the contrary gender. *Abricot*; look for O or OT, page 182; you will find that nouns of that termination are all *masc.* *Fruit*; look for I, page 181, a *masculine* termination. *Gibier*, look for ER, page 182; you will find it to be a *masc.* termination; and so on for any other noun the gender of which you want to know. But impress your mind with the general rule, and read often the exception, that by such frequent readings you may retain the most useful words contained in it; for you must not expect to retain them all at once. The advantage of these rules must appear obvious. By marking the gender at the end of the noun, or by referring to the dictionary for it, you learn only the gender of one word, whilst by referring to these rules, you learn the gender of a whole set of words.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*[*]

I come from France and Italy. I have been at Paris, Bordeaux,
venir[125] *Italie.* *à* [204]

Lyons, Geneva, Florence, Leghorn, Naples and Rome. How do you
Lyon, Genève, Livourne, Comment –.[133]

like[258] France and Italy? I like[125] them both[122] (very much[186]), but
trouver ? *aimer les*[54] *l'une et l'autre beaucoup* N.B.,

I would[125] rather live in France than in Italy. France is certainly a
aimer mieux (kk) vivre qu' certainement

most beautiful country. It[62] has within itself every thing that can[125]
très - beau [230] *Elle en elle-même tout ce qui pouvoir*

minister to the wants, comforts and delights of life. France produces[125],
servir (kk) besoin, agrément délice vie. produire

almost without the assistance of art, all[29] sorts of delicious fruit;
presque sans secours art, tout sorte délicieux[32] *fruit;*

pears, apples, grapes, peaches, apricots, plums, cherries, figs, olives,
poire, pomme, raisin, pêche, abricot, prune, cerise, figue,

a (great deal) more corn, wine and oil than the inhabitants can[125]
- *beaucoup plus blé, vin 'huile que habitant* [47] *pouvoir*

consume; and the country abounds[125] with game, [204]poultry, and [204]cattle.
consommer; pays abonder en †*gibier, volaille, bétail.*

The population of France, (considering [27]its extent) is immense. They[90]
si on en considère l'étendue On N.B

reckon in France twenty-five millions of souls. France is undoubtedly
compter[125] *vingt - cinq âme.* [125] *sans contredit*

the most powerful nation in[49] Europe. It[62] alone has withstood the
plus puissant[29] *de l' Elle seule résisté* [202] *aux*

efforts of Russia, Prussia, Germany, England, Holland, Spain,
Russie, Prusse, Allemagne, Angleterre, Hollande, Espagne,

and Sardinia, that wanted to[172] subdue it; but after twenty years of
Sardaigne, [74] *voulaient - subjuguer la*[54]; *vingt an*

uninterrupted[28] victories, that brave and warlike[32] nation was (at last)
continue[29] *victoire,* [13] [82] *guerrier*[29] *fut enfin*

overcome by all[29] those powers combined,[29] and compelled to submit
accablé[158] *par tout puissance combiné,* N.B. *forcé*[29] *de se soumettre*

to the greatest[29] humiliation to which men can[50] be condemned, that[68]
plus grand [76] *puissent être condamné*[158], *celle*

of obeying[202] beings whom they despise[125]. Now that I have a little[6]
[154] *obéir à être* [74] *mépriser. À présent que un peu* N.B.

time to myself, I am going to[172] travel. I (am fond) of[169] travelling.
tems à moi, [153] *aller*[125] *- voyager. aimer*[125] *à voyager*[154]

---

[*] The *recapitulatory* exercise at the end of each part of speech, is intended to try how far the learner understands the rules on which he has been practising on that part of speech. An infallible way to ascertain it, is to induce him to *mark* under every word on that part of speech the *rule* by which he makes use of such word; for instance, in the above exercise on the *article* and the *noun*, to make him *mark* under every noun, the rule by which, or at least to make him give a *reason* why he uses such and such an article, and so on with the other parts of speech; for unless he can do this, it is evident that he does not understand that part of speech, that he has no foundation to build upon, and he must read the rules over again, till he is able to do it.

† Do not put any article after *en*.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

In travelling one sees (so many) new* things, and every new*
En voyageant on[90] *voir*[125] *tant nouvelle*[29] *chose, chaque nouvel*

object furnishes some new idea to the mind. In a few* days I will
objet fournir[125] † *nouvelle idée esprit. Dans - peu*[N.B.] *jour -*

go to France, and after spending some time with my friends at Paris,
aller , après avoir passé † *avec ami à*

I will go to Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, where I will embark[125] for
- [125] *Suisse,* [204] , [204] , *où - m'embarquer pour*

America. I long to see that country of liberty and independence,
Amérique. Il me tarde de voir [13] [230] *liberté indépendance,*

where rational[32] beings may[125] communicate their ideas to their (fellow
où raisonnable[29] *être*[7] *pouvoir communiquer* [1] *idée*

beings) without fearing[154] the holy[29] political[32] or religious inquisition.
semblable sans craindre saint politique ou religieuse*[32]*

After having[154] visited the principal[29] cities of the wise republic of the
avoir visité * *ville sage* * *république*

immortel* immortal Washington, I will go to Mexico, Chili, and Peru. I want
, - *aller*[125] *Mexique,* , *Pérou. ai envie*

to see if the tree of liberty, lately[164] planted in the new world,
de voir si arbre , depuis peu planté [213] *nouveau monde,*

is[155] thriving better than it[62] has done in the old, and if it is
- *réussir*[125] *mieux qu' il n'*[47] *a faire* [213] *ancien,* [62] [155]

spreading its enlivening[32] branches over the fertile[32] plains of that
étendre[125] *ses vivifiant*[29] *sur* [29] *plaine* [16]

immense and rich[32] continent. What a pleasure to see millions of
[32] *riche Quel plaisir* [16] *voir* [9]

intelligent[32] beings uniting all their energies*to[176] break the chains of
[29] *être unir*[154] [29] *pour rompre chaîne*

superstition and despotism, those two satanic[32] enemies of reason, that
despotisme, deux satanique[29] *ennemi raison,* [13]

divine spark of the supreme wisdom! If the father of light deigns[125]
[32] *étincelle* [32] *sagesse !* *lumière daigner*

to cast a look on the actions of men, it is surely in such a work
[172] *jeter regard sur , c' sûrement* [213] *tel* [36] *ouvrage*

that he must delight to see his image employed. What is the reason
qu' doit se complaire à voir occupé. Quelle

that trade is so languishing, and that money is so scarce now?
que commerce [125] *si languissant, argent rare à présent?*

(People in trade) think[125] that it is the war. Oh! war is a dreadful
Commerçants penser que [65] *guerre. Oh!* [125] *affreuse*[32]

thing. War is the scourge of mankind. How preferable[29] are
chose. fléau genre humain. Combien préférable[125] [123]

peace and harmony amongst all men! If men were reasonable,
paix 'harmonie parmi touts ! Si étaient raisonnable,[26]

---

* Put this word in the sing. in french. † When the substance is restrained to *a little, a few*, SOME is expressed by *quelque, quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an *unlimited* number or quantity.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

they (would never go to) war. War begets[125] taxes, taxes beget
ne se feraient jamais *engendrer taxe,* 125

poverty, and plunge[125] people into misery. Thus whole[22] nations are
pauvreté, *plonger peuple* 213 *misère.* *Ainsi entier*[50]

made[156] miserable[29] to gratify the ambition of a few vain[22] beings
rendre 170 *satisfaire* *petit nombre vain*[29] *être*

whom often chance alone raises to the supreme rank, and who have
74 *souvent hazard seul* *élever*[125] 32 *rang,* 74 125

the art of inciting men to slaughter men, by calling them[66] heroes,
2 *exciter* 154 *à égorger* *en appelant ceux* * *héros,*

who[66] are merely the base executioners of their inhuman[22] orders.
N.B. *ne sont que* *vil*[29] *exécuteur* *inhumain*[29] *ordre.*

Will you come and take a walk along the river side before dinner?
Vouloir 183 *venir (nn) faire tour sur rivière bord* 206 *diné?*

The sight of the water is pleasant at this time of the year. (Is there)
vue eau agréable tems année. *Y a-t-il*[246]

any fish in this river? Not much; (there are) eels and carps, and
poisson ? *Pas* ; *Il y a* 246 *anguille carpe,*

some trouts: But we are not far from the sea, and our fish-market
† *truite:* 196 *loin de mer, poissonnerie*

is well supplied with sea [25]fish. We have salmon, turbot, soles,
bien pourvu[158] *de de mer poisson, saumon, sole,*

mackerel, codfish, excellent[13] oysters, crabs, and lobsters. Let us go and
maquereau, morue, ‡ [81] *huître, crabe homard.* – – *Aller (nn)*

see your market. What an abundance of (every thing) (there is in it!)
voir marché. *Quelle*[82] *abondance* 107 *il y a* 246 –!

What a deal of hares, rabbits and partridges! I see people yonder[183]
62 *quantité lièvre, lapin perdrix!* *voir gens*[229] *là-bas* N.B.

who are selling[125] woodcocks, snipes and (wild pigeons.) (Here are)
75 155 *vendre bécasse, bécassine ramier.* 247

also pheasants and quails. Do you like quails? Yes; (very much.) We
aussi faisan caille. – 183 *aimer* ? ; *beaucoup.* *Il*

must[161] walk towards home. It[62] is dinner time. Let us walk
faut que nous allions vers la maison. *C'* N.B. *diner heure.* – – *Entrer*

into the dining room. The dinner is on the table. What have we
218 *diner salle.* *sur* *Qu'* 83 125 133

for dinner? A round of beef with cabbage and carrots, and a loin
pour ? *rouelle bœuf avec choux* ‖ *carotte, longe*

of veal with peas and spinage. Bring me some mustard, salt, pepper,
veau, pois épinards.‖ *Apporter* 56 *moutarde, sel, poivre,*

a coffee cup, and a table spoon. (How much) do they[90] sell[125] meat
café tasse, soupe cuiller. *Combien* – 133 N.B. *vendre viande*

a pound in this town? Beef and mutton sell[125] eight pence a pound,
livre 213 *ville?* *mouton se vendre huit sou* .

---

* Turn by calling *heroes them who, &c.*

‡ Put this adjective *after* all these nouns.

† See note † p. 282.

‖ This word is plural in french.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and veal seven pence. That is very dear. Yet we often buy[122]
veau sept *C'* *très - cher.* *Cependant* [184] *en*[70] *acheter*

a hundred pounds weight at a time. Corn sells[125] twelve shillings a
cent *livre* – *à* [12] *fois.* *Blé* *se vendre* *douze* *sheling*

bushel, and bread three pence a pound; but good[33] workmen get[125]
boisseau, *pain* *trois* *livre;* *bon*[29] *ouvrier* *gagner*

four shillings a day. Bring a bottle of wine, and some wine glasses.
quatre *jour.* *Apporter** *bouteille* *vin,* *verre.*

Will you have french wine or spanish wine? I will drink a glass
Vouloir – [174] *France* *Espagne* ? – *boire*

of Port wine, if you have any.[54] (There is) no wine in the bottle.
Oporto , *si* *en.(p)* *Il n'y a* [246] *pas* [213]

Is there no wine in the wine cellar? Go to the wine merchant,
N'y a-t-il pas *cave?* *Aller** *chez* *de vin* *marchand,*

and tell him to send me[54] a dozen bottles of Port wine at sixty
*dire** *lui* *de* *envoyer* *m'* *douzaine de* *à* *soixante*

shillings a dozen. This wine costs me five shillings a bottle. You
sheling *coûter* [54] *cinq*

have a fine gold watch. It[62] has cost a hundred guineas. It[65] is a
belle *or* *montre.* *Elle* *coûté* *guinée.* *C'*

present from my cousin's guardian. Have you seen my brother's
présent *cousin* *tuteur.* *vu*

powder bag? It[62] is in my father's bed room. Let us walk up to
vōudre *sac?* *Il* [213] *coucher* *chambre.* – – *Aller** –

that hill. What[82] a fine prospect we have from here! What a deal
colline. *Quelle* *belle* *perspective* *d'* *ici!* [82] *quantité*

of fine[33] flowers (there is) here! Let us gather some[96] to[170]
belle[29] *fleur* *il y a* *ici!* – – *Cueillir** *en*[70] *quelques-unes* *pour*

make nosegays for your sister's children who (are so fond of) flowers.
faire *bouquet* *pour* [74] *aiment tant* –

(Here are) some violets. What a pretty rose bud! I see[125] yonder
Voici [247] *violette.*† [82] *joli*[33] *rose* *bouton!* *voir* *là-bas*

some hawthorns, (honey suckles) and sweet[32] briers. (That is) my sister's
aubépine, † *chèvre-feuille*† *odorant* *églantier.* *Voilà*[247]

husband's country house. Your father's house is finer[41] than that.[88]
mari *de campagne* *maison.* *belle* N.B.

(There are) people who are looking[125] at the flower pots which are at
Voilà[247] *gens*[229] [155] *regarder* [201] *fleur* *pot*‡ [74] *à*

your mother's window. My brother's coachman fell[137] from his horse
fenêtre. *cocher* *tomber* *de* – *cheval*

yesterday[183]; He broke[137] his leg, and put[137] his arm out of joint.
hier; N.B. *se casser* *jambe,* *se* *démettre* *bras* – – —‖

---

* Imperative. † Use the *singular* in french.

‡ If you mean pots *with* flowers *in*, you must say, *pots* de *fleurs;* if you mean pots to *put* flowers *in*, you must say, *pots* à *fleurs.* ‖ *Out of joint* is expressed in the verb *démettre.*

ADJECTIVE

29. The ADJECTIVE must be of the same gender, and of the same
adjectif doit être même genre ,

number as the noun which it[62] qualifies; That young man is (in love.)
nombre que nom 74 il qualifier; (bb) jeune homme amoureux

That young woman is (in love.) He is very young. She is very
*(bb) femme * très - jeune.*

young. He is married. She is married.[29] He is capricious. She is
** marié. 158 * N.B. capricieux.*

capricious. All[29] men are capricious. All[29] women are capricious.
** Tout 7 7 **

30. When an adjective qualifies several nouns of the same gender,
Quand plusieurs genre,

the adjective must be of the same gender as those[13] nouns and plural;
doit que (bb) plurier ;

Miss A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. They
Mademoiselle amoureux. Elles très - heureux.**

will soon[184] be married. That[29] makes the mother and daughter very
*- bientôt être * (bb) rendre 3 très -*

proud.* They are both[122] very capricious; but they are civil and
*orgueilleux. Elles toutes deux *; civil **

obliging. That[18] lady has a gown and a petticoat very well matched.
obligeant. (bb) dame robe jupe très - bien assorti.**

The tea and the sugar are good, but the cream and the water are bad.
thé sucre bon, crème eau mauvais.

31. If an adjective qualifies several nouns of different[26] genders, the
Si qualifier différent[29]

adjective must be of the masculine gender and (in the) plural number;
doit être masculin[22] au plurier — ;

Mr. A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. Are
Monsieur amoureux. Ils

they not married yet[183]? They are both[122] very capricious; but they
190 marié[158] encore ? touts deux ;

are civil and obliging. He makes[125] his son and daughter unhappy.
civil obligeant. rendre 3 malheureux.(h)

You have a coat and a waistcoat very well matched. The tea and
habit veste très-bien assorti. thé

the water are good, but the crème and the sugar are very bad.
eau bon, crème sucre mauvais.

32. Adjectives are generally[184] placed in french after the noun;
Adjectif - ordinairement se placent en après ;

All[29] the polite people in[49] Europe speak the french[29] language.
Tout poli[29] gens m. de l' parler français langue.

(I am told) that it is a very difficult language. Eat† a piece of new
on m'a dit[92] que c' difficile Manger morceau[8] frais

---

* See note (g) p. 198, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed. † Imperative.

ADJECTIVE.

bread, and drink a glass of white wine. England is a delightful
pain, boire verre 8 blanc vin. Angleterre délicieux*

country; but (there is) always a cold and damp air. (There are)
220 ; *il y a*[246] *froid humide* 246

charming[29] women, opulent [9]cities, fruitful [9]lands, and pleasant
charmant † 9 , opulent[29] *ville, fertile*[29] *terre, agréable*[31]

country [29]houses. I like[125] their simple[29] and cordial[29] manners.
de campagne [9]maison. aimer 14 *simple cordial † manière.*

33. The adjectives *Beau, Bel, Belle, Bon, Grand, Gros, Jeune, Joli,*
adjectif

Mauvais, Meilleur, Moindre, Petit, Tout, Vieux, Vieille, and the

adjectives of number *Premier, Second, &c.* are generally[194] placed
– *ordinairement se placent*

before[206] the noun; (That is) a large house. It[62] is in a fine situation.
avant ; Voilà[247] *grand*[29] *Elle* 213 *belle situation.*

It belongs to a young man. He has lately married an old woman.
62 *appartenir jeune , depuis peu épousé vieille*

He[65] is a big man. She is a little woman. They have two pretty children.
C' gros 65 *petit*[29] *deux joli*[29]

34. If two adjectives requiring different[28] places qualify the same
Si deux (qui demandent) différent[29] 9 *qualifier même*

noun, they[62] (are placed) both[122] after the noun, joined together by
, *ils se placent touts deux , joint*[29] *ensemble par*

a conjunction; (that is) a large convenient house. It[62] is in a fine
conjonction ; 247 *grand*[29] *commode. Elle* 213 *belle*

healthy situation. It belongs to a profligate young man. He has
saine 62 *appartenir débauché* 83 29

lately married an old rich woman. He[65] is a great man. He is a tall
depuis peu épousé riche C' (i) 65 *(i)*

man. They are [10]very honest[29] people. They are very civil[29] people.
65 *sont très honnête (i) gens.* 65 *honnête (i)* 9

35. The adjectives of number (are placed) in french as in english,
nombre se placent en comme anglais,

before the noun; The first day of the week. The third month of the
206 ‡ *jour semaine. mois*

year. The fourth year of the reign of the fifth monarch.
année. règne monarque.

36. To distinguish some personage from other persons of the same
170 *distinguer* ‖ *personnage d' autres personne même*

name, the English use[125] the adjectives of number; the French use
nom, Anglais employer 8 ; *Français* 125

---

* Imperative. † See note *(g)* page 198, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed.
‡ See the adjectives of number, p. 178. ‖ See note † page 282.

ADJECTIVE.

the substantives, and leave out the article; Henry the fourth was a great
substantif, omettre[125] – *Henri* * *grand*

man and a good king; he succeeded Henry the third brother to Charles
roi; succéder à * *de*

the ninth, the greatest villain that[74] ever reigned[156] over a civilized
* [44] *scélérat qui* † *ait*[50] *jamais régné sur civilisé*[32]

people. Henry the eighth, after having[154] been the friend of Pope
[228] *Henri* * *après avoir été ami* [7]*Pape*

Clement the seventh, became the greatest enemy of the papal[22] autho-
* *devenir* [44] *ennemi* , *papal*[29] *auto-*

rity, and delivered England (from the) shameful yoke of an Italian priest.
rité, délivrer [5] *du honteux*[32] *joug Italien*[22] *prêtre.*

37. The adjectives of measure and [264]dimension which (are placed)
[8] *mesure dimension* [74] † *se placent*

after the number in english, (are placed) before the number in french,
nombre en se placent [206] ,

and are always followed by the preposition *de*; Our garden is two
toujours suivis de jardin

hundred paces long, and a hundred and fifty broad. It[62] is surrounded
* *pas long,* [21] ‡ *large. Il entouré*

by a wall twelve feet high, two feet thick, and a hundred yards long.
d' mur * *pieds haut, épais,* [21] *verge*

N. B. These sentences are more commonly[184] expressed in french
(bb) phrase – *plus communément s'expriment en*

by the substantive of dimension in this manner; Our garden has two
par substantif [8] *de (bb) manière;*

hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth. It[62] is
pas longueur, [21] ‡ *largeur. Il*

surrounded by a wall of twelve feet of height, and of two of thickness.
entouré d' pieds hauteur, épaisseur.

But observe that with the adjective (you[181] must) use the verb *Être*,
observez qu' avec il N.B. *faut employer verbe* ,

and with the substantive the verb *Avoir*; thus, Our garden is long of
; *ainsi, long*

two hundred paces, and broad of a hundred and fifty; or, our garden
pas , *large* [21] ‡ ; *ou,*

has two hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth.
pas longueur, largeur.

38. The adjective is[242] not to be separated (from the) noun by *un*,
doit [190] – *être séparé du par*

une, as it[62] is sometimes by A, AN, in english; this article must be
comme il [70] *est quelque fois A, AN, en* ; [2] *doit se*

placed in french before these words; Did[156] you ever see such a man?
placer français (bb) mot; Avez jamais vu tel ?

---

* See numbers, page 176. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ See note * page 177.

ADJECTIVE.

I never saw[190] so tall[29] a woman. It is not so great a thing.
190 *ai vu si grand* *Ce* 190 *si grand*[29] *chose.*

39. Many[8] adjectives have the property of substantives in french,
*Beaucoup*N.B. *propriété* 7 *en* ,

and render[125] useless the words MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE, which the
rendre *inutiles* *mot* *MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE.* 74 *

(corresponding[22]) adjectives require in english; An English man.
qui les représentent *demander* *Anglais*

A French woman. He is a drunken man; a covetous man. She is
Française . 65 *ivrogne* ; *avare.* 65

an idle woman. They are ungrateful people. Learned men
paresseux (g) . 65 *sont ingrat* 9 . *Savant* 7

are esteemed.[29] Ignorant people are despised.[29] Take notice of
estimé. N.B. *Ignorant* 7 *méprisé.* N.B. *Faites attention à*

these words in reading authors, and in the dictionaries.
(bb) *en lisant* 7*auteur,* 213 *dictionnaire.*

40. By leaving out the article before[206] the names of distinction and
En omettant – *avant* *nom* 8 *distinction*

of profession which follow the verbs *être*, *devenir*, *se faire*, *passer*
profession * *suivre* *verbe*

pour, these nouns have the property of adjectives; My brother is a
, *(bb)* *nom* *propriété* 7

colonel, and my father is a general. He is the commander in chief.
colonel, *général.* *Il* *commandant* *chef.*

That man was a tailor. He lately[194] turned a school [25]master. He
2 140 *tailleur.* *depuis peu s'est fait* *école* *maître.*

passes for a doctor. His son was a bookseller; now he is a surgeon.
passer *pour* *médecin.* 140 *libraire;* *chirurgien.*

The same words which serve to qualify nouns, serve also (by the)
mêmes 74 * *servir à qualifier nom*7 , *servir aussi* *au*

means of certain particles to compare their qualities.
moyen 8 *certaines (i)* *particule* *à en comparer* *les* 17 *qualité.*

41. The comparative of superiority which (is formed) in english by
comparatif 8 *supériorité* * *se forme* † *en* . *en*

adding ER to the adjective, (is formed) in french by *plus* before the
ajoutant *ER* 2 , *se forme en* . *par* 206

adjective; Spain[5] is larger than France; but France is richer and
; 2*Espagne* *grand* 29 *que* 5 ; *riche*

more powerful than Spain. This[18] field is better than that,[98] because
puissant 29 . N.B. *champ* ‡ N.B., *parce qu'*

it[62] is better cultivated. Your watch is finer than mine, because it[62] is
il ‡ *cultivé.* *montre* *belle* 85 *elle*

newer and dearer; but mine is better, and will last longer than yours.
neuve, *cher* 29 ; 85 ‡ — *durer* *long-tems* 85.

* See note (m) p. 82. † See N. B. under note *(ii)* p. 235. ‡ See note (b) p. 72.

ADJECTIVE.

42. The comparative of inferiority, formed in english by LESS, or
comparatif [8] *infériorité, formé en par LESS, ou*
NOT SO before the adjective, (is formed) in french by *Moins* or *Pas si*
NOT SO [206] [2] , *– se forme* * *par ou*
before the adjective; Spain[5] is not so rich, nor so powerful as France.
[2] *adjectif; Espagne* [190] [29], *ni* [29] [5]
That[13] field is less fruitful than this.[88] Your sister is not so handsome,
N.B. *champ fertile* N.B. *belle,*
nor so rich as your cousin, but she is not less amiable.
cousine, aimable.

43. The comparative of equality, formed in english by AS before
égalité, en par AS
the adjective and AS after it[64], (is formed) in french by *Aussi* before the
[2] . *AS* – , *– se former*[125] *par* [2]
adjective, and *que* after; Spain is not by much as populous as France.
, ; [2] [190] *de beaucoup peuplé* [29] [5]
That[13] field is as fruitful as this.[88] Your sister is as amiable as your
N.B. *champ fertile* N.B. *aimable*
cousin. My watch is as good[29] as yours, but it is not so fine.
cousine. montre bon (g) [85], [62] *belle.*

44. The superlative, formed in english by adding MOST or ST to
superlatif, formé en ajoutant MOST ou ST
the [illegible]ctive (is formed) in french by adding the article *LE, LA, LES, DU,*
[2] *se former*[125] * *en (hh)*
DE LA, DES, &c. to the comparative[29] particles *PLUS, MOINS;* France is
comparative[29] *particule* ; [5]
the most populous country in Europe. China is the largest empire
peuplé [31] [230] [49] [5] † [5]*Chine grand*
in the world. (This is) my finest book. If it[62] is not the finest, it
[49] *monde.* [247] *(l) beau S' il* , [62]
is the best. It is the dearest book that I have ever bought.
meilleur. [65] *cher*[32] [74] [50] *jamais acheté.*

45. Do not express the article, and place the adjective or noun
– [190] *exprimer*‡ , *placer*
after the verb, in the following[32] comparative[29] sentences and others
verbe, suivant[29] [29] *phrase autres*
like; The more you study[125], the more you learn. The more I see
semblables; étudier, apprendre. voir
her, the less I like her. The more I know men, the less I esteem
[54], *aimer* [54] *connaître* [7], *estimer*
them. The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable it is.
[54] *difficile chose* , *honorable* [62]
I think that the more[8] pains I take,[125] the less[8] progress I make.
penser (bb) N.B. *plus* N.B. *peine prendre, moins* N.B. *progrès faire.*

* See N. B. (ii) page 235. † See note † p. 65. ‡ Second pers. plur. imperative.

ADJECTIVE.

46. The comparative[29] particles *Plus*, *Moins*, *si*, *Aussi*, must[123]
comparative[29] *particule* , *devoir*

(be repeated) before every[164] adjective; She is more studious[29] and
(kk) se répéter [206] *chaque* ; *studieux (g)*

dutiful than her sister. She is already as wise and clever as her
obéissant[29] *déjà* *sage* *habile*

mother; but she is so proud and affected that nobody likes[125] her.
; *fier*[29] *affecté*[29] [97] *aimer* [54]

47. *Que* after the comparative[29] words *Plus*, *Moins*, *Moindre*, *Meil-*
comparatif[29] *mots*

leur, *Mieux*, *Pis*, *Pire*, requires *Ne* before the verb which follows it[54];
, *demander* [206] [74] *suivre* *le* ;

He has lost more than he has gained. He is richer than he was. He lives
perdre *gagner.* *riche* [140] *vivre*

better than he did[129] before. He is less happy than people imagine.
(b) p. 72 *faire* [206] N.B. *heureux* [90] N.B. *s'imaginer.*

N. B. *Ne* (is left out) if the verb which follows *que* is in the infi-
s'omet (ii) N.B. [74] *suivre* *à* [2] *infi-*

nitive, or if it is preceded by a conjunction; it is better to read than
nitif, ou [62] *précédé* *d'* *conjonction;* *il vaut mieux* [172] *lire*

be idle. He is more studious now than when he was at school.
(ll) oisif. *studieux* *à présent* [140] *à* [2]*école.*

48. *THAN*, *BY*, after MORE, LESS, used[167] to denote a quantity,
THAN, *BY*, *après* *MORE*, *LESS*, *employés* [169] *désigner* *quantité*,

not a quality, (are expressed) by *De*, not by *que* or *par*; This does
non *qualité*, – *s'exprimer*[125] , *non* *ou* ; [89] –

not cost less than fifty guineas. It is too dear by half. I would not
[190] *coûter* *guinée.* *C'* *trop* *moitié.*

sell it[54] for less than sixty. I have not had it[55] more than a year.
vendre le *à* *eu* *l'* *an.*

49. *IN*, after a superlative (is expressed) in the same manner as
IN, *superlatif* – *s'exprimer* [125] *de* *même* *manière* *que*

OF, agreeably to the rules on the article; (That is) the cleverest boy
OF, *conformément* *règle* *sur* [2] ; [217] *habile* *garçon*

in the school. His father is the most learned man in the kingdom.
[2]*école.* *savant* *royaume.*

His mother is the most sensible[22] woman in the whole town.
spirituel [29] [38]

50. An adjective (in the) superlative, followed by one of the relative[22]
adjectif *au* , *suivi* *de* *relatif* [29]

words *qui*, *que*, *dont*, requires the following verb (in the) subjunctive;
mot , *demander* *suivant*[32] *au* *subjonctif;*

Mr. A. is the best friend I have. He is the most honest man I
Mons. *meilleur* *(s)* [65] *honnête* *(s)*

know. His sister is the handsomest woman I have ever seen.
connaître. *belle* *(s)* *jamais* *vue*

ADJECTIVE.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

What[82] charming weather! How[185] beautiful the country[220] looks!
Quel charmant tems! Que belle [185] campagne être! [123]

How attractive nature is, when it is arrayed in its verdant charms!
[185] *attrayant [7], quand [62] orné de ses verdoyant charme!*

How sweet solitude is to innocent minds! Let us go and take
[185] *doux (g) [7]cœur! – – aller (nn) faire*

a (short walk) in the neighbouring fields, (whilst we wait) till your
tour [263 N.B.] [218] voisin champ, en attendant que

sister is[218] ready. How[185] is[241] your aunt? She is still very ill.
soit prêt. Comment se porter tante? encore malade.

I am sorry (for it.) She is a virtuous, prudent and generous wo-
fâché en[54] [65] vertueux, (g) généreux (g)

man. Her daughter is very handsome, but she is too proud. She
fille belle, [51] trop orgueilleux (g)

is as haughty as if she were the finest woman in England; yet
fier [140] ; cependant

as she is richer and handsomer than her cousin, she will [41]sooner get
comme belle, cousine, f. – tôt[183] trouver

a husband; but virtue is more precious than riches. (Something
mari; [7]vertu précieux (g) [7]richesse. (Il faut

must be allowed) for her age; she is so young. She is older than I[52]
passer quelque chose) à [2] âge; jeune. âgé moi

am. She is as old as my sister who is married. She is[220] not less
† *âgé [74] marié. a [N.B.]*

than twenty. I do not think that she is[220] more than eighteen. She
vingt ans. – penser en [70] ait [145]

is taller by two inches, but she is not so handsome by much. She has
grand pouce, belle

been spoiled in her infancy. Your sister is the most lovely girl I
gâté [2] enfance. aimable (s)

know. She is so diligent and[58] attentive. You do not learn so well
connaître. attentif. (g) – apprendre

as she does, because you are not so studious. My sister learns better
† , *parce que studieux. (g)* (b) p. 72.

than I do, because she has a better memory than I have, but I take
[52] † , *mémoire [52] † ,*

more pains[8] than she does. I found[136] my exercise easier than I thought.
peine[N.B.] faire.† ai trouvé thême aisé penser.[140]

It is better than I expected. It is less difficult than you imagined.
attendre.[140] [62] moins difficile s'imaginer.[140]

My son has made greater progress than I expected. (There are)
[10] [41] *progrès [47]espérais[140] [246]*

authors who write better than they speak; there are others who speak
[9]auteur [125] ‡ [125] [125]

---

* See note * p. 281. † This auxiliary verb is generally *left out* in french; if you express it, you must follow rule 47. ‡ See note (b) page 72.

ADJECTIVE.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

better than they write. The more I examine this affair, the more
125 45 (bb) affai-e, f. 45

puzzling[29] I find it[62]. Give that[90] to your eldest[22] sister and this[83]
embarrassant 54 (bb) ainé 29 * (bb)

to your younger brother. Your writing is bad, but this[83] is worse,
jeune 33 * écriture f. (bb) pire †

and that[88] is the worst of all. This ditch is nine feet deep, and
(bb) † tout[29]. (bb) fossé ‡ pied profond,

six feet broad. That tree is a hundred yards high, and ten feet
‡ large. (bb) [2]arbre 21 verge haut,

thick. London[25] bridge, now the finest bridge in England, is seven
épais. [7]pont, à présent beau ‡

hundred and sixty-six feet long, and fifty-six feet broad; the center
§ pieds , large du milieu

[25]arch is one hundred and fifty feet broad, and thirty-two feet high.
arche f. 21 § , haut.

Napoleon the first succeeded[202] Louis the 16th; Louis the 18th succeeded
a 136 succédé à ; 136 à

Napoleon the 2nd, king of Rome, and second emperor of the French. I
, roi , 33 empereur

want a watch; but I should not like to give more than ten guineas (for it.)
260 montre; - aimer à donner guinée en[54]

You can not get a good one for less than twenty. I will not give more
(kk) avoir en[54] à moins - en[70]

than twelve. The best quality a man can[125] have, is to be civil and
qualité(s) 50 pouvoir (kk), de civil

obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging people[7]. The more difficult
obligeant incivil désobligeant gens 229 difficile

a thing is, the more merit (there is) in doing[169] it[54]. The more we
chose , mérite 246 à faire 62

contemplate the beauties of nature, the less reason we have to (be
contempler beauté 7 , moins sujet de nous

proud.) The richer and the more elevated in dignity we are, the
enorgueillir. riche élevé en dignité ,

less[8] pride we ought to have, and the more we are obliged to be
moins N.B. orgueil devoir 172 avoir, obligé, d'

just and reasonable; but most men (of these days) remember
juste raisonnable; la plupart des d'aujourd'hui ne se souvenir 130

that they are rich and powerful, only to[170] oppress the poor and
(bb) N.B. puissant, que pour opprimer pauvre

the weak, and to be more unjust and unreasonable.
faible, 170 être injuste déraisonnable.

---

‡ See the numbers page 176. * *Eldest* and *younger* cannot be expressed by the *comparative* nor superlative in french, they must be expressed by the *positive*, for, as there is only *one eldest* and one *younger* there can be no comparison. † See note * page 202.
§ See note * page 177.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

51. When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, are the nominative
Quand I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, nominatif
of a verb, they (are expressed) I by *Je*, THOU by *Tu*, HE, IT, *m.* by *Il*,
verbe, ils s'expriment I par , THOU , HE, IT,* m.
SHE, IT, *f.* by *Elle*; WE by *Nous*, YOU by *Vous*, THEY by *Ils*, masc.
SHE, IT, f. *; WE , YOU , THEY , masc.*
by *Elles*, fem.; as, I learn[125] [7]french. Doest thou speak it[54] well?
, fem. ; comme, apprendre français, m. – [133] *parler* [62] *bien?*
He has not learned long. It[62] is not difficult. She is too idle.
[190] *long-tems. difficile. trop paresseux. (g)*
We have not time. You will never learn. They are too fond of play.
[7]tems. [190] [125] – [183] *aimer à jouer.*

52. I (is expressed) by *Moi*, THOU by *Toi*, HE by *Lui*, THEY by
I – s'exprimer [125*] *par , THOU , HE , THEY*
Eux, m. by *Elles*, f. if two of these pronouns are the nominative of
, deux
the same verb; as, You and I will learn [7]french. He and I will
verbe; , [127] – *apprendre* –
learn together. You and they have learned before: Or, when they
[127] *ensemble.* [127] *auparavant: Ou, ils*
are joined to another substantive; as, My brother and I have begun
joindre substantif; , [127] *commencer*
to learn it[54]. He and his sister learn very well. They and their
à le [126] *très*
master always speak french together: Or, when there is no[6] verb in
[184] [126] *: Ou, il n'y a pas* N.B.
the sentence to agree with these pronouns; as, Who learns best?
phrase pour s'accorder (bb) ; , le mieux?
He or I? It[62] is I who learn best. It[62] is he who learns best.
? N.B. [126] N.B. [126]

53. When a personal[82] pronoun is the nominative of several verbs
personnel pronom plusieurs
it is generally[183] repeated with each verb; I believe and will always
[62] – *ordinairement se répéter*[125*] *chaque ; croire* – [184]
believe that it is so. He always promises, but does not keep his
que cela ainsi. [184] *promettre,* – [190] *tenir*
word. We have seen it[55], and will see[125] it again.
parole. vu le , revoir [54] †

54. When the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,
ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,
are governed by a verb, the pronouns *Me, Te, Nous, Vous, Se, Le, La,*
régir [195] *verbe,*
Les, Lui, Leur, Y, En, which represent them, (are placed) in french
[74] *représenter* [54] , – *se placer*[125*] *en*

* See N.B. under note *(ii)*, page 235. † *Again* is expressed by *re* before *voir*.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

immediately before that verb; Your brother does not love me. He
immédiatement 206 *(bk) verbe;* – *aimer*[125]

never comes to see us. Does he not speak to you, when he meets
190 *venir* 172 *voir.* – 138 *parler (o)* , *rencontrer*

you? My mother will not allow me to speak to him. I will write
? *vouloir (kk) permettre de (o)* – *écrire*

to her. I will scold her for using you so. Do not say (any thing
(o) – *gronder de traiter ainsi.* – *dire*[125] 99

to her (about it.) She would use me worse (for it.) She would beat
(o) *en* – *traiter plus mal en*[89] – *battre*

me. If I knew it, I would not suffer it. I must[181] reconcile them.
Si savais le, – *souffrir Il faut que je réconcilie*

I will invite them to come to see me. I will speak to them to-day.
– *inviter à venir* 172 *voir* – *(o) aujourd'hui,*

55. If the pronouns *ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, SE, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, Y*
pronom

EN are governed by a tense compounded of the auxiliary verbs *AVOIR*
régir 158 *par tems composé auxiliaire*[82]

or *ÊTRE*, and of a past[82] participle, they must (be placed) before
ou , *passé participe,* 62 *devoir (kk) se placer* 206

the auxiliary verb, not between the auxiliary and the participle; Have
82 , *non entre* ;

you seen my brother? I have seen him, but I have not spoken
voir ? , 190 *parler*

to him. My mother has forbidden me to speak to him. Has he
(o) *défendre de (o)*

returned you the book which you had lent him? No, he has not
rendre livre 74 *aviez prêter* * ? 191 190

returned it[62] yet[189]. Has he read it[62]? I do not think[224] he has
rendre le encore. lire † ? – *penser* 145

opened it[62]. I am afraid[221] he [195]has lost it[62]. He has told me that
ouvrir † – *craindre* 146 *perdre* † *dire que*

you have given it him. I have not given it him. It[62] is not mine.
donner 63 * 62 * *Il* 86

I have borrowed it[62] from a friend. He has asked me for[201] it again.
emprunter † *à redemander* – † ‡

If the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM are
ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM

governed by the imperative of a verb, consider whether the sentence
régir 158 *par impératif* , *considérer si phrase*

commands, or whether it[62] forbids.‖
commander, ou si † *défendre.*

---

* See note (f) p. 79. † See note (h) p. 80. ‡ *Again* is expressed by *re* before *demander*

‖ The verb commands when the action spoken of is to be done; the verb forbids when the action spoken of is not to be done; so, *Wait*, is a command; *Do not wait*, is a forbiddance or prohibition.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

56. If you command, place the pronouns after the verb, and express
, *placer** *après* *verbe,* *exprimer*

ME by *moi;* THEE and THYSELF by *toi;* Wait for me. Get thyself ready.
, *THEE* *THYSELF* ; *Attendre*[201] *Apprêter* –

57. If you forbid, place the pronouns before the verb, agreeably to
défendre, * *avant* , *suivant* –

the general[29] rule, and express ME by *me;* THEE and THYSELF by *te;*
général[29] *règle,* *ME* ; *THEE* *THYSELF* ;

Help[256] me. Do not help me. Help[256] yourself; help him; help her;
*Aider** – [190] *Servir** † ; *servir* ; ;

help them. Do not help him; do not help her; do not help them.
servir – *servir* ; – ; –

Wait for me. Do not wait for me. Bring me a clean[22] plate.
*Attendre** [201] – [201] *Apporter** *blanche* *assiette.*

Do not give me such a dirty plate. Bring it[62] here. Do not bring
– *si* [38] *sale*[22] * *la* *ici.* –

it here. Shew it him. Do not shew it him. Take it. Do not
[62] *Montrer** [62] *lui.*‡ [62] [162] *Prendre* [62] –

take it. Hear me. Hear him. Do not hear him. Stop her. Do
[62] *Ecouter** – *Arrêter* –

not stop her. Let[248] her go. Do not let her go. Let them alone.
Laisser *aller.* – [248] *tranquilles.*

58. If the verb which governs the personal pronouns is followed by
régir *personnel*[82] *suivi* *d'*

a preposition expressed in french, the pronouns (are placed) after the
exprimé[157] *en* , – *se placer*[125]

preposition, and ME (is expressed) by *moi;* THEE by *toi;* HIM by *lui;*
, *ME* – *s'exprimer*[125] *par* ; *THEE* ; *HIM* .

HER by *elle;* THEM by *eux*, masc., by *elles*, fem.; Come near me.
HER ; *THEM* , , , ; *s'approcher* † *de*

Have you thought of[200] me? I always think of you. I was coming
penser *à* ? [184] *penser à* – *venir*[155]

to you, when they obliged me to go to her. You are laughing[155]
à , *obliger* *d'* *aller à* – *se moquer* †

at[200] me. Do you know what she says of him? He does not care
de – *savoir*[125] [84] *dire* *de* ? – *se soucier*

for[200] her nor for what she says of him. They have enquired
d' *ni* *de* [62] [227] † *s'informer*

after you. Have you applied to them? I will not trust[202] them.
de[200] [227] † *s'adresser* *à* ? *vouloir* *me fier à*

What reason have you to mistrust[202] them? I do not speak of them.
[82] *raison* *de vous méfier d'* ? .

---

* The second person singular of the imperative is seldom used in french, except through familiarity or contempt; the second person plural is used, though speaking to a single person; so instead of saying *Place,* we say *Placez;* instead of *Attends,* we say *Attendez.*

† See reflective verbs, pages 114, 115. ‡ See note (f) page 79.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

59. If several pronouns are governed by the same verb, they must
plusieurs *régir* [158] *par* , [62] *devoir*

(be placed) together in the following order; The pronouns of the
(kk) se placer *ensemble* [212] *qui suit* [22] *ordre ;*

first[29] person *me*, *nous ;* those of the second *te*, *vous*, and that of the
[33] *personne* ; [88] *second* [29] , [88]

third *se*, (are placed[125]) before any of the other pronouns; *le*, *la*, *les*,
– *se placer* * [206] *touts* – *autres* ;

(are placed) before *lui*, *leur*, *y*, *en ;* *lui*, *leur* before *y*, *en ; and y*
– *se placer* [125] * ; [206] ;

before *en ;* I have something to tell you. What[83] is it? I can not tell
† ; [98] *à dire* *(y)* ? *pouvoir* *(kk)*

it you now. I will tell it you (by and by.) Why will[173] not you
le *à présent.* – *tantôt.* *Pourquoi vouloir*

tell it me now? I have a letter for you. Your brother has sent it[62]
? *lettre* *pour* *envoyée* ‡

me to bring it you. Where is it? Give it me. Why will[173] not
[55] [170] *apporter* ‡ *Où* [62] ? *Donner* [62] [60] *vouloir*[125]

you give it me? If you do not give it me immediately, I will[173] not ask
[62] ? – [62] *aussitôt,* – *ne*

you for[201] it again, and I will tell him[169] of it. Here it is[247]. Shew
– ‖ *plus,*[190] – *lui* ‖ *le* *La voici* N.B. *Montrer*

it[62] me. I will return it to you presently. I have brought you some
[60] – *rendre* [62] – *tout à l'heure.* *apporter* [55] [9]

fruit too. Give us some. What[83]! you had promised it to us, and
aussi. *(p)* *Quoi!* *aviez promettre* [62] – ,

you give it to them. I offered[186] it to you first and you would not
[62] – *ai offert* [62] – [55] *premièrement* *avez* [186]

have it. I will send you some to-morrow. Do not forget to send
voulu [55] – *envoyer* *(p)* *demain.* – *oublier de*

me some, for it is long[246] since I [190] have eat any. I will[70] not.
(p) , *car il y a* *long-tems que* *mangé (p)* N.B.

60. When a verb in the imperative governs several pronouns, if
Quand *à* *impératif* *régir* *plusieurs* ,

moi, *toi* are (in the) number, these two pronouns (are placed) for
du , [13] – *se placer* [125] * *pour*

the sake of melody after the other pronouns; Give it me. Bring
– – *mélodie* *autres* ; *Donner*[125] *Amener*

her to me. Send them to me there. Send some to me there.
– *Envoyer* – *y.* (e) p. 74. –

---

* See N. B. under note *(ii)* p. 235. † See note * p. 78. ‡ See note (h) p. 80.

‖ We do not say in french, *Demander quelqu'un* pour *une chose*, to ask somebody *for* a thing; the *thing* is always the *object* of the *verb*, and the *person* the object of a *preposition*; we say, *Demander une chose* à *quelqu'un*, to ask a thing *to* somebody, the same as we say, *Donner une chose* à *quelqu'un*, to give a thing *to* somebody. Nor do we say, *Dire une personne* d'*une chose*, to tell a person *of* a thing, we say, *Dire une chose* à *une personne*, to tell a thing *to* a person.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

61. Except when either[122] of these pronouns meets the pronoun
Excepté l'un ou l'autre rencontrer

EN; for, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM (are expressed) by *M'en*;
; *car, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM – s'exprimer*[125] *par* ,

THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM are expressed[125] by *T'en*,
THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM – (ii) N.B. ,

whether they come before or after the verb; He gave me some.
soit que venir[206] - ; *donner (p)*

Give me some. He put[127] me (in mind) (of it.) Put me (in mind)
(p) faire souvenir en Faites souvenir

of it. He brought thee some. Recall to thyself the difficulties of it.
[59] *apporter (p) Rappeler – difficulté* [59]

62. As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and
Comme il n'y a que genre en , masculin

the feminine, the neuter[29] pronouns IT, THEY, THEM (are expressed)
feminin, neutre[29] *IT, THEY, THEM – (ii)* N.B. [125]

by *Il, Elle, Ils, Elles, Le, La, Les*, agreeably to the gender and
suivant –

number of the noun to which they refer[125], the same as when (speak-
[3] [76] *se rapporter, de même que on parle*

ing) of [7]persons; Look at that tree; it is well blossomed, yet
personne; Regarder[201] [2] *arbre; fleuri, cependant*

it produces no fruit.[8] I will cut it down, if it does not bear
produire[190] N.B. *abattre*, (h) p. 80. * , – *porter*

fruit[8] this year. (These are) [10]very fine trees, but they are too
N.B. *année.* [247] *très* [88] , *trop*

young to bear fruit yet[183]. They do not bear fruit[8], when they are
jeune[29] *pour* [9] *déjà.* N.B. – N.B. ,

so young. (That is) a fine flower. It is a rose. Will you have[174]
si [29] [247] *fleur.* [65] *Vouloir –*

it? How sweet it smells! I will take it to my mother.
(h) p. 80. [185] *bon* † *sentir!* [173] [256] (h) p. 80.

She is so[183] fond of roses. Take some of these cherries; they are
– *tant aimer* – [7] *Prendre* [96] *(bb) cerise;*

very good. They are not quite ripe[29] yet[183] They will be better
très [29] *tout à fait mûr encore.* N.B. (b) p. 72.

in another week. It[62] is very pleasant to have a garden near one's
[213] *une semaine.* N.B. *agréable d' jardin près de sa*

house. It[62] is the greatest[88] pleasure I have. Was it[62] you who
N.B. [44] *plaisir (s)* [50] *Etait* N.B.

sent[126] us some fruit the other day? No, it[62] was my brother. I
envoyer[127] *autre jour? Non,* N.B. [140]

thought[221] it[62] was you. Did you like[197] it[54]? Yes, it was very nice.
penser[140] N.B. – *trouver bon ?* , [140] *bon.*

* *To* CUT is *Couper; To* CUT DOWN is *Abattre*, not *Couper en bas.*
† *Sweet* is here used adverbially, so is *Bon*, and it does not require any agreement.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

63. Though *Lui*, *Leur*, (are used) for all[29] beings that[74] have life
Quoique , , *– s'employer*[125] *pour* *7être* (m) p. 82. *7vie*

such as brutes and plants; as likewise for ideal[29] substances in which
tels que brute 7 *7plante, et aussi* *idéal*[29] 7 *dans* 76

we suppose an active principle, such as 7heaven, providence, fortune,
supposer *actif*[32] *principe, telles que ciel,* 7 , 7 ,

some virtues and vices; as, Take the horses into the stablé, and bring
* *vertu* 8 ; *comme,* 256 213 *écurie,* 256

them[86] some hay. This tree is dying[155], give[162] it a little[6] water.
(f) p. 79. 9 *foin.* 2 *arbre – se mourir,* *donner* 56 *peu* N.B. *eau.*

Most men worship 7love; they sacrifice every thing to it; They
La plupart des *adorer*[130] *amour;* *sacrifier* 107 54 ; *Ils*

can not be used for lifeless[32] beings which are[92] commonly[183] called
– (kk) s'employer *sans vie* 7 *que* *on* *ordinairement* *appeler*

things; in speaking of things, to IT, to THEM are expressed by *Y;*
chose; *en parlant* 7 , *to IT, to THEM* *– s'exprimer* 125 ;

Geography is a pleasant study; you should give some time to it. You
Géographie 7 *agréable*[32] *étude;* 176 * *tems* 54

do not pay sufficient attention to it. I want to learn mathematics; but
faire assez 8 N.B. 54 260 *7mathématique;*

I can not apply to them. I have not time to stick to them.
(kk) m'appliquer 59 7 *de m'attacher* 59

64. *Lui*, *Elle*, *Eux*, *Elles*, after a preposition, (are said) only of
préposition *ne se disent* *que*

persons and beings that are[92] generally[183] personified; such as heaven,
7personne 7 *que* *on* *généralement* *personnifier*[125]; *tels que* 7 ,

providence, virtue, love, &c.; as, If men knew[140] virtue, they would
7 , *7vertu,* *7amour, &c.;* *comme,* 7 *connaître* 7 ,

burn with love for it, and † own that (there is) no[8] real happiness
brûler d' *pour* , *avouer que* 246 N.B. *vrai*‡ *bonheur*

without it. In speaking of brutes or things, the preposition is gene-
sans *En parlant* *7brutes ou* 7 , – 183

rally changed into an adverb, and the pronoun (is left out); as,
se changer[125] *en* – *adverbe,* *– s'omettre*[125]; *comme,*

That chair is broken, do not sit[57] upon it. The rails are
(bb) *chaise* *rompu*[158], – *s'asseoir* ‖ *dessus* *barreau*

newly painted, do not lean[57] against them. Stand[56] (by the side)
fraîchement *peint* 29 , – *s'appuyer* ‖ *contre* *Se tenir* ‖ *à côté*

of them. I have made a terrace in my garden, a grotto under it, and
, *terrasse* 213 , *grotte* *dessous,*

planted trees all round it. I am going to make a water spout (in the)
planté 9*arbre* *autour* 135 172 *d'eau* 25 *jet* *au*

middle of it, and a canal through it. Have you ever been in it?
milieu , *à travers.* *jamais* *dedans?*

---

* See note ‡ page 282.
‡ Put this adjective before the noun.
† *Would* is here understood in english.
‖ See the imperative of a reflective verb, p. 114.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

65. When HE, SHE, IT, THEY are the nominative of the verb BE,
HE, SHE, IT, THEY, BE,

followed by a substantive, they[92] are generally expressed by *Ce;*
suivi d' , ils - [183] s'exprimer[125] par :

Do you know that gentleman who is coming (this way?) He is a
- [188] *connaître (bb) monsieur - venir[155] (par ici?)*

philosopher. He is a very learned man. That is his wife who is with
philosophe. très - savant C' est là femme

him. She is a very haughty[22] woman. Is that their house? Yes,
[58] hautain[23] femme. Est-ce là ? Oui,

it is. It is a very good[20] house. They are very respectable people[9].
[70] [33] [62] gens.

66. HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM are sometimes used[125]
HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM - quelquefois[183] s'employer

without reference to a noun expressed in the discourse, but with
rapport exprimé [213] discours, avec

reference to the words MAN, WOMAN or PEOPLE understood; then they
mot MAN, WOMAN ou PEOPLE sous-entendus; alors :

(are expressed) HE, HIM by *celui;* SHE, HER by *celle;* THEY, THEM
- s'exprimer[125] HE, HIM par ; SHE, HER ; THEY, THEM

by *ceux;* Happy he who lives, i. e. the *man who* lives contented with
; Heureux vivre content [200]

his lot. Providence never abandons him who does not abandon himself.
sort. [7] [190] abandonner - s'abandonner lui-même.

She who refuses a husband, is not always sure to[162] find another.
refuser mari, sûr[29] en[79] trouver un autre.

N. B. The English, in this kind of sentences, often place[125] the
Anglais, [213] (bb) sorte [8] phrase, [184] placer

words HE, SHE, &c. and the relative WHO, WHOM, which[74] follows
HE, SHE, &c. relatif WHO, WHOM, (m) p. 82. suivre

them, in different[22] [9]parts of the sentence; the French (on the)
[54] , [213] different[29] partie ; au

contrary, generally place *qui, que, dont* immediately after *celui,*
contraire, [184] [125] immédiatement

celle, ceux; He is a flatterer who praises men for virtues which[74] they
** ; flatteur louer [7] des (m) p. 82.*

have not. He can not be happy whose happiness depends upon
saurait [192] [74] bonheur[7] dépendre des

other people. They are not always happy who seem to be so[54].†
autres. - [29] paraître - - le

67. HIS, HER, THEIR used in the same sense as the above[32] pro
HIS, HER, THEIR employés sens que ci-dessus

nouns, *i e.* without reference to a noun mentioned, are expressed,
rapport (dont il soit fait mention), - s'exprimer[125],

---

* See * p. 210. † Turn this sentence in french; *They who* seem happy, are not always so.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

HIS by *de celui;* HER by *de celle;* THEIR by *de ceux;* Every body
HIS ; *HER* ; *THEIR* 106 .

blames his manners, i. e. the manners *of him*, who acts without modesty.
blâmer *manière* , *agir* *modestie.*

I would not trust her virtue, who does not care[200] for her reputation.
vouloir *me fier à* *vertu* – *se soucier de* 1

Their labours do not always succeed, who take their measures best.*
travail – 184 *réussir* *prendre* *mesure* *le mieux.*

68. When a personal[22] pronoun is the object of several verbs, it must
personnel *objet* *plusieurs* , 62 *doit*

be repeated with each verb; He saw and heard me. He loves and
se répéter 102 ; *voir* *entendre* 54 *aimer*

esteems you. I hate and despise him. I entreat and conjure you.
estimer 54 *haïr* *mépriser* 54 *prier* *conjurer* 54

69. When several verbs come together, the pronouns should (be
ensemble, *devraient (se*

placed) immediately before the verb which[74] governs them; Will
placer) (m) p. 82. *régir* 54 ; 172

you help me to do it? Can not you do it yourself? He wishes to
aider 169 *faire* 54 ? 192 *(m)* N.B. ? *souhaiter* 172

marry her. She will not speak to him. She can not bear him.
épouser 54 *vouloir* *(kk)* *(o)* 54 192 *souffrir* 54.

70. When, in a sentence of several parts, the subject mentioned
Quand, 213 *phrase* *plusieurs partie,* *sujet dont il est fait mention*

in the first[29] part is continued, the french add[125] to the following[22] parts
premier *continuer,* *français ajouter* *suivant* 29

of the sentence one of the pronouns LE, LA, LES, EN, Y, agreeably to the
suivant –

idea which[74] they wish to express; Is this the master of the house?
idée (m) p. 82. *vouloir* 172 ; *Est-ce ici* *maître* ?

Yes, he is; i. e. *the master*. He is rich and I am not; i. e. *rich*. He
,*(r)* . *riche* *(m)* . †

has friends and I have not; i. e. *any friends*. Are these the books
9*ami* *(m)* . *(p)* † *Sont-ce ici*

of which you were speaking? Yes, they are; i. e. *the books*. Is
74 155 ? , 65 . †

your brother at home? No, he is not; i. e. *there*. And if the
134 *au logis* ? 191 , 190 . (e) p. 74.

auxiliary verb with which we[90] ask the question, is attended by ano-
auxiliaire[52] 76 N.B. *faire* , *accompagné d'*

ther verb, that verb must also be repeated; Have you seen your
, *(bb)* *doit* *aussi* – *se répéter; (ii)* N.B. *vu*

---

* Turn; The labours *of those who* take best their measures, do not always succeed.

† You do not repeat the noun or adjective, which is understood in english, but you must *add* one of the above *pronouns* to the *verb*, as long as the *same* subject is *continued.*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

brother lately? No, I have not, i. e. *seen him.* When you see[42]
depuis peu ? [101] , * . *verrez*

him, tell him that I want to speak to him. I will; i. e. *tell it him.* I
, *dire lui*[56] *(bb)* [260] [172] *(o)* * .

do not know what he wants; do you? i. e. *know it?* No, I do not; i. e.
savoir [84] *vouloir* ; * ? [70 N.B.] ´ , * ;

know it; if I did[140]; i. e. *know it,* I would not have asked you about it.
[70 N.B.] ; * ; [70 N.B.] , . *demander* – † [59]

71. If the pronoun, which[74] in these instances (is added) to the sen-
, (m) p. 82. *(bb) cas* *s'ajouter* [125]

tence, represents a noun, it must be one of the words LE, LA, LES,
, *représenter* , *doit* *mot* .

agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; Are you the
suivant – [3] *(bb)* ;

brother of that lady? Yes, I am. Are you the sister of that
(bb) ? , *(bb)*

gentleman? No, I am not. Are these your horses? Yes, they are.
monsieur ? *Sont-ce ici* *cheval ?* , [65]

72. If you have to represent, in the second part of the sentence,
à *représenter* [29]

an adjective, an adverb, or a member of a sentence, you[181] must add
, , *ou un membre* – , *il* N.B. *faut* *ajouter*

LE without regard to gender or number; Sir, are you ready? Yes, I
sans *avoir égard* [7] *ou* [7] ; , *prêt ?* ,

am; i. e. *ready.* Are you ready, Madam? No, Sir, I am not; i. e. *ready.*
. [29] , ? , , .

Are your brothers returned[156]? No, they are not; i. e. *returned.*
[134] [265] ? , .

73. *En,* Y, which[74] are generally said[196] of things only, may, in
(m) p. 82. – [193] *se dire* [7] , *peuvent, en*

answer to these questions, (be used) for persons; EN, instead of
réponse *(bb)* , *(kk) s'employer pour* [7] ; , *au lieu de*

de MOI, de TOI, de NOUS, de VOUS, de LUI, d'ELLE, d'EUX, d'ELLES; Y,
;

instead of à MOI, à TOI, à NOUS, à VOUS, à LUI, à ELLE, à EUX, à ELLES;

Were you speaking of me? Yes, I was; i. e. *speaking of you.* Do
– [133] [155] [58] ? , * . –

you care for her? No, I do not; i. e. *care for her.* Will you not
se soucier de [58] ? [191] , * . [178]

trust[202] him? No, indeed, I will not; i. e. *trust him.* Have[237] you
vous fier à [58] ? [191] , *en vérité,* * . ‡

not applied to them? Yes, we have[237]; i. e. *have applied to them.*
s'adresser [58] ? , * .

---

* These signs, or auxiliary verbs which represent the principal verb in english, have no meaning in french, you must *repeat* the *verb itself.*

† See note ‖ p. 296. ‡ See compound tenses of a reflective verb used interrogatively, page 115.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Your sister has not used[227] me well. What has she done to you?
n'en a pas usé avec [189] N.B. [83] *faire (3)* ?

We were at the ball last night; I asked[252] her to dance with me;
[140] *bal* [235] ; *prier* [137] [168] *danser* ;

she refused me, and after she had refused me, she danced with
refuser [137] , *après que* *eut refusé* , [137]

another. She mentioned it to me this morning. She is very sorry
a [136] *parlé* *en (o)* *(bb)* [234] *fâché* [29]

(for it.) She desired me to tell you so. She did[140] not intend to offend
en *a* [136] *prié* [169] *dire* *le* [54] *avoir* *dessein* [168] *offenser*

you. She had promised to dance with him before you had[218] asked
avait promettre [168] *avant que* *eussiez* *demander*

her. She ought[177] then to have told me so. She forgot[137] it. She did not
lui *aurait* *donc* – *dû* *dire* *le* [54] *oublier* –

think (of it.) I beg you will forgive[202] her. You had promised me
penser [137] *y* *prier* † *de pardonner* *lui* *aviez*

that, when you should come to see me, you would bring me your
que, quand *venir* [172] *voir* , – [256]

children. Why did[136] you not bring them with you? I could not
Pourquoi *avez* *amenés* ? *ai* [136] *pu*

bring them to-day. I will[173] bring them the next time I come[142].
[256] *aujourd'hui.* – [256] *prochaine* *fois* [221] *viendrai.*

Bring them to me as soon as you can[142]. I will[70]. They have desired
[256] *(o)* *aussitôt* *que* *pouvoir.* N.B. [252]

me to buy[162] them fruit, and to send it to them, but I will take it to
[168] *acheter* (f) p. 79. [9] , [168] *envoyer* *(o)* , [256] [62] *(o)*

them myself. I long to see them. It is so long[246] since I have seen
(m) N.B. ‡ *de voir* *Il y a si long-tems que* [196] *vus* [159]

them. They will be very glad[20] to see you. They are very fond of
bien *aise* [168] – *fort* [183] *aimer* –

you. They are always talking[155] of you. You are so good || to them.
[155] [183] *parler* *avez* *tant de bonté* *pour*

They like you better than their uncle. He is incessantly teazing[155]
aimer (b) p. 72. *oncle.* – *sans cesse* [183] *tourmenter*

them. They will[173] not stay with him. They would rather come to
vouloir *rester* *aiment* *mieux* *(o)*

me or go to you. They are very amiable[32] children. I often think
(o) [65] *aimable* [29] [9] [164] *penser*

of them. I am much obliged to you. You have got a nice stick.
[200] *bien* *obligé* *(o)* [270] *joli* *bâton.*

Let[243] me look at it. Will you have it? I make you a present (of it.)
Laisser *voir* – *Vouloir* [174] ? *faire* [24] *en*

---

* See note * p. 281. † Turn in french, *I beg you to forgive her.* ‡ See LONG, p. 175.
|| TO BE SO GOOD, TO BE SO KIND, are expressed by *Avoir tant de bonté* · BE SO GOOD, BE SO KIND, in the imperative, *Ayez la bonté ;* not *Soyez si bon.*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I thank you. I will[173] not deprive you of it. I do not care (for it.)
remercier *vouloir* *(kk) priver* – *se soucier* *en*

I have bought it with the intention of giving[154] it away. Have you
acheter *dans* *dessein* *donner* – *En*[70]

got another? Yes, I have[70]. Is this your new[22] watch? Yes, it is. It
[70] *un autre?* , N.B. *Est-ce ici* *neuve* *montre?* , *ce* [70] [62]

is silver; I thought[221] it was gold. My uncle has promised me a gold
d'argent; *pensais* [140] [62] [140] *d'or.* *oncle* *d'or*

one, if I get a prize this year. I wish[221] you may[70]. N.B. Ah!
en [70], *remporter* *prix* *(bb)* [233] *souhaiter* *en remporties un.* *Ah!*

is it[62] you? How glad I am to see you! If you had not called upon
N.B. ‖ [185] *aise* [168] *voir!* *aviez* [266]

me now, I would have called upon you this afternoon. I wanted[260]
à présent, [266] *(bb)* *après-midi.* [140]

to see you. We go to the play to-night; will you come with us?
aller *comédie* * [225] ; † *venir* ‖

Will your cousin[134] be there? I think[221] she will[70]; I will go; for I long
– † *cousine f.* (e) p. 74. *penser* N.B. † ; *car* ‡

(very much) to see her. She is a most amiable[22] young lady. You
fort [168] *voir* [65] *des plus aimables* *jeune* *demoiselle.*§

do not know (how much) I love and esteem her. I always think
– *savoir* *combien* *aimer* *estimer* [184] *penser*

of her, but I (am afraid)[221] she never thinks of me. What reason
[200] , *craindre* [190] [200] [62] *raison*

have you to think so? Because, when I meet her, she does not
[168] *le* [54] ‖ *Parce que,* *rencontrer,* – ‖

take any notice of me. You should[176] speak to her. You should
faire *aucune attention* *à* *devoir* *(o)* [176]

call upon her. I (am afraid) of offending[154] her. I know[221] she has
(kk) [266] *craindre* *déplaire* [202] *lui* *savoir*

a great regard for you, but I can not say that she loves you.
– *beaucoup de respect* *pour* , *(kk) dire* *(bb)* N.B.

Yet, I recollect that one day, as I was speaking of you to her,
Cependant, *se rappeler* *un* *jour,* *comme* [155] *(o)* ,

she asked me if I knew[140] you well. I told her that I did[70],
demander *connaître* *bien* *dire* (f) p. 79. *(bb)* N.B. ; ¶ N.B.

---

* *Comédie* in french, does not mean *Comedy* only, but is said of any kind of plays acted upon a stage, and also of the *house* itself where such plays are acted; you may also express the word *Play* by *Spectacle*. *Théâtre* in french is generally understood of that part of the house called the *stage*; yet it is said also of the *house* itself.

† See note * p. 143. ‡ See the impersonal verb LONG, p. 175.

§ *Demoiselle* is said of all ladies who have never been married, whatever their age may be; *Dame* is said of all ladies who are or have been married.

‖ Express *Not* by *ne* only, before the verb, as *aucune* which follows it, supplies the place of *pas* or *point*.

¶ You may express *I did* by *Oui* only, or you may repeat the verb *Connaître*, and say, I did *know* you.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and she seemed[197] pleased (at it.) If she is at the theatre to night,
paraître *bien aise* *en* *à* *comédie* * [235]

I will tell her what [84] you have told me. I shall be much obliged
bien *obligé*

to you, if you do. I see a gentleman in that box yonder who
(o) , † *monsieur* *(bb)* *loge* *là-bas* [75] ‡

owes me (a great deal) of money, but I dare not ask him for it, for
devoir – *beaucoup* *argent,* *oser* § , *de*

fear of giving him [9]pain; yet I am in great want (of it;) and
peur *faire* [154] [162] *peine ;* *cependant,* *avoir* *grand* *besoin* *en ;*

as (you are acquainted with him,) I will be obliged to you, if you
comme *vous vous connaissez* ‖ , *(o)* ,

will tell him so, the first time you have an opportunity to
[144] *dire* (f) p. 79. *le* [54]. *fois (s)*. [142] [24] *occasion* [168]

mention it to him. Who, Mr. A? I know him very well. He is
parler *en (o)* *Qui,* *Mons. A ?* *connaître* *très* - *bien.*

a very honest man; he will pay you, you may be sure of it. I
honnête (i) ; *payer* , *pouvoir* *sûr*

answer for him as for myself. I suppose[221] he has forgotten it.
répondre [200] *comme* [200] *moi-même.* *s'imaginer* *oublier*

My sisters were talking this morning of going[154] to drink tea[7] at
[155] *parler* *(bb)* *matin* *aller* [172] *prendre* *thé*

your [208]house this afternoon. Shall you be there? Certainly, I shall[70].
N.B. [2] *après-midi.* (e) p. 74. *Certainement,* N.B.

I should not like to lose that opportunity of seeing them. I want
aimer [169] *(bb)* *occasion* [154] [260]

to return[265] them the book which[74] they have lent me, and to thank
N.B. (f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. *prêter* , *remercier*

them (for it.) I have been told that one of them is going to be
en [92] *une* ¶ – [155] [172]

married[261]. Is it true? They[90] talk of it, but I do not know whether
se marier. *vrai ?* N.B. *parler* , *si*

it is true or not. Ask [162]her. I dare not ask her such a thing;
ou non. *Demander le* (f) p. 79. *oser* (f) p. 79. [23] *chose ;*

she would be angry with me. I met[197] them walking together
fâché [29] [200] *rencontrer* *à la promenade* *ensemble*

the other day, and I related[197] to them what had[228] happened to us,
autre , *raconter* *(o)* [84] *était* *arriver* *(o)* ,

after we had left[159] them; they laughed (at it) (very much.) They
après que [197] *quittées* ; ¶ *rire* [197] *en* *beaucoup.* ¶

---

* See note * p. 303. † Here you may express *Do* by the verb *Faire*, or you may repeat the verb and the pronouns, if you *tell it her.*

‡ Turn; I see in that box yonder a *gentleman who &c.* § See note ‖ p. 296.

‖ Leave out *with him*; as *Vous vous connaissez* means, you are *acquainted with each other.*

¶ Mind the *gender* of the *noun* which this pronoun represents.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

told[127] me they wished[140] that they had been with us. I also[184] shewed[127]
dire 221 * *souhaiter* (*nn*) *aussi* *montrer*

them the letter which you have written to me, desiring me not[190] to
(f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. *écrite* 159 (*o*) , *pour prier* N.B. 168

mention it to them, for fear[218] your father (should come) to know of
parler *en* (*o*) , *de peur que* 195 *vint* *à* *savoir* –

it; but I requested them not[190] to mention it to him. Have they
le; *prier* 137 N.B. *de* *parler* *en* (*o*) *

mentioned it to you? No, they have not[70]. They only[184] told[126] me
en (*o*) 191, * N.B. * *seulement* *ont dit*

that they had met you, and that you had[227] walked (a little way)
(*bb*) N.B. * *avaient* , *étiez* *se promener* *un peu*

with them. They were (very well) pleased[29] with you. I was not
* * *très* – *content* N.B. 200

less so[54] with them. They have invited me to come and spend an
moins *le* *d'* * * *inviter* 169 *venir* (*nn*) 271.

evening with them. I intend[125] to pay them[162] a visit soon [183].
234 *avec* * *avoir dessein* 166 *rendre* (f) p. 79. *bientôt.* N.B.

Pray give my love to them, and tell them[162] so. I will[70]. Is not
faire *amitiés* (*o*) † , (f) p. 79. *le* N.B.

your country [25]house finished yet[183]? No, it is not, and I do not
de campagne 134 *finir* 158 N.B. 191, * 70 , –

know when it will be. My father does not like it now. He says
savoir *quand* * 70 – *aimer* * (h) p. 80.

that it is too near the road. He wants[200] to sell it, and [204]
(*bb*) N.B. * *trop près de* *route.* *avoir envie* 168 * (h) p. 80. *d'en*70

build another a little further in the country. I wonder he does
bâtir 120 *un peu* *loin* 41 213 230 *s'étonner* 221 –

not like it; it seems[125] a good house, and it is in a pleasant
* ; * *avoir apparence* – ‡ , * 213 *agréable* 32

situation. He is going[155] to add a terrace to it, and make a moat
– *aller* 172 *ajouter* *terrasse* , *fossé*

round it. Have you been in the park? They[90] are making a pond
autour 64 *parc* ? N.B. – *faire* 155 *étang*

in the middle of it. (Here is) some fruit. Will you have[174] any?
milieu 64 247 9 (*p*)

I shall be obliged to you, if you will give me some. Take some.
obligé (*o*) , 144 (*p*) *Prendre* (*p*)

Take some more. (There[246] is) plenty in the garden. We have
(*p*) *davantage.* *en* 70 *abondance* 213 *jardin.* *en* 70

(so much) that we do not[192] know what to do (with it.) Have you
tant (*bb*) N.B. – N.B. *que* 172 *faire* 200 ‖ *en.*

---

* Mind the *gender* of the *noun* which this pronoun represents.

† Express this sentence thus: *I pray you to give my love to them, and to tell them &c.*

‡ Turn this sentence thus: *It has a good appearance.* ‖ *With* is implied in the pronoun *en.*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

been where I told[186] you? No, I have not[70]. Why do not you go?
être où ai dit [191], N.B. *Pourquoi – y* [70] [183]

Are you not ready yet[183]? Yes, I am. Is your sister ready? I
[186] *prêt encore* N.B. , [70] [134] [29]

(am afraid) she is not. Go and tell her[162] to (get ready) as fast as
craindre [221] [146] [70] *Aller – (nn) dire* (f) p. 79. [162] *s'apprêter* [43] *vite* [43]

she can[162]. Is this the book of which you were speaking to me?
pourra. Est-ce ici [74] [155] *(o)*

Yes, it is. Have you read it? Yes, I have[70]. Is it entertaining? Yes,
[70] *lire* N.B. *amusant?*

very. Read it. You know Mr. B.; do you not[202]? Yes, I do.[70]
extrêmement. connaître Monsieur ; n'est-ce pas? Oui, N.B.

He is a very clever young man, but I (am afraid[196]) he is a little (too
[65] *très - habile*[32] *jeune , craindre* [221] [146] *un peu*

much) addicted to gaming. Has he ever asked you for money? Yes,
trop adonné [7]*jeu. jamais* * [9]*argent?* ,

he has[70]. Did[186] you lend him[162] any? Yes, I [196]did[70]. I am very sorry
N.B. *Avez prêté* (f) p. 79. *(p)* , *ai* N.B. *fâché*

(for[209] it,) for I do not think that he will ever return it to you. Do
en , car – (bb) N.B. *rendre* [143] *(o)* –

you think he will[70]? Yes, I do[70]. He is a very worthy[32] young
[231] [145] N.B. , N.B. [65] *de beaucoup de mérite*

man. I wish[221] you would recommend him to some of your friends
[180] *vouloir recommander* [96]

who could serve him. I will[70]. I esteem him (very much) myself,
pût servir N.B. *estimer fort (m)* N.B.

and I beg you by all that is dear to you, not[190] to mention to him
supplier par tout ce qui cher (o) , N.B. *de parler de (o)*

what[84] I have said to you, for I would never pardon you for it. I
(m) p. 82. *(o)* , *car* [190] *pardonner* *

will[70] not. Only[184] tell him[162], when you see[142] him, that I shall be
N.B. *Seulement* (f) p. 79. *voir* , *(bb)* N.B.

much obliged to him, if he will do me the favour that he has pro-
bien obligé (o) , [144] *faire grâce* [74] *pro-*

mised me. I will tell him[162] so[54]. I like them who shew themselves
mettre[159] (f) p. 79. *le aimer* [66] *montrer se*

such as they are. (So do I.) Tell him[162] to call upon me as soon as
tels que Et moi aussi. (f) p. 79. [162] [206] [46] *tôt* [43]

he can[142]. I will[70]. Now, I must wish you good morning. Come
pouvoir. N.B. *À présent,* [181] *souhaiter* [7] [234] N.B. *Venir*

and see us again soon. You may[178] be sure that I will[70]. I will
– (nn) revoir † *bientôt. pouvoir sûr (bb)* N.B. N.B.

come as often as I can, whilst I am so near you. I hope you will[70].
[43] [43] [142] , *pendant que* [142] *près de* [221] N.B

* See note ‖ page 296. † *Re* prefixed to a *verb*, expresses the word *again*.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

74. When WHO, THAT, WHICH are the nominative of a verb, they
WHO, THAT, WHICH nominatif *, ils*

(are expressed) by *qui;* I see a gentleman yonder who is waiting
s'exprimer (ii) N.B. *par ; voir monsieur* † *là-bas* 75 155 *attendre*

for me. It[68] is from him I have bought that horse which is lame.
201 N.B. 221 *acheter (bb) boiteux.*

He has another which suits me. I have one which, I think, will die.
en[70] *un autre convenir en*[70] *un , croire, mourir.*

When WHOM, THAT, WHICH are the object of a verb, they are
WHOM, THAT, WHICH objet * , –

expressed by *que;* You know the gentleman we have just[244] met.
s'exprimer ; ‡ ‡ (s) venons de rencontrer.

It[68] is from him I have bought the horse that you have seen. He has
N.B. 221 *voir. en*[70]

another which I want to buy, to replace that which I have lost.
120 260 *acheter,* 170 *remplacer* 88 *perdre.*

WHOSE, *of* WHOM, *of* WHICH, are expressed by *dont;* He is the
WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH – s'exprimer ; 65

gentleman whose horse has won the race. He is not the person
† *gagné le prix de la course.* 65 *personne f.*

of whom you complain. No, he is[70] not. He is a man of whom I have
se plaindre, , 65 *(r)* 65

a good opinion. The horse of which I was speaking to you is sold.
24 29 – *parler* 155 *(o) vendre.*

75. *Qui, que, dont,* whatever be the order of the words which
, , , *quelque* 117 *soit*

correspond to them in english, must be placed immediately after the
correspondre 63 *en , devoir – se placer immédiatement*

noun to which they relate; A gentleman has been here who
76 62 *se rapporter (ii);* † *il est venu ici* ‖

wanted[260] to speak to you. Is the man (come back) whom I had
vouloir 140 178 *(o)* 134 *revenir avais*

sent (for him)? Yes, he is[70]. Is the money to be had (turn, *can*
envoyer le querir ? , N.B. *Peut-on* 92 *avoir*

one[90] *have the money)* which we are in need of? No, it is not.[70]
(kk) avons 24 *besoin* 208 191 , N.B.

N. B. *Dont,* (besides its being placed) immediately after the noun
, *outre qu'il doit se placer*

to which it relates, must also be followed immediately (by the) nomi-
76 *il , doit aussi être suivi du*

native of the verb which[74] follows it; as, (That is) the gentleman
(m) p. 82. *suivre* 54; , 247 †

* See note *, p. 204, the distinction between the *nominative* and the *object* of a verb.
† *Monsieur*, not *Gentilhomme*, which in the french language means *Nobleman*.
‡ See page 140, and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*.
‖ Turn this sentence thus; There has been here *a gentleman who* wanted &c.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

whose horse I wanted[260] to buy. He is a man whose probity I know,
vouloir [140] [172] *acheter.* [65] *probité* * ,

a man whose talents I admire, and whose friendship I value much.
, *amitié* *priser fort.*

If the sentence can not be turned in this manner, WHOSE must
phrase *pouvoir (kk) – se tourner* *de (bb)* *manière,* *WHOSE* *doit (kk)*

be expressed by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles,* agreeably to
– s'exprimer *par* , , , , *suivant* –

the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun relates[125];
genre [3]*nombre* [76] *se rapporter;*

He is a man to whose family I owe every thing, and in whose hands
[65] *famille* *devoir* [107] , *main*

all my property is. They are people upon whose word one may depend.
bien [65] [9]*gens* [229] *sur* *parole on* *peut* *compter.*

76. After a preposition WHOM is expressed by *qui* for both genders
WHOM *– s'exprimer* *les deux*

and numbers; WHICH by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles;*
les deux ; *WHICH* , , , ;

from WHICH by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles;* to, at WHICH
from *WHICH* , , , ; *to, at* *WHICH*

by *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles,* agreeably to the gender
, , , , *suivant* –

and number of the noun to which it relates; You know the gentle-
[3] *il se rapporter;* *

man to whom I have spoken. It[62] is he who has brought the parcel
parler. N.B. [52] *apporter* *paquet*

in which your letter was. (This is) the carriage in which he came[130].
[140] [247] *voiture* *est venu.*

Are these the horses to which he is so much attached? They are not
Sont-ce ici *si fort* *attuché?*

fit[20] for the use which they are intended for[208]. Let us walk along
propre [200] *usage* *les* [92] *destine.* *à* *Se promener* † *le long de*

the road in which we walked[137] yesterday. What is the name of
route *(v)* *se promener* † *hier.* [22]

the place in which we are? I like to know the name of the places
[2] *endroit* *(v)* *aimer* [169] *

through which I go. Have[237] you inquired for the town from which
(v) *passer.* *Vous êtes-vous* *informé* *de* *(v)*

he comes? I could not hear any thing on which I can rely.
venir? *ai* [136] *pu* [99] *apprendre* [99] *(u)* [145] *compter.*

77. WHO, WHOM used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun
WHO, WHOM *employé absolument,* *c'est-à-dire* *rapport*

mentioned in the sentence, implies the word PERSON understood,
(dont il soit fait mention) *phrase* , *renfermer* *PERSON* *sous-entendu,*

---

* See p. 140, and 152. the distinction between *Savoir* and *Connaître.* † See *Se* BLÂMER, p. 114.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

and is expressed by *qui;* Whom did[126] you meet? Whom were
– *s'exprimer* * ; *avez* *trouvé?* 140

you with? Whom did[126] you give it[55] to? I do not know whom
126 203 *avez* *donné* 203 – *savoir*

you mean[125]. I do not know whom you are speaking of.
vouloir dire. – – 155 206

78. WHOSE used in the same sense, i. e. without reference to a
WHOSE employé même sens, c'est-à-dire rapport

noun expressed, implies also the word PERSON understood, and is
exprimé, renfermer aussi PERSON –

expressed by *de qui*, when it is used for of WHOM; and by *à qui*,
s'exprimer * , – *s'employer* * *of WHOM;* ,

when it is used for to WHOM; Whose son are you? Whose daughter
– * *to WHOM;* 136

is she? Whose relations are they? Whose house is that, or whom
parent *cette,* †

does that house belong to? Whose property is it, or whom does it
– *(bb)* *est* 203 — 62, † –

belong to? Whose children are these, or whom do these children
est 203 *ces,* † *(bb)*

belong to? Do you not know whose they are? They are my sister's.
– 136 ‡

WHICH used to ask a question, is sometimes[183] joined like an
WHICH 169 *faire* , – *quelquefois* *se joindre* *, *comme*

adjective to the noun which follows it; as, WHICH MAN? Some-
adjectif *suivre* 54; *comme, WHICH MAN?*

times it is joined to it like a substantive by the preposition OF; as,
il – *se joindre* * 63 *substantif* *par* *OF;*

WHICH *of* THESE MEN? and sometimes it is used without (a noun
WHICH of THESE MEN? – *s'employer* * *être suivi*

after it,) but with reference to a noun expressed in the former[49] part
d'un nom, avec rapport exprimé premier partie

of the sentence; as, It[62] is one of these men; WHICH IS IT?
phrase; , N.B. *(bb)* ; *WHICH IS IT?*

79. When WHICH interrogative is joined like an adjective to the
WHICH interrogatif – *se joindre* * *comme*

noun which follows it[54], it is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles,*
suivre le , il – *s'exprimer* * , , , ,

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; Which horse will
suivant – *genre* *nombre* ; 173 ‖

you ride? Which road shall we go by[203]? Which inn shall we
136 *monter?* *route* 133 *aller par* *auberge* 133

(put up) at? Which is the best inn in this town? Which room
descendre 203 *meilleur* *(bb) ville?* *chambre*

---

* See N. B. under note *(ii)* page 235.
† These two modes of expression are generally rendered in the same manner in french.
‡ See note (o) p. 88. ‖ See note * p. 143.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

will you sit in? Which paper would you like to read?
173 *rester* 203 *papier* 169 *lire?*

80. When WHICH interrogative is joined like a substantive by the
WHICH – *se joindre* * *comme*
preposition OF, to the noun which follows it, or when it relates to a
OF, *suivre* 54, *il se rapporter*
noun mentioned in the foregoing part of the sentence, it is expressed
(dont il est fait mention) *premier* 29 *partie* *phrase,* 62 – *s'exprimer* *
by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, duquel, de laquelle, des &c.*
par , , , , , ,
i. e. the article *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux,* agreeably to
c'est à dire ; ; *suivant* –
gender and number, is added to the words *quel, quelle, quels, quelles;*
7 7 , – *s'ajouter* * ;
Which of these horses will you ride? Which is the easiest?
† 173 *monter?* *aisé?* 44
Which of these two roads shall we go by[203]? Which is the shortest[44]?
133 *par* *court* 29?
Which of these rooms will you sit in? Which has the finest view?
173 *rester* 203 *belle* 44 *vue?*

81. Sometimes WHICH implies the pronoun THAT or THOSE under-
WHICH *renfermer* *THAT ou THOSE* *sous-*
stood; Then it is expressed by *celui que, celle que, ceux que,*
entendu; *Alors il* – *s'exprimer* * , ,
celles que, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which
– 8 76
it relates; Which horse shall I ride? You may ride which (i. e.
36 *se rapporter;* 133 *monter* *pouvez*
that which) you please[142]. Which of these roads shall we go by?
il vous plaira. 133 *aller* 203
Go by which you like[142]. In which room shall I put your luggage?
vouloir. 133 *mettre* *bagage?*
Put it[36] in that which I told[186] you. Put it in which you will[142].
Mettre 62 36 *ai dit* 53 62 *vouloir.*

82. WHAT joined to a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned
WHAT joint , *ayant rapport* *(dont il est fait mention)*
in the sentence, is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles,* agreeably
phrase, – *s'exprimer* * , , , , *suivant*
to gender and number, in the same manner as WHICH; What place
– 7 7 *de* *manière* *que* *WHICH;* *endroit*
do you come from? What road did[136] you come by? What inn
– 133 *venir* 203 *êtes* 238 *venu* 203
will you go to[203]? Have you heard the report? No, what is it?
aller *entendu* *bruit qui court?* , 62

* See N. B. under note *(ii)* page 235. † See note * page 214.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

83. WHAT used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun
WHAT employé , c'est-à-dire rapport

expressed in the discourse, implies the word THING understood, and
exprimé [213] *discours, renfermer THING ,*

is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*. What is expressed by *que*, when it[62]
– s'exprimer ou WHAT – s'exprimer , il

is the object of a verb; What do you think of this country? What
; – [188] penser [230] .

do you intend[125] to (do with yourself)? What do you mean[125]?
– [133] avoir dessein de devenir – – [188] vouloir dire?

What do you want[260] to do with that? What is that to you?
– [133] vouloir [172] faire [200] [89] (y) fait [89] (o) [54]

WHAT (is expressed) by *quoi*, when it is used as an interjection, or
WHAT , il – s'employer – , ou

when it is governed by a preposition; What! he is not come yet[165].
[62] régir par ; ! venu encore N.B.

What! you do not answer me. Listen to me. Well! what?
– répondre [54] Ecouter (o) [56] Eh bien!

What are these people talking about? What do you meddle with?
– (bb) gens [184] parler [155] de [208] – se mêler de [208]

84. WHAT is often used in the sense of THAT WHICH: in these
WHAT – [188] s'employer [218] sens THAT WHICH: (bb)

instances, WHAT is expressed by *ce qui*, when it is the nominative
cas, WHAT – s'exprimer (m) p. 82. *il nominatif*

of a verb, and by *ce que*, when it is the object; Do you know what
, (m) p. 82. objet; – [188]

(that which) makes her angry? Do you hear what she says? I know
fâcher – – entendre

what she wants[260]. But when WHAT in the sense of THAT WHICH is
vouloir. WHAT THAT WHICH

governed by a preposition, (it is necessary) to consider whether the
régir il faut [172] considérer si

preposition comes before or after WHAT; for *of* WHAT is *de ce qui*,
venir WHAT; car of WHAT

de ce que, i. e. *of* THAT WHICH; WHAT *of* is *ce* DONT, i. e. THAT
, c'est-à-dire, of THAT WHICH; WHAT of , THAT

of WHICH; *to* WHAT is *à ce qui*, *à ce que*, i. e. *to* THAT WHICH;
of WHICH; to WHAT (m) p. 82. , to THAT WHICH;

WHAT *to* is *ce à quoi*, i. e. THAT *to* WHICH; as, You speak of what
WHAT to , THAT to WHICH; comme, parler

will never happen. What you are speaking of will never happen. Are
[199] arriver. [155] [208]

you sure of what you say? It is what you may[178] be sure of. Will
sûr (m) p. 82. dire? [65] pouvez [208]

you trust to what he proposes? What you trust to is very uncertain.
se fier proposer? [208] très - incertain.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*[*]

What! is it[62] you? Where have you been since[196] I saw[136] you?
! N.B. Où depuis que ai vu? 54

What country do you come from? What ship did[136] you come
pays 230 – 133 venir 203 navire êtes 236 venu

in? What news do you bring? What do they[90] say in town?
203 nouvelles – 133 apporter – 133 N.B. à 7ville?

Read the papers, and you will see. Which paper must I read?
Lire papier, voir. 161 133

Which of these papers do you advise me to read? Which has the
– 133 conseiller 54 168

latest[44] news? (There is) very little[6] difference; read which you
fraîche 32 246 très - peu N.B. ;

can[142] get. Now, what do you think of the news? I do not
pourrez trouver. Maintenant, – 133 penser –

believe a word of what that paper says. (There is) not a word of
croire mot (bb) 246

truth in what I have read. What shall we do now? Let us go
vrai † 136 – – aller

to the place in which we are to meet your cousin. What have you
endroit (v) 242 172 rencontrer 133

done with your stick? I do not know what I have done (with it). I
faire 200 bâton? – savoir en 55

(am afraid) I have left it at the inn at which we have[227] stopped
craindre (nn) laisser 55 à auberge (v) nous nous sommes arrêtés

to dinner. If your father asks you what you have done (with it),
dîner. 54 en 55 ,

what will you answer[202] him? Indeed, I shall not[192] know what to
133 répondre lui 54 Ma foi, N.B. 172

say. What would you advise me to say? I will tell you sincerely
dire. 133 conseiller 54 168 † dire 54 sincèrement

what I would say. Well! what? What would you say? I would
Eh bien! 138

tell him[162] the truth. It[62] is what I was thinking of. What is your
(f) p. 79. vérité. N.B. 155 à 208.

reason for leaving this country? Because I see nothing here to which
raison de quitter (bb) 230 ‡ Parce que 99 ici (u)

I can[145] apply. I want to go abroad. What country would you
puisse s'appliquer. 260 dans les pays étrangers. 230

like to go to? To France or Italy? Which country would you
aimer 169 208 6 6Italie? 230 133

advise me[54] to go to? Which of those countries is the most pleasant?
conseiller 168 202 plus agréable?

---

[*] See note [*] p. 281.

† When the French speak of an action which they are on the point of doing, they do not use the future as the English do; they express *Shall, Will* by the *present* tense of the verb *Aller*, to go; je *vais*, tu *vas*, il *va*, nous *allons*, &c. with the following verb in the *infinitive*; so turn this sentence thus, *What are we going*[155] *to do now?* ‡ Turn; *What reason have you to leave this country?*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

You have seen them both; which do you like best? If you will
voir 122 ; – 133 *aimer le mieux?* 144

come with me, I will go to which you like[142]. I will consider (of it.)
58 , *vouloir.* *penser* *y* 54

(That is) the gentleman whose[75] house we have just[244] passed by[203].
247 *monsieur* N.B. *venons de* *passer* *près de*

It is the house in which we lived[140] formerly. Is it[65] the house which
65 *(v)* *demeurer autrefois.* 183

your father wanted[200] to buy, and for which he offered[136] (so much*)
vouloir 140 172 *acheter,* *a offert* *tant* N.B.

money? Yes, it is. Do you know that young lady? Yes, I do.[70]
argent? *Oui,* 70 – 133 * *(bb)* , N.B.

Who is she? Whose daughter is she? She is married[29]. Whose
marié. N.B.

wife is she? Whom is she married to? She is the wife of that
femme 158 203 65 *(bb)*

gentleman whom we were speaking of. I know whose daughter she
155 203 *

is. I know whose relations they are. Whose handkerchief is this
* *parent* *mouchoir*

which I have found on the staircase? I do not know whose it is.
trouver *sur* *escalier?* – * 62

I do not know whom it belongs to. What shall I do (with it)?
– * *appartenir* 203 *faire* *en* 54

Take it[56] back to the place in which you found[136] it. Which door
Remettre 62 – *endroit* *(v)* *avez trouvé* 55 *porte*

must I go through? Which of these doors must I go through?
181 133 *passer* *par* 203 181 133 203

Go through which you like[142]. Have you heard what I said[136] to
Passer *voudrez.* *entendre* *ai dit* *(o)*

you? No, what is it? The man you trust to deceives you. The
55 191 , *(y)* *se fier* † 203 *tromper* 54

company he keeps, is not honest. You do not know all the harm
compagnie *fréquenter,* *honnête.* – * *mal*

does you. I do not[192] know what to do. I wish[221] you would tell
faire 54 – N.B. * 172 *faire.* 180 *vouloir*

me what I must do. You do not know what a disagreeable situation
54 181 – * 20 *désagréable*

I am in. What must I do? Do what I told you. I do not see what
203 181 133 *Faire* 136 55 –

you can do better. If you had believed me, what you complain of
(kk) *de mieux.* *aviez* 55 , *se plaindre* † 203

would not have happened. I am sorry for what has happened to you.
être 228 *arriver.* *fâché* 200 138 *(o)*

---

* See page 140, 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître.* † See *reflective* verbs, p. 114.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

85. The possessive[22] pronouns *le* MIEN, *la* MIENNE, *les* MIENS, *les*
possessif[29] *pronom*

MIENNES, MINE; *le* TIEN, *la* TIENNE, *&c.* THINE; *le* SIEN, *la* SIENNE, *&c.*
MINE; &c. THINE; &c.

HIS, HERS must be of the same gender and number as the noun to
HIS, HERS devoir être genre * *nombre que*

which they relate; Are our horses ready? Yours and mine are[70],
[76] *se rapporter;* [1] [134] *prêt*[29] *?* [72],

but hers is[70] not. Get hers ready as soon as you can[143]. Have they[90]
[72] *Apprêter* † [43] *tôt* [43] *pourrez.* [133] N.B.

cleaned our boots? Yours are cleaned[29], but his and mine are[70] not.
décrotté [1] *botte?* *décrotté,* N.B. [72]

He does not want[260] his now. Clean mine. I want mine directly.
– *avoir besoin de* *tout à l'heure.*

86. After the verb BE used in the sense of the verb BELONG, the
Après verbe BE employé[213] *sens BELONG,*

possessive words MINE, THINE, HIS, &c. are expressed by the same pro-
[29] [82] *mot MINE, THINE, HIS, &c. – s'exprimer par mêmes*

nouns as would be used[92] with the verb BELONG; thus, MINE, *à* MOI;
que – on emploierait BELONG; ainsi, MINE, ;

THINE, *à* TOI; HIS, *à* LUI; HERS, *à* ELLE; OURS, *à* NOUS; YOURS, *à* VOUS;
THINE, ; HIS, ; HERS, ; OURS, ; YOURS, ;

THEIRS, *à* EUX, masc. *à* ELLES, fem.; Is not this fan[134] yours? No, Sir;
THEIRS, , , ; [2] *éventail* [191] , ;

it is not mine. I think[221] it is my sister's. Yes, it is hers. Are these
[62] *penser* [62] ‡ , [62] [13]

horses yours or his? They are not ours; They are my cousin's.
[134] *ou* [62] ; [62] *cousin.*‡

87. The possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. joined[29] by
[29] [82] *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. joint* N.B.

the preposition OF to the noun to which they relate in this kind
OF [76] [62] *se rapporter,*[213] [1] *sorte*

of idioms, A FRIEND *of* MINE, A BOOK *of* YOURS, and such like, are
[8] *idiotisme, A FRIEND of MINE, A BOOK of YOURS, autres semblables, –*

expressed in french by the possessive article; thus, *of* MINE, *de* MES;
exprimer en par [82] *; ainsi, of MINE, ;*

of THINE, *de* TES; of HIS, of HERS, *de* SES; of OURS, *de* NOS; of
of THINE, ; of HIS, of HERS, ; of OURS, ; of

YOURS, *de* VOS; of THEIRS, *de* LEURS, which, agreeably to the rules
YOURS, ; of THEIRS, , [74] , suivant – règle

on the article, are placed before the noun, which must always be
sur , – se placer [206] , [74] *devoir être*

plural in french; as, I (have just[244]) met an acquaintance of mine
; , venir de rencontrer connaissance

---

* Repeat *of the same.* † *Ready* is expressed in the word *Apprêter.* ‡ See note (o) p. 83.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

who told[36] me that a friend of ours is dead. Is not Mrs A.
a dit 55 *(bb)* N.B. *mourir.* *Madame* 134

a relation of yours? A son of hers is dead. A cousin of mine has
parente

married[261] a daughter of hers, but she is no[8] relation of mine. They
épouser N.B. , 190 N.B.

are neighbours of ours. I am going to dine with an aunt of theirs.
voisin 155 *aller* 172 *tante*

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Your mother and mine are gone[158] to (take[263] a walk) in our fields;
aller 172 N.B. 213 *champ;*

Let us go and (take a[263] walk) in yours. Is not that house yours?
– – *(nn)* N.B. *(bb)* 134

No, it is not ours; it is my uncle's. I should have taken it[55] for
191 , 62 ; 62 *oncle.* † *prise* 62 *pour*

yours. Ours is not so fine as his, and his is better situated than
42 42 , (b) p. 72. *situé* 158

ours. Let us go (this way); I want to call at a friend's of mine.
– – *par ici;* 260 266 206 *une amie*

I think she is a friend of yours too. Who? Mrs. A. She is an
221 65 *aussi.* *Madame* 65

old acquaintance of ours, but she is no friend of mine. I do not
ancienne ‡ *connaissance* , 190 –

like her. She is incessantly[194] talking of herself, or of some relation
aimer 54 – *sans cesse* 155 *elle-même,* 96 *parent*

of hers. Let us walk into this room. What a pretty work[26] bag
– – *Entrer* 213 *(bb)* 82 20 *joli* *ouvrage* *sac*[25]

you have got there. Is it yours? No, it is not mine; it is my
270 *là.* 62 191 , 62 ; 62

sister's. This[88] is mine. Hers is (very much) like[202] yours. Hers
† N.B. – *fort* 184 *ressembler au*

is not so pretty as mine. How long[186] have you had yours?
42 42 *Combien y a-t-il que vous avez* ‖

I got[136] mine about the same time that my sister got hers. Yours
ai eu *vers* *tems* 136

looks[200] better than hers. Yes, because I take more care[8] of my
avoir apparence 33 *que* , *prendre* *soin* N.B.

clothes than she does of hers. (What is the matter with) your
habit 47 *faire* *Qu' est-ce qu' a* 281 –

neighbour? A sister of his is dead. She went[197] (a few days ago) to
voisin? *mort.*[158] *aller* *il y a quelques jours* 172

see a child of hers who is at a relation of ours in the country,
206 220 ,

and she died[186] there. You have got a handkerchief of mine. A
est mort 186 *y* 55 270 *mouchoir*

* See note * p. 26. † See note (o) p. 88. ‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun. ‖ See § p. 353

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

handkerchief of yours! I have no handkerchief of yours. I have
190 *n'en* 70

none but what are[145] mine. What! is this[134] yours? Yes, it is mine.
pas 199 *soient* 83 *!* 88 N.B. , 62

You are greatly mistaken: It is not yours; it is my mother's.
– *fort* 184 *se tromper:* 62 62 *

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

88. The demonstrative[32] pronouns *celui, celle,* THIS, THAT; *ceux,*
démonstratif 29 *THIS, THAT;*

celles, THESE, THOSE must be of the same gender and number as the
, *THESE, THOSE devoir être genre †nombre que*

noun to which they relate; This steeple is not so high as that of St.
76 62 *se rapporter; (bb) clocher* 42 *haut* 42

Paul. This church is larger than that which we have just[244] passed
(bb) église grande 41 76 *venons de passer*

by[206]. These trees are finer[41] than those which are in your park.
près de (bb) arbre beau 74 *parc.*

N. B. Observe that *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express that
Observer (bb) N.B. *exprimer la*

local[32] distinction which is implied in the words THIS, THESE; THAT,
de lieu 74 *renfermé* 156 *THIS, THESE; THAT,*

THOSE; therefore, if you wish to make that distinction in french,
THOSE; c'est pourquoi, vouloir 172 *faire (bb) en ,*

(you must[181]) add to these words, *ci* to denote the nearest[44] object, and
il faut N.B. *ajouter (bb)* , 170 *désigner près* 32 7 ,

là to denote the remotest; This[13] steeple is not so high as that. That[13]
170 *éloigné* 44 ; N.B. 42 N.B.

church is much larger than this. These[13] trees are finer than those.
beaucoup 41 N.B. 41

But *ci, là,* are not requisite, when the demonstrative pronoun is fol-
nécessaire, 32

lowed by a noun or by a relative pronoun; as, This gown is prettier[41]
suivre 200 200 32 ; , *(bb) robe joli* 29

than that of your sister. This is not so fine as that which I shewed you.
42 *belle* 42 *ai montrée.*[55]

89. Sometimes THIS, THAT are used without reference to a noun
THIS, THAT – s'employer rapport

expressed, but imply the word THING understood; then they (are
exprimé, renfermer THING sous-entendu; alors 62 –

expressed), THIS by *ceci;* THAT by *cela;* Give me this. What will
s'exprimer, THIS ; THAT ; 172

you do with that? Take this. Let that alone. I will take this
faire de Prendre Laisser – ‡

* See note (o) page 88. † Repeat *of the same.* ‡ See note † page 312.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Do you hear that man? He is scolding[155] that woman who has
– [188] *entendre* † – *gronder*

been beating those children. Look at that house. Is not that a
[155] *battu* *Regarder* [201] *N'est-ce pas là*

good house? Yes, it is a good house, but this is a better[29] one.
[29] , [65] , (b) p. 72. ‡

Nay! I think that is better. Those rooms seem to me to be
Oh non! *penser* [221] (b) p. 72. *paraître (o)* [54] – –

larger[41] than these; besides, that is much better situated than this.
grand [29] ; *outre cela,* (b) p. 72. *situé* [158]

I do not see that. I think this is as pleasantly situated as that. Do
– *voir* [221] [43] *agréablement* [158] [43] –

you admire those flowers? What flowers? Those that[74] we see in that
[188] *admirer* *fleur?* [82] (m) p. 82.

garden before that house. How do you call this? This is a poppy,
devant *Comment* – [188] *appeler* *pavot,*

and that is a marigold. I do not like that kind of flowers; I like
souci. – *aimer* *sorte* [8] ;

those that[74] have a pleasant smell. What do you think of these? Oh,
(m) p. 82. *agréable*[22] *odeur.* [88] – *penser* *Oh,*

I like these better than those. These smell sweet. The action of
(b) p. 72. *ont une douce odeur.* *action*

Virginius sacrificing his daughter, is as strong and more pure than
Virginius *sacrifier* , [43] *fort* [29] *pur* [29]

that of Brutus condemning his son; nevertheless this is glorious[29]
Brutus *condamner* ; *néanmoins* *glorieux(g)*

and that is not. Virginius secured only the honour of his family;
[70] *sauvait* *seulement* *'honneur* *famille;*

Brutus saved that of the laws and of the country. (There was) much[8]
sauvait *loi* *patrie.* *Il y avait* N.B.

pride in the action of Brutus, perhaps there was nothing but pride;
orgueil , *peut-être* *n'y* [246] *avait-il* – *que* [9] ;

there was in that of Virginius only honesty and courage; but this did[127]
[9]*'honnêteté* [9] ; *faire*

(every thing) for his family, that did[127] every thing, or seemed[127] to
[107] *pour* , *faire* [107] , *ou* *sembler* [172]

do every thing for Rome, and Rome, which considered[136] the action of
faire , *a considéré*

Virginius as that of an honest man and of a good father, consecrated
comme *honnête* , *a* [136] *consacré*

the action of Brutus as that of a hero; is not that just?
comme *héros;* [184] *juste?*

---

* See note * page 281. † Read note (*bb*), p. 217, before you write this exercise.
‡ If you express *This* by the pronoun, you must leave out *a* and *one;* but you may express *This is* by *Voici*, rule 247; then you express *a* by *une*, and *one* by *en*, before *Voici;* thus, *En voici une &c.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.*

90. When the words ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, are used indefi-
Quand ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, s'employer (dans
nitely, i. e. without reference to any particular[36] person, they
un sens indéfini,) rapport quelque en particulier personne,
are expressed by *ON*; but though *ON* represents WE, THEY, PEOPLE,
s'exprimer (ii) N.B. *quoique représenter WE, THEY, PEOPLE,*
which are plural, it always requires the verb in the third person
plurier, il [184] *demander à troisième*
singular; People are spreading[155] strange[10] reports. They say that
au singulier; – faire[125] *courir étrange bruit . dire (bb)* N.B.
we have been beaten. Who says so? They say so. People say so.
nous battre[159]. *le*[54] [54]
(You[181] must not) believe every thing that people say.
Il N.B. *ne faut pas croire tout ce que*

91. All[29] indefinite[32] expressions like these[36], IT IS THOUGHT,
Tout indéfini[29] [7] *semblables à* N.B., *IT IS THOUGHT,*
IT IS SAID, &c. are also expressed by *ON*, by changing the verb (from
IT IS SAID, &c. – [188] *s'exprimer par , (hh) changeant*
its) passive sense into the active; It is thought that (there will be)
du passif – en – actif; † *penser (bb)* N.B. *il y aura*
a peace. It is said that the preliminaries are signed. It will soon[184]
– paix. (bb) N.B. *préliminaire signer*[158], *bientôt*
be known if it be true. It was asserted yesterday on the exchange.
+ si cela [217] *vrai.* † *assurait hier à bourse.*

92. English[38] passive verbs used indefinitely are generally[188] changed
Anglais [29] [32] [7] *employés – ordinairement se changer*
into their active signification in french, and take *ON* for nominative;
dans [68] *en , prendre ;*
but by changing thus the sense of the verb, the noun or pronoun
(hh) ainsi , s
which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its[17] object in
[74] *en , devenir en*[54] *en*
french; How can that be believed, when such great preparations for
; pouvoir [99] † *croire,* [10] *si* [33] *préparatif*
war (are going on)? I was told yesterday that it has been resolved
7guerre [155] *faire –* † [137] *(bb)* N.B. † *résolu*
to (carry on) the war. Do you know if the letters have been received
[168] *continuer* † *reçu*
which (were expected) by the last[29] mail? They have not been received
[74] *attendait* [140] *dernier poste?* † *reçues* [159]

* Though in point of order, this is the proper place for these pronouns, yet as they are easy, and of less consequence than the other exercises which follow them; not to break the chain of the most useful rules, I would advise the learner, after having read the rules on the *indefinite pronouns*, page 218, and following, and written rules 90, 91 and 92, to pass over the rest of the rules and go to the exercise on the *verbs*, the knowledge of which is necessary to have a complete idea of the language. The rest of this exercise may be written after all the other exercises.

† A *Passive* verb is made *Active*, by leaving out the verb *be*, and making the past participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; as *It is thought;* turn, *One thinks. It has been said;* turn, *One has said*

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

yet[188]. They are expected to-day. Somebody has been sent to know
N.B. * *attendre aujourd'hui.* [95] * *envoyé pour*

why they have not been brought sooner. We have been much deceived.
pourquoi * *apportées tôt.*[41] * *fort trompés.*

93. ONESELF, HIMSELF used indefinitely, and ITSELF after a pre-
ONESELF, HIMSELF dans un sens indéfini, ITSELF

position are expressed by *Soi;* Let[248] every one think of himself.
– *s'exprimer* † *par* ; *Que* [165] *penser* [200]

Every one for himself, and god for all. That is harmless in itself.
, *touts* [89] *innocent de*

Vice is odious of itself. The earth contains all seeds [7] in itself.
[7] ● *odieux terre contenir* [29] *semence en*

94. SOME repeated in a sentence of two parts, is, in the first part
SOME répété phrase partie, , [29]

les uns, in the second part, *les autres;* Some like one thing, some
, [29] , ; *aimer* ,

like[70] another. Some will have it one way, some will have it another.
en aimer [174] [54] *d'une manière,* [174] [54] *d'une autre.*

95. SOMEBODY is *quelqu'un;* Somebody has told me so[55]. I heard[136] it
SOMEBODY ; *dit le entendre* [55]

from somebody. I expect somebody. Somebody will call upon me soon[183].
attendre [266] *bientôt.* N.B.

96. SOME, ANY, FEW used to denote a small quantity, or a small
SOME, ANY, FEW employés [169] *désigner petit* [29] *quantité,*

number of the substance (spoken of,) are expressed by *quelqu'un,*
nombre (dont on parle,) – *s'exprimer* † ,

quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes, agreeably to the gender and
, , , *suivant* –

number of the noun to which they relate; Have you seen any of my
[8] [76] *se rapporter;* *vu*

flowers? Will you have some (of them)? I will take a few (of them).
fleur? [174] *en* [54] ‡ *prendre*

97. NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY, is expressed by *personne;* NOBODY
NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY – *s'exprimer* † *NOBODY*

WHATEVER by *qui que ce soit;* these two words require *NE* before
WHATEVER ; *(bb)* *mot demander avant*

the verb which attends them; Nobody likes that woman. That
accompagner [54] ; *aimer (bb)* *(bb)*

woman likes nobody. Do not tell it to any body. Have you met
– *dire* [57]

nobody? Has nobody met you? I have not met any body whatever.
[134] *rencontré*

---

* See † p. 318. † See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235. ‡ See note † p. 312.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

98. SOMETHING is expressed by *quelque chose;* I feel something
SOMETHING – *s'exprimer* * *par* ;
that hurts me. I have something curious to tell you. Is not that
[74] *blesser* [54] *(cc)* *curieux à* [54] *N'est-ce pas là*
something wonderful? Why do you not apply to something?
(cc) *étonnant* ‡ – [133] *s'appliquer (il)* †

99. NOTHING, NOT ANY THING is expressed by *Rien;* NOTHING
NOTHING, NOT ANY THING – *s'exprimer* * ; *NOTHING*
WHATEVER by *quoique ce soit;* these words require *Ne* before the verb
WHATEVER ; *demander*
which attends them; I will give you nothing. You have not done
[74] *accompagner* [54] ; *donner* [54] *fait*
any thing to-day. He applies to nothing whatever. He does not
aujourd'hui. *s'appliquer* †
mind any thing whatever. I would not part (with it) for any thing.
faire attention à *se défaire* † *en* [59]

N. B. *quelqu'un, quelque chose, personne, Rien* followed by an adjective
, , , *suivis* [200]. *adjectif*
or by a past[32] participle, require *De* before that[2] adjective or participle;
[200] *passé* *participe,* *demander* [206] *(bb)* [2]
Somebody come. Something lost. Nobody hurt. Nothing done.
venu. *perdu.* *blessé.* *fait.*

100. NONE, NOT ANY followed by a noun or a pronoun is expressed
NONE, NOT ANY suivi [200] [204] – *s'exprimer* *
by *Aucun,* masc.; *Aucune,* fem. and requires *Ne* before the verb; None
par , ; , *demander* [206] ;
of the ladies whom we expected will come. We shall not see any
‡ [74] *attendions* [173] *venir* *voir*
(of them) to-day. Do you know any of them? No, I do[70] not.
en [54] *aujourd'hui.* – [96] [191], N.B.

101. NONE used absolutely, *i. e.* without reference to a noun, is
NONE employé , *rapport* , –
expressed by *Nul,* and NOT ONE by *Pas un,* masc. *Pas une,* fem.;
s'exprimer * *par* , *NOT ONE* , , ;
these words are synonymous to *Personne,* and require *Ne* before the
synonymes *de* , *demander*
verb; None is sheltered from censure. None can boast (of it.)
; *à l'abri* [7] *pouvoir se vanter* *en* [59]
Many[8] people called themselves his friends, not one assisted him.
N.B. [229] *disaient* *se* [54] , *aider* [137] *lui* [54]

102. EACH is sometimes[188] joined to a noun in the same manner
EACH – *quelquefois* *se joindre* * *de*

---

* See N. B. under note (*ii*) page 235. † See reflective verbs, page 114.
‡ Speaking of *young ladies,* we should say *demoiselles;* speaking of *married, or grown up ladies,* we should say *dames.*

as an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque* for both genders; Each
que , *– s'exprimer** *par* *les deux* ;
horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each hand.
porter [140] *paquet* *dans* *main.*

103. EACH is sometimes joined to a noun by the preposition OF,
EACH – *se joindre** *OF,*
or refers to a noun which has been mentioned before[183]; then it
se rapporter *dont* [92] *fait mention* *déjà ;* N.B. *alors il*
is expressed by *chacun*, masc. *chacune*, fem; each of these men has a
*– s'exprimer** , , , ; *(bb)*
shilling a day; or these men have each a shilling a day. Each of these
sheling *par jour ;* *(bb)*
women carried two bundles; or these women carried two bundles each.
porter ;

104. EVERY followed by a noun requires a distinction. If EVERY is
EVERY *suivi* *d'* *demander* *EVERY* –
used[126] to denote individuality, it is expressed by *chaque;* Every
*s'employer** [169] *désigner* *des* *individus,* *il* *– s'exprimer** ;
science *(i. e. each science)* has its principles. Every season has its
ses *principe.* *EVERY* *saison*
attractions. Every plant has its properties. If EVERY is used to denote
charme. *plante* *propriété.* [169]
a totality, it is expressed by *tout*, masc. *toute*, fem; Every man lies,
un tout, *– s'exprimer** , , , ; ,
(i. e. *all men lie*) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is frail, but
– menteur. *fragile,*
every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of the day.
, – *succomber.* [92] *à* [233] .

105. EVERY ONE requires the same distinction as EVERY. If, by
EVERY *ONE* *demander* *que* *EVERY.*
EVERY ONE, you mean[123] EVERY ONE taken individually, it is expressed
EVERY ONE, *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *individuellement,* *– s'exprimer**
by *chacun;* Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. *each*
; [24] *soi,*
person.) Every one thinks himself to be[239] in the right.
penser *– †* – *avoir* – [24] *raison.*

If, by EVERY ONE, you mean[123] EVERY ONE taken collectively, it
EVERY *ONE* *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *collectivement,*
is expressed by *tous*, masc. by *toutes*, fem; I have lost every one
*– s'exprimer** , , , ; *perdre*
of my books, (i. e. *all my books.*) I had won twenty guineas, and
– , *avais gagner* ,
I lost every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.
– [54] – *voleur* [137] *prendre*

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235. † This sentence can not be expressed literally.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

106. EVERY BODY is *tout le monde;* Every body says so. She
EVERY BODY ; *dire le* [54]
speaks ill of every body. It[62] is impossible to please every body.
dire du mal N.B. [168] *plaire* [202]

107. EVERY THING is *tout;* Every thing is for the best. You
EVERY THING ; *mieux.*
complain of every thing. I am prepared against every thing.
se plaindre * *prêt à*

108. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of
ANY BODY, ANY ONE – [183] *s'employer* †
SOME BODY, SOME ONE, and is expressed by *quelqu'un;* Is any body
SOME BODY, SOME ONE, – *s'exprimer* † ; [134]
come? Have you met any body? Can any body do what I do?
venu? *Pouvoir* [134] *faire* [81]

109. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of
ANY BODY, ANY ONE – [183] *s'employer* †
EVERY BODY, and is expressed by *tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne*
EVERY BODY, – *s'exprimer* † ,
qui ne, with this difference only, that *tout le monde* requires the
, *(bb)* , *(bb)* N.B. *demander*
following verb in the indicative, and *il n'y a personne qui ne* requires
qui suit [28] *à indicatif,*
it (in the) subjunctive; Any body (or *every body*) may[178] do that.
[54] *au subjonctif;* *pouvoir faire* [99]
Any body will (or *there is nobody but* will) shew you the way.
montrer chemin.

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a compara-
qui désigne [7] [7]*doute,* *compara-*
tive, ANY BODY is expressed by *personne*, but without *ne*, because
tif, *ANY BODY* – *s'exprimer* , ,
personne attended by *ne*, means NO BODY; Did ever any body do
accompagné de , *signifier NO BODY* [136] *jamais* [134]
such a thing! Yes; and you can do it as well as any body.
[36] *(kk)* [54] [42] [48]

111. ANY THING is sometimes used in the sense of SOMETHING,
ANY THING – [183] *s'employer* † *SOMETHING,*
and is expressed by *quelque chose;* (Is there) any thing in the bottle?
– *s'exprimer* † ; [246] *bouteille?*
Have you heard any thing? (Is there) any thing new to-day?
apprendre [246] *(cc) nouveau*

112. Sometimes ANY THING is used in the sense of EVERY THING,
ANY THING – *s'employer* † *EVERY THING,*
and is expressed by *tout;* He is fit for any thing (or *every thing.*)
– *s'exprimer* † ; *propre* [200]

---

* See a reflective verb, page 114. † See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

I will do any thing to serve him. I prefer this to any thing.
faire 170 *servir* *préférer* 89

113. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, ANY THING is
qui désigne 7 7*doute, ANY THING* –

generally expressed by *rien*; (is there) any thing finer[41] than civility!
183 *s'exprimer* * ; 246 *(cc) beau* 7*civilité!*

I doubt that you will make[145] any thing good (of it.)
douter que *faire* *(cc) bon* *en* 54.

114. WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER is sometimes joined to a substantive,
WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER *joint* *substantif,*

or relates to a substantive previously mentioned, and is expressed
se rapporter *dont on a déjà fait mention,* – *s'exprimer* *

by *quel que, quels que*, masc; *quelle que, quelles que*, fem; these words
, , ; , , ; *(bb)*

require the verb (in the) subjunctive, and if the nominative of the
demander *au* *subjonctif,* *nominatif*

verb is a noun, it must be placed after the verb; Whoever that[2]
, 62 *devoir (kk)* – *se placer* * ; *(bb)*

man be, he is acting wrong; or that man is acting wrong, whoever
, *agir* 135 *mal;* 155 ,

he be. Whoever those children be, they are ill[188] behaved.
(bb) , – *mal se comporter* 125

115. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER, WHOMSOEVER implies the
WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER, WHOMSOEVER *renfermer*

word PERSON understood, and is expressed by *qui que ce soit*, followed
PERSON , – *s'exprimer* * , *suivi*

by *qui*, *que*, or *dont*, which requires the following verb (in the) sub-
200 , , , 74 *demander* *qui suit* 88 *au*

junctive; Whoever speaks to you, you ought to answer civilly.
; *(o)* 54, *devoir* 172 *répondre civilement.*

Whomsoever you apply to, they[90] will tell you the same thing.
s'adresser 208, N.B. *dire* *même chose.*

116. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOMSOEVER is used in the sense of
WHOEVER, WHOMSOEVER – *s'employer* *

EVERY BODY, then it is expressed by *routs ceux*, followed by *qui* or
EVERY BODY, alors – *s'exprimer* * , *suivi* 200

que; Whoever (or *every body who*) is found out at night is stopped.
; 92 *trouver dehors la nuit* 92 *arrêter* †

Bring with you whomsoever (or *every person*) you meet[142].
Amener *rencontrerez.*

117. WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER joined to a substantive requires a
WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER *joint* *substantif* *demander*

distinction. If the substantive to which WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER
76 *WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER*

* See N. B. note (*ff*) page 235. † Turn: one stops *whomsoever one* finds out at night.

is joined, is the nominative of a verb, it is expressed by *quel que,*
, *nominatif* , – *s'exprimer* * *par*

quels que, masc. *quelle que, quelles que,* f.; which requires the verb (in the)
, , , ; *demander* *au*

subjunctive; and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb;
subjonctif; , [62] – *se placer* * ;

Whatever this[2] work be, it is too dear. Whatever his terms be, I shall
(*bb*) *ouvrage* , [62] *trop* *conditions* ,

agree to them. Do not trust to their promises, whatever they be.
accepter – [54] – *se fier* † *à* *promesse,* – [62]

If the substantive to which WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER is joined, is
[76] *WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER* ,

the object of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque,* sing. *quelques,* plur;
objet , [62] – *s'exprimer* * , ; , ;

these words require *que* after the substantive, and the verb (in the)
(*bb*) *demander* , *au*

subjunctive; Whatever business you have, you should not neglect your
; *affaire* , [176] *négliger*

friends. Whatever terms they propose, I shall agree to them.
conditions *proposer,* *accepter* – [54]

118. Sometimes WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER implies the word THING
WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER *renfermer* *THING*

understood; then it is expressed by *quoique ce soit,* followed by *qui,*
; *alors* – *s'exprimer* * , *suivi* [200] ,

que or *dont,* which requires the verb (in the) subjunctive; Whatever I
, [74] *demander* *verbe* *au* ;

do, I am always scolded. Whatever he undertakes, he never succeeds.
faire, *gronder.* *entreprendre,* [190] *réussir.*

119. WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER is sometimes used in the sense of
WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER – *s'employer* *

ANY THING, or EVERY THING, then it is expressed by *tout ce qui,*
ANY THING, ou EVERY THING, alors – *s'exprimer* *

nom; *tout ce que,* obj; Take whatever you think[142] proper. He grants
; , ; *Prendre* *croirez* *à propos.* *accorder*

her[162] whatever she desires. He approves of whatever she does.
(f) p. 79. *désirer.* *approuver* [201] *faire.*

120. OTHER is *Autre;* I see another man coming[153]. I have found
OTHER ; *voir* *qui vient.* N.B. *trouver*

another flower. (Here is[247]) another. (There are) a great many others.
fleur. *En* [70] *voici* *En* [70] [247] – *beaucoup d'*

121. EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER is expressed by *l'un l'Autre,*
EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER – *s'exprimer* *

l'une l'Autre; les uns les Autres, les unes les Autres, agreeably to the
; , , *suivant* –

* See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235. † See imperative of a reflective verb, page 114.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

gender and number of the noun to which it relates; Fire and water
3 76 *se rapporter; Feu*[7] *eau*[7]

destroy each other. These women hate one another. Observe
se détruire *(bb)* *se haïr* *Observer*

that the preposition which comes before EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,
(bb) N.B. *venir* *EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,*

must be placed between the two words *l'un l'Autre, l'une l'Autre, &c.*
devoir – *se placer* *entre* , ,

See those two women; they are jealous of each other; yet they can not
; *jaloux*[29] *(g)* ;

do[260] without one another. These people have fallen upon one another.
se passer de *(bb)* *gens* 288 *tombé* 158

122. BOTH, speaking of two individual[32] objects, is expressed by
BOTH, parler *individuel*[29] , – *s'exprimer*

l'un et *l'Autre*, or *TOUTS DEUX*, masc; by *l'une* et *l'Autre*, or *TOUTES DEUX*,
, *ou* , ; , *ou* ,

fem; Your brothers are[241] both very well. I saw them both last night.
; *se porter* *voir* 235

You know my sisters; they will both be here to-night. In speaking
; *être* 235 *En parler*

of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties,
41 *individu,* *considérés* *comme* ,

BOTH is expressed by *les uns* et *les Autres*, masc; *les unes* et *les Autres*, f;
BOTH – *s'exprimer* , ; , ;

The Russians and the Prussians have declared war against us; but
Russe *Prussien* *déclarer* *7guerre* – 55 ;

we will beat both. Both will have reason to repent (of it.)
battre *lieu* *de* *se repentir* *en* 59.

123. EITHER is *l'un* ou *l'Autre*, *l'une* ou *l'Autre*; *les uns* ou *les Autres*,
EITHER , ; ,

les unes ou *les Autres*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun;
, *suivant* – 3 ;

Either of these men will do it. You may[178] speak to either. Take
(bb) *faire* 54 *pouvoir* *parler* *Prendre*

either of these flowers. You may[178] have either of them.
– *(bb)* *fleur.* *pouvoir (kk)* – –

124. NEITHER, NOT EITHER, *i. e.* EITHER with a negation, is express-
NEITHER, NOT EITHER, *EITHER* – *s'exprimer*

ed by NI *l'un* ni *l'Autre*, NI *l'une* ni *l'Autre*; NI *les uns* ni *les*
(ii) N.B. , , ;

Autres, NI *les unes* ni *les Autres*, agreeably to gender and number;
, , *suivant* – 7 7 ;

these words require *NE* before the verb; Neither of them will study.
(bb) *demander* *NE* ; – – 173 *étudier.*

Neither of these men can do it. I will not trust[202] either of them
(bb) *faire* 54 178 *se fier à* – –

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Do you know any of the ladies we have[244] just passed? No; I
– *connaître* † *(s)* *venir* *de* *passer?* ;

know none (of them.) I have not seen any (of them) before.
en[54] *en*[55] [206] N.B.

I should like to get acquainted with some of them. I know the two
[169] *faire connaissance* [58] ‡

last[29]. Which of the two is the handsomest? They are both very
dernier. [20] ‡ *belle*[44]? ‡ *très*

handsome, and they have each a handsome fortune. You may[178]
[29] , ‡ *beau* *bien.* *pouvoir*

get acquainted with either of them, or with both, if you like. They
(kk) – – , · , *vouloir.* ‡

come here every summer. Every body is fond of them. Every one
ici *été.* – *aimer* ‖ [54]

who knows them is fond of their company They are very fond of
[54] – ‖ – *compagnie.* ‡ – *fort* *s'aimer* –

each other. They are always with one another. Are they married?
‡ ‡ *marier*[158]?

No, neither of them is married, but I think they are both promised.
[191], ‡ – – [158] , [221] ‡ *promettre.*[138]

I would give any thing I possess to be acquainted with them. You
(s) *posséder* [170] *connu* [200] [58] ‡

may speak to either of them. Bring here every one of your books.
[178] *(kk)* ‡ – – *Apporter* *ici*

Let[248] every one of you shew me his exercise. Every one of you
Que *montrer* [54] *thême.* – –

will be punished. Can I do any thing for you? Yes, you can.
punir. *Pouvoir* *faire* *pour* [56] , [70]

You can help me as well as any body. Nobody is more capable
(kk) *aider* [54] [43] [70]

than you. I should like to buy something, but every thing is so
[169] *acheter* , *si*

dear now, that one can not get any thing. I should like to
à présent, *(bb)* N.B. *se procurer* [166]

have some of these flowers. Which do you think are the finest[44]?
(bb) [20] ‡ – [133] *belle*[29]?

Some say that these are the finest[29]; some give the preference to
(bb) N.B. [68] N.B. [44] ; *préférence*

those. These men relate both the same story, but neither of them
[86] N.B. *(bb)* *rapporter* *même* *histoire,* – –

believes that it[68] is true. I do not believe either of them. They are
croire *(bb)* N.B. [145] *vrai*[29]. – – – [239]

both wrong, whoever they be. Whosoever asks for me, tell him[86]
tort, [201] [54] , [162]

---

* See * p. 281. † See ‡ p. 320. ‡ Mind the *gender* of the noun which this pronoun represents.
‖ We have no other word to express the words *be fond of*, in french, but the verb *Aimer*, to like.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

that I am not at home. Whatever he writes, let [248] me know it.
(bb) N.B. *au logis.* *, faire* N.B. [56] *savoir* [59]

Whatever is right, is not always approved. Whatever good is said of
bien, *approuver.* *bien*

us, we are not told any thing new. Whatever your rank and riches
dire *(cc) nouveau.* *rang* *richesses*

may be, or whatever rank and riches you have, do not be proud, if
, , – orgueilleux,

you will not (be disliked) by every body. No one ought to be a judge
[144] *déplaire* *à* *devoir* [172] [23] *juge*

in his own cause. People often flatter themselves more than they should.
[213] *propre* [184] *flatter* *se* [54] [47] [176]

Every one complains of his memory, but no one complains of his
se plaindre *,*

understanding. There would not be (so much[8]) disorder seen in the
esprit. *tant* N.B. *désordre* *

world, if youth[7] had a good impression given it at first, and if care
monde, *jeunesse* * *d' abord,*

was taken to form the mind of children as it ought to be. I have
soin * [168] *former* *esprit* [7] *comme* *devrait* – –

just been told that Mr. A. is dead. Indeed? Yes, they say so.
[244] – *dire* *En vérité?* *,* *le*[54]

He was invited to supper yesterday at Mrs. B.'s. They waited[192]
[140] *inviter* [169] *souper* *hier* [206] *Madame* *attendre*

for him a long time, but seeing that he did not come, somebody was
[201] [54] – *tems,* *voir* – [138] *,* –

sent[197] to look for him; he could[197] not be found any where; they
envoyer [172] *chercher* [201] [54] *;* *pouvoir* † – *trouver* *nulle part;*

have been seeking[155] for him all night, and this morning he was
– *chercher* [201] [55] *7nuit,* *(bb)* [234] –

found drowned in a pond, not far from Mrs. B.'s house. Every body
[136] *noyer* [213] *étang,* *non* *loin de* [25]

is sorry (for it). Is it known how this accident happened[136]? No,
fâché *en* [55] – *savoir* *comment* *(bb)* *arriver* [238]? [191],

nobody knows. It is supposed that he (lost his way) in the dark. He
[70] – *s'imaginer* *s'égarer* [187] [213] *obscurité.*

is to be buried to-morrow. You will be expected at his funeral.
[242] *enterrer* *demain.* – *attendre* *funérailles.* (pl.)

You will go; will you not? I will not go, unless[218] I am invited
[70] *;* [252] [70] *, à moins que* [195] – *inviter*

(to it.) You may be sure that they will invite you.
[63] [178] *(kk)* *sûr* *(bb)* N.B. [54]

---

* Turn this sentence thus: *One* would not see so much disorder in the world, if *one* gave at first a good impression to youth, and if *one* took care to form the mind of children as *one* should.

† Express *Not* by *Ne* only, before the verb, as *Nulle* which comes after, supplies the place of *Pas* or *Point.*

VERB.

AGREEMENT of the verb with its nominative.
Accord [19] *verbe son nominatif.*

You see in the conjugations that the termination of a verb differs
voir conjugaisons (bb) N.B. *terminaison différer*

according to the noun or pronoun which is its[17] agent or nominative.
*suivant - nom *pronom en nominatif.*

125. The verb must be of the same number and person as this[8]
*devoir être même nombre *personne que (bb)*

agent or nominative; I study; Thou studiest; He studies; My brother
; *étudier*; ; ;

studies; We study; You study; They study; My brothers study.
; ; ; ;

126. When several substantives are the nominative of the same verb,
plusieurs substantif †

the verb must be (in the) plural number; My brother and sister study.
devoir être au plurier - ;

127. If several substantives of different[32] persons are the nominative
† *différent* [29] *personne*

of the same verb; as the verb can not agree with two different
; *comme s'accorder* [29] [32]

persons at the same time; we[90] add to the sentence *NOUS* or *VOUS* with
à la - fois; N.B. *ajouter phrase*

which we[90] (make the verb agree.) We[90] add *NOUS*, if there is in the
[76] N.B *fait accorder le verbe.* N.B. , *il y a*

sentence a substantive of the first[33] person; as, You and I agree.
† *premier* [29] ; , [52] *être d'accord.*

My sister and I are fond of study. She and I will learn together.
[52] - *aimer* ‡ *étude.* [52] *ensemble.*

We[90] add *VOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive of the second
N.B. , † [29] [33]

person, and[219] there is none of the first; You and your brother do not
, [220] *il n'y en ait pas* [29] ; -

agree. You and he are continually[163] quarrelling. You and your
s'accorder. [52] - *continuellement se quereller* [155]

sister will learn together. You and they are of the same opinion.
[52]

128. If the nominative of the verb is the relative pronoun *qui*, the
relatif [32]

verb must be of the same number and person as the substantive to
devoir * *que*

which that pronoun relates; It[62] is I who will say my lesson first.
[76] *(bb)* *se rapporter;* N.B. [52] *dire leçon le premier.*

It[62] is we who will say our lessons first. It[62] is you who will
N.B. *les premiers* N.B.

---

* Repeat *of the same* before person. † See note * page 205. ‡ See note ‖ page 326.

VERB.

say your lesson first. It[62] is they who will say their lessons first.
N.B. 52

129. If *qui* relates to several substantives of different persons, the
se rapporter *plusieurs substantif* * 29 ,
verb agrees with the first[33] person in preference to the second, and
s'accorder 29 *par préférence* 29 ,
with the second in preference to the third; It[62] is you and I who will
29 *par* 29 ; N.B. 52
begin. It[62] is you and your brother who will (go out) first.
commencer. N.B. *sortir* *les premiers.*

130. When the collective[33] substantives *la* PLUPART, *infinité*, NOMBRE,
Quand *collectif* 29 , , ,
quantité, TROUPE, MULTITUDE, are followed by another substantive, the verb
, , , *suivis* 200 ,
agrees with this last substantive; A great number of men perished.
s'accorder *dernier* ; 8 *périr.*[137]
Most of the cavalry deserted. A crowd of people[229] came to see them.
La plupart *cavalerie déserter*[137]. *foule* 8 *gens* *venir* 172

131. The collective substantives *le* QUART, *le* TIERS, *la* MOITIÉ require
, , *demander*
the verb in the third person singular; One fourth of the ships were
à *au singulier; Le* *quart* *navire* 137
taken or destroyed. One third of the crews deserted. One half of
prendre *détruire.* *Le* *tiers* *équipage* 137 *La* *moitié*
men do not think, and the other half know not[192] what to think.
7 *penser,* *ne savoir* N.B. 33 172

PLACING of the nominative with the verb.
Place 19 *nominatif* *verbe.*

132. When the sentence is expositive, i. e. when a question is not
phrase *expositive,* 92
asked, the nominative is placed before the verb; I study well. He
faire, *– se placer* ; *étudier*
studies well. This boy studies well. You study well. They study well.
garçon †

But when the sentence is interrogative, (it is necessary) to consider
, *il faut* 172 *considérer*
whether the nominative of the verb is a noun or a pronoun.
si

133. If, when a question is asked, the nominative of the verb is one
, 92 *faire,*
of the personal[33] pronouns JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON,
personnel 29
or *ce*, these words are placed in french, as the corresponding[32] words
, *mot* *– se placer* ‡ *en* , *comme* *qui y correspondent*

* See note * page 205. † See note (*ee*) page 223. ‡ See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235.

VERB.

are in english, immediately after the verb; Do I study well? Does
se placer , * ; *étudier*

he study well? Do we study well? Do you study well? Do they study?

134. If, when the sentence is interrogative, the nominative of the
, *quand* *phrase* ,

verb is a noun, this noun is placed before the verb, the same as
, *(bb)* *– se placer* † , *de même que*

in expositive sentences; but (in order to) shew that a question
[213] [29] [32] [7] ; [170] *faire voir* *(bb)* N.B.

is asked, we[90] put after the verb one of the pronouns *Il*, *Elle*, *Ils*,
[92] *faire*, N.B. *mettre*

Elles, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which is the
, *suivant* – [8]

nominative of the verb; Does this boy study well? Does this girl
; *(bb)* *garçon* , *fille*

study well? Do these boys study well? Do these girls study well?
(bb)

Do any of them learn french? Is not the french language very
[96] [86] [7]*français*? [29] [86] *langue*

difficult? Are your masters pleased[29] with you? Does your father
difficile? *content* N.B. [200]

often come to see you? Has your mother been here lately?
[184] [172] *ici* *depuis peu*?

INDICATIVE MOOD.——Use[19] of the tenses of the indicative.
Emploi *tems* [2] *indicatif.*

135. The present tense of the indicative is generally used in the
présent – – [163] *s'employer* †

same instances in french as in english; I like study. Study is the
cas *en* *que* ; [7]*étude* [7] [2]

food of the mind. But the past[29] tenses require several distinctions
aliment [2] *esprit.* *passé* [29] *demander* *plusieurs*

in french, which the corresponding[32] tenses do not require in english;
, *qui y correspondent* ;

therefore pay particular[32] attention to the following[32] rules.
ainsi *faire une particulier* [29] *suivant* [29]

136. If we[90] speak of an action past[29] without mentioning[154] the time
N.B. *passé* N.B. *faire mention* *du* *tems*

in which it [136] passed, or if we[90] mention a period, and[219] that
[76] [62] *s'est passée*, N.B. *faire mention d'un période*,‡ *et* [220] *(bb)*

period is not yet entirely elapsed, such as to-day, this morning,
soit *encore* *écoulé*, *tel* *que* *aujourd'hui*, *matin*,

this week, this month, this year, &c. the action being past, and the
(bb) , *mois*, [223] , *&c.* *étant* [136] ,

* See note * page 223. † See N. B. note *(ii)* page 235. ‡ See note † page 224.

VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

period being still present, we[90] make (the verb partake) both of the
encore , N.B. *faire* *participer le verbe* *et* [222]

present and past time, by adding the past[29] participle of the verb
[3]*passé* – , *(hh) ajouter* [32] N.B. *participe*

expressing the action, to the present of the auxiliary[32] verbs *Avoir*,
qui exprime , *auxiliaire* [29]

TO HAVE, or *Être*, TO BE; as, When did you see Mr. A.? I saw him
, *ou* , ; , *Quand* * †

this morning. I met him as he was coming to town. He told me he
[234] ‡ *comme* [188] [155] [7] *dire* ‡ [221]

was going to[208] your house. Did you not see him? No, I did[70] not. He was
[138] [155] N.B. ‡ , N.B. ‖

at[208] our house, but I was not in. He only[184] found my sister there,
N.B. , [140] *y* [54] § ‡ *y* [55],

and he would not stop. Did you hear that he was going to be mar-
vouloir ¶ *rester.* ‡ [155] [172] – *se ma-*

ried? No, I did not; (i. e. *hear*[70] *it.*) Who told you so? His cousin
rier? , ‡ ; N.B. ‡ [55] *le* [59] [14] *cousine* f.

told me so. I heard that he was going abroad. I shall
‡ [55] *le* [59] ‡ – [153] *dans les pays étrangers.*

soon[184] know if it be true; for, when he called this morning, he
bientôt [247] ; *car,* *passer* ,

promised my sister that he would call again (as he goes back.)
‡ [168] *(bb)* N.B. *repasser* – *en s'en retournant.*

137. If we[90] speak of an action past[157] in a period of time which is
N.B. *passé* [8]

also entirely elapsed, such as yesterday, last[32] week, last month, last
écoulé, *hier,* *dernier* [29] 7, [32] 7 , [32]

year[7], &c. then both the time and the action being past[31], we[90] use the
[288] , *&c.* *alors* *et* *passé* , N.B.

perfect tense of the verb; Where did you dine yesterday? I dined at
parfait ; *Où* *diner* ‡ [208]

my mother's, and supped at my sister's. Did you not go to the play?
, *souper* [208] ‡ *comédie?*

Yes, I did[70]. What play did they[90] act? They[90] acted a new comedy.
, N.B. [32] *pièce* ‡ N.B. *jouer* N.B. ‡ *nouvelle comédie.*

How were you entertained? I did not pay much[8] attention to the
[185] ‡ *amuser* [158]? ‡ *faire* N.B.

play. I conversed all the while with a gentleman who sat[140] by me.
pièce. *parler* ‡ *tems* *monsieur* *être* *près de* [58]

Did you not see me? No; I did[70] not. Where were you? I was
‡ [191] ; ‡ N.B. *Où* [140] [140]

(in the) pit. I did not stop long. I went home, where I read the play.
au *parterre.* ‡ *rester* ‡ *au logis,* ‡ *pièce.*

---

* Turn; when *have* you *seen* &c. † Turn; I *have seen* him. ‡ See note * page 225.
‖ Turn; he *has been* &c. § See note * page 275. ¶ Turn; he *has* not *been willing.*

VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD

138. Sometimes we[90] speak of an action that was passing, and which
Quelquefois N.B. *parler* 74 – *se passer* [155],

consequently was incomplete at a period which we[90] mention[225];
par conséquent 140 *imparfait* 29 *dont* N.B. *faire mention*;

then the period being past, and the action being at that time incom-
alors , *(bb)*

plete, we[90] use the imperfect tense of the verb; What were you
N.B. *employer* *imparfait* – ; 83

doing when I came in? I was preparing myself to study a music
155 *suis* 136 *entré?* 155 *me* 54 169 *musique*

lesson. I was going to play a tune. I was trying to tune my instru-
25 155 172 *air.* 155 *essayer* 168 *accorder*

ment. Stop. You were doing it (the wrong way). You were spoiling
Arrêter. 155 54 *à rebours.* *gâter* 155

it. They[90] were making (a great deal) of noise at[208] your house last
62 N.B. 155 *beaucoup* *bruit* N.B.

night. Yes, we had some company. We were enjoying ourselves.
235 , 9 *compagnie.* 155 *réjouir* *nous* 54

139. We[90] also[184] make use of the imperfect to denote that the
N.B. *faire* *usage* 170 *désigner* *que*

action (of which) we[90] are speaking has been habitual[29], or that it has
74 N.B. – 155 *habituel, (g)* 62

been reiterated; How did you spend your time, when you were in the
réitéré 158 ; 185 271 *le* *tems,* 140 *à*

country? As soon as we were up, we walked in the garden till
230 *Aussitôt* *que* 140 *levés,* *se promener* *jusqu'au*

breakfast time; after breakfast we (sat at our work) till (twelve
déjeuné 25 ; *travailler* *jusqu'à*

o'clock), and then we studied till dinner time. How did you spend
236 , *alors* –*dîné* 25 185 271

your evenings? You had neither plays nor concerts to go to. Some
les 234 234 * *comédie* * – *où* *aller* †

ladies and gentlemen in our neighbourhood often called upon us, or
†*messieurs* *voisinage* 184 266 ,

we called upon them, and we sometimes made a little concert, or we
266 58 , 184 *faire* *petit* ,

played at different games, but we generally[184] spent the evenings in
jouer *à* 29 32 *jeux,* *ordinairement* 271 234 169

reading or in conversing. We spent our time very agreeably.‡
lire 169 *converser.* 271 *le* *agréablement.*

---

* Do not put any article before the noun which follows *NI*. † See note † page 282.

‡ By using the *Perfect* instead of the *Imperfect* in these instances, the sentence would be equally grammatical, but the idea would be very different. This difference will appear obvious in the following examples composed of the same words;

*Quand j'*ETAIS *à Londres, j'*ALLAIS *à la comédie;*
Quand je FUS *à Londres, j'*ALLAI *à la comédie.*

By the first of these expressions, people will understand that when I *was* in London, I *used* to go to the play; by the second they will understand that when I *arrived* at London, at a certain period either named or alluded to, I *went* to the play. Learners are very apt to confound these two tenses.

VERB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

140. Another very extensive use of the imperfect is in descriptions;
130 *étendu* 32 *usage* *imparfait* 213 7 ;

for, whenever we[90] describe the state, place, situation, order or dis-
car, toutes les fois que N.B. *décrire* 2 *état,* 3*lieu,* 3 3*ordre,* 3

position in which the beings (of which) we[90] speak were, in a time
76 *être* 74 N.B. 140 , *tems*

past, we[90] make use of the imperfect; Where were you yesterday? I
, N.B. * ; *Où* *hier?*

called[137] at[206] your house, but you were not in. I was not well. I had
266 N.B. , *y* 54 241

a head-ache; and as I could not study, I went[137] to walk in the
24 *mal à la tête ;* *comme* , *aller* 172 263 213

fields. There had been a little[8] rain. The plants were so fresh, the
Il 240 *un peu* N.B. *pluie.* *si fraîche*[22],

trees were so green, and formed such an agreeable shade, and the flowers
vert[29], *former* *si* † 32 *ombrage,*

spread so sweet[32] a smell, that I could not be tired with admiring
épandre *douce* 36 *odeur,* *– se lasser* 168 *admirer* 154

the beautiful landscape which surrounded me. I wished to stay
beau 33 *paysage* *entourer* 172 *rester*

longer[41]; but it was late, I was tired, and I had a long way to go.
long-tems ; *tard,* *las,* *chemin à faire.*

141. The future is generally used in the same instances in french
futur ‡ 183 213 *cas* *en*

as in english; When will you call upon me? I will call to-night.
que ; *Quand* 266 58 265

I shall not be in. I shall be in the country. I will (set out) after dinner.
y 54 230 *partir* *dîné.*

142. The present tense is sometimes used in french as in english
– ‡ *en* *comme*

to express an action that is[242] to pass in a time (not far) remote
170 *exprimer* 74 172 *se passer* *peu* *éloigné*

from the time (in which) we are; as, Where do you dine to-day?
où (v) ; *comme, Où* *dîner*

Do you go to the play to-night? No, we go to a ball. But if a
comédie 235 191, *bal.*

verb (in the) present tense, denoting a future action, is preceded or
au – , *désignant* 32 , *précédé*

followed by another verb (in the) future, that present tense must
suivi 206 *au* *futur,* *(bb)* – *devoir*

be expressed by the future in french; Call upon me as soon as you
– *s'exprimer* ‡ *en* ; 266 43 *tôt* 43

can. We shall begin as[43] soon as you are come. When you are
pouvoir. *commencer* 43 *arrivé.*

---

* See note * page 226. † Turn; *a shade so agreeable.* ‡ See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

VERB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

ready, we will go and take a walk[263]. You shall not (go out) till
prêt, - *(nn)* N.B. *ne* *sortir* *que*

after we have done. We will go as soon as you will. I hope we
après que *finir.* *partir* [43] *tôt* [43] [221]

shall see you oftener[41], when we are in the country. Come as often
souvent. *à* [230] [43]

as you can. I will call upon you every [7]time that I go (that way).
[43] [266] [104] *fois* [74] *par là.*

143. The conditional tense has also the same properties in french
conditionnel - *aussi* *propriétés* *en*

as in english; I should like much to go to France. What would you
que ; *fort* [169] [6] [83]

do, if you were there? You would not have any[8] pleasure. You
faire, *y* [54] N.B. *plaisir.*

could not understand the language. I think I should soon[183] learn it.
entendre *langue.* [221] *bientôt*

144. After the conjunction IF, *Si,* SHALL, WILL can not be expressed
conjonction *IF,* , *SHALL, WILL* - *s'exprimer*

by the future in french, nor SHOULD, WOULD by the conditional;
par *futur* *en* , *ni* *SHOULD,* *WOULD*

(WILL must be expressed) by the present, and WOULD by the imperfect
il faut exprimer WILL , *WOULD* *imparfait*

of the verb *vouloir,* which then[184] governs the following verb in the
, [74] *alors* *régir* *qui suit* [22] *à*

infinitive; as, I will go with you, if you will come with me. I would
infinitif; , * [58] , [58] *

go with you, if you would come with me. I will teach you french,
, * * *enseigner* [7]*français,*

if you will learn it. I would teach you french, if you would learn
* *apprendre.* * [7] , *

it. How long do you think that I should be in learning it, if I should
[196] *penser* *à* *apprendre* , †

begin now? You may learn it in six months, if you will take
commencer [178] [215] , * *prendre*

pains. You might learn it in six months, if you would take pains.
de la peine. [178] [215] *

I will be obliged to you, if you will call upon me to-morrow[183]. I
obligé *(o)* [54] , * [266] *demain.* N.B.

would be (very much) obliged to you, if you would call upon me.
très - *(o)* , * [266]

---

* Observe, that in the sentences where *IF* occurs, there are generally two *Will,* or two *Would;* that *Will* which follows *If* is the present, and *Would* is the imperfect of the verb *to WILL, to BE WILLING,* (see page 143.) and they must be expressed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *VOULOIR,* which then governs the following verb in the infinitive; the other *Will* is the sign of the future, and the other *Would* is the sign of the conditional of the following verb, which must also be expressed by the corresponding tenses, *i. e.* the *Future* or the *Conditional* of that verb in french. See also note * page 228.

† When *Should* is the sign which follows *If,* this sign must be left out, and the following verb must be put in the *Imperfect* of the indicative.

VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

USE[19] of the subjunctive.
Usage subjonctif.

145 When we[90] speak of an action, the event (of which) is un-
N.B. *événement* 75 in-

certain, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of two parts
certain, ce qui cas , 218 *phrase partie*

connected by the conjunction QUE, the first verb is either interrogative
joint 157 *par conjonction* , *ou interrogatif*

or negative, or preceded by SI, this uncertainty is imparted to the
négatif, 200 , *(bb) incertitude – se communiquer*

hearer, by putting the second verb (in the) subjunctive; I think it will
auditeur, (hh) au * ; 221

rain soon. Do not you think it will[70]? It will perhaps rain a little,
pleuvoir bientôt. 221 N.B. 183 *un peu,*

but I do not think that it will rain much. If I thought that it
(bb) N.B. 140

would not rain, I would stop, but there is no * appearance that it will
– 149 , *rester,* 246 190 N.B.

be fine to-day. I will (come again), if I find that it does not rain.
240 *revenir, trouver*

But observe with respect to interrogative sentences, that it is only
à l'égard des 22 , *ce*

when we[90] wish to express our ignorance of the thing (enquired after)
N.B. *vouloir* 172 *témoigner son* † *dont on s'informe*

that we[90] use the subjunctive; for, if the person who asks the question
que N.B. *employer* ; *car,* – *celui faire*

knew that a thing is, and only enquired[188] whether the person whom
140 , 184 *s'informer si* 76

he is speaking to knows it likewise, he would use the indicative; Do
185 200 *aussi,* ;

you not think that I did well to go before the rain came? Do
(bb) N.B. 136 *de s'en aller* 218 *pluie venir?*

not you think that I should have been wet, if I had stayed longer?
(bb) N.B. *mouillé,* 140 *rester* 41

146. All verbs and adjectives denoting *will, wish, desire, com-*
7 7 *qui désignent volonté, souhait, désir, com-*

mand, fear, wonder, surprise, astonishment, joy, gladness, grief,
mandement, crainte, admiration, surprise, étonnement, joie, aise, peine,

sorrow, in short all expressions which denote any *passion* or *emotion*
chagrin, en un mot 29 7 *quelque ou*

of the soul, followed by the conjunction *que*, require the following verb
2 *âme,* ‡ *suivi* 29 200 , *demander*

(in the) subjunctive; I am glad[221] you are here. I wish[221] my brother
au ; *bien aise ici.* 180

* See note * page 229. † We could not say *notre* after *on*, which is singular. ‡ See note * page 230.

VERB.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

would come. I wonder that he is not yet arrived. I am afraid[221]
s'étonner (bb) N.B. *encore* – *craindre*

some misfortune has[195] befallen him. It[62] is a pity that somebody
quelque [238] *arrivé* · *lui* [55] N.B. [24] *dommage (bb)* N.B. [95]

did[136] not go with him. I am surprised that he has not written to
[238] *allé* [56] *surpris* *(o)*

me. I am sorry that he went[136] there without my knowing it. I would
[55] *fâché* [238] *y* [55] [218] *je* *susse* [150] [54]

have taken care that he should be treated as he deserves.
soin – [92] *traiter* [149] *comme* *mériter.*

147. The following[22] impersonal[22] verbs and adjectives, *il* FAUT, *il est*
suivant [29] * *impersonnel* [29] , ,

TEMS, il convient, il IMPORTE, *il* VAUT MIEUX, *il* SUFFIT, *seul, à* PROPOS,
, , , , , , ,

NÉCESSAIRE, INDIFFÉRENT, *cruel,* HONTEUX, *juste,* INJUSTE, POSSIBLE, IM-
, , , , , , ,

possible, followed by the conjunction QUE, require also the following
, [157] [200] . , *demander* *qui suit* [22]

verb (in the) subjunctive; It is time that we should go[148]. I must be
au ; , *s'en aller.*† [181]

ready to-night. I must (set out) to-morrow. It[62] is fit that I should
prêt [235] *partir* N.B. *à propos*

see in what state my affairs are. It[64] is impossible that they should
[48] [92] *état* *affaires* N.B. [62]

be so bad as I am told. It[62] is shameful that my partner does not
[148] *mal* *que* [92] *dire.* N.B. *honteux* *associé*

write to me. Is it[62] necessary that you should go yourself? Is it[62] not
(o) N.B. [148] *(m)* N.B. – N.B.

enough that you write to him? I think it would be better that you
suffire *(o)* [221] *valoir* *mieux*

should send[149] somebody. I do not know any body whom I can send.
y [70] *envoyer* [95] [97] [145] *y* [70]

I must either go myself, or I must send my brother. He is the only
[181] *ou* *y* [70] *(m)* N.B., *y* [70] [65] *seul*

man whom I can trust[202]. It[62] is indifferent whether I go or not.
me *fier à* [208] N.B. *que* *y* [70] *non.*

N.B. The subjunctive mood is also used after an *Adjective* (in the)
subjonctif – – [183] *s'employer* *au*

superlative degree, see the 50th rule; After RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PER-
superlatif, – , *voir* *règle;* , , ,

SONNE, see *(dd)* p. 219; After QUELQUE, QUI QUE CE SOIT, QUOIQUE CE SOIT,
, ; , , ,

see 114th, 115th, 117th, 118th rules; After the conjunctions AFIN QUE,
, , ; ,

À MOINS QUE, AVANT QUE, QUOI QUE, and a few others, see 218th rule.

---

* Put *suivant* after *adjectifs.* † See the reflective verb *s'en Aller,* page 117.

VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

USE[19] of the tenses of the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunc-
Emploi *tems* *subjonctif.*
tive depend (on[200] the) tenses of the verb which governs it.
dépendre *des* *régir* [62]

148. The present of the subjunctive is used when the verb which
– *s'employer*
governs it, is (in the) present or in the future of the indicative; Do you
au *futur* ;
think your sister will come? I (am afraid) she will not be here to-day.
221 145 *craindre* 221 146 *ici*
Somebody must go and fetch her. He will be back before we begin
95 181 *(nn) chercher* *de retour* 218
It[62] is fit that somebody should go for her before it is too late.
N.B. *à propos* 95 147 * 54 218 *trop*

149. The perfect of the subjunctive is used when the verb which
parfait – *s'employer*
governs it, is (in the) perfect, in the imperfect, or (in the) conditional;
au 2 *imparfait,* *au* *conditionnel;*
I did not think[221] my sister would have[145] come. I (was afraid) she would
140 238 158 *craindre* 221
not be here in time. It[62] was that which made me wish that somebody
146 *à tems.* N.B. 140 89 74 *faisait* *(bb)* N.B. 95
would go for her. He might have returned before the play began.
146 * 54 179 265 218 *pièce* *commencer.*
It[62] would be a pity[221] she should not see it[62] after waiting[154] so long.
N.B. – *dommage* 146 *avoir attendu*

150. N. B. The perfect of the subjunctive is also used, though the
parfait 92 184 *emploie,* 218
foregoing[32] verb is (in the) present, if, after the subjunctive, there is
qui précède 218 *au* , , , 246
another verb in the imperfect, some conditional expression, or if the
à 2 , *quelque conditionnelle* 38 ,
action spoken of is past; Do you think your sister would come, if
dont on parle *passé* 158; 221 145 ,
I went for her now? It[62] is not probable that she would have[145] gone
aller † * 54 N.B. 238 158
there, if she had not been invited[150]. I do not think we should have
y 55, † 92 *inviter.* 221 145
seen her, if it had not been for you. I do not think we should.
159 55, *ce* † *à cause de* 56 ‡

151. If after a verb (in the) subjunctive there is another verb express-
au 246

---

* *Go for* is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour.*
† *Was, Were, Had, Did,* or any other *past* tense that comes after IF, *Si,* must be in the *Imperfect.*
‡ Instead of repeating the verb, the french would say; *Je ne le pense pas* non plus.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ing doubt, preceded by the conjunction *que*, that verb must also be
, *précédé* [200] , *devoir*

(in the) subjunctive; Do you think she expects[145] that I shall see her
au , [221] *s'attendre* *revoir*

again? I wonder she could[179] have thought that I was capable (of it.)
* *s'étonner* [261] *ait* [146] *pu* *penser* *en* [54]

152. When the gerund or present participle is used to qualify a
gérondif [32] *participe* – *s'employer* [169] *qualifier*

noun, it agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that
, *s'accorder* *comme* *en* *genre* [204] *nombre* *(bb)*

noun; A charming girl, with a moving voice, singing her growing
; *charmant* [32] , *de* *touchant* [32] , [153] *naissant* [32]

love, in seeking[153] her wandering sheep, heard some threatening
amours, f. *en* *chercher* *errant* [32] *brebis,* *entendre* [9] *menaçant* [32]

words followed by piercing cries. I heard her trembling steps.
parole *suivi* [157] [200] *perçant* [32] *cri.* *tremblant* [32] *pas.*

153. But, when the gerund expresses the action, and not the quality
, *exprimer* , *non* *qualité*

of a substantive, it does not agree with that substantive; A woman
substantif, [62] *s'accorder* ;

wandering through the country[230], (lost her way.) Some men piercing
errant *à travers* *campagne,* *s'égarer.* [9] *perçant*

through the crowd and threatening to kill her, she fled trembling.
– *foule* *menaçant* [168] *tuer* , *s'enfuir en*

N. B. If the substantive to which the gerund refers is the object
[76] *se rapporter*

of a verb, it is generally expressed by the indicative in french; We
, – [183] *s'exprimer* *par* *en* ;

met a woman wandering through the country. We heard a man
errer *à travers* [230]

threatening to kill her. We saw some huntsmen seeking for a hare.
menacer [168] [9] *chasseur* *chercher* – *lièvre.*

154. The english gerund being governed by a VERB, or by the pre-
[32] *régi* *par* *VERBE,*

positions OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, is expressed by
OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, – *s'exprimer*

the infinitive of the verb in french; I saw you doing it, without
infinitif *en* ; [136] ,

taking any pains. I was afraid of spoiling it. I blame him for
de la peine. *craindre* [140] *gâter* [200]

going away, after having promised to wait for me. Be contented
s'en être allé, [168] [201] [54] – *se contenter* ,

with telling him[169] so. There is no occasion for (using him ill.)
[200] (f) p. 79. *le* [59] [246] [190] *lieu* *de* *maltraiter* [54] –

* *Again* is expressed by *re* before *voir*

† See the *Imperative* of a *reflective* verb, page 114.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

155. The english gerund which is so often used with the auxiliary
[32] *gerondif* – [183] *s'employer* * *auxiliaire* [32]
verb BE, to define an action more particularly, can not be expressed
BE, [170] *définir* *particulièrement,* – *s'exprimer* *
by the gerund in french; (the auxiliary verb must be left out,) and
; *il faut omettre le verbe auxiliaire* ,
(the gerund must be made into a verb) (in the) same tense and person
faire du gérondif un verbe *au* [8]
as the auxiliary verb is; What are you doing there? I am reading
que [32] . – : [83] *là ?*
a novel. You are losing (a deal) of time. What have you been doing,
roman. *perdre* *beaucoup* , – ;
whilst I was dressing myself? I was waiting for my sister. I am
pendant que *habiller* *me* [54] [201]
going to dress myself too. I (am afraid)[221] they will be going[146] before
[172] [54] *aussi.* *craindre* [195] – *partir* [218]
I am ready. Make haste, for they are going to (set off) just now.
prêt. *se dépêcher,*† *car* *aller* [172] *partir* *tout à l'heure.*

156. The gerund which is sometimes used as a substantive in
– [183] *s'employer* * – *en*
english, i. e. preceded by an article, can not be expressed by the gerund
, *précédé* [200] , – *s'exprimer* * *par*
in french; (it must be expressed) by a noun, if a noun synonymous to
; *il faut l'exprimer* , *synonyme*
the verb can be found; as, the reading of good books forms the mind.
[98] ; , *lecture* [7] [83] *former* *esprit.*
His having been instructed (turn; *his instruction*) was of great ser-
; [186] *d'un grand*
vice to him. If a noun synonymous to the verb does not readily[188]
(o) [55] *aisément*
occur to the mind, you[181] must give another turn to the sentence; as,
se présenter , *il* N.B. *faut* *tour* *phrase;* ,
I should have caught that bird, if it had not been for your making
attraper [2] *oiseau,*
a noise; (turn; *if you had not made &c.*) You are the cause of his
du bruit; ; *fait* *&c.*
having been punished; (turn; *that he has been punished.*) What is the
; ; [82]
reason for your being so angry with him? turn; *that you are* so angry.
raison *fâché* [200] ? ;

157. The past[82] participle joined to a noun has the property of an
passé *joint* *propriété*
adjective, and agrees in gender and number with that noun; A
, *s'accorder* *en* *genre* [204] *nombre* ;

* See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235. † See the *Imperative* of a *reflective* verb, page 114.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

married[29] man. A married woman. Well brought up children. Well
marier N.B. 32 *bien élever*[32] – 9

written letters. New built[32] houses. Roasted potatoes[9].
écrire[32] 9 *nouvellement bâtir* 9 *rôtir*[32] *pommes de terre.*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary[32] verbs HAVE or
32 *participe* *auxiliaire*[29] *HAVE*

BE, you[181] must make a particular[32] distinction between these two verbs.
BE, il N.B. *faut* *particulier*[29] *entre* *(bb)*

158. After the auxiliary verb *Être*, to BE, the past participle agrees
32 *verbe* , *to BE,* 32 *s'accorder*

like an adjective, in gender and number with the nominative of that
comme *adjectif,* 204 *nominatif* *(bb)*

verb; as, that man is married. That woman is married. Those
; , *marier.* *(bb)*

children are well brought up. These letters are well written. The
élever –

potatoes are not done enough. Those houses are very well built.
cuire 181 *très* *bâtir.*

159. After the auxiliary verb *Avoir*, to HAVE, the past participle
32 , *to HAVE,* 32

never agrees with the nominative of the verb; so, in these examples;
190 *s'accorder* ; *ainsi,* *(bb)* *exemple;*

My mother has *invited* your sisters. Your sisters have *invited* my
invité

mother, the participle *invité* must not change its masculine termination;
, *devoir* *changer* *sa* 32 *terminaison;*

except when the past participle comes after the participle *Été*, BEEN,
excepté 32 , *BEEN,*

serving with *Avoir*, to form a compound tense; for then it agrees
servant , 169 *former* *composé*[32] *tems;* *car* *alors* *s'accorder*

with the nominative of *Avoir;* as, My sister has been invited. My
; , *été* *invité.*

brothers have been invited. My sisters have been invited.

In all other instances (in which) the past participle comes after
213 7 *cas* *où* 32

HAVE, it (is necessary) to consider whether the participle has an object,
HAVE, il – *faut* 172 *considérer* *si* *objet,*

and whether this object comes before or after the participle.
206

If the participle comes before its object, it does not vary, i. e. it is
son , *changer,*

always masculine and singular; but if it comes after its object, it
masculin *singulier;* ,

agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that object; I
s'accorder *en* 204 2 ;

PAST PARTICIPLE.

have lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch.
perdre *montre.* *trouver* 55

It is not that which I have lost. I have sent you a letter. I have
65 66 *envoyer* 55 *lettre.*

not received it. Have you not received the letter which I have sent
recevoir 55

you? We have sold our house, but we have bought another. (That is)
55 *vendre* *maison,* *en* 70 *acheter* *une autre.* 247

the house which we have sold, and (this is) the other which we have
, 247

bought. We have gained a complete[32] victory. Have you heard
remporter *complet* 29 *victoire.* *entendu parler*

of the victory which we have gained? We have destroyed or taken
détruire *prendre*

all the enemy's [25]ships. (Here are) the frigates which we have taken.
ennemi *vaisseau* 247 *frégate*

N. B. Observe that the participle agrees only with its direct object;
Observer (*bb*) N.B. *son* 32 ;

for, when the object is governed by a preposition expressed or under-
car, *régir* *exprimer* 157 *sous-*

stood, the participle does not agree with that object; (Here is) the
entendre 157, (*bb*) ; 247

person to whom I have written the letter of which I have spoken to
personne 76 74 (*o*)

you. It mentions a victory to which we have not contributed a little.
55 62 *faire mention* *d'* 76 *contribuer* – *peu* 168

Over[200] (how many)* powerful[32] enemies have we not triumphed!
De *combien* N.B. *puissant* 29 *triompher!*

160. Sometimes after a participle preceded by an object, there is a
précédé 200 , 246

verb in the infinitive, then (it is necessary) to consider whether the
à *infinitif,* *alors* *il faut* 172 *si*

object is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows
régir *par* , *suivre*

it. If the participle governs the object, it agrees in gender and num-
62 , 62 *s'accorder*

ber with that object; but if the object is governed by the verb which
;

follows the participle, the participle does not require any* agreement
, *ne* *demander* *pas* N.B. *accord*

with it;* Have you finished the letter which I had given you to write?
l'objet; 140 55 169

Have you finished the letter which you had begun to write? Have
140 † 168

* Here the noun must be repeated in the place of the pronoun, because the personal pronouns after a preposition, can not be used to represent things. See 64 rule. † See note * page 233.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

you read the books which I had lent you to read? Have you read
140 *prêter* * 55 169

the books which I had advised you to read? Is that the actress
conseiller * 55 166 *Est-ce là* *actrice*

whom we heard[126] sing? Sing the song which we heard her[55] sing
entendre * *chanter* ? *chanson* 136 * *lui*

(These are) the figures which I have lately learned to draw. I
247 *dernièrement* * 169 *dessiner.*

still[164] see the same faults which you had resolved to avoid.
encore *faute* 140 *résoudre* * 168 *éviter.*

161. The participles *plu, dû, pu, voulu* do not agree with the object
, , , *s'accorder*

that precedes them, because the infinitive of the verb which comes be-
74 , *parce que*

fore these words, is understood after them; You have not written this
, *sous-entendu* 64 ;

letter so well as you ought. You have had all the time and all the
42 48 177 *tems*

assistance that you wished[126]. I have taken all the pains that I could[126].
secours 74 *vouloir.* 29 *peine* 74 *pouvoir.*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

(A word is[92] said) to govern another, when the word governing
On dit qu'un mot *en régit* *un autre,* *qui régit*

obliges the governed to[169] conform to certain rules.
obliger *mot qui est régi* *se conformer* *certaine (i)* *règle.*

162. When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pro-
régir , *soit* *ou* †

nouns, one of them requires a preposition, expressed before a noun, and
, *demander* , *exprimer* 157 206 ,

generally implied in the pronouns; Has your sister given my brother
renfermer 157 ; 134

any money? (turn; *given money* to *my brother.*) Yes, she has lent
9 ; , *prêter*

him[55] some; (i. e. *some* to *him.*) Did he ask her for it? (turn; *did he*
(f) p. 79. *(p)* ; *(o)* 126 55 ‡ 50 ;

ask it to *her?*) No, it[62] was she who offered it[55] him; (i. e. *it* to *him.*)
(o) ‡ 191, N.B. 140 *offrir* 186 (f) p. 79.; *(o)*

They have requested me to buy them books, *(to buy books* to *them,)*
prier 68 (f) p. 79. 9 , *(o)*

and to send them to them; but I will not send them any; *(any* to
168 *(o)* ; (f) p. 79. *(p)* ;

them.) Have they returned your sister (to *your sister*) those which
265 N.B. *(bb)*

she had lent them[55]? No, they have[79] not; i. e. *returned them* to *her.*
140 159 (f) p. 79. , N.B. ; *(o)*

* See note * page 233. † See note * page 205. ‡ See note ‖ page 296.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

163. When a verb governs two objects, the shorter, i. e. the ob-
régir *objet,* *court*[41],

ject which is compounded of the fewer[41] number of words, is generally
composé *plus petit* [8] *mot,* – [163]

placed first; I have brought your brother a very entertaining book.
se placer le premier; [162] *amusant*[92]

He must dedicate all the time that he can spare to study. How can he
[181] *donner* [74] *pouvoir* – [7] *étude* [183]

expect to learn unless[195] he pays all the attention he can to his books?
s'attendre [168] [218] N.B. *faire* [29] *(s)*

If the objects are nearly of an equal length, i. e. compounded of nearly
à peu près *égale* ,

the same number of words, the direct[32] object must be placed before
[8] , *direct* *devoir* – *se placer* [206]

the indirect; Have you lent my sister any money? She intends to
l'objet ; [162] [9] *avoir*[125] *dessein de*

present your brother with a book. He gives his friends (a great deal)
faire présent [163] *de* * [162] – *beaucoup*

of trouble. Tell her[162] that I will send her children some fruit.
peine. (f) p. 79. *(bb)* N.B. [162]

Yet the indirect object must be placed first, though it were
Cependant [32] *devoir* , *quand même il serait*

the longer[41], if by placing it last, it[62] caused an amphibology with
long, *(hh)* *le dernier,* *faisait* *amphibologie*

other words; as, Take the parcel which I have brought into the
d'autres ; , [256] *paquet*

parlour. Have you sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office?)
salon [136] [55] *poste*

164. The same noun may be governed by two verbs which have
même [178] *régi* *par*

both the same government, i. e. which are both used without a pre-
[122] *régime* , – [122] † *s'employer* –

position, or which require both the same preposition; as, I hate and
, *demander* [122] ; , *haïr*

despise that young man. He is always talking and boasting[155] of what
mépriser *(bb)* [184] ‡ *parler* [155] *se vanter* [84]

he does. He is always opposing and (finding fault) with what other
faire. [184] ‡ *s'opposer* [155] *trouver* [125] *à redire à* *les autres*

people do; but we[90] could not say, I hate and mistrust that young
– [29] *faire;* N.B. , *se méfier de*

man. He is always talking about, and finding fault with what other
[184] *parler* *de,* *trouver* *à redire à* [84]

people do; because *se méfier* requires a preposition before the noun
[29] *faire;*

---

* See note ‖ page 296. † Put this pronoun *after* the verb. ‡ Put this adverb *after the second* verb.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

which follows it, and *haïr* does not require any; and because *parler*
suivre , 219 (p) 54 ;

and *trouver à redire* require different prepositions; we[181] must say; I
29 32 9 ; N.B. ;

hate that young man, and I mistrust him. He is always talking about
(bb) , *se méfier de* 38 184 155 200

what other people do, and finding fault (with it.)
les autres – 39 , 155 *à redire* *y* 54

165. The same verb may govern two parts of a sentence, provided
172 *régir* *partie* *phrase,* 218

they are both affirmative or both negative; as our reputation depends
62 122 *affirmative* *ou* 123 *négative* ; *dépendre*

much (upon[200] the) caprice of men, but still more upon our actions;
du 7 , *encore* *de*

but if one part of the sentence is affirmative and the other is negative
et 219 *autre* 220

(the verb must be repeated;) so, instead of saying: Our reputation
il faut répéter le verbe; *ainsi, au lieu* 154 :

does not depend (upon[200] the) caprice of men, but upon our good or
du , 200 29

[204]our bad actions; repeat the verb, and say; *but it depends* upon our
de 29 ; *répéter* , ; 62 200

good or our bad actions. All men are equal; it[62] is not birth[7], but
7 *égaux;* N.B. *naissance,*

virtue alone (say, *it*[62] *is virtue alone*) which makes the difference.
[7]*vertu* *seule* N.B. 74

166. Some verbs govern the verbs which follow them, indifferently
* *régir* *suivre* , *indifféremment*

in the infinitive or (in the) subjunctive; but when any one of these
à 2 *au* ; 95

verbs governs two verbs, they must be both (in the) same mood; so,
, *devoir* 124 *au* *mode;* *ainsi,*

(it would not be proper to say;) I am glad to see you, and *that I*
on ne dirait pas bien; *bien aise* *de* , *que*

have an opportunity to tell you so; you[181] must say, and *to have* an
24 *occasion* 168 59 *le* 54 ; N.B. , *de* 24

opportunity to tell you so. Instead of saying: I have ordered the
168 59 *le* 54 *Au lieu* *de* 154 : *ordonné*

coach to (be got ready), and that they[90] bring[256] it here; say, I have
d' *appréter,*† , *que* N.B. *amener* 54 *ici;* *dire,*

ordered the coach to be got ready, and to be brought here; or, I have
168 – *appréter,*† 168 – 256 ; ,

ordered that the coach be got ready, and that they[90] bring it here.
92 , N.B. 255 54

* See note † page 282. † Turn; *to get ready*, the coach, and *to bring* &c.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167. Passive verbs require DE or PAR before the noun which they
passif[32] 7 *demander* 206

govern. They require DE, when the verb expresses an action wholly of
régir. *exprimer* *entièrement*

the mind; as, He is blamed by all his friends, and despised by all his
esprit; , , *mépriser*

neighbours. She is commended and esteemed by every body. They
voisin. *louer*[156] 158 106

require PAR, when the bodily[32] faculties participate in the action; The
, *du corps* *avoir*[125] *part à* ;

town was besieged by the Austrians, and afterwards taken[158] by the
127 * *assiéger*[158] *Autrichiens,* *ensuite* *prendre*

French. The houses were plundered by the mob. This news was
127 * *piller*[158] *populace.* *nouvelle* [126]

sent[158] to us by my correspondent. The letter is written by a man
envoyer (o) *correspondant.* 158

who was upon the spot. But instead of these passive expressions,
140 *place.* *au lieu* *(bb)* 32

which are foreign to the genius of the french language, (it is better),
étranger [29] *génie* 29 32 , *il vaut mieux,*

by changing the order of the words, to give to the verb its active sig-
(hh) changer *ordre* , 172 *sa* 32 ,

nification; thus, All his friends blame him, and all his neighbours
; *ainsi,* ,

despise him. Every body commends and esteems her. The Austrians &c.
mépriser 106 *louer* 68

When two verbs occur in[212] the same part of a sentence the
se rencontrer *partie*

latter is governed by the former in the infinitive mood, sometimes
dernier *régir* *par* *premier* *à* *infinitif* – ,

(by the) means of a preposition, and sometimes without it.†
au *moyen* , *préposition.*

The preposition TO, the sign of the infinitive mood in english, is
TO, 22 *signe* – *en* , –

expressed by DE, À, or POUR, but not indiscriminately.
s'exprimer ‡ , , . 191 *indifféremment.*

168. To, before an infinitive is expressed by DE, when it can
To, 206 . – *s'exprimer* ‡ *il pouvoir*

be changed into OF or FROM, and[212] the infinitive can be turned into
– *se changer* ‡ *en* *OF* *FROM, et* *que* – *se tourner* *par*

the gerund or present participle; this generally occurs when the infi-
gérondif 32 *participe;* 89 184 *arriver*

nitive comes after a noun used in a definite sense; as, You shall have
employé *défini*[32] *sens;* ,

* See note * p. 226. † See note * page 341. ‡ See N. B. note (*ii*) p. 235.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

the trouble to do it, or *(of doing it)* over again. Will you have
peine refaire , ‡

the goodness to help, or *(of helping)* me? If you have any desire
bonté aider, [24] *envie*

to serve me, you have now a fine opportunity to do it. Have the
servir , à présent occasion

complaisance to wait for me. I have not time to stay. It is time to
[201] [7] *rester. Il*

go. I do not hinder you from going. See, rule 168, a list of the verbs
partir. empêcher vous en aller. , règle , liste

and adjectives which require DE before the infinitive that follows them.
[3] *demander* [206] *infinitif* [74]

169. To, before an infinitive is expressed by À, when it can be
To, – s'exprimer À, il –*

changed into IN, and [219] the infinitive can be turned into the gerund,
se changer en IN, et que – se tourner par gérondif,

or present participle; this generally occurs after nouns used[157] in a
[23] *;* [69] [184] *arriver* [7] *employer*

partitive sense; He will have some trouble to do it *(or in doing it)*
partitif[22] *;* [9] *peine refaire*

over again. He perhaps[184] will have somebody to help him. Is there
† *peut-être* [95] *aider lui*[54] [246]

no[8] risk to go (this way?) A virtuous man takes pleasure to do good.
N.B. *risque par ici? vertueux* [9]*bien.*

Amuse yourself with reading some instructive book, instead of spend-
Amuser vous[56] [154] *quelque instructif*[22] *, au lieu* [271]

ing[154] your time in playing. See, rule 169, a list of the verbs and
jouer. , , liste

adjectives which require À before the infinitive that follows them.
[206] [74]

170. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *pour*, when it can be
To, – s'exprimer , il –*

turned into IN ORDER TO; as, I was going to write to you to beg,
se tourner par IN ORDER TO; , [155] aller [172] (o) demander

or *(in order to beg)* a favour of you. You are too civil to refuse me.
grâce – [54] trop refuser .

(I will do any thing) to oblige you. I want money to buy a horse.
Il n'est rien que je ne fasse [260] *acheter*

I have not money[8] enough to buy one. It is not enough to have money
N.B. *assez en*[70] *un. – suffire* [168] [9]

to get a horse, one must[181] have money to keep it. He wants
se procurer , N.B. – maintenir [260]

to have a horse, in order to make (people believe) that he is rich.
croire aux gens

---

* See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235. ‡ *Over again* is expressed by *re* before *faire*.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

N. B. The english gerund[32] preceded by the preposition FOR, explaining[200] the motive of an action, is also expressed by the infinitive[184] with POUR; He has been taken up for having fought a duel. Is that[184] sufficient for arresting a man? He was not arrested for fighting, but for robbing and ill using the man whom he had[297] fought with.
gérondif *FOR, servant* *à expliquer* *motif* *s'exprimer* *par* *infinitif* *; arrêter* *s'être*[297] *battre* *en duel.* *suffire* *s'être battu,* *avoir volé* *maltraité* *s'était*

171. The infinitive is used without a preposition in french, when it is the nominative of a verb; as, To love and to be loved are the greatest pleasures in life[7]. To love without measure is a folly, not[190] to love at all, is insensibility. To do to others as we would wish (to be[98] done to), is to follow the law of reason.
s'employer *en* *aimer* *du tout,* *insensibilité.* *à autrui* *ce que* *vouloir* *qu'on nous fit,* *c'est* *loi* *raison.*

172. The infinitive is also used without a preposition after the verbs *aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, venir, assurer, croire, compter, daigner, déclarer, devoir, entendre, envoyer, espérer, falloir, s'imaginer, laisser, oser, paraître, penser, prétendre, pouvoir, reconnaître, regarder, retourner, savoir, sembler, souhaiter, soutenir, vouloir, voir, percevoir*; as, I am going to embark for America. When do you intend to go? I want[260] to (set out) as soon as I can. I hope you will come to see us before you go. I do not think I shall (be able) to call[265] before I go; but I expect to see you often when I have[142] returned. You seem to have a great desire to[168] go. No; I would rather stay than go; but I do not[192] know what to do here. It is better to gain a little than to gain nothing. I would rather gain nothing than to toil myself for so little. See the 172nd rule.
s'employer *m'embarquer* *Amérique.* *compter* *partir?* *souhaiter* *partir* *partir* *pouvoir* *passer* *partir;* *espérer* *envie* *y aller.* *aimer* *mieux* *rester* *(ll) y aller;* *savoir* *Il vaut* *mieux* *gagner* *peu* *(ll)* *aimer* *mieux* *(ll) tourmenter me* *si peu de chose.* *règle.*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

173. WILL, WOULD. If by the words WILL, WOULD, you wish to
WILL, WOULD. , *par* *WILL, WOULD,* *vouloir* 172

denote will, wish desire, inclination, you[181] must express them by
désigner volonté, souhait, désir, , *il* N.B. *faut* *exprimer*

the verb *vouloir*, and put the following verb in the infinitive; if you
, *mettre* *à* ;

wish to denote a determination, (WILL, WOULD must be considered)
172 , *il faut considérer WILL, WOULD*

only as the signs of the future, or of the conditional of the verb which
comme *futur,* *conditionnel*

follows them; as, Will you do me the favour to call[266] upon me? I
; , * *faire* *grâce* 168 58

will call, if I can. Would you do me the favour to call upon me?
, *pouvoir.* * 266

I would call, if I could. Will you bring your sister with you? I will
pouvoir. * *amener* *avec*

bring her, if she will come. Would you bring your sister with you?
, 144 256

I would bring her, if she would come. My sister will not come; she
amener , 144 ;

will stay at home. My sister would not come; she would stay at home.
rester au logis. ;

174. WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE. When WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE
WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE. *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE*

are used to denote the wish to possess, WILL, WOULD are expressed
– *s'employer* 169 *désigner* *désir* 168 *posséder,* *WILL, WOULD* – *s'exprimer*

by the verb *vouloir*, and HAVE is left out; if WILL HAVE, WOULD
, *HAVE* – *s'omettre;* *WILL HAVE, WOULD*

HAVE are used to denote not the wish, but the certainty to possess,
HAVE – *s'employer* 169 *non* , *certitude* 168 ,

they are expressed by the future, or by the conditional of *Avoir;* as,
– *s'exprimer* *futur,* *conditionnel* ; ,

My brother will have a horse. He will have one (cost what it will.)
* *en* 70 * *un.* *coûte qui coûte.*

My brother would have a horse. He* would have one (at any rate.)
* . * *à quelque prix que ce fût.*

He will have a watch too. He would have a watch too. He will
* *montre* *aussi.* * *en* 70

have one, if he learns well. He would have one, if he learned well.
, *apprendre* *en* 70 ,

He will have none, if he will not have this[88]. He would have none,
n'en 70 *pas,* 144 N.B. *n'en* 70 *pas,*

if he would not have this. He will have one like yours.
144 *en* 70 * *une* 85

---

* These sentences may be expressed two ways, but each way denotes a different idea, and this idea can be determined only by the speaker or writer. See the examples under rules 173, 174. See also the different notes on *Will, Would,* page 143, 298, and 334.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

N. B. If WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE, in the sense of WISH, are fol-
WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE, WISH, sui-

lowed by another verb, the object of HAVE becomes the nominative of
vis [200] *, objet HAVE devenir nominatif*

the following verb which must be (in the) subjunctive in french;
suivant [22] *devoir au en ;*

What will you have me do? What will you have my brother do?
[83] * *faire?* * *faire?*

I will have you learn Italian[7], and I will have him learn French[7].
† *Italien,* † *Français.*

Would you have us do[149] nothing but study? Must we never play?
† *faire* [99] *qu' étudier?* [181] [133] [190] *jouer*

Yes, I would have you learn your lessons first, and I would
, [149] *leçon premièrement,*

have you play afterwards. I will not have any of you be idle. I
[149] *ensuite.* [100] *oisif.*

will have every one of you do his duty before he does any thing else.
[105] *devoir* [218] [111] *autre chose.*

175. WOULD HAVE in the sense of CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING, followed
WOULD HAVE CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING, suivre [157]

by a past participle is expressed by the imperfect or by the condi-
[200] [82] *– s'exprimer par imparfait condi-*

tional of *Avoir*, with the participle *voulu*, viz. *Avais voulu*, *Aurais*
tionnel , *, c'est-à-dire*

voulu, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french;
, [82] *– s'exprimer en ;*

If you would have let me go, I should have been back long since.
laisser , *de retour il y a long-tems.*

This would have been done in time, if he would have helped me.
[89] *finir à tems,* *aider*

I asked[136] him to help me, and he would not. I would not have
prier [53] , [136]

helped you for ever so much. Why did you not tell me so before
rien au monde. [136] [55] *cela* [218]

I began? If I had told you so, you would not have come. If any
‡ [53] *le* [59], *tout*

body but you had told me so, I certainly would not have believed him.
autre que ‡ [59] *le* [55], [184]

176. SHOULD: When SHOULD, which is generally a sign of the con-
SHOULD. SHOULD, signe

ditional tense, is used in the sense of OUGHT, it is expressed by the
– , *– s'employer OUGHT, – s'exprimer*

---

* Turn, What *will* you *that I do?* What *will* you *that* my *brother do?* for it is not the *person* whom you *wish*, but you *wish* that the *person* should *perform* some action.

† Turn, I *will* that *you learn* Italian, and I *will* that *he learn* french. *Would* you that *we should do* nothing but study? and s. on with other sentences of this kind. ‡ See note † page 337.

conditional of the verb *Devoir*, viz. *Devrais*; as, you should take
, *c'est-à-dire* ; ,

more[8] pains than you do. Children should learn, every day, something
N.B. *peine* 47 *faire.* 7 , *touts les jours,* 98

by heart. They should (get up) (sooner in the morning) than they do.
par cœur. *se lever* *plus* - *matin* 47

177. SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE, followed by a past participle,
SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE, 200 82

are expressed by the conditional of *Avoir*, with the participle *Dû*, viz.
- * *par* , *Dû,*

Aurais dû, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive
, 82 - *

in french; You should have gone (viz. *ought to have gone*) with your
en ; *aller*

brothers. You should not have let them go alone. They ought not
laisser *seul*[29].

to have gone without leave. They should not have stayed so long.
y 70 *permission.* *rester* *si long-tems.*

You ought to have told them[54] so. You have not acted as you should.
dire (f) p. 79. *le* 59 *agir*

178. MAY, MIGHT. If MAY, MIGHT are used to denote the power
MAY, MIGHT. *MAY, MIGHT* - * 169 *désigner* *pouvoir*

of doing a thing, MAY is expressed by the present of the verb *Pou-*
154 , *MAY* - *

voir, viz, *puis*, *&c.* and MIGHT by the conditional *Pourrais*, which
, , , *&c.* *MIGHT* ,

govern the following verb in the infinitive; If MAY, MIGHT denote the
régir *à* 2 ; *MAY, MIGHT*

mere possibility of doing a thing, they may be expressed by the sub-
simple possibilité 154 , † - *

junctive of *Pouvoir*, or by the subjunctive of the following verb; Any
, *qui suit* 82 ;

body *may* do that; (i. e. *can* or *is able*) to do that. You *may* do it,
109 † *(bb)*; 172 *faire* ,

(i. e. You *can* or *are able*) to do it, if you like. I will shew you
, *vouloir.* ‡ *montrer*

how it *may* be done; (i. e. how one *can*, or *is able* to do it.) Leave
92 ; , *Laisser*

it here, that I *may* try; (i. e. that it *may be possible* for me to
56 , *afin que* *essayer*; 172

try.) I will lend it[54] you, that you *may* learn; (i. e. that it *may*
prêter 59 , *afin que* ;

be possible for you to learn.) Any 109 body *might* do that; (i. e.
;

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235. † See note * page 138, N B. p. 139. ‡ See note † p. 312.

would be able) to do that. You *might* do it, (i. e. you *could* or
faire , *

would be able) to do it, if you had[140] a mind. I will shew you how
, *en* 70 24 *envie.* †

it *might* be done; (i. e. how one *could* do it.) I left[136] it here that
82 ; * *laisser* 55 *afin que*

you *might* try; (i. e. that it *might be possible* for you to try.)
; '

179. COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. When COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE
COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. *COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE*

are followed by a past participle, they are expressed by the imperfect
158 200 32 , – ‡ *imparfait*

or by the conditional of *Avoir,* with the participle *Pu,* viz. *Avais Pu,*
conditionnel , , ,

Aurais Pu, agreeably to the tense, and the english participle is ex-
, *suivant* – , 32 –

pressed by the infinitive in french; If I *could have* done it, (i. e. if
‡ *en* ; * *faire* ,

I *had (been able)* to do it,) I would not have asked[232] you to help
140 *pu* 172 , *prier* 168 *aider*

me. You *might have* done it (i. e. you *would have been able* to do

it) as well as I[32]. I *could* not *have* done it so soon; (i. e. I *should*
43 43 * ;

not *have been able* to do it so soon.) You perhaps[184] *could* not, (or
si tôt. *peut-être* ,

would not *have been able* to do it) but you *might have* tried; (i. e.
essayer;

you *would have been able* to try.) I *might have* tried, (i. e. I *should*

have been able to try) as you say; but I am sure that I *could* not
comme ; *sûr*

have succeeded; (i. e. that I *should* not *have been able* to succeed.)
réussir ; ·

180. WISH. The present tense of the verb WISH, followed by another
WISH. – *WISH,* 200

verb in the imperfect or (in the) conditional is expressed by the con-
à *au* – ‡

ditional of *souhaiter,* viz. *souhaiterais,* and the verb which is in the
, *c'est-à-dire,* , *à*

imperfect or (in the) conditional in english, must be (in the) perfect
au *en* , *devoir (kk)* *au* *parfait*

of the subjunctive in french; as, I wish that was done. I wish
subjonctif ; , 221 *(bb)* 221

* See the different use of *Could,* page 138. † See note † p. 312. ‡ See N. B. note (*ii*) p. 235.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

your sister would come. I wish somebody would help me. I wish
221 95 aider

I had never attempted it I am glad that I have done (with it.)
-(nn) entreprendre 55 168 - -(nn) être débarrassé en 55

181. MUST. The verb MUST is conjugated with the three different
MUST. MUST - se conjuguer * 29 32

persons, viz. I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c. but the verb which
, I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c.

represents it, has only the third person singular of each tense, with
, au singulier 102 ,

il for nominative, viz. *il* FAUT, *il* FALLAIT, &c. (see page 174.) then
, , , &c. alors

the nominative of MUST becomes the nominative of the following verb
MUST devenir

which is always (in the) subjunctive in french; as, I must see (turn;
au en ; , ;

it must that I see) that man. Thou must not go alone. He must
2 † seul.

come himself. Your brother must go with you. You must not stay
(m) N.B. 58 †

long. Must we not speak to him? Must not his friends know it?
long-tems. † (o) 54 † savoir ?

N. B. When the nominative of MUST is indefinite, i. e. when it does
MUST indéfini,

not relate to any particular[32] person, it is generally left out in french,
se rapporter en particulier , - 183 s'omettre * ,

and the following verb is put in the infinitive; How many[8] times
- * à ; N.B. 232

must one tell you the same thing? We must employ our time
dire le

usefully. People must never be idle. They must help one another.
utilement. oisif. s'aider 121

182. MUST HAVE meaning to BE IN NEED, is expressed by *il* FAUT,
MUST HAVE désigner to BE IN NEED, - * ,

but HAVE is left out, and (the nominative of MUST is made) the object
HAVE - * , on fait du nominatif de MUST *

of FAUT; thus, I MUST HAVE, *il* ME *faut;* THOU MUST HAVE, *il* TE
; ainsi, I MUST HAVE, ; THOU MUST HAVE,

faut; HE MUST HAVE, *il* LUI *faut*, &c. (see page 175.) I must have a
; HE MUST HAVE, , &c. ‡

horse. He must have a saddle. My brother must have a wife. My
‡ selle. ‡ femme.

sister must have a husband. These children must have clothes.
mari. habit.

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235. † See MUST used *negatively*, p. 174. ‡ See MUST HAVE, p. 175.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

I have done. Have you done? Has your brotner done? Has
finir.
your sister done? My brother has sung a song. My sister has sung
chanter *chanson.*
a song. My brothers have sung a song. My sisters have sung a
song. Have you heard the song which my brother has sung? Have
entendre 74
you heard the song which my sister has sung? Have you heard the
song which my brothers have sung? Have you heard the song which
my sisters have sung? They are gone. Are they gone? Are your
partir.
brothers gone? Are your sisters gone? How do they do[241]? How
/ 134 185 *se porter?* 185
does your mother do? Is all your family well? Is your sister
241 241 29 *famille* 134 *
returned from Bath? Have the baths been of service to her? I
265 *Bath?* *bain* *faire* *du* *bien* *(o)*
think they have. She looks[258] much better than she did before
221 † *avoir mine* ‡ 47*avoir* 218
she went. I am glad[221] you are come; I wanted to see you. If
y aller. *bien aise* ; 260
you had not come, I would have called upon you. I have some
236 , 266 9
news to tell you. Do you know that Mrs. B. is here? No,
nouvelles plur. *savoir* *ici?* 191,
I did not know it. When did[136] she come? She came this morning.
Quand 236 *matin.*
I have just received this note from her. I am glad she is come
244 *recevoir* *billet* 58
(at last), for I longed[140] much to see her. I will wait upon her
enfin, *car* see p. 175. *fort* *passer* *chez* 56
to-morrow morning. Will you come with me? I do not think I
demain *matin.* 58 221
shall (be able) to go. I (am afraid) my mother will not be able to
pouvoir *y* 70 *craindre* 221
spare[202] me. Since she has been ill, she wishes me to be always
se passer de 56 *Depuis que* § *malade,* *vouloir* ‖

* See note * p. 281, and add to it that the whole of this exercise on the verbs must be well understood before the exercise is left off.

† You may express, I think they *have*, by *je pense qu' oui*; or if you express *have*, you must add the rest of the sentence and say; *je pense qu' ils lui en ont fait.*

‡ Turn this sentence, *She has much better look than she had &c.*

§ *Has been ill.* The English often use this *past* tense to express an action or a state of being which is still lasting: as, *I have been ill these six months;* the French can not use it in this sense; so, *Has been ill* must be expressed by *Est malade*, if the person *is ill* still; by *A été malade*, if she *has ceased* to be so. ‖ Turn, *She wishes that I be &c.* see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

with her. She will not let me (go out) for fear[195] I should stay too
[56] *(kk) laisser sortir de peur que rester*

long. Do you wish me to go? Yes, I do[70]. Well; I will call,
long-tems. * *y*[70] † , N.B. *Eh bien;* *passer,*

if I can. You may call, if you will; it is not so far. I do not think
pouvoir , ; [246] *loin.* [221]

your mother will refuse you to (go out) for such a short[8] time. I will
sortir si – peu N.B.

ask her. Do[70]; i. e. *ask her.* I wish you would lend me the book which
le ‡ (f) p. 79. N.B. [221] *(kk) prêter*

you promised me the last time I was at[206] your house. I promised
(s) N.B.

to send it to my cousin after I have read it. She has nothing to
f. *après que* [62] [60]

do now, and it is better she should do that than do nothing.
à présent, *valoir mieux* [221] [20] *(ll)*

I will lend it you now. I wish you (very much) to read it. I did
§ [62] [59] ‖ *fort*

not lend it you then, for fear[218] you would not return[265] it to me in
[62] [59] *alors, de peur que* – N.B. *à*

time. I (was afraid) that you would keep it too long. I have long
tems. *craindre* [125] – [195] *garder* [62] *long-tems.*

wished to read it. I could not lend it you, before you asked me for
¶ [62] *pouvoir* [62] [59] , [218] [59] [201]

it. Here[247] it is. I wish[221] it may amuse you (as much) as it has
[62] N.B. [62] *amuser* *autant que* [62]

amused me. Do you think your cousin would come, if I sent for
[55] [221] *cousine* , *envoyer chercher*

her? I do not think she can. She told me that she expects a friend
[221] [70] *attendre*

who promised to call upon her this afternoon. Did she tell you that
[266] *après-midi.*

I drank [7]tea with her yesterday[183]? Yes, she did.[70] I wish[221] you had
prendre thé *hier* N.B. N.B. [190]

been there. I wish I had. She is coming to spend the evening with
y [55] (e) p. 74. ** [271] [234]

me (to-morrow,[183]) will you come with her? I wish I could; but I
demain, N.B. *(kk)* [180] *(nn)* [70] ;

can not. I am engaged at Mrs. A's. We will meet some other day.
[70] [208] *se rencontrer quelque* [120]

---

* Turn; *do you wish* that I *go?* see * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish,*

† The verb *Aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; if the place has been mentioned before we always add to *Aller* the adverbial pronoun *Y*, there; see note (e) p. 74.

‡ Add here, in french, the pronoun *Le*, it. § See note † page 312.

‖ Turn; *I wish much* that *you read it;* see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish.*

¶ Turn; *it is long since I wish* &c. see note § page 353.

** Instead of repeating this verb in french we should say. *je le souhaite aussi.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I have just heard that Miss B. is very ill. Who told you so?
venir de [244] *apprendre* *malade.* *dire* [59] *le* [54]

Miss C. told me so. How[246] long has she been ill? She was taken
le [54] *Combien y a-t-il que* * *tomber*

ill this morning. They[90] say she is very ill. I must send to inquire
malade [234] N.B. [221] *m'informer*

how she is now. I think it is better that I go myself. It (is
[241] [224] *valoir mieux* *(m)* N.B.

necessary) that I should see her. It (is becoming) that I pay her a visit.
falloir [125] *convenir* [125] *rendre* [162] [24] *visite.*

Did you hear that Mrs. C. is dead? Indeed! When did she die?
entendre (bb) N.B. *mourir?* *!* [226]

I was with her last night. She seemed (well enough) when I left
[235] *paraître* *en assez bonne santé* *quitter*

her. She was taken ill suddenly in the night, and she died this
Il lui prit du mal subitement , [228]

morning. I am very sorry she is dead. She was the most estimable
fâché [221] [65] [98]

woman that I knew[50]. I had invited her daughter to come and spend
connaître. *(nn)* [271]

(a few) days with me, but I do not think she will come now that
quelques [58], [221]

her mother is dead. Were you at the play lately? Yes, my sister
comédie depuis peu? ,

and I went there (the night before last), to see a new actress. We
[127] *y* [54] *avant-hier au soir,* *nouvelle actrice.*

had expected some amusement, but we were greatly disappointed. The
attendre , *bien* *tromper.*

players were very bad. I never saw a worse[41] set. Was it a good
comédiens *mauvais.* *mauvais troupe.* *Y avait-il beaucoup*

house? Yes, the house was pretty full[20]. The lower[29] boxes
de monde? † , *salle* *passablement* *plein.* *premier* *loge*

were not full, but the upper boxes and the pit were very full.
[20] , ‡ *parterre* [31]

Was my cousin there? I do not know. I did not see her. I met
f. *y* [54]

her yesterday, as I was going to take[268] a walk, and I went to drink
hier, N.B. , §

tea with her. After we had drunk tea, we went into the fields, and
[56] § [218] ,

we picked several curious[32] flowers which I intend to draw, and
cueillir *curieux (g)* *avoir dessein* *dessiner,*

* See note § p. 353. † This sentence can not be expressed in french according to its literal sense; it must be expressed as if the words were, *Were there many people?*

‡ The different sets of boxes are distinguished in french by the names of *premières, secondes, troisièmes, &c. loges.*

§ Speaking of *drinking* tea, coffee, &c. as a meal, we use *Prendre* instead of *Boire.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

send to you. I must make you some little present that[218] you may
(o) *quelque* *afin que*

remember me. Do you think I need any thing to make me
se souvenir 202 58 *avoir besoin de* 111 170

remember you? I will not forget you (as long) as I live. I was
202 58 *oublier* *tant* *que*

in[211] London since I saw you. Did you see the curiosities? I saw
N.B. *Londres* *depuis que* 196 *curiosité?*

the Tower, St. Paul's, and the Museum, but I did not find (so many[8])
Tour, , *Muséum,* *tant* N.B.

curiosities as I had expected. Did you ever see the Museum? Yes;
que 287 *s'y attendre.*

I have seen it several times. Did you hear that my brother is gone
55 282 *entendre*

to France? No, I did not[70]. When did he go? He (set out) this
6 191 , N.B 238 *partir?* 238 *partir*

morning. Were you ever in France? No, I never was there. I
, 190 *y* 55 (e) p. 74.

never had an opportunity to go. I should like to see that country of
24 *occasion* *y* 70 * *(bb)* 230

which I have heard (so much). I will go the first opportunity
74 *entendre parler* *tant* 188 *y* 70 * *à* *(s)*

I can find. And you, were you ever there? I lived in France
, *y* 55 *demeurer*

several years. I have been nearly all over the country. Was
plusieurs † *presque* † 28 230 *Y avait-il*

any body with you? Yes, Mr. B. was with me. How did you travel?
108 , 52 185 *voyager?*

We travelled sometimes in a coach, sometimes in a gig, and some-
quelquefois *en* - *carrosse,* - *cabriolet,*

times on (horseback), as it suited us. When did you return? I
à *cheval,* *comme* *cela convenir* 54 238 265

returned about three weeks or a month ago. Which way did you
265 *il y a* 246 *environ* 246 - *Par* 79 *route*

(come back)? I came through Havre de Grace and Southampton.
revenir? *par* *(b)*

Did you speak french when you went to France? I spoke it a little.
‡ *français* m. 6 ‡ 62 *un peu.*

I spoke it enough to make myself understood. But I knew grammar
‡ 62 *assez* 170 *entendre.* *savoir* 7 *grammaire*

---

* See note † p. 354. † Express *been over* by the verb *parcourir.*

‡ *Did speak* and *spoke* require here an exp.anation. For instance, if I were to say, I met a gentleman in the street yesterday and I *spoke* french to him; I should say, *je rencontrai hier un monsieur dans la rue, et je lui* PARLAI *français*, because I then wish to express what I did, viz. that I *spoke* french. But in the example here given, I do not want to know whether the person spoke french or not, but whether he *knew the language*, which being mere *knowledge* or a *description* of the mind, must, agreeably to 140th rule, be expressed by the imperfect *parlais, &c.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

pretty well[183], and I soon learned to speak it well. I now speak it
assez bien N.B., 184 , 62 184

as fluently as my native[29] language. Did you never meet with
43 *couramment* 43 *maternel* 29 *langue* 190 *rencontrer* 201

people who spoke english? Yes, sometimes, but not so often as I
229 , , 191 *que*

wished. Were you in France when the revolution began? No, I
commencer? ,

was in Holland. Were the Dutch glad[29] (of it)? Some were glad
Hollande. *Hollandais* *bien aise* *en*[54] 94 29

(of it), and some [70]were not. Some (were of opinion) that it would do
en[54], 94 72 94 *penser* 62

a (great deal) of good, others thought that it would do a great deal of
– *beaucoup* *bien,* 120 *penser* 62 –

harm. I did not stay long in Holland; I went to Germany and Italy.
mal. *rester* 6 ; 6 *Allemagne* 204

I have been to Ireland too, since[196] I saw you. Well; how do you like
6 *Irlande* *aussi, depuis que* *Eh bien;* 263

that country? I like it (very much); it is a very fine country; but I
220 266 62 *beaucoup;* 65 ;

will not (go again,) unless, as the Irishman in London says, I can[1]
y retourner, 218 , *comme* *Irlandais* *à* *Londres* * N.

go by land. I was[140] very sick. I never was so sick in my life
(*kk*) *y* [70] *par* *terre.* N.B. *malade.* 136 *de* *vie*

Indeed, every body on board was sick. It[62] is true that it blew
à la vérité, 106 *à* *bord* N.B. *vrai* *faire*

a tempest. One of our masts fell over board, and we lost almost
tempête. *mât* *tomber par-dessus* [7] , *perdre*

all our sails. We expected every moment that we should go and
voile. *attendre* *à tout* –(*nn*)

sup with the god of the waves. However after a deal of toil
souper *dieu* *flot.* *Cependant* – *beaucoup* *peine*

and fatigue, we arrived at Cork [25]harbour. We landed as soon as
204 , [7] *havre.* *débarquer* 43 43

we could, and we were very well received by our friends who were
pouvoir, *recevoir*

waiting for us. We soon forgot the perils of the sea, and we began
201 184 *oublier* ,

to divert ourselves (in the best manner) we could. (Next day) I went
divertir *du* *mieux que* [7] *Lendemain.*

to my friend Mr. D.'s (country seat.) The weather was[240] bad for
[25] *château.* 140 N.B. 205

some days, but one morning it grew fine. I (got up) early, and
, 224 62 *devenir* *se lever* *de bonne heure,*

* In a parenthesis, the French generally put the nominative after the verb; so, turn this sentence thus, as *says the* Irishman *in London.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I went by myself to take[263] a walk in the fields, while the family
[207] N.B. N.B. , *pendant que*

(were asleep.) I never saw nature more sublime than it[62] was at that
dormir.[125] * *le*[70] *dans*

moment. The sun had just risen, and the dew which was on the grass
[244] *se lever,* *rosée* *'herbe*

appeared like pearls. I advanced a little into the country, but the
ressembler à [9]*perle.* *s'avancer un peu* [230] , [45]

more I advanced, the more I felt inclined to advance. I saw on all
, [45] *se sentir porté* *de*

sides trees loaded with fruit which was beginning to ripen; an in-
côté [9] [200] *commencer mûrir,* *in-*

finite number of birds singing[153] and warbling on the branches; cattle
fini[32] [6] *oiseau* N.B. *gazouiller*[138] ; [9]*bétail*

grazing[155], or wandering through the meadows; hills and dales covered
paître, N.B. *errer* *à travers* *prairie;* [9]*colline* [9]*vallée*

with corn which began to (turn yellow); in short every thing indicated
[200] *blé* *jaunir* ; *en un mot* [107] *annoncer*

abundance and prosperity. I was[140] so delighted with my walk, that I
[7]*abondance* [7] *é é* N.B. *charmé* [200] ,

(went again) every morning that the weather was fine. I stayed there
y[70] *retourner* *touts les matins* [249] *rester* *y*[54]

six weeks, and I do not think it[62] is possible to spend six weeks
, [221] N.B. [271]

more agreeably than I did. Did you see Mr. A. lately? I saw him
[47] *le*[70] *faire.* *depuis peu?*

this morning. I met him as I was going along the street. He
rencontrer *comme* *passer le long de*

told me that he had called upon you, but that you were not in. He
[266] , *y*[54]

desired me to tell you that he wanted to see you. If you see him
[232] [260] *revoir*

again, tell him that I will call upon him as soon as I have dined.
— , [56] [266] [58] [43] [46]

I will.[70] Did you not go a shooting together yesterday? Yes, we
N.B. *à la chasse au fusil ensemble* [183] N.B. ,

did.[70] Was your excursion successful[29]? Not very. The ground
N.B. *chasse* *heureux (g)?* *Passablement.* *terre*

was wet, and the game was very wild. We killed only six brace of
humide, *gibier* *sauvage.* *tuer* *couple*

partridges, two hares and four woodcocks. Were there no[8] pheasants?
perdrix, *lièvre* *bécasse.* [246] N.B. *faisan?*

There were plenty; but they were in some gentlemen's [25]plantations,
[246] *abondance;* [62] † *messieurs* [7]

Family being *singular*, the verb can not be plural in french. † See note † p. 292.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and we dared not touch them. Did you walk or ride? We
oser *(kk) toucher* *y* [54] *aller à pied ou à cheval?*

rode as far as R. where we left our horses at a small inn there,
aller à cheval jusqu'à *où* *laisser* *à* *auberge qui y est,*

and after we had refreshed ourselves a little, we began our excursion.
après que *rafraîchir* *un peu,* *chasse.*

We (went over) I do not know[192] (how many) heaths, fields and coppices.
parcourir N.B. *combien* [8] N.B. *bruyère,* [204] *taillis.*

I dare say we walked 20 miles. When we arrived at the inn, we were
pouvoir [221] [263] *mille.* ,

so tired that we could not return home that night. We slept there,
fatiguer *(kk)* [265] *au logis* [18] *soir-là.* *coucher* *y* [54]

and we (came home) this morning. We intend to try again to-morrow.
revenir *essayer encore demain.*

Will you come with us, if we go? I will go, if you will promise
, *y* [70]* ,

me to return in time for dinner. If we find that it is too late, we
[265] *à* *tems* *dîner.* *trop* ,

may dine in the country. I can not stay. We shall have company
pouvoir † [230] *(kk) rester.* [9]

to dinner, and I must be there. Then I think it is better for
, *y* [54] *Donc* [184] [281] *il* *vaut mieux* *que*

us to go after dinner. We may set out as soon as the dinner is
‡ *y* [70]* *pouvoir* † [43] [48]

over. We generally[184] dine late; I am afraid it[62] will be too late to
fini. *ordinairement* *tard;* [221] N.B. [195] [170]

go then. I think the best thing we can do, is to (put it[54] off)
y [70] *alors.* [221] *(s)* [50] , *c'est* *de* *remettre*

till after to-morrow. We may then take our own time. We shall
jusqu' à après † *alors* –

(set out) as early as you please. I wish your cousin would come
partir *d'aussi bonne heure qu' il* *plaire* §. [221]

with us. I wish you would send somebody to let[249] him know. I do
[221] [95] N.B. ‖

not know a man whose company is more pleasant. Bring him with
[74] [7] *agréable.* [256] [56]

you, if he will come. I see him coming, I will ask him[54]. Your
, , ¶ ‖ ,

cousin and I go a shooting the day after to-morrow, will you be one
[52] [127] *à la chasse au fusil* – – , *(kk)* –

of the party? I should be very happy to accompany you, but I do
partie? *bien* *aise* *accompagner* ,

---

* See note † p. 354. † The french would here use the *future.*
‡ Turn; *It is better that we go.*
§ Make the verb *Please* impersonal, and express *You please,* as if the english was, *it will please you.*
‖ Add here the pronoun *Le,* and say *Le lui.* 70 rule. ¶ See note † p. 312.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

not think that I can. We shall not go further than you like. You
70 loin[41] [47] vouloir.

may come, if you will. You might come, if you would. I will
pouvoir , pouvoir ,

consider (of it). I should like to go (very much)[183]. I will let[248] you
penser y[54] * fort N.B. † N.B.

know to-night, if I can go. Why did you not call yesterday? I could
[235] , * [266]

not. I went a hunting. Who was with you? (Was there) any body
à la chasse. [246] [108]

(that I know?) Yes, (there were) several of our friends. What time
de ma connaissance? , [246] plusieurs à[82] heure

did you go? We (set out) at six o'clock. Did you catch any thing?
partir? partir à prendre [111]

We caught a fox. Had you a (great deal) of sport? Yes, we had[70].
renard. – beaucoup plaisir? , N.B. ‡

I wish I had been with you. If I had known it, I would have gone.
(nn) § savoir , [238] *[70]

Why did you not let[248] me know? I did not know that you could go.
N.B. le[70] pouvoir *[70]

I was[140] at home the whole day, and I had nothing to do. The next
N.B. au logis [38] , [140] [99] prochaine

time you go, do not fail to let[248] me know. I will not; i. e. *fail*[70].
[262] (s) * , manquer N.B. le[70] y[70] . . N.B.

I have got a new horse. When did you buy it? I bought it this
[270] nouveau ‖ acheter

morning. (How much) did you give (for it)? I gave a hundred
combien en[54] en[70] [21]

guineas. It[62] is a (great deal) of money. How old is[259] it? It is[259]
guinée. N.B. – beaucoup N.B. N.B.

four years old. Will you come to look at it? Now; what do you
voir [201] ; [83]

think (of it)? Do you not think that I got it cheap? I do not
en[54] avoir à bon marché?

think it is dear. It is a very good horse. I wish it may answer[262]
[221] [65] [221] répondre à

your expectation. I will buy one too, as soon as I have a little
attente. en[70] un aussi, [43] tôt [43] un peu

more[8] money. Do you think I can get a good one for fifty guineas?
N.B. [221] (kk) avoir [54] en[70] guinée?

I think you may. When I have one, I will lend it you when you
[221] [70] en[70] un , prêter [54] [59]

---

* See note † p. 354. † See note ‡ p. 241. ‡ Add, *a good deal of it.*
§ See note † p. 337. ‖ Put this adjective *before* the noun.

VERB

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

want[260] it. Will you take[263] a walk when your letter is finished?
avoir besoin *en*[54] N.B.

I can not; I must take it to the (post office) as fast as I can. It
70 ; 256 62 *poste* 43 *vite* 43

must go to-night. I am afraid it will be too late when I am
partir 235 221 195 *tard*

there. I will go with you, if you will wait for me. I can not wait;
y[54] *aller* , 201 *(kk)* ;

I must go directly. Will you call upon me when you (come back)?
y[72] *tout à l'heure.* 266 *revenir?*

I do not think I can. My sisters go to the play; they will have[174] me
221 70 *comédie;* N.B.

go with them, and I must go. Will you call when you come back
36 , 70 *passer*

from the play? I will see. I will call, if it is not too late when the
de 266 ,

play is over. Why did you not call in (coming back) from hunting?
finie. * 266 *en* *revenir* *de* *chasse?*

I could not. It[23] was late, the weather was bad, and I was tired.
70 N.B. *tard,* *tems* 240 , *las* †

I am tired of those violent[28] exercises. I must get a wife. Marry,[261]
ennuyé † 29 *exercice.* *prendre* *se marier,* ‡

says a proverb, you will do well; do not marry, you will do better
proverbe, ; ‡ , (b) p. 72.

I do not care for your proverbs. I must have a wife. I will have
se soucier 200 182 ‖

one who is tolerably handsome, who has some common sense and a
passablement , 9 *commun*[32] *un*

little[8] fortune. Do you think you can find a woman who is so
peu N.B. *bien.* 221 *trouver*

accomplished? If I thought that I could not find one, I would never
accomplir? ¶ *pouvoir* *en*[70] *une,*

be married. I like your sister. Do you think she will go to the
– *se marier.*[261] 221

assembly to-night? If I hear that she goes, I will send you word.
assemblée 235 *apprendre* **[70], *le faire* [54] *savoir.*

I do not think she will[70]. She has not been well for some time,
221 ** N.B. 227 241 *depuis* *quelque*

---

* *Did* refers here to the period of hunting, which was *yesterday.*
† Tired—*Las, Ennuyé. Las* is said of the *body; Ennuyé* is said of the *mind.*
‡ See the imperative of *a reflective* verb, p. 114.
‖ *Will have* may here be expressed two ways, agreeably to the idea which you wish to express.
If you wish to denote that you know the person you describe, and are certain to have her, you express *Will have one* by *J'en* aurai *une &c.* with the following verbs in the *indicative.*
If you want to denote that you wish to find such a person as you describe, you must express *Will have one* by *J'en* veux *une,* with the following verbs in the *subjunctive.* See 174 rule.
¶ See note † p. 337. ** See note † p. 354.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

and she (is afraid) of (going out), for fear of (catching cold). I am
craindre *sortir,* *de peur de* *s'enrhumer.*

sorry[221] she does not come, for I intended to dance with her. She is
fâché , *avoir dessein* 58 65

the most agreeable woman that I ever [80]knew. When did you see her?
44 82 *jamais* 136

I saw her this morning. She called at[206] our house, but she did not
234 266 * N.B. , *

stop. Did she give you the book which I sent you? Yes, she did[70];
rester. 74 , N.B.

i. e. *give it me*[70]. Did you read it? Yes, I read a good part (of it).
N.B. , *partie en* [55]

How do you like it? Did it entertain you? I like it very well;
185 263 62 *amuser* 62 ;

it entertained me (very much). I never read a book which entertained
62 *fort.* 183 74

me more. Do you think the foreign[32] mail will arrive to-day? It
183 221 *étranger* [29] *malle* *aujourd'hui?* 62

is arrived. It arrived early this morning. I wonder that (there is)
62 238 *de bonne heure* 234 *s'étonner* 246

no[8] letter for me. I am afraid my friends have forgotten me. I wrote
N.B. 56 221 195 *oublier* 55

to them (long ago). It is time that I should hear from them. I
(o) *(il y a long-tems).* *Il* *tems* 275 †

wish they would write to me. I will not write to them again,
221 *(o)* *récrire (o)* – ,

until[218] I have heard from them. I think they do not wish me to
jusqu' à ce que 275 † 221 ‡

know what is passing at home. I am afraid they will think that I
savoir 84 *– se passer* *au logis.* 221 195

stay here too long. I suppose they wish me to come[254] home, but
rester ici *long-tems.* 254 221 ‖ *s'en retourner,*[265]

I do not intend to go back yet. I will stay here as long as I can.
avoir *dessein* *s'en retourner* *encore..* 42 42

We are going to drink tea, will you take a cup with us? I do not
prendre [7]*thé,* 70 *tasse* *Je le veux*

care. I was going to Mrs. D.'s, but I (may as well) stay here. I
bien.¶ 208 , *(ferai aussi bien) de*

can not be in better company. What were you looking for when
(kk) *en* 82 201

I met you? I was looking for my little boy who has been wander-
201 *garçon* *errer*

---

* See note * p. 225. † Express *from them* by *de leurs nouvelles*, or by *des nouvelles d'eux*
‡ Turn; they do not *wish* that *I know &c.* ‖ See note * page 229, which is also applicable to *wish*
¶. We could not say in this sense, *je ne m'en soucie pas*, for I do not care.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

ing about all the afternoon. I saw him playing with the other
çà et là *après-midi.* 190

children, as I was passing by your house. Your house is well built,
, comme 207 *bâtir,*

but it is not well situated. It is (too much) exposed to the wind.
62 *situer.* 62 *trop* *exposer* *vent.*

We had planted a great number of trees round it, but the drought
planter *autour* 64, *sécheresse*

has nearly killed them all. Is it[62] the house which your father
presque *faire mourir* 55 N.B. 74

got built? No, it[62] is not; he has sold it[62], and has bought this[88].
faire bâtir? , N.B. 70 ; *vendre* 55, *acheter* N.B

Have you seen (the one) which he has begun to build? No, I have
celle * 74 *commencer* ,

not[70]. You have a nice[88] library; may I look at it[54]? Surely,
N.B. *joli* 29 *bibliothèque;* *pouvoir* *voir* – 62 *Assurément,*

you may. These books are well bound, but they are very badly
70 *relier,* *mal*

printed. I have lately read some very entertaining ones. I will
imprimer. *depuis peu* † 10 *amusant* *en* 55 ‡

shew you the books which I have read. I have also bought several
74 *plusieurs*

curious[82] things. See the fine things which I have bought. I want
curieux 29 *(g)* *belle* 260

to shew them to your sister. How long is it since you saw her?
246 *que* 196

I saw her as she was coming to town. I am glad[221] you are come,
comme 7 *bien aise*

and that your sister is coming too. I am surprised she has written
aussi. 221

to you, and has not mentioned it. Have you sent the books which
(o) , 221 *parler* *en* 55 74

you were speaking of into the country[260]? No, I have not sent them
203 213 163 ,

yet[166]. I will send them this evening. Did you lend your cousin
encore. 234 162.

those which he asked you for? Yes, I did; i. e. *lend them to him.*[70]
88 201 , . N.B.

Did you hear that my uncle B. has given my brother a horse? He
oncle 162 163

has lent him money to buy one, and I am sure he never will ask
162 *en* 70 *un,* 221 190 *redemande*

him for it again. He has also made my eldest[88] sister a present of a
162 ‖ 59 ¶ *aîné* 29 162 24 163

---

* We could not say *l'une* for *the one.*
‖ See note ‖ page 296.
† See note † page 241.
‡ See note † page 312.
¶ *Again* is expressed by *re* prefixed to *demander.*

VERB

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

watch. Did he ever give your other sister any[111] thing? No, he
montre. 120 162 163 ,

never did[70]. He often promised her something, but he never gave her
N.B. 184 162 96 , 162

any thing. She should try to please him. She should pay more
99 *essayer* 202 *faire*

attention than she does to what[84] she is told. She says she pays all
47 *faire* 163 92 231 29

the attention she can to every thing[163] she does. Sometimes, not
(s) *tout* *ce que* , *pas*

always. Take the books which I gave you into the (school room)
256 213 *école* 163 –

with you. Now, I must go. Will you come with me? I can not.
, *s'en aller.* 58 70

You might come, if you would. I might go (to be sure); but then
, *y* 76 *il est vrai;* *alors*

I must neglect business which ought not to be neglected. Come,
négliger 9 *affaires* ,

that we may divert ourselves a little. You must have a little[8] diver-
afin que *divertir* *un peu.* N.B. *amuse-*

sion. You must not always be (shut up) in the house. Send me my
ment. *renfermer*

servant, that[218] I may tell him to get our horses ready. If you
domestique, *afin que* *apprêter* –*

would have (set out) a little sooner, we might have diverted ourselves
partir *tôt* 41 , *nous* 54

(very much). If I could have got my horse when I ordered it, I
beaucoup. *avoir* *demander* ,

might have been ready as soon as you. I should have had it sooner,
prêt 43 43 41 ,

if my brother could have spared it. I wish my father had bought
se passer *en* 59 221

(the one) which you recommended to him. I wish you would sell
celui † (o) 221

him yours. I would have sold mine (long[246] ago), if I could have found
162 85 85 *il y a long-tems,*

any body who would have bought it. I will have one like yours.
106 *semblable* *au* 85

If I had known that you wished to sell yours, I might have found
‡ *vouloir* ,

somebody who would have bought it. You should have told me[59] so
95 *le* 54

then; I might have bought it myself. I may perhaps find somebody
alors (m) N.B. *peut-être* (kk) 95

---

* *Ready* is expressed in the word *Apprêter.* † We could not say *l'un* for *the one.*
‡ See p. 140 and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules*

yet [183]. I wish you could. I could have sold it myself long ago,
encore. N.B. 221 70 55 *(m)* N.B. *il y a long-tems,*

if I could have done without it then. Can you do without it now?
220 *en alors.* 220 *en*

I think I can. My sisters wish you to come and spend an evening
221 70 * *(nn)* 271 234

with us. When will you come? I can not tell. I will come as soon
Quand 70 264 43

as I can. You must bring your sister with you. Oh! we can not
43 256 !

come both at the (same time). Somebody must stay at home. The
122 *à la fois.* 95 *rester au logis.*

house can not be left (to itself). Come; you are rather too hard
92 92 *laisser seule.* *Allons;* *un peu* *sévère*

upon her. She must have a little* amusement too. You should have
envers 56 *un peu* N.B. *aussi.*

brought her with you to-day. Why did you not bring her? I did
256 256

not know that you wanted[260] so much to see her, or else I would
avoir si grande envie , *autrement*

have brought her. I will bring her the next time I come. Do.
256 256 232 *(s)* 70 N.B.

I will[70]. Did my sister tell you that I have been in the country?
N.B. *à* 230

No, she did not[70]. When did you go? I think I saw you (at the)
, N.B. *y* 70 221 *au*

beginning of the week. You could[136] not see me this week, for
commencement *semaine.* *pouvoir* , *car*

I went last[82] week. When did you return? I returned this
70 7 236 265 236 2

afternoon. Did you call upon our friends? I just[184] saw them,
266 *seulement* ,

as I was passing by the house. How were they? They seemed
207 195 241 *paraître*

very well. Did you come (that way) (on purpose)? Yes, I
en très-bonne santé. 233 *par là* *exprès?* ,

did[70]. I wonder at your going there again so soon. Will you
N.B. *s'étonner* † *retourner* *y* 55. – *si*

never cease doing what you are desired not[190] to do? I should not
cesser 84 92 *dire* 252 N.B.

find fault with your calling sometimes, when you happen to be
trouver *mauvais* ‡ *passer* *il vous arrive* *de* –

* Turn; *wish* that *you come &c.* see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish.*
† Turn; that *you have* 236 *gone there again so soon.* see 165 rule.
‡ Turn; that *you should call* 149 *sometimes &c.* see 156 rule.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

going (that way), but I wonder at your going there purposely, after
*par là, s'étonner * y[54] exprès*

having promised me that you would not go again without asking me
[55] *ne plus*

leave. You are too[188] fond of rambling; are you[228] not? How
permission. – trop aimer à rôder; n'est-ce pas? [185]

could I help it[54]? I was accused of neglecting *people who have
s'empêcher en[59] [92] *négliger* [229]

been kind to me; can I be blamed for endeavouring to justify
eu des bontés pour [56]; [92] *de chercher*

myself? I do not blame you for justifying yourself; I only wish you
me[54] *de vous*[54]; [184] †

not to do things which may be disagreeable to your friends. Come,
[9] *désagréable*[29] *Ailons,*

ladies, amuse yourselves with reading this pretty tale, instead of losing
mesdemoiselles, [56] [169] *conte, au lieu*

your time in playing. You should abstain from looking about you,
s'abstenir autour de ,

whilst you are learning your lessons. That is not the way to
pendant que Ce n'est pas là moyen

improve yourselves. You are very[188] fond of scolding. What plea-
perfectionner vous[54] *– beaucoup aimer à gronder.*

sure can you have in vexing people so[188]? You are always
chagriner [229] *ainsi* N.B.? – [184]

finding fault with every thing one does. I am quite tired with
trouver à redire à tout ce (s) [90] [189] *ennuyé* [200]

always hearing the same thing. If you paid attention to what you
[184] *chose. faire* [84]

are told, there would not be occasion for repeating it so often. You
[92] *, il besoin de*

never do things (at a proper time). How can I help it? I never
[190] *à propos. Que faire* ‡ *y*[54]

know the (time of the day). You should have a watch. Yes; I
'heure qu'il est. montre. ;

ought to have a watch. I want[200] a watch (very much). When
avoir besoin grand. ‖

shall I have one? You shall have one as soon as you behave well.
en[70] [70] *se comporter*

Will you have mine? No, I do not like yours. It is an old one.
[85] , [62] *– vieille –*

I will have a new one, or I will have none. Then[184] you must
en[70] *une neuve, – en*[70] ¶ *Donc*

---

* Turn; that *you have*[228] *gone there purposely &c.* see 156 rule.
† Turn; *I only wish* that *you do not things &c.* see note * p. 239.
‡ *Help*, in the sense of to *avoid*, is expressed by *Faire, Eviter, Empêcher*, never by *Aider*.
‖ Turn; *I have great need of a watch.* ¶ Express *None* by *Pas*, with *Ne* before the verb.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

wait till[218] you can buy one yourself. What will you have us do
attendre que *en*[70] *(m)* N.B. [63] *faire*

now? I would have you go and take a walk[203] till dinner [25] time;
(nn) N.B. *jusqu'au* [7] ;

and when you have (eaten your dinner), I would have you go to your
dîné, *prendre* –

books. What! so soon. Must we have no play? No, you shall
[63] *! si tôt.* * *jouer?*

not play before[218] you have said your lessons. May we play then?
avant que *alors?*

Yes, you may play, if you say them well. You should (get up)
, , *se lever*

sooner; then you would have plenty of time to play. If you would
[41] ; *alors* *tout le tems*

have got up when I called you, you might have played as long as
se lever *appeler* , [43] *long-tems* [43]

you would. I wonder that the people whom we expected are not come
[175] *s'étonner* [229] *attendre*

yet[183]. Is it[62] not astonishing that they should keep us waiting so
encore. N.B. *étonnant* *faire* *attendre si*

long? They should not have promised, if they found that they
long-tems? *promettre,* *prévoir* †

could not come. I might have asked somebody else. We might
prier *quelqu' autre personne.*

have taken[203] a walk before we sat at table. For the future I will[174]
N.B. *avant de nous mettre* *à* *avenir* N.B.

have my orders punctually attended[62] to. You should not have relied
‡ *exactement* *qu'on suive* – *compter*

upon people you did not know. If you would have followed my advice,
[229] *(s)* *suivre* *avis,*

this would not have happened. You see; we can not console our-
[89] [238] *arriver.* ; *nous*[54]

selves for being deceived by our enemies, and betrayed by our friends;
de *tromper* *par* *ennemis,* *trahir* ;

and we are often satisfied with being so by ourselves. I have received
satisfaire [200] *le*[54] *(m)* N.B. *recevoir*

the letters which you have written to me respecting the affair which
(o) [55] *au sujet de*

I had proposed to you, and after having read them attentively, I have
proposer *(o)* [55] , [55] *avec attention,*

found that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with
reconnaître , † *entreprendre* [55], *trouver* [201]

obstacles which I had not foreseen. I am very glad you have not[70].
prévoir. *bien* [221] N.B.

* Express this sentence as if it were, *Must we not play?* † See note † p. 337 ‡ See * p. 229.

ADVERB.

183. ADVERBS, in french as in english, are generally placed after
Adverbe 7, *en* *comme* – *se placer*

the verb, when the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary verb and
verbe, , *entre* *auxiliaire* 22

the participle, when it is compounded; I understand french pretty
participe, 62 *composé;* *entendre* 7 *assez*

well[183], but I have not yet learned it long enough to speak it fluently.
bien, N.B. *encore* *long-tems assez* * 170 62 *coulamment.*

N. B. The adverb expressing some circumstance of the verb, must
quelque , *devoir*

be placed immediately after the verb which it modifies; so, instead
se placer *immédiatement* 62 *modifier;* † *ainsi,* *au lieu,*

of saying; You pronounce french very well. I wish to learn it (very
154 ; *prononcer* 7 *très*

much.) You must take more[3] pains in future than you do. I will
fort. 181 N.B. *peine* *à* *l'avenir* 47

do every thing that you have recommended to me carefully. Do you
tout *ce* *que* *recommandé* *(o)* 55 *soigneusement.*

not go into the country to-morrow? say; You pronounce very well
à *demain?* *dites;*

french. I wish (very much) to learn it. You must take in future
7 *fort* 181 *à* *l'avenir*

more pains than you do. I will do carefully every thing that you
47

have recommended to me. Do you not go to-morrow into the country?
(o) 55 *à*

184. Some adverbs may be placed in english either before or after
Quelques – *se placer* *ou*

the verb which they modify, but the french[22] adverbs which represent
, *français* *représenter*

them must always be placed, (agreeably to) the general[22] rule, after the
devoir *se placer,* *suivant* – *générale* *règle,*

verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle; as, What is the
ou *auxiliaire* 22

reason that you so seldom come to see me? (say, *that you come so*
raison *si* *rarement*

seldom &c.) I sometimes think that you never will come again. You
quelquefois 196 *revenir* –

certainly have no reason to think so. I very seldom (go out,) and
certainement *sujet* *le* 54 *rarement* *sortir,*

when I go, my sisters generally come with me, and I never can
sortir, *ordinairement* 58 , 190

bring them so far as your[208] house; but I very often think of you.
amener *jusque chez* N.B. ; 200 58

* The adverb *Assez*, like the other adverbs, is always placed *before* the adjective or adverb which it modifies: so say, *enough long.* † See note ‡ p. 241.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

185. How. How used to denote admiration is expressed by *que*,
How. How employé désigner – s'exprimer par ,
and the adjective or adverb which follows HOW, must be placed after
adjectif [8]adverbe HOW, devoir – se placer
the verb in french; as, How long you have been! How late you
en ; , long-tems tard
come! How glad I am to see you! How heartily I thank you!
aise de bon cœur
How sweet these flowers smell! How beautiful those roses are!
bon (bb) sentir! (bb) !

In asking a question, HOW is expressed by *comment* to denote the
En faire HOW – (ii) N.B. par [170] désigner
manner, and by *combien* to denote a quantity; How shall we go?
manière, quantité;
How shall we carry our luggage? How shall we know where you are?
porter bagage? savoir où
How many[*] people shall we be? How much[*] money have you got?
N.B. [229] N.B. argent [270]

186. How LONG. When HOW LONG refers to the beginning of
How LONG. HOW LONG se rapporter commencement
time, it is expressed by *combien*, when it refers to the duration, it
[7] , – (ii) N.B. , durée,
is expressed by *combien de tems;* and when it refers to the end, it
– ; fin,
is expressed by *jusqu'à quand;* as, How long have you been learn-
– ; ,
ing french? or, how long is it[†] since you learn french? How long
[153] y a-t-il que
do you intend to learn? How long will you abuse[202] my patience?
avoir [125] dessein abuser de

187. How FAR. When HOW FAR is the nominative of a verb, it
How FAR. HOW FAR nominatif ,
is expressed by *combien;* and when it is its object, it is expressed
– (ii) N.B. : [17] objet, –
by *jusqu'où;* as, How far is your house from here? or how far is[†] it
; , † y a-t-il
from here to your house? How far is Windsor from London? How
ici † [245] Londres?
far do you intend to go? How far shall we go to meet[273] you?
avoir dessein au-devant de

---

* These two ways of expression are rendered by the latter way in french. By this expression *Have been learning*, is meant that the person *continues* to learn; so to express the same idea in french, you must use the present of the verb, and say; *Vous apprenez*, not *Vous avez appris*, which would mean that the person has *ceased* to learn. Again, *How long have you been in England?* may be expressed by *Combien de tems avez-vous été en Angleterre?* or by *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre?* The former of these expressions meaning that the person has left England; the latter meaning that the person is still in England. Learners are very apt to confound these two ideas. See note § p. 353.

† These two ways of expression must be rendered by the latter way in French.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

188. HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, before an adjective, a participle, or an
HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, 206 *adjectif, participe*

adverb, is expressed by *quelque*, which requires *que* after the adjec-
adverbe, – s'exprimer , demander*

tive, participle or adverb, and the following verb (in the) subjunctive:
, , qui suit 32 *au subjonctif;*

However learned you are. However diligent she is.
savant

N. B. If the nominative of the verb is a noun, it is generally
nom, 62 – 183

placed after the verb; However learned your master is, &c. These
se placer ; savant maître ,*

words follow the same rule as WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER, rule 117.
mot règle que WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER,

189. QUITE, ENTIRELY, before an adjective or a participle, are
QUITE, ENTIRELY, 206 *ou , –*

generally expressed by *tout;* as, My shoes are quite (worn out.) My
** ; , soulier usé* 158.

boots are quite worn out. My mother is quite astonished (at it.)
botte étonné 158 *en* 55.

N. B. When *tout*, in this sense, is followed by an adjective femi-
, sens, suivre 200

nine beginning with a consonant, melody requires that it should
qui commence par consonne, 7 *demander*

be[146] of the same gender and number as the adjective; My boots are
143 8 *que ;*

quite new. My sisters are quite tired[158]. They are quite ill.
† *neuve. fatigué. malade.*

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

190. The negative expressions *Ne pas*, *Ne point*, NO, NOT; *Ne plus*,
négative 32 , , *NO, NOT;*

NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE; *Ne jamais*, NEVER; *Ne guère*, BUT LITTLE,
NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE; , NEVER; , BUT LITTLE,

VERY LITTLE; *Ne nullement*, BY NO MEANS, form only one negation;
VERY LITTLE; , BY NO MEANS, ne faire que ;

Ne is always placed before the verb, and *pas*, *point*, *plus*, *jamais*,
– *se placer** 206 , , , , ,

guère, *nullement*, like the other adverbs, are placed either after the
, , *comme* , – *se placer* ou*

verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle; as, I do not like
, *auxiliaire participe ; , aimer*

that man. I never found so much[8] deceit. He never keeps his word.
2 136 *tant* N.B. *tromperie. tenir parole.*

I know him but little. I will not deal any more with him.
faire d'affaires 58

* See N. B. note (*ii*) page 235. † Note * page 243.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

N. B. If the verb which follows these negative expressions is in the
suivre 32 *à*

infinitive, the two negative words *Ne pas*, *Ne point*, *Ne jamais*, *Ne plus*,
, *négatif* 22 *mot* , , , ,

are generally placed together before the verb; as, I would advise you
... 188 *se placer* *ensemble* 206 ; , *conseiller*

not to deal with that man. He is accused of never keeping
faire d'affaires 2 92 *accuser* *tenir*

his word. I think you will do well not to trust[202] him any more.
231 *faire* *vous fier à* 58

191. Without a verb, NO is expressed by *Non*, and NOT by *Non pas*;
, *NO* – (ii) N.B. *par* , *NOT* ;

Do you not believe what he says? No, I do not[70]; not that the thing
croire 84 , N.B. ; *chose*

is[145] impossible, but because it is not likely. Will you not speak to
soit , 62 *vraisemblable.* (o)

him any more? No; not before I know whether that is true or not.
54 ; 218 *savoir* 225 89 *vrai* *

192. With the verb CAN expressed by *saurais* instead of *Puis*, and
CAN exprimé *au lieu de* † ,

with WHY expressed by *que* instead of *Pourquoi*, NOT is expressed by
WHY † , *NOT* – (ii) N.B.

Ne only before the verb; Why does he not do like other people?
seulement ; *Que* *faire* *les autres* – 39

Why does he not pay what he owes when he has money? He
Que *payer* 84 *devoir* 9

spends his money, and then he says that he can not pay other people
271 , *puis* *saurait* 120 – 39

I can not pay other people, if other people do not pay me.
saurais 120 – 39, 120 – 39

N. B. We[90] also[184] generally suppress *Pas*, *Point* with the verbs
N.B. *aussi* 184 *supprimer* ,

oser, to DARE; *cesser*, to CEASE, and with *savoir*, to KNOW, when it
, to *DARE*; , to *CEASE*, , to *KNOW*,

is followed by *si*, *où*, *que*, *quand*, *quel*, *combien*, *comment*; I dare
suivi 200 , , , , , , ; *oser*

not speak to her. She does not cease scolding[154] me. I dare not
(o) 54 *gronder*

(go out) for fear of displeasing her[54]. I do not know what to do.
sortir *lui.* 93 *faire.*

(There are) I do not know how many[9] people at the door.
246 *combien* N.B. 229 *à*

---

* At the end of a sentence, NOT must be expressed by *Non*, without *Pas*.
† The *present* tense of the verb CAN used *negatively*, may be expressed two ways:
I can *not* *Je* ne *puis* pas, more frequently, *Je* ne *saurais*.
He can *not*, *Il* ne *peut* pas, *Il* ne *saurait*, *&c.*
WHY may also be expressed by *Que* or *Pourquoi*, in the following way:
Que ne *venez-vous à tems?*
or Pourquoi ne *venez-vous* pas *a tems?* Why do *not* you come in time

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

193. NOT after the verb TAKE CARE, *prendre garde*, is not expressed
NOT *TAKE CARE,* , – *s'exprimer*
in french, if we[90] put the following verb in the infinitive, and it is
, N.B. 32 *à* , 62 –
expressed by *NE*, if we[90] put the following verb (in the) subjunctive;
(ii) N.B. , N.B. 32 *au* ;
Take care not to spoil it. Take care that he does not spoil it. I
Prenez garde de * *gâter*
will take care not to let him (go out). I will take care that he does
* *laisser* *sortir.*
not go out. Take care not to let yourself (be cheated) by those
* *laisser vous* 54 *tromper* *(bb)*
people. Take care that those people do not cheat you.
229 . 229 *tromper* .

194. The verb which follows *Empêcher*, to HINDER, to PREVENT,
suivre , to *HINDER,* to *PREVENT,*
may be expressed two ways; either by the subjunctive preceded by
178 – *(ii)* N.B. *de deux manières; ou* *par* *précédé* 200
NE, or by the infinitive without this particle; I will hinder him from
, *par* *(bb) particule;*
(going out). That will not prevent me from seeing him. I can hin-
sortir 154. *(bb)* 154 .
der you both[222] from going out, and from seeing each other, if I choose.
N.B. , *vous voir* 121 , *vouloir.*

195. The verbs *craindre, Avoir peur, Appréhender*, to FEAR, to be
, to *FEAR,* to be
AFRAID; the conjunctions *de peur que, de crainte que*, LEST, FOR FEAR
AFRAID; , , *LEST, FOR FEAR*
that, require *NE* before the verb which follows them, if we[90] fear
that, *demander* , N.B. *craindre*
that the action expressed by that verb will happen[146]; then the verb
exprimer 157 *arriver*; † *alors*
has no[8] negation in english; I (am afraid) somebody has seen us[35].
N.B. *en* ; *craindre* 221 95 146 *vu* 159
Let us not stay here for fear some misfortune should happen to us.
– – *rester* 218 *quelque* 148 54
Go with that lady lest[218] she should (lose her way). She is afraid
Aller *de peur que* *s'égarer* 148
that her mother should find her here. But observe that *NE* is left out, if
146 148 *observer* – *s'ometire,*

---

* *Prendre garde*, in this sense, meaning to *Guard from* or *against*, if the negative NOT were expressed in french, it would be the same as if you said in english; *Guard from* not *spoiling it.* As for the *Ne* which is used after *Prendre garde, Empêcher, Craindre, Avoir peur, &c.* when we put the following verb in the subjunctive, it seems to be the *Ne* or *Quin* which the Latins used in similar instances, and which, without any apparent reason for it, has been introduced into the french language.

† We *fear* that an action *will happen*, when we *do not wish* for that action; and we *fear* that it *will not happen*, when we *wish* for it; so when I say;

I am afraid it will rain, I mean that I *do not wish* for rain.

I am afraid it will not *rain*, I mean that I *wish* that there should be rain

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

the verb which follows *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *&c.* is in the infinitive;
, , *&c.* *à* ;

as, I was afraid of hurting[154] you. I did not do it, for fear of dis-
, 140 *blesser* 136 *faire* , *de peur de dé-*

pleasing[154] your mother. We were afraid of doing wrong.
plaire 202 *mal.*

If we[90] fear that the action expressed by the verb will not happen[146],
N.B. *exprimer* 157 see note † p. 372.

the english verb is attended by a negation which must be expressed
anglais 32 *accompagné de* *il faut* – *exprimer*

by the corresponding[32] negation in french; I am afraid nobody will
qui y correspond *en* ; 231 97

come. I am afraid they have not seen us. Let us not go further[41],
146 221 146 55 – – *loin,*

for fear we should not have time to (come back) for dinner.
218 – 148 7 *revenir.*

N. B. The verbs *Nier*, to DENY, and *Douter*, to DOUBT, attended
, to *DENY*, , to *DOUBT*,

by a negation, the conjunction *à moins que*, UNLESS; and *si* in the
de , , *UNLESS*;

sense of *à moins que*, require also *Ne* before the verb which follows
, *demander* 206 *suivre*

them; I do not deny that I have been there sometimes. He does not
; 145 *y* 55 *quelquefois.*

deny that he has asked your cousin. He does not doubt but he will
145 *cousine.* *que*

obtain her. I have no[8] doubt but they will be married[261] soon. I will
obtenir 145 N.B. *doute* *que* 145 N.B. 135

not (go out) unless[216] it be fine. I will not go, unless you come with me.
sortir *à moins que* 240 70 , 218 56

196. *Il y a que*, IT IS SINCE; *Depuis que*, SINCE, require *Ne* before
, *IT IS SINCE*; , *SINCE*, 206

the verb which follows them, when we[90] wish to denote that there
, N.B. *vouloir* 172 *désigner*

has not been any[8] action since the period (which we mention); It is
eu N.B. *depuis* *période* *dont on fait mention*; *

long since I have met you. It is more than three months since I
† *rencontrer* 55 *plus* 48 *mois* †

saw you. How have you been[241] since I had the pleasure to see you?
136 55 135 237 *se porter* 136 *plaisir*

But we[90] should not use *Ne*, if we[90] wished to denote that there has
N.B. *employer* , N.B. *vouloir* 246

* The reason of this difference is that the English speak with reference to the *last action* that passed, the French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the time in which there has not been *any action*, and the idea is the same as the English would express by these words; *I have* not *met you for this long time. I have* not *seen you for more than three months.*

† Observe that *Since* after *Il y a*, is expressed by *Que* only, not by *Depuis que.*

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS

been an action; as, It is a month since he is gone. Have you seen
eu * ; , 246 *mois* † *partir.*

him since he is returned? He has been at home this fortnight.‡
265 *au logis* 246 *quinze jours.*

197. We[90] also use the negative participle *Ne* before the verb which
N.B. *employer* 32 *particule*

follows *Autre*, OTHER; *Autrement*, OTHERWISE; These things are quite
, *OTHER;* , *OTHERWISE;* 18 189

different from what you say. Do you never speak otherwise than
autres – *que*

you think? I know people who often act otherwise than they say.
229 *agir*

N. B. *Ne* is also used after the comparative adjective *Meilleur*, and
– *s'employer* *comparatif*[32]

the adverbs *Plus*, *Moins*, *Mieux*, see rule 47; and with several other
, , , *règle* ; *plusieurs*

words mentioned under their respective heads, viz. *Personne*,
dont il est fait mention *respectifs*[32] *chapitre*, *à savoir* ,

qui que ce soit, rule 97; *Rien*, *quoi que ce soit*, rule 99; *Aucun*,
, *règle* ; , ; ,

rule 100; *Nul*, *Pas un*, rule 101; *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, rule 124.
; , , ; , .

198. BUT used in the sense of the adverb ONLY, is expressed by
BUT employé *sens* *ONLY*, – *s'exprimer* *par*

Ne before the verb, and by *que* after it; We were but six people,
206 – 64 ; 140 ,

or only six people[229] at table. We drank but four bottles, or only
personnes

four bottles of wine. We were but a few miles, or only a few miles
bouteille 140 , *à quelques milles*

from (the place). We met nobody but a woman, or only a woman
là *rencontrer* ,

199. BUT is sometimes used in the sense of a relative pronoun,
BUT – *s'employer* *relatif*[32] ,

and is then expressed by *qui ne*, which require the following verb
– *alors* *il s'exprime* ,

(in the) subjunctive; as, (There is) no body but derives, or who does
au ; , 246 97 *retirer*,

not derive some advantage from study. I have not found a man
quelque *avantage* 7*étude.* *trouver*

but thinks so, or who does not think so. There is no man but
, *de même.* 246 *personne*

regrets the loss of time, or who does not regret the loss of time.
7 , *regretter* *perte* *tems.*

---

* See compound tenses of *Il y a*, page 173. † See note †, page 373.
‡ Turn; *It is a fortnight since he is at home*; see note * page 369.

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

Now, I am ready. Let us (set out) immediately. Let us walk
À présent, prêt. – – partir tout à l'heure. [268]

gently. (What is the use) of walking[154] so fast? I came[136] here to
doucement. Pourquoi † *– marcher vite? [228] [176]*

enjoy a pleasant walk, not to tire myself. I have no more[8] desire
jouir [202] *agréable* [32] , [191] *fatiguer me* [54] ‡ N.B. *envie*

to tire myself than you have; only I (am afraid) that we shall
me [54] [47] ; *craindre (bb)* N.B.

be[146] there too late. We are never there in time. We generally come
arriver trop y [54] *à tems. arriver*

either too soon or too late. It[62] is very unpleasant to keep people
– tôt ou N.B. *désagréable de faire* [219]

waiting § (in that way.) Do they live still in that house where
attendre ainsi [183] N.B. *demeurer encore* [213]

we saw them last? No, they have removed to another house
la dernière fois? , [238] aller demeurer

a little further in the country. How far shall we go? How far
un peu plus loin [230] .

is it from our house[209]? How long shall we stay? How you like to
N.B. *rester*

ask useless[32] questions! Do you not know it as well as I do? Take
faire inutile [9] *savoir* [43] [43] [52] –

care not to fall into this ditch. Take care lest this post falls upon
tomber fossé. que poteau

you. Do not go (so near) lest[218] somebody should see you.
approcher tant de peur que [95] [148]

I only (am afraid) that something[88] bad should happen to you. Will
craindre (cc) mal [146] *arriver* [148] [54]

your cousin be there? I do not think he will[145]. He dares not
[184] *y* [54] [221] *y* [70] *soit. oser*

come near the house. He fears that they[90] would turn him out.
(approcher de) [146] N.B. *mettre à la porte.*

It is near two years since they[90] have (heard[275] from him.) Is he not
[246] *près de* [233] *que* N.B. *reçu de ses nouvelles.*

returned yet from his journey? No, he is not[70]. It is feared that
[265] *encore voyage?* , [91]

some misfortune has[146] happened to him. I (am afraid) he will never
quelque [238] *arriver* [55] *craindre* [221]

return[265]. I fear the report of his death will (prove true.) Never
[146] [221] *bruit se vérifier* [146]

---

* See note *, p. 281. † Turn; *Why to walk so fast?*

‡ *No more*, meaning *No longer*, is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Plus* after; but when *More* is used as an adverb of quantity, meaning *Greater*, the negative *Pas* must be added to the sentence, and we say *Pas plus.*

§ Turn; *To keep waiting in that way people*, because *Keep* and *Waiting* expressing together only one idea, they can not be separated

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

believe such reports. I (dare say)[221] he is[241] well enough. I do not
croire *de tels bruit* *je ne doute pas* 145 *

doubt but he will be here (very soon.) If you will come with me,
douter *qu'* 145 *bientôt.* 144 ,

we shall go and meet him. Go that way, and I will go this,
(nn) 273 *par là,* *par ici,*

for fear[218] we should miss[148] him on the road. I long to see him.
de peur que *perdre* *en* – *chemin.* see p. 175.

It is long since I have seen him. I told you right. There he is[247].
246 *que* 136 *bien.* N.B.

So[194] you are returned (at last). How happy I am to see you again
Donc 265 *enfin.* *ravi* *revoir* –

How have you been since I saw you? We (were afraid) you
237 241 *depuis que* 136 *craindre* 221

were lost. I began to fear that we should never see[146] you again.
146 *perdre.* 138 149 –

Why did you not write to us? Why did you not let us know[246] where
136 136 N.B. *où*

you were, and how you were? I (was afraid[221]) you would be offended
, 241 140 146 *fâché*

at me. What! offended at you? How could you think so? How
200 83 ! *pouvoir* *le* 54

often have I told you how glad we were to see you, or to hear[275]
de fois † 55 , , *entendre*

from you? We were every day talking of you. We never met
de vos *nouvelles?* – *touts les jours* 155 56 139

with a traveller, without enquiring[154] after you. You certainly have
201 *voyageur,* *s'informer* 200

always been (very kind) to me, and I sincerely thank you (for it.)
eu *bien des bontés* *pour* 56 , *en* 54

How long is it since you left this country? How long have you
246 ‡ 136 230

been absent? How far have you been? How long do you intend
absent? *avoir dessein*

to stop? I have only been absent about two years, and I have not
rester? *environ* ,

been so far as you imagine. How fast the time goes! Methinks[27]
loin 42 *s'imaginer.* *vite* *passer* *Il me semble*

it is only the other day that we were at R. together. Are you going
ce 140

to leave us already? Can not you stay a little longer? It is so
quitter *déjà* *rester* *plus long-tems?* 246

long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I should like
que

---

* See note * page 368. † Turn; *How many times &c.* ‡ See note † page 369.

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

to stay (very much), but I am afraid my horse will not stand still.
beaucoup, 221 146 *rester tranquille.*

(Take hold of) the bridle, lest[218] it should go[148]. Take care not
Tenir – *bride,* *de peur que* *s'en aller.** *garde*

to go (too near.) Take care that it does not kick you. Do not
en approcher *trop.* *(bb)* N.B. *frapper.*

go (so near,) lest it should bite you. Would it not be better
approcher *tant,* 218 *mordre* *valoir mieux*

to put it into the stable? It is not worth while. I can not stop.
213 *écurie?* *Cela* – *en valoir la peine.* *rester.*

Our friends want to go to the play to-night, and they will not go,
260 *comédie* † 235 , ‡ ,

unless I go with them. You perhaps can come with us. I would
213 56 *peut-être* 56

go, if I was not afraid that it will be too late, when the play is over.
‡, 146 , 142 *finie.*

You need not stay till the end of the play. You may go as
avoir besoin de *rester jusqu'à* *fin* 178 *s'en aller** 42

soon as you like[142]. Come; (make up your mind); for, unless we
43 *vouloir.* *Allons;* *se déterminer;* imp. *car,* 218

go immediately, I am almost sure we shall be too late to see the
partir *tout à l'heure,* *presque* 221 *arriver* 170

beginning of the play. Go; I will follow you. Take care not to
commencement ; ‖ *suivre* .

stop. Take care that he does not stop. We are just in time. Now,
s'arrêter. *à* ,

what do you think of the players? They are better than I thought.
comédien? (b) p. 72.

They have acted better than I expected. I hope you will come
jouer (b) p. 72. 221 *y revenir*

again soon. I do not think I shall[70]. I have but a short time to stay,
– *bientôt.* 145 N.B. – *peu de* 169 *rester,*

and have a (great many*) things to do. How impatient you seem
53 – *beaucoup* N.B. 169

to go! Can not you stay (a few days longer?) No, I can not. Now,
*s'en aller** *encore quelques jours?* , 70 ,

I want to find my sister, and I do not know where to look for her.
260 , *où* 201

I am afraid she is gone[158]. I am afraid she has not seen me. If you
221 146 *partir.* 221 146 55

go (that way,) I do not doubt but you will find her. There are few*
par là, *que* 246 *peu* N.B

people here but know her. I think I see her. Yes; here[247] she is.
239 199 221 ; N.B.

---

* See N. B. p. 116. † See note * p. 303. ‡ See note † p. 354. ‖ See note † p. 312.

PREPOSITION.

200. The greatest difficulty attending the prepositions, is, that
44 *qui accompagne* , *c'est,*
they are not always expressed by the words which correspond to each
62 - *s'exprimer par* . *se correspondre*
other in[216] both languages; *i. e.* OF, FROM, the corresponding
121 *les deux* ; *c'est-à-dire,* *OF, FROM,* *correspondant* 82
preposition of which is *De*, are sometimes expressed by *À*; AT, TO,
* 75 , - 183 *s'exprimer* ; *AT, TO,*
the corresponding preposition of which is *À*, are sometimes expressed
75 * , - *(ii)* N.B.
by *De*; BY, FOR, sometimes expressed by *De*, and sometimes by *À*, &c.
; *BY, FOR,* 183 *exprimés* . , , *&c.*
which no rule can sufficiently explain; therefore, see a list of these
ce que *aucune* † ; *ainsi,* *liste*
words with the examples (annexed to them,) p. 247 and following.
exemples *qui y sont joints,* *suivante.*

201. (There are) some verbs in english which require a preposition,
246 *quelques* ‡ *en* *demander* ,
though the verbs which represent them in french do not admit[201] of
218 *représenter* *en* *admettre*
any; such are, LOOK AT, *Regarder*; ASK FOR, *Demander*; ADMIT OF.
en 54 ; *tels* , *LOOK AT,* ; *ASK FOR,* ; *ADMIT OF,*
Admettre, &c. see a list of these verbs and the examples, page 250.
, *&c.*

202. In other instances, it[62] is the reverse, and (some french verbs)
d'autres cas, N.B. *contraire,* *il y a des verbes français qui*
will have[174] a preposition, though the english verbs will not admit
vouloir - , 218 82 -
of any; such are, *Abuser de*, to ABUSE; *s'Apercevoir de*, to PERCEIVE;
201 *(p)*; , , to *ABUSE*; , to *PERCEIVE*;
Attenter à, to ATTEMPT, &c. see the examples, p. 250, and following.
, to *ATTEMPT, &c.* , , *suivante.*

203. In some instances, the preposition may (be placed) in english,
‡ , 178 *(se placer)* ,
either[223] before or after the substantive which it governs; but in french
ou 206 *substantif* . 62 *régir*;
the preposition must always (be placed) before its object; Whom does
devoir - *son objet*; 77
this house belong to? What house are you speaking of? That house
134 *appartenir* 82 - 155
which we just[244] passed by. It belongs to that gentleman's father
76 *venir de passer* 207 62 *monsieur* 25
whom we are going to dine with. I know whom it belongs to.
76 - 155 172 *dîner.* 76 62

---

* Turn; *Of which* the corresponding preposition is, &c.
† *Aucun* requires *ne* before the following verb. ‡ See note † page 232.

PREPOSITION.

204. The prepositions must be repeated before every word which
devoir – se répéter (ii) N.B. 104

they govern; Mr. A. has invited me to take a walk and dine with him.
62 *régir;* *inviter* 55 263 N.B. 58

We shall walk into his park and gardens. We are going to France
213 3 155 6

and Germany. Do not go without calling[154] on me, or writing to me.
Allemagne. *partir* 266 , *(o)*

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

205. FOR. Before a period of time, FOR is expressed by *Depuis*,
FOR. *période* 8 , *FOR – s'exprimer (ii)* N.B. ,

when we[90] wish to denote the beginning of the period, by *Pendant*
N.B. *vouloir* 172 *désigner* ,

or *Durant*, when we[90] wish to denote the duration, and by *Pour*, when
, N.B. *durée,* ,

we[90] wish to denote the end; What dreadful[22] weather it has been[240]
N.B. * ; 22 *affreux* *tems* *il* *fait*

for some time past. We have not had a (fine day) for these
quelque tems – *(jour de beau tems)* –

three weeks. It has rained for two whole[22] days. If this weather
semaine. *plu* *entier* 29

lasts, we[90] shall not (be able) to get provisions for the winter.
durer, N.B. *pouvoir* 172 *se procurer* 9 9 *'hiver.*

206. BEFORE. If BEFORE is used to denote time or order[7],
BEFORE *BEFORE – s'employer (ii)* N.B. 169 7 *ordre,*

it is expressed by *Avant*, which is the opposite of *Après*, AFTER;
– *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B. , *opposé* , *AFTER;*

If BEFORE is used to denote place, or in presence, it (is expressed) by
BEFORE *lieu,* *en* , *(ii)* N.B.

Devant, the opposite (of which[75]) is *Derrière*, BEHIND; as, You shall
, *opposé* *dont* N.B. † , *BEHIND;* ,

not (go out) before dinner, because you have spoken before your turn.
sortir , *tour*

Do not walk[263] before me, stay behind. I want to arrive before you.
marcher , *rester* 260

(Walk in) or (go away), and do not stay so before the door.
Entrer *s'en aller,* *ainsi*

207. BY. BY used in the sense of NEAR, is expressed by *Près de*
BY. *BY employé* *NEAR,* – *(ii)* N.B.

or *à côté de;* as, Come and sit by me. I would rather stand
; , *(nn) vous asseoir* 56 *aimer* *mieux me tenir*

by the door. How can you sit by the fire (in such weather as this?)
rester *feu* *du tems qu'il fait?*

---

* Observe that when FOR comes between two sentences, it cannot be expressed by any of the above words, as it is not a preposition; it is then a *conjunction*, and is expressed by *Car;* as, I can not go with you, *for* I am very busy; *Je ne puis pas aller avec vous,* car *je suis très-affairé.* See 217 rule.
† Turn; *Of which the opposite is, &c.*

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

N. B. By is often followed (by the) words MYSELF, THYSELF, HIMSELF, HERSELF, &c. to denote ALONE; these words are then[183] expressed in french by the adjective *Seul*; as, I was by myself all the morning. Are you fond of being by yourself? What a pleasure (it is) to be by oneself. My sister can not[192] be a moment by herself.

By des MYSELF, THYSELF, HIMSELF, HERSELF, &c. 170 *ALONE; - alors s'exprimer (ii)* N.B. *par ; , 136 234 - aimer à 154 92 20 plaisir il y a à saurait*

208. At, to. With verbs denoting being at or going to a person's[25] house, at, to, are expressed by *chez*, and the word HOUSE, if expressed in english, is (left out) in french; Will you come with me to my mother's? She is not at home; She is at your sister's house.

*At, to. 7 qui désignent 154 * à * 154 à de quelqu'un 7 , AT, TO, - (ii) N.B. , HOUSE, il est exprimé , - s'omettre, (ii) N.B. ; † 58 elle;*

(Then I must) go to my sister's, for I must see her. Perhaps she is not there now, for she had to call at a friend's house.

Il faut donc que 181 , ‡ 181 Peut-être que y 54 à présent, ‡ à 266

N. B. If the word HOUSE, instead of being attended by a noun, is attended by one of the possessive pronominal[32] articles MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR, the word HOUSE is also[183] (left out,) and the pronominal[32] article is changed into a personal[32] pronoun, viz. into *Moi, Toi, Soi, Lui, Elle, Nous, Vous, Eux, Elles*; Come to my house. I will not go to your house. I will go to his. Let us go to her house. She is not at home. She is at our house or at theirs.

HOUSE, au lieu 154 accompagné de , de possessifs 32 pronominaux MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR, HOUSE - aussi (ii) N.B. pronominal - se changer en - personnel , c'est-à-dire en , , , , , , , , ; Venir † † - - elle

209. Of, from. With verbs denoting going or coming from a person's[25] house, of, from, are expressed by *de chez*, and the word HOUSE is (left out) in french; I come from my sister's. You did not find your mother there, for I saw her (going[154] out) of your

Of, from. 7 qui désignent 154 154 de quelqu'un 7 OF, FROM, - (ii) N.B. par , HOUSE - s'omettre (ii) N.B. ; 136 trouver y 55, ‡ 136 55 sortir

* Put this verb in the *infinitive*. See note * page 143. ‡ See note * page 379.

brother's house. I met[136] her coming from my grandmother's.
rencontrer [153] N.B. *grand'mère.*

N. B. If the word HOUSE, instead of being attended by a noun, is
HOUSE, au lieu [154] *accompagné de* ,

attended by the possessive pronominal article MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.
possessif pronominal MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.

The word HOUSE is also omitted, and the article is changed into a
HOUSE – [183] *s'omettre,* – *se changer en* –

personal pronoun, as above; What do you want here? (Get out)
personnel , *comme ci-dessus;* . *chercher* *Sortir*

of my house. You come from our house, and I come from yours.
, *(m)*

I met your father (coming[158] out) of his house, and going[158] to ours.
[136] *sortir* N.B. , N.B.

210. FROM, with the verbs to GO, to COME, not from the house of
FROM, to *GO,* to *COME, non maison*

a person, but from the person himself, is expressed by *de la part;*
personne, même – *s'exprimer par* ,

Whom do you come from? I come from your mother. Go from me
[77] *venir*

to my sister's, and tell her that I will come and drink tea at her house
, (f) p. 79. [264] *(nn)* * *thé*[7]

211. IN, INTO. Before the proper names of persons and places,
IN, INTO. propre nom personne [204] *lieu,*

IN, INTO, are expressed by *dans;* There are great beauties in Thom-
IN, INTO, – *(ii)* N.B. ; [246] [10] *beauté*

son. Are there (as many*) inhabitants in Paris as in London?
[246] *autant* N.B. *'habitants que Londres?*

N. B. IN, before the proper name of a place, after a verb denoting resi-
IN, , *qui désigne* [7]*de-*

dence is expressed by *à;* My brother is in Paris, and my sister in London.
meure – *s'exprimer* ; ,

212. Before the proper names of countries after verbs which denote
propre pays [7]

going or residing, IN, INTO, are expressed by *en;* My father is in
aller † *demeurer,*† *IN, INTO,* – *(ii)* N.B. ;

Russia, my brother in Switzerland, and my sister in France.
Russie, Suisse,

N. B. In other instances, IN, INTO, before these names may[176] be
les autres cas, IN, INTO, pouvoir –

expressed by *dans,* with the article, or by *en,* without an article;
s'exprimer par , , , – ;

Are there as many* people[229] in France as in Germany?
[246] *autant* N.B. *monde que Allemagne?*

---

* See note § page 355. † This verb must be in the *infinitive* in french.

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

213. Before common names used[157] in a limited sense, i. e. which
commun 7 *employé* *limité* *sens,*
require any of the signs called article, IN, INTO are expressed by *dans;*
96 *signes* , *IN, INTO* – *s'exprimer* ;
Put this wine in a bottle. If you will be diligent, we will take
Mettre *bouteille.* 144 , *prendre*
you in our partnership. Put these papers into that parcel. Put them
société. *papier* *(bb) paquet.*
in the same order in which you found them. I never saw my papers
même *ordre* 76 . 136 136
in such a confusion before. Let every thing be in the state it ought
telle 88 – 248 107 *état* *(s)* *devoir*
to be. (There must be) some order and economy in a house.
172 *Il faut* *[3]économie*

214. But before the same common names used in a vague sense,
même *vague* ,
in which sense they generally[184] do not require any[6] article, IN, INTO,
ce *ordinairement* N.B. *IN, INTO,*
are expressed by *en;* I must put this wine into bottles; (i. e. *bottle it.*)
– *(ii)* N.B. ; 181 *mettre* ;
I am going to enter into partnership with my uncle. I will put these
155 172 *entrer* *société* *oncle.*
papers in parcels. Every thing here is in confusion. I will put
paquet. 107 184
every thing in order, if you will not put yourself in a passion.
107 , 144 *vous* 54 – *colère.*

215. Speaking of time, IN is expressed by *dans,* to denote the
En parlant 7 , *IN* – *s'exprimer* , 170 *désigner*
time after which an action will be performed, and by *en,* to denote
76 – *se faire,* , 170
the time that will be employed in performing it; as, Do you think
92 *employer* *à* *faire* 62 ;
that I can learn french in six months? You may[176] learn it in
145 *[7]français* *mois?* *pouvoir*
less [8] time. I intend to begin in a month. I shall be with
moins N.B. *avoir dessein* 166
you in an hour. I can walk there in less than half an hour
heure. *aller* *y* 54 48 *demi* 33

216. Before nouns denoting any part of the day, IN is not ex-
7 *qui désignent* *quelque* *partie* *jour,* *IN* –
pressed in french, (nor is) ON, before the days of the week; I will
, *non plus que* ON, *semaine;*
come and see you on sunday or monday. Will you come in the morn-
(nn) *dimanche* *lundi* *matin*
ing or in the afternoon? I will come on monday in the afternoon
après-midi?

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

I am very uneasy ABOUT this business Have you enquired ABOUT
inquiet 200 *affaire.* 237 *s'informer*

what people[90] say (of it)? Your friends are very angry AT you. They
84 N.B. *en* 54 *fâché* 58

laughed[136] AT what you desired[136] me to tell them. I do not wonder
se moquer[237] 84 252 (f) p. 79. *s'étonner*

AT that. They laugh AT every thing. They blame you FOR your
(bb) *se moquer* 107 *blâmer*

rashness. They will not believe that you are sorry FOR what you
témérité. 173 145 *fâché* 84

have done. They will get nothing BY that. I neither care
gagner 99 *(bb)* 234 *se soucier*

FOR them, nor FOR what they say. I will punish them FOR their
58, 84 *punir*

ingratitude. I will take my property (FROM them). I do not depend
ôter *bien* † *leur* 54 *dépendre*

UPON them. I need[202] nothing. I am abundantly provided WITH
58 *avoir besoin* 99 *abondamment* *pourvu*

every thing. I congratulate you UPON your (good fortune.) I
107 *féliciter* *bonheur.*

think you have reason to be contented WITH your lot. Look[201] AT
221 *lieu* *content* *sort.* *Regarder*

that woman. See how she laughs AT us. She is waiting[155] FOR us.
(bb) *comme* *se rire* 58 *attendre* 201

Do not look AT her. I am angry WITH her. I do not approve
201 *fâché* *approuver*

OF her behaviour. She imposes UPON her friends, and she slanders
conduite. *en imposer* , *médire*[202]

every body she knows. She has met WITH several misfortunes,
touts *ceux que* *éprouver* *plusieurs* *disgrâce,*

but she has not profited (BY them.) I think she delights IN mischief.
profiter † *en* 55 221 *se plaire* *faire le mal.*

She tyrannizes OVER all her house, and does not mind[202] what the
tyranniser , *s'embarrasser*

world says. She is very much like[202] her mother; a haughty, im-
ressembler ; *hautain,* *im-*

perious woman whom nobody could please. I wonder how you
périeux (g) 76 97 *pouvoir plaire* 202. *s'étonner* *que*

trust[202] her brother. He is not fit FOR (any thing). He has inherit-
se fier *propre* 99 *hériter*

ed a large estate, but that will not (be sufficient) FOR his expences.
202 *gros* *bien,* *suffire* *dépense.*

Do you remember what I told you one day? No, what is it?
se souvenir 202 , *(y)*

---

* See note * page 281. † The *preposition* is *implied* in this pronoun.

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

That he would abuse[202] his fortune, and perish some day WITH misery
(bb) N.B. *abuser* , *périr* *quelque* *misère,*

unless[195] somebody would provide[149] FOR his wants. He will never
218 N.B. 95 *pourvoir* *besoin.*

give up[202] gaming and drinking. He is surrounded WITH flatterers
renoncer *jeu* 7 *boisson* 7. *entouré* *flatteur*

who do nothing but sport WITH his credulity. He had promised
faire * *se jouer* *crédulité.* 140 *promettre* 202

his father that he would (give up) the company which displeases him,
renoncer 202 *déplaire* 202 *lui,*†

but there is no trusting his promises. He never keeps them. He
se fier ‡ 202 *tenir*

knows he is despised by every body, but he does not care FOR
231 *mépriser* 167 106 , *se soucier*

that. He does not care FOR any body. Tell him[162] that if he does
(bb) 97 (f) p. 79.

not alter[202] his conduct soon [163], he will be punished FOR his obstinacy.
changer – *conduite* *bientôt* N.B., *opiniâtreté.*

What a difference between him and your brother. This[88] is a young
20 *entre* 58 N.B.

man who pleases every body. Every body wishes him[162] well, and
202 106 (f) p. 79. *du bien,*

rejoices AT his prosperity. All who know him, wish FOR his com-
se rejouir *Touts ceux* ,

pany. I met WITH him the other day at a friend's of mine, and I was
87 , 137

delighted WITH his conversation. I was struck WITH astonishment AT
charmer *frapper*

seeing so young a man enjoying[154] his reputation with (so much[8])
154 38 *jouir* 202 *tant* N.B.

modesty; sensible OF praises, without seeming[154] to wish FOR them,
; *louange,* *paraître* 172 *désirer* ,

and satisfied WITH the pleasure of having done his duty. His
satisfaire 154 *devoir.*

friends were transported WITH joy AT seeing him covered WITH glory,
transporté 158 154 *couvrir* ,

and animated WITH the desire of pleasing[154] them. He is a young
animer 202 *leur.*† 65

man for whom I feel a particular esteem. (Young as) he is, I would
particulier 32 *Tout jeune que* ,

trust[202] him sooner than any body that I know. I would answer FOR
se fier (o) *tout autre* *repondre*

him as FOR myself. I am much obliged to you FOR the good opinion
comme (m) N.B. *bien* (o) (s)

* Express *Nothing but* by *Ne* before the verb, and *Que* after.
† The *preposition* is *implied* in this pronoun. ‡ Turn, *One can not trust, &c.*

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

you have of him, and I thank you (FOR it.) Look AT those flowers.
, *remercier* * 54 *en* *fleur.*

How beautiful they are! Do not touch[202] them[62]. They are not
[185] *belle* [62] *toucher* *y.** [62]

mine. If you wish FOR one, ask that gentleman FOR it. No, indeed;
[96] , *monsieur* † , *vraiment;*

I will not ask him FOR any. I would rather look FOR one mysel.
(f) p. 79. *(p)* *aimer* *mieux en*[70] *chercher* *(m)* N.B.

I do not like to ask FOR flowers from a stranger. If he offered you
[169] [9] *à* *étranger.* ‡

one, would you not accept OF it? Perhaps I might[70]. I do not care
en[70] , N.B. *se soucier*

FOR flowers. I do not know what I was thinking OF, when I men-
[83] [155] , *parler de*

tioned flowers. I beg OF you, Madam, that you will accept OF this[96]
[136] *prier* , , § N.B.

Sir, you are very kind. I am much obliged to you (FOR it.) This
, *avoir bien de la bonté.* *bien* [158] *(o)* * 55 *en.*

gentleman has asked your sister a question, and she has not answered
‖ *faire* [162] [163] , *répondre* [202]

him. Sister, why do not you answer that gentleman? I beg the
*lui.** [13] , [202] ‖ *demander*

gentleman's pardon. I did not know that you were talking ABOUT
[25] ¶ [155]

me. I was thinking of something that (just occurred to my mind.)
[155] [96] *vient de me venir à* – *l'esprit.*

What does he want of me? I do not know; ask him. He seems
[96] *vouloir* – [54] ; ** (f) p. 79.

(very much) taken up WITH you. I think he is (in love) WITH
très *occupé* – [241] *amoureux*

you. What! in love WITH me? You surely[184] do not mind what
[83] *certainement* *penser à* [84]

you say. I only said so in joke. He wants to know if you can
[184] [136] *cela pour rire.* [260]

spare[202] the book which you have promised him[162]. I can not spare it
se passer (f) p. 79. [202] *en**

now. I am using[156] it myself. When I have done (WITH it,) (he shall
se servir [202] *en* [59] * *(m)* N.B. [143] * 55 *en,* *il*

be very welcome to it.) What does he want to do WITH that
l'aura, s'il le veut.†† [83] [260]

---

* The *preposition* is *implied* in this pronoun. † See note ‖ page 296.
‡ Note † page 337. § *That you will accept*, turn; *to accept.* ‖ Note † page 307.
¶ Turn; *I beg pardon to* monsieur. ** Add here the pronoun *Le* in french.
†† We say in french *Etre bien venu*, to be welcome, *i. e. well received*, but we do not say, *Etre bien venu à une chose*, to be welcome to a thing.

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

book? It is not good FOR any thing. It is not fit FOR the use to
62 90 *propre* *usage*

which it is intended. I did not think OF that, (or else) I would not
76 92 *destiner.* , *autrement*

have asked you FOR it. Since you have (such a desire) (FOR it,) you
Puisque *si grande envie* * 54 *en,*

may have it, if you will accept OF it. No, I thank you. I do not
178 , 144 ,

want[260] it now. It[68] was not for me; it[68] was for my sister who
avoir besoin en[54] N.B. 140 ; N.B.

wanted[140] to see it, and I (was afraid) of displeasing her, if I did not
avoir envie 168 , *craindre* 154 202 *lui,** †

ask you FOR it. I was afraid she would think[149] that I had not thought
221 146 140

OF her, or that I was angry WITH her. I do not think she cares
, 140 *fâché* 221 *se soucier*

much (FOR it.) When do you (set out) upon your journey? I do not
* *en* *partir* *pour* *voyage?*

know yet. I intend to set out in about a month or six weeks.
encore. *avoir dessein* *environ* *mois* *semaine.*

What country do you go to? I (am ignorant) OF it yet. They[90] want
92 260 *ignorer* N.B. 268

to persuade my father to send me to Russia, but I will not go, if
persuader 202 *envoyer* 6 *Russie,* ,

I can help it. I would rather remain here, than live in a country,
éviter *aimer* *mieux* *rester* , *(ll) demeurer* 230 ,

and amongst a people whose manners do not suit[202] mine. I should
parmi 226 *manière* *convenir* 85

like to go first to France, to see my brother who is in Paris;
169 *premièrement* 6 , 172 ;

then to go to Switzerland, from Switzerland to Italy and Greece, from
puis *Suisse,* *Italie* *Grèce,*

Greece to pass into Spain and Portugal, and then to return to
passer *Espagne* , *alors* 265 ,

England. You could not do that in less than two years. I think
pouvoir *(bb)* *moins* 46 221

I could do it in (twelve months.) I do not think you could[145]. Do
un an. ‡ 221 70 150

not you think that I can[145] go to Paris in four days? I think you
N.B. 221 *le* 70

may[178]. I shall be there before you, for I shall set out either on Mon-
pouvoir. *y* 54 , ‖ – *Lun-*

day or Tuesday. Will you set out in the morning or in the evening.
di *Mardi.* 234 234

* The *preposition* is *implied* in this pronoun. † Note † p. 337. ‡ Note § p. 262. ‖ Note * p. 379

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I intend to (set out) about twelve o'clock. I wish I could go
avoir dessein [168] *partir* *vers* [236] [180] *(nn)*

with you. I wish you[70] could. I shall drink tea at your sister's
[221] [146] *

this afternoon. Shall you be there? No, I am engaged at Mrs. B.'s.
après-midi. *y* [54] ,

(There is) a ball at your aunt's on Friday [188]. Will not you go? I do
[246] *tante* *Vendredi.* N.B. † [70]

not think[221] I shall[70]; I have been ill for several days. I did not
[145] N.B. ; *malade* [186]

rest for three days and three nights. Come and sit by the fire
reposer *(nn) vous asseoir* *feu*

Do not stand by the door. As it is cold, and you are not well, you
se tenir [240] , [219] [241] ,

would be in danger of (catching cold.) I called at your house on
vous enrhumer. [266]

Wednesday in the morning, but (there was) nobody in. I was not
Mercredi , [246] [97] – [140]

(far off.) I was at my uncle's. I had been by myself all the morn-
loin. *oncle.* [140] [234]

ing. I went into the fields to take a walk[263] before dinner, and in
[172] N.B. *dîné,* *en*

coming home, I called at my uncle's. He had some company at
revenir *au logis,* [266]

dinner, and he prevailed upon me to stay with him. After dinner
, *engager* – *rester*

we played different games. Some played at cards, some at chess,
jouer à ‡ *jeux.* [94] ‡ *carte,* *échecs,*

some at draughts, and some at (backgammon.) After tea we made
[94] *dames,* *trictrac.* *thé* [7]

a little concert. I played on the flute, my (brother-in-law) played on
petit *jouer* *de* ‡ , *beau-frère*

the violin, my sister played on the harpsicord, and my cousin on the
violon, *clavecin,* *cousine*

harp; and some ladies and gentlemen entertained us with several good
harpe; ‖ *régaler* *de*

songs. We parted at (twelve o'clock,) (very well) pleased WITH the
chanson. *se séparer* [236] , *très* *content*

manner (in which) we had spent the evening. We shall meet
manière *dont* [140] [271] [234] *s'assembler*

again on Saturday evening[234], at our house, and have another concert.
encore *Samedi* *au soir* , , [58]

---

* See note § p. 355. † See note ‡ p. 241.

‡ The verb *Play*, speaking of *games*, requires *à* before the noun which follows it; speaking of *instruments*, it requires *de*. ‖ See note † page 282.

CONJUNCTIONS.

The CONJUNCTIONS modify the verbs which follow them.
conjonction *modifier* *suivre*

217. The following[32] conjunctions require the verb which follows them in the indicative; *aussi*, SO, THEREFORE; *car*, FOR, BECAUSE;
suivante[152] *demander* *à*[2] *indicatif*; , *SO, THEREFORE*; , *FOR, BECAUSE*;

cependant, *pourtant*, YET, HOWEVER; *comme*, AS, SINCE; *mais*, BUT;
, , *YET, HOWEVER*; , *AS, SINCE*; , *BUT*;

néanmoins, NEVERTHELESS; *ni*, NEITHER, NOR; *ou*, EITHER, OR,
, *NEVERTHELESS*; , *NEITHER, NOR*; , *EITHER, OR*;

parce que, BECAUSE; *puisque*, SINCE; *quand*, *lorsque*, WHEN; *quand*,
, *BECAUSE*; , *SINCE*; , , *WHEN*; ,

THOUGH, IF EVEN; *que*, THAT; *si*, IF, WHETHER.
THOUGH, IF EVEN; *, *THAT*; , *IF, WHETHER*.

218. The following conjunctions require the verb which follows them
suivant[152]

(in the) subjunctive; *afin que*, *pour que*, THAT, TO THE END THAT;
au *subjonctif*; , , *THAT, TO THE END THAT*

à moins que, UNLESS; *avant que*, BEFORE; *bien que*, *quoique*, THOUGH,
, *UNLESS*; , *BEFORE*; , , *THOUGH*,

ALTHOUGH; *en cas que*, IF, IN CASE THAT; *de crainte que*, *de peur que*,
ALTHOUGH; , *IF, IN CASE THAT*; , ,

LEST, FOR FEAR THAT; *jusqu'à ce que*, TILL, UNTIL; *pourvu que*,
LEST, FOR FEAR THAT; , *TILL, UNTIL*; ,

PROVIDED; *que*, THAT; *sans que*, WITHOUT; *soit que*, WHETHER.
PROVIDED; *, *THAT*; , *WITHOUT*; , *WHETHER*.

219. When a conjunction governs several verbs, it is expressed
régir *plusieurs* , [62] – *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B.

before the first verb only, and *que* is added to the other verbs, (with
seulement, – *s'ajouter (ii)* N.B. ,

the same mood after it) as if the conjunction itself was repeated;
suivi du même mode *que* *elle-même* [140] *répété*[158];

Since you are busy, and you can not come with me, I will go.
Puisque *occupé*, , *vais* † *m'en aller*. ‡

I will never forgive you, unless[195] you come back (this way) and dine
pardonner N.B. *revenir* *par ici*

with me. Bring my horse, that I may go now, and be back
[256] , *afin que* [178] *partir* , *de retour*

in time[158]. Let us go now, for fear it should rain[148], and we should
à tems. – – *partir* , [218] *pleuvoir*,

be wet[186]. Though it is hot, and the sky is cloudy, I do not think it
mouillé. [240] *chaud*, *ciel* *nuageux*, [221]

will rain. Unless[195] we go now, and (make haste,) we shall be wet.
[145] N.B. *partir* , *se dépêcher*,

---

* See note † page 255. † See note † page 312. ‡ See N. B. page 116.

CONJUNCTION.

220. When *si*, IF, governs two verbs, instead of repeating *si* before
, IF, régir , 154
the second verb, we[90] use *que* (with the subjunctive after it,) though
, N.B. employer suivi du subjonctif ,
the verb which follows *si* is in the indicative; If you walk so fast,
218 à ; marcher vite,
and will not wait for us, we will go back. If you go back, and
173 201 , s'en retourner. ,
find nobody at home what will you do? If the doors are locked,[158]
97 au logis, fermé à clef,
and I can not (get in), I will go to the play. You might follow us, if
entrer , 178 ,
you would walk a little faster, and you did not look so often behind you.
144 peu , derrière

221. The conjunction THAT is often omitted in english; as, *I think*
THAT ; , I think
he will come; for, *I think* THAT *he will come;* but the corresponding[33]
he will come; , I think THAT he will come; qui y correspond
conjunction must always be expressed in french; Do you think we
devoir – s'exprimer (ii) N.B. ;
shall arrive in time to-day? I (am afraid) it will be rather late.
145 à aujourd'hui? craindre 146 195 un peu tard.

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

222. BOTH, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *Et*, when it
BOTH, 28 emphase, – (ii) N.B. par ,
is followed by an adjective, and by *Et* or *tant*, when it is followed by a
suivi 200 , , par , 200
substantive; Our general is both prudent and courageous. Both in the
; courageux.
cabinet and in the field. We shall beat our enemies both by sea and land.
armée. battre ennemi par 204
This conjunction is generally[183] omitted in french, in the familiar style.
– ordinairement s'omettre (ii) N.B. , familier[32] style.

223. EITHER, OR, are generally expressed by *ou;* Either that is
EITHER, OR, – 183 (ii) N.B. ; 89
true or it is not. I will see you either in going or in (coming back.)
70 en revenir.

N. B. EITHER, followed by a noun, may also be expressed by
EITHER, 209 178 – (ii) N.B.
soit; as, Either through fear or respect, he remained silent.
; , par 204 garder 7silence.

224. NEITHER, NOR, followed by a verb in the indicative or (in the)
NEITHER, NOR, 200 à au
subjunctive, are expressed NEITHER by *Ne*, and NOR by *Ni ne;* I neither
, – s'exprimer (ii) N.B. , NOR ,

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

know that man, nor want[250] to[168] know him. I neither love nor esteem
, *avoir envie*

him. I neither care for him, nor for all that he can say or do.
[66] *se soucier de* [58] , [200] *ce que*

If after NEITHER, NOR, there is a verb in the infinitive, an adjective,
NEITHER, NOR, *à* , ,

a noun or a pronoun, NEITHER is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and
, *NEITHER* – *s'exprimer* (*ii*) N.B. *par* ,

by *Ni* after, and NOR by *Ni;* as, He can neither read nor write. He
, *NOR* ; ,

is neither rich nor poor. He is useful neither to himself nor to others.
utile (*m*) N.B. *aux autres.*

225. WHETHER used in the sense of IF, is expressed by *si*, with
WHETHER employé *IF,* (*ii*) N.B. ,

the following verb in the indicative; Do you know whether we shall
qui suit [82] *à* ;

have peace or war? I want to know whether that news is true or
[7] [7] [260] *nouvelle* *vrai*

not. I must go and inquire whether there has been any news to-day.
non. [181] (*nn*) *s'informer* [246] *eu* [9]

WHETHER used in the sense of LET, is expressed by *que*, or *soit que*,
WHETHER *LET,* – (*ii*) N.B. , ,

with the following verb (in the) subjunctive; Whether, or, let that news
[82] *au* ; ,

be true or not, I do not care. Whether we have peace or war, I will
non, *s'en soucier.* [7] [7] ,

go to France. I will go, whether you come with me or not.
[6] *non.*

226. THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, followed by a conditional tense
THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, suivis [200] [82]

are expressed by *quand;* Though that news were true, I would go.
– (*ii*) N.B. ; *serait* , [70]

We would go, though we were sure that we should never[190] return. If
[70] , *serions* [29] (*nn*) N.B. [265]

even I had said so, you ought not to have (taken advantage of it.)
aurais dit cela, [177] *vous en prévaloir.*

227 BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,
BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,

HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by *sans;* But for your
HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, – [183] (*ii*) N.B. ;

father, or if it had not been for your father, I should have lost my
, , *perdre*

(law suit.) Had it not been for him, I should have been ruined. If
procès. , *ruiner.*

it had not been for this gentleman, we should have been all lost[128].
monsieur, *perdre.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

As it is late, and you are not ready, I will go. Since they are
tard, prêt, vais † m'en aller. Puisque

all gone, and you will not stop any longer, I will go too. Stay
partir [158], *rester plus long-tems, † aussi. Attendre*

till[218] I am ready, that we may go together. You know we have a long
que, afin que [178]. *ensemble.*

way to go before we can stop. I do not think I can go with you
chemin à faire, nous arrêter. [145]

now; it is too late. I shall not go, unless[195] you come with me. I have
; tard. ‡, N.B.

neither horse nor money to go. I can not go before my father has
[170] ‡

returned. If you have a mind to go, and you want[260] a horse, I
[265] [24] *envie* [168] ‡, *avoir besoin de*

will lend you mine. If you want money, and your father is not at
[260]

home, I will let you have whatever money *(s)* you want. You will
, *donner* – *tout l' dont* [260]

be too late, unless[195] you go immediately, and make all the haste *(s)*
arriver, N.B. *partir tout à l'heure, diligence*

you can. If your cousin is there, and you have an opportunity to
[142] *cousine y* [54], [24] *occasion*

speak to her, remember me to her. Is she not very handsome? Yes;
(o), rappeler [56] *à son souvenir. belle?*

she is both rich and handsome; but I neither value beauty nor riches; I
; *estimer* ? [7] ;

only value the qualities of the heart. Though she is amiable, and has a
[184] *aimable,*

handsome fortune, I do not hear that any body proposes to marry
beau bien, apprendre personne se proposer [261]

her. There is no[6] time lost yet. [183] Shall you (come back) this way, if
[246] N.B. *encore.* N.B. *revenir par ici,*

it is fine, and it is not too late? I will call, if nothing detains
[240] *beau tems,* [266], [99] *retenir*

me, and you will promise to come and sup with me. But if it was
, – *souper*

too late, and I could[149] not come, what must I do? Will you go,
, *pouvoir*, [88] [181] ‡,

whether I call or not? I do not know yet. Either you intend [168] to
passer encore. avoir dessein

go, or you do not. If you will (walk in) till the rain is over, and
‡, ‖ [144] *entrer pluie passée,*

the weather is clear, I will tell you whether I can go or not.
tems éclairci, ‡ *non.*

* See note * page 281. † Note † page 312. ‡ Note † page 354.
‖ Turn; *Either you have intention to go* there, *or you have not* it.

CONJUNCTION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I will wait as long as you please[142], provided you come and bring
[43] *long-tems* *vouloir,* *pourvu que* [256]

your sister with you. If you go now, and ride gently, I think we
partir , *aller doucement,*

shall (be able) to overtake you. Do not set out before I call, or you
pouvoir *atteindre* *partir* [266] ,

hear[275] from me, for I shall not go unless[195] the weather is fine, and
apprendre de *mes nouvelles,* * † N.B. [240] ,

my cousin comes with us. Do not you know whether he intends [168]to
avoir dessein

go or not? No, I do[70] not, but I will send to inquire. If it had not
† , N.B. , ‡ *m'en informer.*

been for him, we should have been back before now. What is it to
, *de retour* *ce tems.* *(y)*

us whether he comes or not? Though he should not come with us, that
[226] , *(bb)*

would not prevent us going[154]. But if he should[144] call, and you were
empêcher † N.B. [266] ,

not at home, what must I say to him? Tell him that if he does not
au logis, [83] [181] *(o)* (f) p. 79.

keep his word better[183], and he disappoints people so, [183] nobody
tenir *parole* N.B., *tromper* [229] *ainsi,* N.B. [97]

will trust[202] him. Do you know whether Mr. A. will be at[208] your
se fier N.B.

house? I dare say he will[70]. He is a strange man. Whether he
‖ [221] *y sera.* N.B [65] *drôle de*

wins or loses, he is always the same. I wanted to speak to him the
gagner *perdre,* [260] *(o)*

other night, but he (went away) without my seeing[156] him. If it
[235] , *s'en aller* *sans que* [218] **

had not been for him, I should have won the game. Speak low for
, *gagner* *partie.* *bas*

fear somebody should hear[148] us, and they might report it to him.
[195] *on* *entendre* , [90] – [195] *rapporter* *(o)*

Unless[195] you are very attentive, and take your measures well[183], you will
N.B *attentif,* [195] *mesure* N.B.,

never succeed. You should watch both[222] your cards and [204]those of
réussir [176] *veiller* *sur* N.B. *carte* *sur (bb) des*

other people. Neither grandeur nor riches can make men happy.
autres – [89] [7] *richesses* [249] [7] *heureux.*

I would not have that place, though it were offered to me.
[174] — , [226] [92] *(o)*

---

* Note * page 379. † Note † page 354. ‡ Note ‡ page 312.

‖ Dare say. *Dare* in this sense cannot be rendered by *Oser*, which expresses *boldness, audacity; I dare say* must be expressed by *Je pense, Je m'imagine, Je puis dire, Sans doute, je ne doute pas* or some similar expression.

** Turn, *Without that I should see him.*

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

Good morning[234], sir. This is[240] a fine morning. How do you do this
N.B. *

185 241

morning? I hope you are very well. Very well, sir, I thank you. How
265 241 , , †

does all your family do? How are your wife and children? They are
241 241 3 241

better, I thank you. And you; how do you do? Tolerably well for
(b) p.72. , ‡ ; 241 *Passablement*

an (old man). Do not talk of being old yet[183]; it will be time enough
vieillard. *parler* *vieux déjà* N.B.; §

twenty years hence. How old do you think I am[220]? I should
dans *d'ici.* 221 N.B.

take you to be[220] between thirty and forty. I am[220] near fifty. You
pour N.B. *entre* *ans.*‖ *en*[70] N.B. *près de*

do not look so old. You look very well for your age. I am very glad you
258 *âgé.* 258 221

think so. You have been in the country, (I understand.) Yes, I have[70],
146 *le*[54] *à* 220 , *à ce que j'entends.* , N.B.,

(i.e. *been there*). I am just returned thence. How do you like it? I like
244 205 (e) p.74. 183 268 62

it (very much). It is a beautiful country; and the people are uncom-
beaucoup. 65 220 ; 229 ex-

monly civil and obliging. I am fond of industrious people. I like
trémement *obligeant.* ¶ 229

those good country people. They look so cheerful and happy. I
25 258 *gai* 46

am going there to-night; will you come with me? How long do
y[54] 225 ; 166

you intend[168] to stop? I will sleep there, and return in the morn-
avoir dessein *rester?* ** *y*[54] (e) p.74, 265 216 234

ing. But you have no occasion to return so soon. You may[178]
besoin 168 265 *pouvoir*

stay there all the morning. You may stay till twelve o'clock.
rester 234 178 *jusqu'à* 236

Nay[184], you may spend the whole day there, if you like. Our
même, 271 233 *y*[54], *vouloir.*

people will be glad of your company. We will endeavour to make
229 *bien aise* *tâcher* 249

you as happy as we can. What time do you (go to bed)? We
48 48 142 *à* 98 *heure* *se coucher*

---

* Turn; *It is fine this morning.* † See note * page 261.

‡ As we have several words in french for this expression, we *vary* them as often as we can; see note *, page 261. § Turn; *Enough time;* see note * page 368.

‖ We always add *As* to the number in french. ¶ See note ‖ page 326.

** The verb SLEEP, so often used in english in the sense of LIE, is not expressed in french by *Dormir* but by *Coucher;* because a person may LIE abed, and not SLEEP.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

generally go about twelve o'clock. If you do not like to
ordinairement *se coucher vers* 236

stop, you may[178] return at night. It will be moon[23] light, and the
rester, *pouvoir* 265 *le* 235 *faire lune* *clair,*

roads are very good. The weather is so fine, that it[62] is a pity
chemin 240 , N.B. – *dommage*

to remain (shut up) in a town. How does the country look? It
168 *rester* *renfermé* 253 62

looks[253] very well, indeed. I never saw it look[253] better. Are the
* , 136 † –

crops[134] promising[156]? Very. If this weather lasts, there will be
récolte *promettre* *Beaucoup.* *durer,* 246

abundance of (every thing). I should like to go (very well)[188], but
167 ‡ *fort,* § N.B.,

it is rather too far for a walk. You have no occasion to walk; you
246 *un peu* *pour* ‖ *besoin* ‖ ;

may[178] ride, if you will. You will ride[262] my horse, I will ride that
pouvoir ‖ , N.B. , 88

of my servant and he will walk. If you would rather ride[262] in the
domestique, ‖ *aimer* *mieux* N.B.

carriage, it will be here (by and by); you may ride[262] in it[64].
voiture, 62 *tantôt*; 178 N.B. *dedans* –

No, I would rather ride on horseback. Come; the country air
, *aimer* *mieux* 262 ; 25

will do you good. I hope it will[70]; for I am not well. What
9*bien.* 221 (i. e. do me some;) 241

is the matter with you? You look very well. I do not know
281 253

how I look, but I am not well. I am always cold. My feet are
quelle mine j'ai, 241 239 *froid.* 239

always cold. The weather is so bad that I (am afraid) of going
240 *craindre* 154

out for fear of (catching cold). The weather has been very bad
de peur de m'enrhumer. 240

lately. Is[240] the weather always so bad in this country? Is it
depuis quelque tems. 230 249

always so damp and so cold? It is never very warm. However,
humide 240 *chaud.* *Cependant,*

(it is to be expected) that it will be finer in a short time. The
il faut 172 *espérer* 240 – *peu de*

weather ought to be fine at this season; it is near midsummer.
devoir 240 ; ¶ *près de la Saint-Jean.*

---

* Turn; *It has a very fine appearance.* † Turn; *I have never seen it finer.*
‡ See note † page 354. § See note ‡ page 241.
‖ When WALK is used by opposition to RIDE, it is expressed by *Aller à pied,* and RIDE by *Aller à cheval.* ¶ Turn; *We are near &c.*

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

Our spring generally[184] comes late. We never have it here so early
printems ordinairement tard. 190 *de si (bonne*

as you have it in your own country. (How many*) years have
heure) que – 230 *Combien* N.B. 233

you been in this country? I have been about two years. I did
*

not think it was[145] so long. Do you like it? I like the people well
140 246 *long-tems.* 268 239 *assez*

enough[198], but I do not like the climate. It does not agree with me;
bien, ‡ N.B., *climat.* *convenir* – 54 ;

the weather is so cold and so changeable. If I can not accustom myself
variable. *accoutumer me* 54

to it this year, I will not stay another year. You should walk out
68 233 , *rester* 233 176 269 *à l'air*

oftener than you do. I can not walk. I have hurt my foot. I am
47 *faire.* 237 *se blesser* 15 *pied.*

afraid I have put my[15] ancle out of joint. Come; do not afflict
(nn) 237 *se* *démettre cheville.* – – § *Allons;*

yourself; I dare say[221] you will be well in (a few) days. Here is Mr. B.
57 ; See ‖ p. 392. 241 *quelques* 247

How long have you been in town? I am just come. I have just
196 ‖ *en* 244 *arriver.* 244

alighted from my horse. Are you come to stop any time? No,
descendre – *venir* 170 *rester quelque* ,

I shall (go back) to-night. (How many*) times a week do you
s'en retourner 235 N.B. 232 12

come to town? Sometimes twice, sometimes three times. You
7 *deux fois,* 233

should come oftener. You should come every day. You should
176 *y* 70 41 *y* 70 *touts les jours.*

bring your wife with you. I wish I could bring her; but we
256 *(nn)* ;

can not well leave the house both (at the) same time. Sir, you are
quitter 122 *en* , 92

wanted[260]. Who wants[260] me? A gentleman is in the street who
N.B. N.B. See †, p. 307. ¶

wants to speak to you. Tell him to (walk in). He says he can
260 *(o)* 54 (f) p. 79. *entrer.* 221

not stop. Tell him that I will go and speak to him. Will you
s'arrêter. ** – *(o)* 54

---

* Turn, *How many years is it since*[246] *you are &c.* see note * page 369.
† Turn, *It is*[246] *about two years;* see note * page 369. ‡ See note * page 368.
§ The words *Out of joint,* are all expressed by the verb *Démettre.*
‖ Turn, *How long is it since you are &c.* see note * page 369.
¶ Turn, *There is*[246] *in the street a gentleman who*[75] *&c.* ** See note † page 312.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

excuse me whilst I go and see what that gentleman wants? I am
pendant que *(nn)* 84 200

going to leave you. No; Sit down; Do not go yet; do not go
155 *quitter* ; *s'asseoir;* * *encore;* *s'en aller**

before I return. I hope[221] you do not intend to leave us so soon.
218 † 265 255 *avoir dessein* 168 *tôt.*

Yes, I must go; but I will (call again) before I leave town. Take
, 181 *s'en aller**; *repasser* *avant de (nn)* 256

this letter to my sister. Take the children with you. If you can
256

not bring my sister, bring me the book which she has promised me.
256 , 256 53

Why did you not bring my sister? Why did you not bring me the
136 136

book which I desired[106] you to bring? I could not bring it; she is
258 136 ;

using[155] it herself. My sister used[140] to be very fond of reading. She
257 *(m)* N.B. 257 ‡ 169 154

did not use to be so long in reading a book. I think she does not
257 *long-tems* 169 154 221

use me well. I do not like to be used so. I suppose she has not
257 92 *ainsi.* 254 221

had time. I want to see my father. Where is he? I want money.
7 260

I want a wife. I want to be married. You want (so many[8]) things
261 *tant* N.B.

at once, that I (am afraid)[221] you will not get[146] one half (of them.)
à la fois, *craindre* 193 *avoir* *la* *moitié* *en* 54

You are yet too young to marry. You should get a little[8] money
encore 170 261 176 270 *un peu* N.B.

first. 183 You do not know what it costs to keep a house.
premièrement. N.B. 84 *il en coûter à* 269

I suppose[221] you would like to keep a horse too. I dare say you
254 269 *aussi.* §

(would have no objection) to have a ride now and then I do not
ne seriez pas fâché ‖ *de* 262 *de tems en tems.*

---

* See N. B. under *Aller*, page 116. † Turn; *Before I have*[238] *returned.*

‡ See note ‖ page 326. § See note ‖ page 392.

‖ The word *Objection*, so frequently used in english to denote that a person does or does not assent to what another person proposes, can not be expressed in french by *Objection* which means a *difficulty* which we oppose to an *argument* or a *proposition* in order to refute it. You must use some other equivalent expression, agreeably to the idea which you wish to denote; such as, *Vouloir*, *Aimer*, *Etre fâché*, *se Soucier*, *Avoir à redire*, *Trouver à redire*, or such like; as,

Have you any *objection* to take a walk? *Voulez-vous* faire, or *Aimeriez-vous* à faire, or *seriez-vous* [*bien aise* de faire une promenade?

No; I have no *objection* to it; oui; Je le *veux bien*, or Je ne *m'en soucie* pas, or *Comme vous voudrez*, &c.

What *objection* have you to that? *Qu' avez-vous à* redire, or *Que trouvez-vous à* redire *à celà?*

I have no *objection* to it. *Je n'ai rien à y* redire, or *Je n'y trouve rien à* redire.

IDIOMS

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

mind riding[154]. I would sooner walk than ride. I can easily walk
se soucier 263 *aimer mieux* 263 262

twenty miles a-day, without being tired. Since you are such a
12 , 154 *fatiguer.* *Puisque* *si* *

great walker, I wonder[221] you do not come to see us oftener than
marcheur, *s'étonner* 172 41

you do. Every morning when the weather is fine, you should walk
47 *Touts les* *que* 240 , 176 263

(as far as) our[208] house; we will give you some breakfast, and after
jusque N.B. ; *à* , *après que*

you have[142] rested yourself, you may either walk back or ride in our
237 N.B. *reposer* *vous*[55], 142 – † –

carriage, as (you like best). I intend to come and see you soon.[183]
voiture, *comme* *il vous plaira.* 264 *(nn)* *bientôt.*‡ N.B.

Does your brother return to the university this year? I suppose[221] he
265 232 254

will[70]; but I do not think he will go[70] for some time, for he is just
§ N.B. ; 221 145 *de quelque* , ‖ 244

returned thence. Has he returned[265] you the money which you had
265 *en* [54] (e) p. 74. N.B.

lent him[162]? Yes, he has[70]. I am glad (of it); for I
(f) p. 79. , N.B. i. e. returned it me. *bien aise* *en* [54] ; ‖

(was afraid)[221] he would never return[265] it you. He is so forgetful.
craindre 146 N.B. *sujet à oublier.*

I heard that your sister was to[172] be married. She is married[158]. She
136 242 243 *se marier.* 261

was married last week. She has married[159] Mr. Goodhusband. They
137 158 261

were married at our church. It[62] was my brother who married them.
137 *à* *église.* N.B.

How old is[239] she? She is[239] two and twenty. How old is[239] Mr. G.?
N.B. N.B. ¶ ** N.B.

He is[239] about thirty. They are a young couple. I hope[221] they are
N.B. *environ* ** 65 *est* 255

happy. I hope they will be so long. She desired[136] me to give her
221 *le*[54] *long-tems.* 252 *faire ses*

love to you. Please to[168] let her know[248] that I will call and
amitiés (o) [54] *Avoir la bonté* *lui* N.B. 266 *(nn)*

pay my respects to her at the first opportunity. How far is their[208]
pour rendre *(o)* [54] *à* *occasion.* 246 N.B.

---

* Put *Si* after the article à, because *si* being here an adverb, can not be separated from the adjective which it modifies.
† Walk back, *Revenir à pied*, or *Retourner à pied*, see 265 rule. ‡ See note ‡ page 241.
§ Instead of repeating the verb agreeably to the 70 rule, you may express *He will* by *Qu' oui.*
‖ Note * page 379. ¶ Say *twenty two*; the French always put the highest number first.
** In speaking of age, we always add *An* to the number in french.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

house from here? About seven or eight miles. It[62] is a (long way).
* *Environ* N.B. † *loin.*

Yes, it[62] is rather far. I suppose[221] they keep a coach. No, they have
, N.B. † *un peu loin.* 254 269 191 ,

no[8] coach. They keep horses. (How[8] many) servants do they keep?
N.B. 269 N.B. *domestiques* 269

Let me see. There is the butler, a footman, a groom, a gardener,
Attendez que je voie. 246 *maître d'hôtel, laquais, palefrenier,* ,

a cook, and a chamber[86] maid. These are many servants for such a
cuisinière, chambre ‡ *fille. Ce (e) si* §

small family. They hope that in time it[62] will encrease. Was not
avec le tems *augmenter.* 140

your country[25] house advertised to be sold? No; my father had
134 *afficher* 158 *à* 243 ; 140

some thought of selling it, but he has altered his mind. He is going
quelque envie 154 62, *changer* – *d' idée.* 155

to let his town[25] house, and live in the country (altogether[198].)
louer à la ville , *demeurer à* *entièrement.* N.B.

Trade[7] is so bad now, that he says he spends more than he gets.
Commerce mauvais , 221 271 47 270

How do you spend your time in the country? We generally[184] spend
185 271 ‖ *à* *ordinairement* 271

the mornings in[169] walking[154] and [204]practising[154] music, and we spend the
234 263 *étudier* , 271

evenings in reading and in amusing ourselves. (That is the way)
234 169 154 *amuser* *nous* 54 *C' est ainsi que*

we generally spend ours. Does Mr. A. often call upon you? Some-
184 271 85 184 184 266

times, not often. Here[247] he is. How do you do? I hope you are
, *pas* N.B. 241 255 241

(very well). Very well, I thank you. What is the matter with your
bien. *Très* , ¶ 281 *à la*

hand? It is all bloody[29]. I was[136] near breaking my neck in coming
62 *sanglant.* 245 *se casser* 15 *cou en*

here. How so? My horse stumbled[136], and had like to have fallen
185 *cela?* *faire un faux pas,* 245 – *tomber*

into a pit. I see it has [221]hurt its[16] mouth. I hope[221] you have not[8]
fosse. 221 *se faire mal* 231 255 237 N.B.

been hurt. Not much; I was[136] more[8] frightened than hurt. I
se faire mal. *Pas beaucoup;* 239 N.B. *peur* *de mal* **

hope[221] you will do us the favour to dine with us. At what time do
255 *grâce* 169 62 *heure*

---

* Turn; *How far is it from here to their house?* † You may express *It is*, by *c'est*, or *il y a.*
‡ See Note * page 197. § See note * page 397.
‖ Use *Le* here instead of *votre* because *vous* sufficiently denotes whose time it is.
¶ See note * page 261. ** Turn; *I have had more* fright *than* hurt.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

you dine? We generally dine about four o'clock. I will avail myself of
184 *vers* *heures.* *profiter*

your invitation to enjoy the pleasure of your company a little longer.
170 *jouir* 202 *peu* 41

Have you any objection to take[202] a short walk before dinner? No,
* N.B. 206 *Oui,*†

none at all. Let us walk along this lane. Let us rather[164] go into
je le veux bien.† – – 263 *le long de* *ruelle.* – – *plutôt*

that path. The late[29] rains we have had have made the fields very
sentier. *dernier* *(s)* 159 249

pleasant. Yes, the country looks quite beautiful now. I do not
agréable. , 253 *tout à fait belle*

recollect having ever seen it finer. We must not go much further.
se rappeler 154 181 *loin* 41.

It is near our dinner time. We must walk towards home. Let us
près de l' 25 *heure.* 181 263 *vers* *la maison.*

make haste. Our people do not like to be (kept[145] waiting). I see somebody
se dépêcher. 229 92 *faire* *attendre.*

coming[156] to meet us. Sir, the cloth is laid. The dinner is (on the table.
N.B. 273 , *couvert* *mis.* *servi.*

Come, ladies and gentlemen, (walk in.) Sit down at table. Now, my
Allons, *mesdames* , *entrer.* *se mettre à* *à présent,*

pretty neighbour, what do you choose to[172] eat? Shall I help you
jolie *voisine,* *souhaiter* 258

to a little soup? It looks very good. I will thank you for two or three
un peu de soupe? 62 258 ‡

(spoonfuls) of it. And you, madam, what will you eat? A bit of
cuillerée *en* 54 , , *morceau*

that fowl. What part do you like best? A little of the breast. Shall
(bb) volaille. *partie* *le mieux?* *estomac.*

I add some sauce (to[68] it?) A little, if you please, and a little of the
ajouter *y* 54 , § ,

cauliflower You, sir, what shall I help you to? A bit of the sirloin.
chou-fleur , , 258 *aloyau.*

With some gravy to it? Yes, a little, and a potato. Will you have
jus? – – , , *pomme de terre.*

the goodness to pass the mustard (this way?) (Give me[56] leave) to
bonté *passer* *moutarde* *par ici?* *Permettre*

help you to a bit of this loin of veal. A very small bit. Do you like
258 *longe* *veau.* *petit*

fat[7] or lean? A little of both. I will trouble you for a wing of that
gras *[7]maigre?* 122 *peine* ‖ *aile* *(bb)*

---

* See note ‖ page 396.
† The word *objection* being changed in the question, you must also change the words of the answer.
‡ I will thank you for, &c. turn; *I beg you to give me two or three, &c.*
§ Turn; *If it pleases you,* because *Plaire* in this sense is always *impersonal* in french.
‖ I will trouble you for, &c. turn; *Will you take the trouble to give me, &c.*

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

chicken. Shall I send you a little ham (with it?) No, no [8] ham; I will
voulet. *envoyer* *jambon* *aussi* [64] ? , *pas* N.B. ; *

eat a little[8] salad. It looks so nice. Pass the salad to that gentleman.
peu N.B. 62 253 *bon* [29] *(bb)*

(Here is) an excellent hare; I would advise you to taste it. I thank you;
247 *lièvre;* *conseiller* *goûter* ;

I will eat no[8] hare. I will eat one half of this partridge. And I will eat
N.B. * *la moitié* *(m)* *

a bit of the pheasant. Let me[56] send you a little of this pie. No, no
faisan. *Permettre* *(kk)* *pâté.* , *pas*

more; I can not eat (any more). (Take away), and bring the dessert.
davantage †; † *Desservir,* 256 *dessert.*

Now, what say you to a glass of wine? I will take a glass with you.
, 83 *de* * [70]*prendre*

Will you have red or white? White, if you please. And I will
174 *du rouge* *du blanc* ? , ‡ *(m)* *

drink a glass of red. Ladies and gentlemen, your good health. We
, *à* – *santé.*

thank you, sir. Come, gentlemen, help the ladies; help yourselves
, *Allons,*§ , 258 ; *vous* *vous-mêmes*

and pass the bottle. How do you like this wine? It is very good indeed.
185 266 62

Since you like it, I hope you will make free (with it). It[62] is what
Puisque , 221 *boire* *librement* *en* [54] N.B. 84

we intend [168]to do. (Here is) very fine fruit too. Have these fruits
avoir dessein 247 10 *aussi.* 238 134

grown in your garden? In the garden and in the houses. These
venir [158] *serre.*

apricots are beautiful. What think you of the peaches and [8]nectarines
abricot *très-beau.* 88 *brugnon?*

They are the finest I have[50] seen this year. Taste the pears and
Ce *(s)* 159 233 *Goûter*

apples; they look very nice. These grapes are delicious. (Here is
; 62 258 *bon* [29] *délicieux.* 247

a (pine apple) which is excellent. Permit me to help you to a slice
ananas 256 *tranche*

of it). I will thank you (for it), for I am very fond of pine apples.
en [54]. *être obligé* [54] *en* [59], ‖ ¶

Bring the sugar and some spoons. Come, gentlemen, (fill up) your
§ , , *remplir*

glasses; I will give you a toast. Let us drink the health of all good
; * *un toste.* – – *boire à* *santé*

---

* See note † page 312.
† *More, Any more,* at the end of a sentence, are expressed by *Davantage.* ‡ See § p. 399.
§ When *Come* is used as it is here, to *encourage,* it is a kind of *interjection* and is then expressed by *Allons.*
‖ See note * page 379. ¶ See note ‖ page 326

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

people of whatever country, colour, or religion they are. With all my heart.
229 117 230 *couleur,* *De, cœur.*

An everlasting peace between all men. What a pity that all men do not
éternelle [32] *paix entre* 7 [20] *dommage*

think so. They would spare themselves many afflictions. We will drink
ainsi. *épargner se* [54] *(e) chagrin.* see † p. 312.

this toast, to shew you that we join with you in your wishes,
toste, m. [170] *faire voir* *joindre* * *souhait,*

but I hope you will excuse us from drinking any more. Since you will
[221] *excuser* [154] † *Puisque*

not drink, would you like to take an excursion on the water? We have
, *faire tour*

a fine river (close by)[183], with good boats and good boatmen. I should
rivière tout près N.B., 10 *bateau* 10 *batelier.*

like it (very much). And I too. Well, since you all like it, we will
beaucoup. [52] *aussi.* *Eh bien,* ‡ ,

go. Which do you like best sailing[154] or rowing? I think[221]
[70] 8c *le mieux aller à la voile, aller à la rame?*

sailing is the most pleasant. They make such a noise with their oars.
[154] *agréable.* *tant de bruit* *rame.*

Boatman, what do you ask an[12] hour for your boat? We generally
Batelier, combien *par heure* [154]

charge three shillings an hour. That is (too much.) I will give you
[272] 12 *Ce trop.* –

half a crown. That is too little. I will not give you more. Well,
un petit [38] *écu.* *Ce peu.* † *Eh bien,*

come, I will not cheapen with you. Where shall we go? I do not
see § p. 400. *marchander* *Où*

mind; (please yourself.) (It is all the same to us.) Are you fond
s'en soucier; où vous voudrez. § *Cela nous est égal.* ‖ ¶

of bathing[154]? Yes, very. The sea is not far off here. (It is) not
à se baigner? , *beaucoup.* *mer* *loin d'ici.* [246]

above a mile and a half. If you wish to bathe, we will go[70]. Can you
plus de – *demi.* *se baigner,* **

swim? I can swim a little, but I do not like to (go out of my depth.)
nager? , *perdre fond.*

As for you, I know you can swim like a fish. Not quite; but
Quant à , [221] *comme poisson.* *Pas tout à fait;*

I can swim pretty well. It begins to be late. I (am afraid) the
assez *se faire tard.* *craindre* [231]

ladies will (catch cold[146]). We will (go back,) if you please. Yes,
[195] *s'enrhumer.* *s'en retourner,* *vouloir.* ,

---

* *We join with you in your wishes,* turn; *We join our wishes to yours.* † See note † page 400.
‡ Put this adjective *after* the verb in french. § Not, *Plaisez-vous,* which would express quite a different idea. ‖ Not, *Il est le même à nous,* which is not a french expression.
¶ See note ‖ page 326. ** See note † page 354.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

I think it is time. We had a very agreeable sail, had we
221 *il en*[70] *est* 196 32 *promenade en bateau,* 282

not? Very agreeable indeed. I will procure you that diversion as often
procurer *amusement* 43

as you will favour me with your company. We are (very much)
43 *accorder le plaisir* *de* *bien* –

obliged to you, sir; and we wish you a good night[234]. Good night,
138 *(o)* 55 , ; *le* N.B. ,

ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk. Mr. M. you used to be very
18 ; *agréable* 257 *fort*

fond of music; do you ever (make use) of your violin now? I use
* *musique;* *jamais* *se servir* *violon* 257

it sometimes; very seldom. Since you do not use it, I will be obliged
; *rarement.* *Puisque* 257 ,

to you, if you will let me have it, till[218] I have got one made. I
(o) , *prêter* – , *jusqu' à ce que* 251

do not think you will (be able[145]) to use it; the strings are all broken.
221 *pouvoir* 257 *en*[54]; *corde* 267

I will get them mended. I will get new ones put (to it.) Who
250 *raccommoder.* 250 *de neuves en*[59] *mettre* *y*[54]

made it you? A (man of the name) of Fiddle. When you see[142] him, I
136 55 59 *Un* *nommé* – N.B. ,

beg you will desire him to make me[54] one (like it.) (How much) did
† 252 *m'en*[70] *un* *semblable.* *Combien* 136

he charge you (for it?) He charged[136] me twenty guineas. He charged
272 *en* 272 272

you (too much.) He did not use me well. If I were in your place, I
trop. – 136 257 ‡ *à* ,

would get one made in Paris. You would get it better and cheaper.
251 *à* *avoir* (b) p. 72. *à meilleur marché.*

I suppose[221] you do not intend to[168] return home to night. Yes, I
254 *avoir dessein* 265 *chez vous* 235 ,

do[70]. You will drink a cup of tea before you go. I
N.B. *i. e.* intend to return. § ‖ *s'en aller.*

can not stay. Our people will be waiting for me. They will be anxious
rester. 229 155 201 54 *inquiet*

to hear from me. I long to see how they are. I have not heard from
275 see LONG p. 175. 241 275

them for these three days. The tea will be ready just now. Get the
¶ *tout de suite.* *Apprêter*

tea ready as fast as you can[142]. Come near the table. Shall I bring the
** 43 43 N.B. 274 274

---

* Note ‖ page 326. † *I beg you will desire* him, turn; *I beg you to desire him, &c.*
‡ See note † page 337. § See note § page 355. ‖ *Before* may be expressed by *Avant de* with the following verb in the infinitive, or by *Avant que* with the subjunctive; but here the two verbs having the same nominative, *Before* should be expressed by *Avant de.* See note (nn).
¶ *For these three days,* may be expressed two ways; *je n'ai pas appris de leurs nouvelles* depuis[203] *trois jours;* or Il y a[246] *trois jours que je n'ai appris, &c.* ** *Ready* is implied in the verb *Apprêter*

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on the* IDIOMS.

table nearer to you? It will do very well where it is. Bring the
41 *de* 62 – *est* 62 256

tea, and take[256] these children out of the room. Is there no coffee?
, *emmener* *hors* 246

Yes; there is both[222] tea and coffee. Which will you have? I will
; 246 N.B. 9 9 *Duquel* 174 – *

drink a cup of coffee. Eat a little[8] bread and butter. Is your coffee
† N.B. 134

sweet enough? Yes, it is very pleasant. You will drink another cup;
sucré see * p. 368. , 62 *agréable.* † ;

will you not? No, no more, I thank you. Now I must go.
222 , *pas davantage,* *À présent* 181 see N.B. p. 116.

If you will come with me, I will take it kindly of you. Yes, I will[70];
144 , ‡ 279 , §

Bring me my horse. Bring me my whip and [8]spurs. (There is) your
256 256 *fouet* *éperons.* 247

whip, and (here are) your spurs. They are not right. What is the
, 247 *bien.*

matter with them? You find fault with (every thing.) Can not you
224 278 107

do without spurs? No, I can not. I want to return as fast as I can[142],
230 , 70 260 265 48 48 N.B.

to go and meet a friend of mine who is coming to spend (a few) days
70 *(nn)* 273 87 155 172 271 *quelques*

at[208] our house. It will be too late; will it not? I am afraid it will[70].
N.B. ; 222 ‖ N.B.

I never can (get ready) in time. In vain I tell these people to keep
s'apprêter *à* 277 *dire à* 229 *tenir*

always ready the things which I want, they will not do it. Whatever
prêt 29 *dont* 260 , *vouloir* 277

I may say or do, they will[174] have every thing their (own way.) They
, *vouloir faire* 107 *à leur* *tête.*

make me very unhappy. If I were[140] you, I would turn them
249 ¶ *que de vous,* *mettre*

away. What will you have[174] one do? One can not do without
à la porte. N.B. 90 *faire?* 90 230

somebody, and it is very unpleasant to be always changing[155] people.
95 , *désagréable* – *changer de* 229

True; but I would not keep people who would not attend to my
Cela est vrai; *garder* 9 259

orders. Come; do not mind them. They are all alike.
Allons; *faire attention à* 58 – ** *se ressembler*

Happy they who can do without them.
Heureux 66 230 *en.*

---

* See note † page 312. † See note § page 355. ‡ See note * page 334.
§ Instead of repeating the verb here, you might say, *oui, je le veux bien.*
‖ Instead of repeating *I am afraid it will* be too late; you may say: *je* le *crains*, or *je crains* qu'on.
¶ See note † page 337. ** Put this adjective *after* the verb in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

It having been represented to the author that the utility of this work might be increased by lengthening the exercise, he, in consequence, has added the following amusing little novel, which is full of the most essential rules, especially on the NOUNS, PRONOUNS, *and* VERBS.

BATHMENDI, *an Eastern Tale.*

Under the reign of a king of Persia whose[75] name I have forgotten,
Perse N.B.

a merchant of Balsora was ruined by bad speculations. He collected
127 10 *entreprise.* *recueilli*

the wreck of his fortune, and retired to the (remotest part) of the
débris plur. , *se retirer* *fond*

province of Kousistan. There he bought a small country house and
Là 25

a field which he cultivated very badly, because he was always think
labourer *mal,* 155

ing of the time when he had something more pleasant to (attend to.)
200 *que* 140 98 *(ce)* *agréable* 32 *à* *l'occuper.*

Grief shortened the days of this merchant: feeling himself near his
abréger : 54 *près de*

end, he called to him four sons that he had, and addressed them
auprès de 58 140 , 53 *parler* *leur*

(in these words); My dear children, I have no other property to leave
ainsi ; , † *bien* 169

you but this house, and the knowledge of a secret which I was[242]
198 *connaissance* *ai* 186 *dû*

not to reveal to you till now. In the time of my opulence, I had
† 172 *(o)* *que* 213 *opulence,* 140

for a friend the genie Alzim. He promised me to take care of you
avoir

when I should be no more, and to divide a treasure amongst you.
190 ‡ , *partager* § 94

This genie lives a few miles hence, in the great forest of Kom. Go
à quelques *d'ici,*

to him, ask him for that treasure, but (take care) not to believe . . .
‖ 54 , ¶ *se garder* 198

Death did not allow him to finish. The four sons of the merchant,
permettre *lui* 54 *achever.*

after having bewailed and buried their father, went to the forest of Kom.
154 *pleurer* *enterrer* ,

They inquired for the residence of the genie Alzim. They had no trouble
s'informer *de* *demeure* *peine*

---

* See note † page 281. † Express *No, Not,* by *Ne* only, because *Que* which comes after the verb supplies the place of *Pas.* ‡ *When I should be no more,* may be expressed by *après moi.*
§ Leave out this preposition in french. ‖ Express *to* by the verb *trouver.* ¶ See note ‖ page 296

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

to find it. Alzim was known to the whole country: he received[182]
169 62 140 *de* 38 *tout* 280 : *accueillir*

kindly all those who came to see him, he listened to their complaints,
avec bonté 172 , *écouter* – *plainte,*

consoled them, lent them money, when they (were in want) (of it); but
189 , 162 , *avoir besoin en*[44] ;

these favours were on a condition; (they were) to follow blindly the advice
bienfait *à* ; *il fallait* 172 *conseil*

which he gave them; this was his whim; No one was admitted into
– ; *ce* *manie;* *Nul* 101 *recevoir*

his palace till he had taken an oath (of it). This oath did not
avant de (nn) avoir fait le serment en[55].

alarm the three eldest sons of the merchant; the fourth, whose (name
effrayer *aîné* 32 ; , *qui* *se nom-*

was) Taï, found this ceremony ridiculous. However he wished to
mer , *Cependant* *vouloir*

(go in) and receive the treasure: he then[184] swore like his brothers; but
entrer : *donc* *comme* ;

reflecting (on the) dangerous consequences of this indiscreet oath, (calling
aux * * , *se rap-*

to mind) that his father, who was in the habit of visiting this palace,
peler *avoir* – – *coutume* . 154 ,

had passed his life in committing blunders, he wished without being
169 *faire* *des sottises,* 154

a perjurer, to secure himself from all danger; and whilst they[90] were
– , *mettre à l'abri* 54 *de* ; N.B.

conducting them to the genie, he stopped his ears with scented
conduire[155]. *vers* , *boucher* *odoriférante*[32]

wax. (Having taken) this precaution, he prostrated himself before the
9 *Muni de* , *prosterner* 54 206

throne of Alzim. Alzim bid the four sons of his ancient friend to
faire † *ancien* * –

rise, embraced them, and ordered a large chest filled with daricks to
relever †, , *faire* ‡ *grand coffre* *de* *darique* § –

(be brought). Here, said he, is the treasure which I have designed for
apporter ‡ 247 , , 247 *destiner* –

you. I am going to divide it amongst you, and then I will tell each
55 *partager* – 54 , *ensuite* *dire à* 103

of you the road he must follow to be perfectly happy. Taï did not
(s) *devoir* *prendre* 170

hear what the genie said, but he observed him attentively, and saw
‖ ‖ , ‖ , ‖

---

* Put this adjective *before* the noun. See note (*i*) page 199.

† The two verbs *faire* and *relever* must come together, because *faire* here means to *cause;* he did not cause the four sons, but he *caused to rise.*

‡ *Faire* and *apporter* must come together; see note † above. § Small pieces of gold.

‖ The action not being momentary, but having been continued, this verb should be in the *imperfect.*

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

in his eyes, and on his countenance an air of cunning and of malig-
, *visage*. *finesse*

nity which gave him much uneasiness. However he received with
inquiétude.

gratitude his share of the treasure. Alzim, after having thus enriched
part , 154 *ainsi*

them, assumed an affectionate tone, and said to them; my dear children,
55 , *prendre* *affectueux* 32 *(o)* 54 ; ,

your good or bad destiny depends upon your meeting[156] sooner or later
3 *tenir* *à ce que vous* *rencontriez* 41

with a certain being called Bathmendi, of whom every body speaks,
201 *être* *nommé* , 106 ,

but whom very few[3] people know. The wretched mortals seek him
N.B. 229 *malheureux* * *humains*

all (in the dark). not. I, who love you, will whisper to each of you
à tâtons. *(m)* , † *dire à l'oreille* *de* 103 .

where he will (be able) to find him. At these words, Alzim took aside
pouvoir 172 , *en particulier*

Bekir the eldest of the four brothers. My son, said he to him, you are
aîné ‡ , , §

born with courage, and have (a great deal) of ability for war; the king of
9 , 53 *beaucoup* *talents* 7 ;

Persia has just sent an army against the Turks; join that army;
Perse 244 *Turc*; ;

it is in the camp of the Persians that you will find Bathmendi.
ce *Perse*

Bekir thanked the genie, and (was quite impatient) to (set out.)
‖ , – *déjà* 183 *brûler* ‖ *de* *partir.*

Alzim beckoned to the second son to (come near); it was Mesrou.
faire signe 168 *approcher*; *ce*

You have sense[9], said he to him, some address and great aptness for[170]
§ *esprit* N.B., , 10 *dispositions* N.B

lying; take the road to Ispahan; it is at court that you must look
; *chemin de* ; *ce* 7 *devoir*

for Bathmendi. He then called the third brother who (was named) Sad-
201 184 *qui* *s'appeler*

der: You, said he to him, were gifted with a lively and fertile
: § , *(m)*, 127 *douer* *de* *vive* 32 *féconde*

imagination; You see objects not as they are, but as you wish
; 7 , *vouloir*

them[174] to be; You have often genius, and not always common sense;
N.B. ; 9 , . 32 7 ,

---

* Put this adjective *before* the noun. † See note † page 312.

‡ *L'aîné* not *le plus aîné*, because *aîné* means *eldest*.

§ In *familiar tales* and in *familiar conversation*, the French generally use the *second person singular* instead of the *second person plural*.

‖ Put this verb in the *present* tense. The French often use the *present* instead of the *perfect* in narrations, to show the *suddenness* of the action, or to call the attention of the hearer or reader more particularly to it.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

You will be a poet. Take the way to Agra; it is amongst the wits
[23] *chemin de* ; *ce* *beaux esprit.*

and the fine ladies of that city, that you will find Bathmendi. Taï
(bb) ,

advanced in his turn; and thanks to the wax[25] balls, he did not hear
s'avancer à ; *grâce* *boule,*

a word of what Alzim said to him. It has been known since that
(o) [91] *savoir*

he had advised him to turn dervis. The four brothers, after having
lui [55] *se faire derviche.* , [154]

thanked the beneficent genie, returned to their home. The three eldest
bienfaisant *demeure.*

thought of nothing but Bathmendi. Taï unstopped his ears, heard them
rêver à * [198] *déboucher*

arranging their departure, and proposing to sell their small house to the
[154] [154]

first (person that should offer), (in order to) divide the amount (of it.)
offrant , [170] *partager* *prix* *en* [54]

Taï asked to be the purchaser. He got[250] the house and field valued,
acquéreur. *faire* † *estimer* †

paid with his gold the share that came to each of his brothers, wished
de *part* [74] *revenir* [108] ,

them every prosperity, embraced them tenderly, and remained alone
toutes sortes de , , *rester* *tout seul*

in the paternal house. It was then that he (set about) executing a project
[29] [32] *Ce* [187] *alors* *s'occuper de* [154]

which had for a long while been the object of his thoughts. He was
auquel il pensait depuis – *tems* ‡

(in love) with the young Amine, the daughter of a neighbouring farmer.
amoureux de , [22] *son voisin* [32] *laboureur.*

Amine was handsome and prudent. She had the management of her
sage. *soin*

father's house, and asked of God only two things; the first was that her
[25] *ménage,* *à* ; –

father should[146] live long; the second that she might become the wife of
[149] *long-tems;* – – – *de* § *femme*

Taï. Her wishes were granted. Taï asked for her and obtained her hand.
[187] *exaucer.* [201]

The father of Amine came to live with his (son in law), and taught
demeurer chez *gendre* , *apprendre*

him the art of making the earth yield all that it can give to those
[162] *faire* ‖ *à la* *rendre* ‖ *ce que* [62]

---

* Express *Nothing* by *Ne* only, because *que* which comes after, expresses *nothing but.*
† The two verbs *faire* and *estimer* must come together.
‡ *Had been the object of his thoughts* is all expressed by the verb *penser.*
§ Put this verb in the infinitive. ‖ *Faire* and *rendre* must come together before *à la terre;* for he did not *make* the *earth,* but he *made* or *caused* to yield

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

who cultivate it. The field doubled in value; and as he was laborious,
[62] *de valeur; comme*

and his wife economical, each year encreased their revenue. Amine
économe, [102] *augmenter*

had many[8] children. Children who ruin the rich idle people of towns,
[137 *] N.B. [7] *oisif* [39] [7]

enrich the (husbandman). At the end of twelve years, Taï, the
laboureur. *bout* [22]

father of ten pretty children, the husband of a good and virtuous
[33] [22] *époux* [34]

wife, master of several slaves, and possessor of two flocks, was the
plusieurs

happiest farmer in Kousistan. Meanwhile his three brothers were
[49] m. *Cependant*

running after Bathmendi. Bekir had[140] arrived at the camp of the
[155] [238]

Persians. He presented himself to the grand vizier, and asked to
Perse. [54] *vizir,*

serve in the corps that was the most exposed. His appearance, his
[92] *figure,*

willingness pleased the vizier who admitted him into a troop of horse.
bonne volonté [202] *cavalerie.*

A few[8] days after, a bloody battle (was fought.) Bekir performed
N.B. *sanglant* *se donner.* *faire*

wonders, saved the life of his general, and took with his own hand
prodige, *à* *de*

the general of the enemy. The praises of Bekir resounded every where,
celui † *retentir* ‡

and the vizier (out of gratitude) raised his deliverer to the rank of a
reconnaissant, *élever* *libérateur* *grade*

general officer. Alzim was right, said Bekir to himself; it is here
[32] [239] [139] *se* [54]; *ce*

that fortune awaited me; every thing shews that I am going to meet
[7] *attendre* [138] [107] *annoncer*

with Bathmendi. The glory of Bekir, and especially his preferment,
[201] *surtout* *élévation,*

excited the envy and the murmurs of all the satraps. Bekir unhappy
§

by his very success, lived alone, always on his guard, and exposed
même ‖

every moment to receive an affront. He regretted the time when he
à tout *outrage.* *où*

was only a common soldier, and was waiting with impatience for the
¶ *simple* [201]

---

* See note * page 226. † Instead of repeating the noun, the French would here use a *pronoun.*
‡ *Les louanges de Bekir retentirent partout* would be french; but, *Tout retentit des louanges de Bekir* would be better.
§ Persian nobleman. ‖ Make this word *plural* in french. ¶ See note * page 275.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

end of the war, when the Turks reinforced by fresh[10] troops and led[157]
, *quand* 157 *nouvelle* * *guider*

by a new general, came and attacked the division which Bekir
nouveau * , *(nn)* *(ee*)*

commanded. This was an opportunity which the satraps of the army
Ce *occasion*

(had long been waiting[155] for.) They used a hundred times more[8]
– *attendaient* 140 *depuis long-tems.* *employer* 21 N.B.

skill to get their commander beaten, than they had showed in all their
250 † *chef* *battre* † *en* 70

lives to (avoid being) beaten themselves. The brave Bekir forsaken,
‡ *pour* *n'être pas* 158 *eux-mêmes.* *abandonner,*

covered with wounds, overpowered by numbers, was taken by the
200 , *accabler* *sous le nombre,* 137

janissaries, and sent to Constantinople, where he was thrown into a
janissaire, , *jeter*

dungeon. Alas! exclaimed he, in his prison; I begin to think that
cachot. *Hélas! s'écrier* 139 , ;

Alzim has deceived me, for I can not expect to meet with Bathmendi
, *espérer* 201

here.[188] The war lasted fifteen years, and the satraps always prevented
N.B. , 184 *empêcher*

the exchange of Bekir. His prison was not opened (till peace was made).
§ *qu' à la paix.*

He ran immediately to Ispahan to seek the vizier his protector, whose
aussitôt *chercher* , *à qui*

life he had saved. (Three weeks elapsed) before he could speak to
‖ *Il fut trois semaines* *sans* ** – *pouvoir* *(o)*

him. (At the) end of that time, he obtained an audience. Fifteen years
54 *Au* *bout* , 233

imprisonment alter a little the figure of a handsome young man. Bekir
de prison *changer*

(could hardly be said to be the same); so the vizier did not know
était à peine reconnaissable; *aussi* *reconnaître*

him again. However, by dint of (calling to mind) the different epochs of
– , *à force* *se rappeler* 154 *

his glorious life, he recollected that Bekir had formerly done him a little
* , *se souvenir* *rendre* 162

service. Yes, yes, my friend, said he to him, I remember you; you
, , , *(o)* 54 , *remettre* ;

are a brave man; but the state is much encumbered; a long war and
* ; *bien* *obéré;* *

---

* Put this adjective *before* the noun. † *Faire* and *battre* must come together before *chef.*
‡ This word must be *singular* in french, because it implies the life of each person *individually*, not of them collectively.
§ Express *Not* by *Ne* only, as *Que* which comes after supplies the place of *Pas.*
‖ Turn; *to whom* he had saved the life. ** This preposition governs the *infinitive* in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

great festivals have exhausted our finances; however come to me again
fête *épuiser* ; *revenir voir* *

I will try, I will see.... Ah! my lord, I have no* bread, and for
tâcher, *Eh!* , N.B. , *depuis*

this fortnight that I have been waiting for an opportunity to speak to
– *que* – – † 201 *le moment* 168

your lordship, I should have perished with misery, but for a soldier of
grandeur, 226 *mourir de* , 227

the guard, my ancient companion, who has shared his pay with me.
, *vieux* *camarade,*

That is very well of that soldier, replied the vizier; it is truly noble
Ce *à* , *répondre* ; *cela* *vraiment*

and affecting; I will mention it to the king. Call upon me again;
touchant; *parler* *en* 54 *Revenir voir* 54 * ;

you know I (have a regard for) you.... In saying these words, he
221 *aimer* 54 ,

turned his back (upon him). Bekir called again the (next day), but he
15 *lui* 54 *revenir* * *lendemain,*

(was denied admittance). Overwhelmed with despair, he left the palace
trouva la porte fermée. *Accabler* 200 , *sortir du*

and the city, resolved never to enter it again. He threw himself at
de la , 190 *rentrer y* 54 * , *jeter* 54

the foot of a tree on the bank of the river Zenderou. There he
bord *fleuve* *Là*

reflected on the ingratitude of viziers, on all the misfortunes which he
à 7 , *à*

had experienced, on those which still 54 threatened him, and (unable
140 *éprouver,* 159 *à* *(bb)* *encore* , *pouvant*

any 190 longer) to support these melancholy ideas, he rose to throw
ne *plus* 172 *soutenir* *triste* , *se lever* 170 *précipiter*

himself into the river; .... but he felt himself embraced by a beggar
54 , 54 ‖ *mendiant*

who bathed his face with tears, and exclaimed sobbing; it 62 is my
138 *visage* 200 , 136 *en sanglotant;* N.B.

brother, it 62 is my brother Bekir! Bekir looks, and recognises Mes-
, N.B. , *reconnaître*

rou. Every man feels pleasure no doubt in meeting again with a
104 *avoir* 9 *sans doute* 169 *retrouver* * 201

brother he has not seen for a long time; but an unfortunate man
(s) *depuis* – ; 89

without resource, without a friend, who is going to (put an end to)
, ‡ , 172 *finir*

---

* The adverb *again* is expressed by the preposition *re* prefixed to the verb.

† He having been waiting till the moment he was speaking, the French would put the verb *wait* in the present, and leave out *have* and *been*. ‖ Put this verb in the *infinitive*.

‡ After the preposition *Sans*, the noun is generally used without an article, because the preposition and the noun are considered either as an *adjective* or as an *adverbial* expression.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

his existence in despair, thinks he sees an angel from heaven, in
jours de , croire (nn) 7 , en

finding again a brother whom he loves. Such was the sentiment
retrouver – Ce 187

which Bekir and Mesrou felt at the same time. They mutually
éprouver à – fois. 184

pressed (each other) in their arms, they mingled their tears, and after
* *se* 54 , *confondre* * *larme,*

the first moments given to tenderness, they looked at (each other) with
137 , * 201 *se* 54

eyes full of surprise and affliction. Art thou then also unfortunate?
† – *surpris afflígé. Tu es donc*

exclaimed Bekir. This, answered Mesrou, is the first moment of
s'écrier 247 , , 247

happiness which I have enjoyed since we 186parted187. At these words,
dont se quitter. ,

the two unfortunate men embraced (each other) again; they leaned
39 * *se* 54 *encore; s'appuyer* *

on each other; and Mesrou seated near to Bekir, thus184 began his
contre 121 ; *assis près de , ainsi*

history. You remember the fatal day when we went to Alzim's.
202 22 *où* 206

That perfidious genie told me I might find at court that Bathmendi
perfide ‡ 221 7

whom we wished (so much) to meet. I followed his pernicious advice,
140 *tant funeste* ‡ *conseil,*

and soon arrived at Ispahan. I became acquainted with a young female
184 53 *à faire connaissance une* – 39

slave who belonged to the mistress of the first secretary of the grand
140

vizier. This slave conceived an affection for me, and introduced me to
de l' 58 ,

her mistress, who made me pass for her youngest brother. Soon the
, *petit*

youngest brother was presented to the vizier, and a few days after, he
187 , – *quelques ,*

obtained an employment in the palace. The Sultana distinguished me,
emploi Sultane ,

and took me into an intimate friendship. From that moment, honours and
218 32 *Dès , 7*

riches began to shower upon me. The monarch himself shewed some
§ *pleuvoir* 58 *témoigner*

regard for me. He liked to converse with me, because I flattered him
affection – 54 140 *causer* 189

---

* To show the *quickness* in which the action was done, the french would put this verb in the *present* tense. † Leave out this adjective, and make *surprise* and *affliction* into *adjectives*.
‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun. § Make this word *plural* in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

with address, and always advised him to do what he had a mind to do.
, 219 . 53 *conseiller* 162 - - 84 .40· 24 *envie* .68 -

This was the way to make him soon do what I should wish.
Ce 140 *moyen* 168 * *lui* 54 *faire* * *vouloir.*

That failed not to happen. (At the) end of three years, I saw myself
(bb) manquer 168 *Au bout* , 54

at once prime minister, favourite of the king, (having in my power)
à la fois , , *maître*

to appoint and to remove the viziers, deciding every thing by my
de nommer déplacer , 107

influence, and receiving every morning the great men of the empire,
crédit, touts les matins 39 ,

who came to wait (till I awoke) to obtain from me a smile of protection.
139 *mon réveil* 170 *de* 58

(In the) midst of my glory and of my fortune, I (was astonished) that
Au *s'étonner* 140 -

I did not[190] meet with that Bathmendi I was seeking. (I feel no
(nn) N.B. 201 *(s)* *Rien ne me*

want of any kind), said I to myself; why (do I still want Bathmendi)?
manque , 139 - *me* 54 ; *Bathmendi me manque-t-il?*

This idea and the constraint (in which) I spent my life, poisoned all
gêne où (v) 174 ,

my pleasures. The passion of the king for a young Mingrelienne
amour

came to (fill up) my misfortune. The whole court cast their eyes to
combler 2 *infortune.* 88 *tourner les* 15 *de*

that side, in hope that the mistress would (turn out) the minister. I
, 7*espoir* *chasser*

parried the blow by connecting myself with the Mingrelienne, and
parer (hh) lier me 54 ,

flattering the passion of the king: but that passion became so violent,
204 : ,

that the monarch, determined to marry his mistress, asked me for[201]
, *décider à* 261 , †

my advice. I wavered for some days. The Sultan's mother, who
avis. *tergiverser* - *Sultane mère,* ‖

was afraid of losing her influence if her son should[144] marry, came
crédit N.B. *se marier,*

to declare to me that, if I did not break off that match, she would
172 *(o)* , *rompre* - *mariage,*

have me assassinated on the very[88] day of the ceremony. An hour after,
250 - *même*

the Mingrelienne came and assured me that, if I did not get her
(nn) 54 , § 250

---

* Make do, *Faire faire*, must come together in french. † See note ‖ page 296.
‖ *Mère* being here considered as an *adjective*, must come after *Sultane*. § See note † page 397.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

married to the king (the very next day), I should be strangled the day
261 *par* *dès le lendemain,*

after. My situation was embarrassing; I had to choose (between the)
d'après. *position* *il fallait* 172 *du* *

dagger, 204 the rope or 204 flight. I chose 136 the last. I disguised myself
, *du cordon de la* *prendre* *dernier parti.* 136 227 54

as you see, and have escaped from the palace with some diamonds
, 227 *s'échapper* †

in my pockets, which will support me with you in some corner of
, *faire vivre* *quelque*

Indoustan, far from the Sultanas, the Mingreliennes and the court.
5 , *loin* , 204 204 .

After this recital, Bekir related his adventures to Mesrou. They both
récit, 122 ‡

agreed that they would have done just as well not 190 to have (rambled
convenir *tout aussi* N.B. – *courir*

about) the world, as they had done, and that the wisest thing they
– , *comme* 140 , *meilleur* *(s)*

could do, was to return into Kousistan, to their brother Taï, where
50 , 140 *de* 5 , *auprès de* ,

the diamonds of Mesrou would enable them to lead a sweet and easy 29
mettre en état 162 *mener* 32 *aisé*

life. After this resolution, they (set out on their journey), and travelled
, *se mettre en route* *marcher*

for several days without meeting with any adventure. As they were
205 – – § 155

crossing the province of Farsistan, they arrived towards dusk at a
traverser , *vers* *le soir*

small village where they intended to spend the night. It was a holy
compter 271 140 *fête*

day. On entering the village, they saw several peasants' children
25 *En* *entrer dans* || , 25

returning 158 from walking, attended by a kind of (school-master) badly
188 N.B. 7*promenade, conduit* 157 *espèce* *magister* *mal*

clad, walking with his head down, and having the appearance of (being
vêtu, *marcher* – *la* 15 *basse,* *air*

absorbed in) (melancholy thoughts). The two brothers approached this
rêver ¶ *tristement.* 274 * *

school-master, looked at him attentively...What was their surprise! it 62 was
, * * 201 82 * * N.B. * *

Sadder, it 62 was their brother Sadder whom they embraced. What 82 ! my
, N.B. * * * * *Eh quoi !*

---

* The preposition *between* is here expressed like *of*. † See note † page 282.
‡ Put this pronoun *after* the verb. § All these words may be *left out* in french.
|| The French do not say *entrer un endroit*, to *enter* a place; they say *entrer* dans *un endroit*, to enter *into* a place. ¶ Express the words *being absorbed* in by the verb *rêver*.
** To express the *suddenness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

friend, said Bekir to him, is this (the way) in which genius is rewarded?
, (o) , ce ainsi - que 7 92

You see, replied Sadder, that it is treated much (in the same way as)
, , 92 à peu près comme

valour is; but philosophy finds (in it) abundant food for reflection
7 -; y 54 un grand sujet de

and that (is no small consolation). In saying these words, he bid 202
(bb) console beaucoup. En , ordonner à

all the children go (to their homes), took Bekir and Mesrou to his
168 208 , conduire

little cottage, dressed himself a little* rice for their supper, and after
cabane, apprêter (m) N.B. N.B. ,

having 154 (asked them for) their histories, he told them his own in these
s'être 237 fait raconter , dire 162 85 - en

words: The genie Alzim, whom I suspect much of delighting in
mot: , aimer 154 -

(other people's) afflictions, advised me to seek that (not to be found
autrui 25 mal* , introuvable

Bathmendi in the great city of Agra, amongst the wits and the
, beaux esprits

fine ladies of that city. I arrived at Agra; and before I mixed
; avant de (nn) me répandre

with the world, I wished 197 to (make myself known) by some
dans , voulor m'annoncer quelque

striking work. (At the) end of a month, my work appeared:
d'éclat 25. Au bout ;

it was a complete course of all human sciences, in a small volume
65 32 cours 32 7 , en

divided into chapters. Each chapter was a tale, and each tale taught
par 102 140

a science thoroughly 183. My book and I soon 184 became fashionable
parfaitement N.B. 127 bientôt à la mode.

I was invited to all the societies that pretended to have any sense;
92 74 se piquer 140 un peu d'esprit;

(there was no talk) but of me, and the favourite Sultana wrote to
On ne parlait que de 58 , 32 (o)

me with her own hand a note (badly spelled), to ask me to come
de - billet sans orthographe, 170 prier

to court. Well! I said to myself, Alzim has not deceived me:
7 Courage! (ee) 189 - me 54 , :

my glory is (at its) height; I will sustain it by surer 41 means
au comble; soutenir 62 32 9

than those of intrigue; I will please, and I shall find Bathmendi.
32 7 ; ,

* Put this word in the *singular* in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

I was (most agreeably) received in the palace of the grand Mogul: The
137 *parfaitement* *accueillir*

favourite Sultana declared herself openly my protectress, presented me
32 54 *hautement* ,

to the emperor, bespoke verses from me, gave me pensions, admit-
, *commander* 9 – 54 , 9 ,

ted me to her private suppers, and swore to me, a hundred times a
petit , *(o)* 21 12

day, a friendship (that would stand any test). I thought[140] I was
, *à toute épreuve.* *croire* *(nn) toucher*

(on the) point of meeting with Bathmendi, when my protectress
au *moment* 201 ,

quarrelled with the vizier about the government of a province which
se brouiller *vizir* *pour* *un* –

the latter refused to the son of the confectioner of the favourite. The
celui-ci *confiseur*

Sultana exasperated at this audacity, asked the emperor to dismiss the
outré 137 *de* , *chasser*

insolent minister; but the emperor liked his vizier, and refused the
; 140 ,

favourite. Then it (became necessary) to (set on foot) a regular[32] intrigue
Alors *il* *fallut* 172 *établir* *en règle*

to ruin the patronized vizier. I entered (into the) plot, and (was[197]
170 *perdre* *soutenu* 32 *être* 197 *du* *complot,* 53 *recevoir*

desired) to compose against the minister a cutting[32] satire, and to spread
ordre 168 *sanglant* , *répandre*

it amongst the public. The vizier soon discovered that I was the author
62 *dans* *bientôt*

(of it). He went to the favourite, brought her the commission which he
en 54 *aller* *trouver* , 162 *brevet*

had refused (at first), an order for a hundred thousand daricks on the
140 *d'abord,* *ordonnance de* 21

royal treasury, and only asked her[162] (in return) to permit him[162] to
32 , * *lui* *pour récompense* *de* *lui*

throw me into a dungeon. That is a trifle, answered the favourite, and
cachot. *Ce* *misère,* ,

I am very fortunate in (having it in my power) to do something that
heureux (g) *de* *pouvoir* 172 74

may be acceptable to you. I will send immediately for that wretch
agréable *(o)* † *envoyer tout à l'heure* *chercher* ‡ *misérable*

who has dared to insult you (in spite of) my express orders, and
172 *malgré* 32 *défense,*

deliver him into your hands. Luckily for me a slave of the favourite
remettre *entre* *Heureusement*

---

* See note * page 275. † See note † page 312.
The preposition *For* after the verbs *Go* and *Send*, is not expressed by *Pour*, but by the verb *Chercher*

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

who was present, came to relate their conversation to me; I had only
, *raconter* *(o)* 54 ; 137 *

time to escape. Since that time, I have (wandered all over) Indoustan,
se sauver. *Depuis* *époque,* *parcourir tout* 5 ,

hardly[184] gaining my livelihood by writing novels, and making verses.
à peine *vie* *à* 154 *romans,* 204 154 9

(As long as) I had money, my works had been master-pieces; as soon as
Tant que *avais eu* 9 , *[9]chefs-d'œuvre ;* *sitôt* *que*

I was in misery, (all that I wrote was nonsense). (At last) disgusted
137 7 , *je ne fis plus que des sottises.* *Enfin*

with instructing the world, I have preferred to[172] teach peasants to
200 154 *univers,* *mieux aimé* *apprendre à* 9 †

read, and have[227] turned school-master in this little village where I live
53 *se faire* *où*

upon brown bread, and where I do not expect ever to see Bathmendi.
200 *bis* 22 , *espérer* 184

(You may leave it if you like), said Mesrou to him, and (go back)
Il ne tient qu' ‡ *à vous de le quitter,* *(o)* 54 , 204 *retourner*

with us into Kousistan, where some diamonds which I take with me,
5 , ‖ *emporter* – – ,

assure us a sweet and easy[22] life. He had not much difficulty to deter-
22 *tranquille* 137 *peine* *à*

mine Sadder. (The very next day) the three brothers (set out) from the
Dès le lendemain *sortir*

village before (daybreak), and took the road to [5]Kousistan. They[70] were
le jour, *du* *en* 140

on their last (day's journey), and (at no great) distance from the
journée, *près de* *arriver* *à*

small house of Taï. This idea consoled them; but their hope was
140 ; *espoir* 140

mingled with fear. Shall we find our brother? they said: we left him
mêler *de* *(ee)* : 136

very poor; he will not have met with Bathmendi, since he has not
; 201 ,

(been able) to (go in search of) him. My dear friends, said Sadder to
pu 172 *chercher* 54 , *(o)*

them, I have meditated a (good deal) on this Bathmendi of whom Alzim
, *réfléchir* – *beaucoup* 183 *à* 74

has spoken to us. To (tell you the truth), I believe that the genie
(o) *à* *parler franchement,*

has (made game) of us. Bathmendi does not exist, and has never
237 *se moquer* ,

existed; for since my brother Bekir did not meet him, when he
§ 217 136 ,

---

* See note * page 275. † Turn; to teach *to read* to peasants.
‡ *Il ne tient que* is a very common expression, but it can not be expressed literally in english.
‖ See note † page 282. § See note * page 379.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

commanded half of the persian[22] army; since Mesrou did not
la moitié *persane* ; 217 136

(hear his name mentioned), when he was the favourite of the great
en 55 *entendre parler* , *lorsque*

king; since I myself could not even guess what it was at a time
; 136 *même* 84 *ce* *dans* *le*

when I was loaded (with the) favours of glory and fortune; it[62] is
que *combler* *des* 7 204 7 ; N.B.

clear that Bathmendi is an imaginary being, an illusion, a chimera after
32 *être,* ,

which all men run, because they like chimeras, and (rambling about)
76 7 , *à courir.*

He was going to prove that Bathmendi did not exist in this world, when
172 *habiter* , 217

a band of robbers rushed from behind the rocks which lined[140] the road,
troupe *sortir* * *border* ,

surrounded the three travellers, and ordered them[162] to strip. Bekir
entourer * , * *leur* *se dépouiller.*

wished[137] to resist, but he was soon disarmed. After this ceremony which
vouloir , 137

was the business of a moment, the captain of the robbers wished them
instant, *chef* 162

a good journey, and left them quite naked (in the) midst of the high-
voyage, 189 29 *au* *grand*

way. This comes in support of my proposition, said Sadder, looking
chemin. *à l'appui* , , *en*

at his brothers. Ah! the cowards! exclaimed Bekir in a rage; they
201 *Ah!* *lâche* * 139 *en* – *fureur;*

have taken my sword from me! Oh! my diamonds! my poor dia-
arracher – 55 *Eh!*

monds! replied Mesrou weeping. It was dark; The three unfortu-
répondre *en pleurant.* *faire* *nuit;*

nate men (made haste) to reach the house of their brother Taï. They
39 *se hâter* *gagner*

(at length) reached it, and the sight of that house caused their tears
enfin 184 *arriver y* 54 , *vue* *faire* †

to flow. They stopped at the door; they dared not knock; all their
– *couler.*† ; ;

fears, all their doubts (were renewed). Whilst they were wavering
, *incertitude* *recommencer.* *balancer*

thus, Bekir rolled a large stone, got upon it, and finding a cleft in the
, * *gros* 29 , *monter* * 64, *fente*

window shutter, he looked and perceived in a neat, plainly furnished
25 *contrevent,* * * 32 , *simplement* *meublé* 32

---

* To show the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense; but the *perfect* may also be used. † Turn; *caused to flow* their tears; the two verbs *faire* and *couler* must come together in french, for it did not *cause* their *tears*, but it *caused* to *flow* tears.

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

room, his brother Taï at table, (in the) midst of ten children who were
, à , au

eating, laughing and chattering all (at once). Taï had on his right his
[155] , [155] *babiller* *à la fois.* [140] *à*

wife Amine who was feeding her youngest child, and on his left was
[155] *faire manger* *dernier* , *à*

a little (old man) with a sweet[29] and cheerful countenance, who was
vieillard *de* [22] *gai* [22] *physionomie,*

(pouring out) drink for Taï. At this sight Bekir rushed into the arms
verser *à boire* *à* *se précipiter* *

of his brothers, and knocked at the door with all his might. A servant
, *frapper* * *de* *forces.* *valet*

came to open it, and screamed with fright, at seeing three men completely
* [172] , *jeter* * *des cris de frayeur, en* *tout*

naked. Taï ran to the door. The strangers fall (on his[15]) neck, they[90]
[29] * – *On* † *lui saute* *au* N.B. *cou,* N.B.

call him brother; they[90] bathe him with tears. He was confused (at first),
* [18] ; N.B. * [200] * *troubler* *d'abord,*

but he soon recollects Bekir, Mesrou, Sadder. He presses them in his
[184] *reconnaître* , , *serrer*

arms, he can not embrace them sufficiently. All the children ran
, *suffire à leurs embrassements.* *accourir*

to see what it was. Amine also came, but she (drew back) with her
[172] [84] *il y avait.* [184] , *se retirer*

daughters at the sight of the three naked brothers. (The little old man
aspect [32] *Il n' y eut que*

was the only one) who did not quit the table. Taï gave clothes to his
le petit vieillard [9]

brothers, presented them to his wife, and made them kiss his chil-
, , [162] *(kk)*

dren. Alas! said Bekir affected at this sight; thy happy lot consoles
Hélas! *attendri* *spectacle;* *sort*

us for all that we have suffered. Since the moment (we parted,)
[200] *ce que* *Depuis* *instant* *de notre séparation,*

our life has been only a series of misfortunes, and we have not
enchaînement *infortune;*

even (had a glimpse) of that Bathmendi after which we have all
seulement *entrevu* – [76]

been running. I readily believe it, said the little (old man) then[183] who
– [155] *bien* [184] [54], *vieillard* *alors* N.B. [73]

remained (all this time) at table; I have not stirred hence. How!
[140] *toujours* ; *bouger* *Comment!*

exclaimed Mesrou, you are... I am Bathmendi, replied the (old man;)
s'écrier , , *reprendre*

---

* To shew the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense, but the *perfect* may be used too. † This noun would be expressed better in french by the *indefinite* pronoun *On.*

Promiscuous EXERCISE *on* ALL *the* RULES.

it is quite natural that you should not know me, since you have never
[189] *simple* * † , [217]

seen me; but ask of Taï, ask of the good Amine, and of all these little
; [200] , [200] , [204]

children, there is not one (of them) but knows my name. The three
, [246] *en* [54] [199] †

brothers who could not (keep their eyes off) this little (old man), wished
[140] *se lasser de considérer* , *vouloir*

to embrace him. Gently, said he to them; I do not like these great
[172] *Doucement,* *(o)* ; .

raptures. (People[191] should) be friends before they (make so free). It
mouvements. *Il* N.B. *faut* *être* *avant de* *(nn)* *se caresser.*

you wish that we should ever become so, be not (too much) (taken up)
[146] *le* [54], – *trop* *s'occuper*

with me. In saying these words, he (got up), kissed every one of the
[200] , *se lever,* [105]

children, made a gentle bow to the three brothers, gave a smile to
, *petit* *salut* , –

Amine and to Taï, and went to wait for them in their bed[26] chamber.
, [201] *coucher* [25]

Taï (sat again) at table with his brothers, and ordered beds to be got
se remettre , *faire* ‡ – – *appré-*

ready for them. Next day he showed them his fields, his flocks, and
ter ‡ – *leur* [54] *Le lendemain* [162] , ,

gave them a detail of all the pleasures *(s)* he enjoyed. Bekir would[137]
faire [162] *dont* [146] *vouloir*

(work in the fields) (that very day); so he was the first that became
labourer *le jour même*; *aussi* [137] [74]

the friend of Bathmendi. Mesrou who had been prime minister, was
[140] , [137]

head shepherd of the farm, and the poet (took upon himself) to go and
premier , *se charger* [168] –

sell in town, the corn, the wool, and the milk which was sent to market;
à [7] , , , [92] [139] [7] ;

his eloquence brought customers, and he was as useful as the others
attirer *chaland,* [140] [42] [43]

(At the) end of six months, Bathmendi (was pleased) with them, and
Au *bout* , *se plaire* [137] [56] , ;

their numerous[82] and quiet days (glided on) gently (in the) bosom
nombreux [82] *couler* [137] *doucement* *au*

of happiness. It[62] is perhaps unnecessary to say that BATHMENDI
[7] N.B. *inutile* *de*

(in the Persian language) means HAPPINESS.
en *Persan* *signifier* [7]

---

* This adjective requires the following verb in the *subjunctive.*
† See note * page 140, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître.*
‡ Turn *ordered* to *get ready* beds, &c. for he did not order the *beds* but he ordered to *get ready.*

A

COMPENDIUM

OF

THE PRINCIPAL RULES.

CONTAINED IN THIS TREATISE.*

What are the words commonly called[107] the PARTS of SPEECH, of which
82 *appeler* *partie* 7 *discours*,
the french language is composed?
32 *langue* *composer* 158 ?

(What is) a NOUN?
Qu'est-ce que (y) *nom?*

(How many[6]) sorts of nouns do we[90] distinguish in grammar?
Combien N.B. N.B. *distinguer* *en* *grammaire?*

(How[8] many) genders (are there) in french?
N.B. 246

How do we[90] know the gender of the names of the beings without
185 N.B. *connaître* *nom* *être*
life, which are commonly called[92] things?
appeler

(How[8] many) numbers (are there)?——How do you make the plural
N.B. 246 185 *former* *pluriel*
number of nouns?

Has this rule any exceptions?——What are they?
134 9 82 62

(What is) an ARTICLE?
(y)

What are the words which are commonly called ARTICLE in french?
82 92

What agreement does the article require with the noun?
accord *demander*

What sign do we use, when the noun which follows the article
signe *employer*,
is (in the) singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute?
au *par* *voyelle*, *muette?*

When several nouns which require the article meet in the same
plusieurs *demander* *se rencontrer*

* The learner must translate these questions into french, as he has done the foregoing exercises; and he must also write in french an answer to every question, with an explanation of the rule, and two or three appropriate examples from his own imagination. This exercise would perhaps be useless to grown persons who have read the rules with attention, but I think it will be particularly useful to all young learners.

sentence, is it necessary to repeat the article before each noun?
phrase, 103

Do the names[134] of persons and of towns require the article?
nom *demander*

Do the names of countries require the article?
134 *pays*

Has not this rule some exceptions?——What are they?
134 * 82 62

(Is there) not a small number of words which are never excepted,
246 8

i. e. which always require the article?——Name them.
134 *Nommer*

What article do common names require, when they are used
82 *commun* 134 *demander,* – *s'employer*

in a general or in a particular sense?
particulier *sens*

How is OF expressed before a noun used in a general sense,
185 – *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B.

preceded by a noun used in a partitive sense?

What article do common names require, when we[90] use them in a
134 N.B. *employer*

partitive sense, *i. e.* to denote only a portion of the thing (spoken of?)
à *désigner* *dont on parle?*

What sign do we[90] put before a noun used in a partitive sense, when
signe N.B. *partitif* ,

t is attended by an adjective which must be placed before that noun?
accompagné de *devoir* – *se placer*

(Are not there) some adverbs in french which require the preposi-
246 *

tion DE, when the words which represent them in english do not re-
, *représenter*

quire any[8] preposition?——What are they?
N.B. 82

How is the numeral article A, AN expressed?
185 – *(ii)* N.B.

How are A, AN expressed before nouns of measure, weight, number,
– 8 204 *poids,* 204 ,

and periods of time used in a collective sense?
204 137 *collectif*[82]

What are the words which are called demonstrative article?
82 – 92 *démonstratif*

How do we[90] make in french that local[82] distinction which is made
N.B. *de lieu* – *se faire*

in english by means of the words THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE?
au *moyen*

---

* See note † page 282. † See note * page 192.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

What are the words which we[90] call possessive article?
[82] N.B. *possessif*[82]

Is not the possessive article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,
– [134]

sometimes expressed by the definite article *Le, La, Les?*
[184] *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B.

Are not the possessive words MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,
– [134]

sometimes expressed by *Au, à la, Aux?*
(ii) N.B.

Do not the French sometimes use *Mon, Ma, Mes,* before a nour,
[134] [184] *employer*

when the corresponding[82] signs are not used in english?
qui y correspondent – *(ii)* N.B.

In what instances are the signs called article (left out) in french?
cas – [134] *s'omettre*

When two nouns govern each other, which of the two nouns is to
se régir [121] , [242]

be placed the first in french?
[243] *se placer (ii)* N.B. *premier*

By what preposition are these nouns united together?
– [134] *s'unir* *ensemble?*

How is OF expressed before the proper names of countries?
[183] – *(ii)* N.B. *nom*

Do not the French sometimes use the name of a country, when
[134] [184] *employer*

the English use the adjective derived from that name?
dérivé

What is an ADJECTIVE?
(y) *adjectif?*

What agreement does the adjective require with the noun?
accord [134] *demander*

How is the feminine gender of an adjective formed?
– – *se former (ii)* N.B.

(Are there) any exceptions to this rule, and what are they?
[246] [9] , [82] [62]

How is the plural number of adjectives formed?
– –

When an adjective qualifies two nouns, of what gender and number
qualifier ,

must that adjective be?
devoir

Are adjectives placed in french before or after the noun?
– [134] *se placer (ii)* N.B.

---

* Repeat here *Of what* before number.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

Has not this rule some exceptions?
134 *

What place do the adjectives of number keep with the noun?
place 134. *tenir*

How are the adjectives of number expressed and where are they
– *s'exprimer, (ii)* N.B. *où* –

placed, when they are used to distinguish some personage?
se placer, – *s'employer* * *personnage?*

How are the adjectives of measure and dimension *long, broad,*
– 204 *long, large,*

high, deep, &c. placed with the number in french?
haut, profond, &c. se placer (ii) N.B.

Do not the French often use the substantive of dimension instead of
134 134 *substantif*

the adjective?——Is the same verb used with the substantive of
– 92

dimension as with the adjective?
que

Can the adjective be separated from the noun by an article in french
134

as it[62] sometimes is in english?
comme 134 70

May[178] not the adjective be sometimes used as a substantive?
Pouvoir † 134 – *(ii)* N.B.

How is an adjective made comparative?—How is it made superlative?
92 *comparatif?* 92 *superlatif?*

When the comparison is made, not between two substantives,
– *se faire, (ii)* N.B. *entre*

but between two parts of a sentence; as, THE MORE DIFFICULT A
partie *phrase;*

THING IS, THE MORE MERIT THERE IS IN DOING IT; what difference
;

(is there) in the arrangement of the words in french?
246

Are the adverbial particles[134] which serve to form the comparative
22 *particule* *servir*

and superlative repeated in french?
8 *se répéter (ii)* N.B.

Do not some[96] of the comparative adjectives and adverbs require
134 22 8 *demander*

ne before the verb which follows them?

How are BY and THAN expressed after a comparative?
185 – *(ii)* N.B.

---

* See note * page 282. † See note * page 138.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

How is IN expressed after a superlative?
185 – *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B.

What mood does the superlative require, when it is followed by a
82 *mode* *demander,* 62 *de*
relative pronoun?
relatif

What is a PRONOUN?
(y) *pronom?*

How many[6] sorts of pronouns do we[90] distinguish?
N.B. 6 N.B. *distinguer?*

How do you express the pronouns I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU
THEY, when they are the nominative of a verb?
nominatif

How do you express the same words I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU,
mêmes
THEY, when they are joined[158] to another substantive for the nomina
, *joindre* *substantif* –
tive of the same verb, or when the verb is understood?
, *sous-entendre?*

How do you express the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER,
IT, THEM, when they are the object of a verb?
, *objet*

What place do the pronouns objects of the verb keep with the
place 134 *tenir*
verb, when the tense is simple?
, *tems* *simple?*

What place do these pronouns require when the tense is compounded
134 *demander* *composé*
of the auxiliary[82] verb *Avoir* or *Etre*, and of a past[82] participle?
auxiliaire , *passé* *participe?*

Where are the pronouns objects of the verb placed, when the
Où – *se placer, (ii)* N.B.
verb commands, and how are ME and THEE expressed?
commander, 185 – *(ii)* N.B.

How are ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM expressed, and where
185 – *(ii)* N.B.,
are they placed, when they are governed by a preposition?
– *(ii)* N.B., *régir* *par*

Is not the preposition *À* in french, like the preposition TO in english,
134
often implied in the pronoun?——When is *À*[134] to be expressed?
renfermée 242 243 *s'exprimer?*

When several pronouns of different persons are the object of the
plusieurs

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

same verb, what order do these pronouns keep with one another?
, *ordre* 134 *tenir* 121

As (there are) in french only two genders, the masculine and the
Comme *il n'y a* *que* ,

feminine, how is the english neuter[32] pronoun IT expressed in french?
, – 32 *neutre* 134 *(ii)* N.B.

Explain the different uses of the pronoun IT.
Expliquer *usages*

May[178] LUI, LEUR, be used for things?
Pouvoir * 134 – *s'employer* 7

May LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES be used for things after a preposition?
* 134 † 7

How are the pronouns HE, SHE, IT, THEY expressed before the verb
185 – 134 *(ii)* N.B. 206

BE, when that verb is followed by a substantive?
, 200

How are the pronouns HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM expressed,
– *(ii)* N.B. ,

when they do not relate to any noun (mentioned before), but
‡ *se rapporter* *aucun* *dont on a fait* 145 *mention,* 219

[33] refer to the word PERSON understood?
se rapporter *sous-entendre?*

Are not the pronouns LE, LA, LES, EN, Y frequently used, when
– 134 *souvent* 134 *s'employer,*

the words which represent them are not used in english?
représenter – *(ii)* N.B.

Do these pronouns agree with the words which they represent?
s'accorder

How do you express the pronouns WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT,

WHICH, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before)?
, *se rapporter* *dont on a fait mention?*

What place does the relative keep with the noun to which it relates?
place *relatif* *tenir* 76

Is not the relative pronoun sometimes understood in english, when
82 134 134 ,

it can not (be left out) in french?
s'omettre

How are WHO, WHOM, WHOSE expressed, when they relate to the
– 134 , † *(ii)* N.B., *se rapporter*

word PERSON understood?
*

How are WHOM and WHICH expressed, when they are governed by
(ii) N.B., *régir*

a preposition?

---

* See note * page 138. † These words in this sense may be considered as nouns.
‡ Express *Not* by *ne* only, because *aucun* that follows is a *negative* expression which takes the place of *pas.*

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates
185 – *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B. , *se rapporter*
to the word THING?

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates to a place?
– *(ii)* N.B. , *lieu?*

How is WHICH interrogative expressed?
– *interrogatif* *(ii)* N.B.

Explain the different ways of expressing the pronoun WHAT.
Expliquer *manière* 154

How do we[90] express the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS,
N.B. *possessif* 82
OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before)?
, *dont on a fait mention?*

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, &c
– 82
expressed, when they are used instead of the personal pronouns ME,
N.B., – *s'employer*
THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM; as, THIS BOOK *is* MINE?
; , *THIS BOOK is MINE?*

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. ex-
–
pressed, when they are joined by the preposition OF to the noun to
(ii) N.B., *OF*
which they relate; as, A BOOK *of* MINE, &c.?
; , *A BOOK of MINE, &c.?*

How are the demonstrative pronouns THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE,
– *démonstratif* 82
expressed?—How is the distinction made between these words in french?
(ii) N.B. – 82 *entre*

How are THIS, THAT expressed, when they relate to the word
– *(ii)* N.B., *se rapporter*
THING understood?

Explain the different properties of THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE.*
propriété

How do we[90] express the words ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, when they
N.B. ,
do not refer to any particular[82] person?
se rapporter *aucune en particulier* *personne*

How are the indefinite expressions such as these; IT *is* THOUGHT,
– *indéfini* 82 134 *telles que* 88 ; ,
IT *is* SAID, expressed in french?
, *(ii)* N.B.

How are these other indefinite expressions I HAVE BEEN TOLD, I
– *autre* 82 ,

* See note *(bb)* page 217.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

WAS ADVISED, &c. expressed in french?
(ii) N.B.

What is a VERB?
(y) *verbe?*

What agreement does the verb require with its nominative?
82 *accord* *demander* *son nominatif?*

When two substantives of different persons are the nominative of
*substantif**

the same verb, of what number and person must the verb be?
82 † *devoir*

Of what person is the verb, when it has *qui* for its nominative?

Of what person must the verb be, when *qui* relates to two sub-
devoir *se rapporter*

stantives of different persons?

Of what number must the verb be, after the collective substantives
collectif 82

LA PLUPART, INFINITÉ, NOMBRE, QUANTITÉ, TROUPE, MULTITUDE?

Of what number is the verb, after *LE QUART, LE TIERS, LA MOITIÉ?*

What is the place of the nominative with the verb, in an interro-
82 *place*

gative sentence, when the nominative is a personal pronoun?
phrase, 82

What is the place of the nominative, in an interrogative sentence, when

that nominative is a noun, or any other word but a personal pronoun?
tout autre que

When is the present of the indicative used[92]?
employer

When do we[90] use the compound of the present?
N.B. *composé*

When do we[90] make use of the perfect tense of the verb?
N.B. *usage* *parfait*

Explain the different uses of the imperfect.
Expliquer *usage*

When is the future used?——Is not the present sometimes used
futur 92 134

for the future?——Does not the french language require the future,
134 *demander*

in some instances (in which) the English use the present?
‡ *cas* *où*

How are WILL, WOULD expressed after the conjunction IF?
185 *s'exprimer* *IF?*

---

* See note page 205. † *Of what* must be *repeated* before *person.* ‡ See note † page 282.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise*

Mention the different instances in which the subjunctive is used.
Rapporter *cas* 76 *subjonctif* 92

When is the present of the subjunctive used?
92

When is the perfect of the subjunctive used?
92

Does the present participle agree with the words that attend it?
32 *participe* *s'accorder* *accompagner*

How is the english participle in ING expressed, after a preposition?
83 *s'exprimer,*

How is the english present participle expressed, when it is joined
(ii) N.B.,

to the auxiliary verb BE?
BE?

Does the past participle agree with the noun to which it is joined
32 134 76 *joindre?*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *Etre*, to BE,

does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?
quelque accord, *s'accorder*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *Avoir*, to HAVE,

does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?

Does the past participle agree after *Avoir*, when it is followed by
de

another verb in the infinitive?——Explain this rule.
à *Expliquer*

How is TO, the sign of the infinitive in english, expressed in french?
134, 22 *signe* (ii) N.B. *

(Are not there) some instances in which this preposition is left out
246 † *cas* 76 *s'omettre*

in french?——Name them.
Nommer

Is WILL[134] always the sign of the future, and WOULD the sign of
WILL *WOULD*

the conditional of the verb which follows it?
conditionnel

How are WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE expressed?—Explain these words.
(ii) N.B.

How do we[90] express SHOULD;——SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE?
N.B.

How do we[90] express MAY, MIGHT;——COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE?
N.B.

---

* See, pages 236, 237, 238, the different ways of expressing TO before an infinitive, and peruse often the list of those verbs. † See note † page 282.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

How is WISH expressed when it is followed by another verb
155 – *s'exprimer (ii)* N.B. 200

(in the) imperfect, or (in the) conditional?
à l' *imparfait,* *au* *conditionnel?*

How is MUST expressed, and what mood does it govern?
– *(ii)* N.B., *mode* *régir*

How must[181] we express MUST HAVE in the sense of BEING in NEED?
N.B. *sens*

What is an ADVERB?
(y) *adverbe?*

What place do the adverbs keep with the verb?
place 134 *tenir*

Which are the words that we[90] call negative adverbs?
79 N.B. *négatif*[82]

How are the negative adverbs placed with the verb?
– *se placer (ii)* N.B.

How are they placed, when the verb is in the infinitive?
– *(ii)* N.B. *à*

Are not *pas*, *point* sometimes left out?
– 134 184 *s'omettre (ii)* N.B.

How are NO, NOT expressed without a verb?
– *(ii)* N.B.

How is NOT expressed with the verb TAKE CARE, *prendre garde?*
(ii) N.B.

(Are there) not in french some words which require *ne*, when
246 * * *demander*

(there is) no negation in english?——Which are these words?
246 79

How do we[90] express BUT in the sense of the adverb ONLY?
N.B. *BUT* *ONLY?*

How is BUT expressed in the sense of a relative pronoun?
– *BUT* *(ii)* N.B.

What is a PREPOSITION?
(y) *préposition?*

Are the prepositions always expressed by the words which generally
– 134 184

correspond to one another in both languages?——Mention the words
se correspondre 121 *les deux* *Rapporter*

the most frequently used[157] with which the prepositions differ†?
184 *employer* 76 *différer?*

Do not some verbs require a preposition in english, when the
* *demander*

corresponding[82] words do not require any in french?——Name them.
qui y correspondent *(p)* *Nommer*

---

* See note † page 282. † See, pages 247, 248, 249, 250 251, a list of the words with which the prepositions differ, and peruse it often.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

(Are there) not (on the) contrary some verbs which require a pre-
246 *au* *contraire* *

position in french, when the corresponding[28] words do not require
, *qui y correspondent*

any in english?——Name them.
(p)

May the prepositions be placed in french, as they sometimes are
† 134 – *se placer (ii)* N.B. , 62 134 –

placed in english, either before or after the words which they govern?
(ii) N.B. , 223 62 *régir?*

Are the prepositions repeated before all the words which they govern?
– 134 *se répéter* 62

Explain the following[28] prepositions: FOR.——BEFORE.——BY.
Expliquer *suivant* 29

Explain AT, TO, FROM with verbs denoting being[154] at, going[154],
? *qui désignent* *être* *à,* *aller* ,

or coming to, going or coming from a person's[25] house?
venir *à,* *de* – *quelqu'un*

Explain the different properties of IN, INTO.——IN, before the dif-
propriété *IN, INTO.* *IN,*

ferent parts of the day; and ON before the days of the week.
partie ; *ON*

What is a CONJUNCTION?
(y) *conjonction?*

Which are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood?
79 *régi-* *indicatif?* –

Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive?
79 74 *subjonctif?*

When a conjunction governs several verbs, is it[62] necessary to re-
plusieurs , N.B. 162

peat it before each verb?
62 102

(Is there) not something to be remarked about the conjunction *si*, IF?
246 243 *au sujet de* ,

May not some conjunctions (be left out) in english, when the con-
† * 134 *s'omettre* ,

junctions which represent them can not (be left out) in french?

Explain the conjunctions BOTH.——EITHER, OR.——NEITHER, NOR.

Explain the conjunctions WHETHER.—THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN.

——BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, &c.

---

* See note † page 282. † See note * page 138.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

IDIOMS

Explain the different ways of expressing the word PEOPLE.
Expliquer *manière* 184

Explain the different meanings of the words COUNTRY.——TIME.
signification

What difference between AN, ANNÉE ;——JOUR, JOURNÉE ;——MATIN
entre

MATINÉE ;——SOIR, SOIRÉE ;——NUIT, SOIR ;——MIDI, MINUIT ?

When is the auxiliary verb HAVE expressed by the auxiliary *Etre?*
184 *s'exprimer* *par*

When is the auxiliary verb BE expressed by the auxiliary *Avoir ?*
(ii) N.B.

When is BE expressed by *Faire?*——When is BE expressed by
184

se porter ?——When is BE expressed by *Devoir ?*

Is not the verb BE sometimes left out ?
184 184 *s'omettre*

How do we[90] express TO BE JUST, TO HAVE JUST ?
185 N.B.

How do we[90] express WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE ?
N.B.

How do we[90] express THERE IS, THERE ARE ; IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG
N.B.

AGO ; IT IS SINCE ; and THIS, THESE, (pointing out) a period of time ?
désignant

How do we[90] express HERE IS, HERE ARE ; THIS IS, THESE ARE ;
N.B.

——THERE IS, THERE ARE ; THAT IS, THOSE ARE, when they serve

to (point out) an object ?
169 *désigner*

Explain the different meanings of the word LET.——LET KNOW.
signification

Explain the different meanings of the verb MAKE.

Explain TO CAUSE, TO HAVE, TO GET.——TO CAUSE TO BE DONE

OF MADE ; TO HAVE OF GET DONE OF MADE ; TO ORDER, TO BESPEAK.

Explain the verbs TO ASK, TO DESIRE.——TO LOOK.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO SUPPOSE.—TO HOPE.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES *contained in this treatise.*

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO TAKE.——TO BRING signification ——TO USE.——TO HELP.——TO ATTEND.——TO WANT.

Explain the verbs TO MARRY.——TO RIDE.——TO WALK.——TO COME.——TO RETURN.——TO CALL.

Explain the verbs TO BREAK.——TO LIKE.——TO KEEP.——TO GET. ——TO SPEND.——TO CHARGE.

How do we[90] express TO GO TO MEET.——TO BRING NEAR, TO GO NEAR, TO COME NEAR.——TO HEAR? N.B. 186

How do we[90] express IT IS WITH.——WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE.——TO FIND FAULT WITH.——TO TAKE IT KINDLY.—— TO TAKE IT UNKINDLY? N.B.

How do we[90] express TO DO WITHOUT, TO BE EASY WITHOUT.—— WHAT IS THE MATTER, WHAT IS IT ABOUT, WHAT IS IT.——IS IT, IS IT NOT; DOES IT, DOES IT NOT; HAVE I, HAVE I NOT? N.B.

☞ *The learner having gone through the Syntax, and being able to answer the foregoing questions, with appropriate examples to each of them, there can be no doubt but he understands the rules well; he should now try to write something of his own composition in french, such as* letters, dialogues, short histories, *or* anecdotes, *either that he has read or heard, or from his own imagination. This he will perhaps find difficult at first; but if he will persevere in it for a few days, he will find it easier and more profitable than translating from a book; for unless he has read a great deal of french, he will be apt to commit many anglicisms, owing to the difference in the idiom of the two languages,* i. e. *he will put together a number of french words which separately have a meaning, but which, when put together, have hardly any meaning at all. His attention should be called entirely to recollect the french words which he has seen to express the same ideas, and even the english dictionary should be used as seldom as possible. If he finds himself deficient in some of the rules, he must write over again the recapitulatory exercise on those parts of speech which are not familiar to him, and there is little doubt that after a second attentive perusal, he will be sufficiently acquainted with them*

THE END

London: Printed by W. CLOWES and SONS, Stamford-street.